

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
FRENCH TONGUE.

WITH A  
PREFATORY DISCOURSE,  
CONTAINING AN  
ESSAY  
On the PROPER METHOD for  
TEACHING and LEARNING  
THAT  
LANGUAGE.

---

By LEWIS CHAMBAUD.

---

The TENTH EDITION, Revised and Corrected, agreeably  
to the DICTIONARY of the FRENCH ACADEMY.

---

---

LONDON:

Printed for J. RIVINGTON and SONS, T. LONGMAN, B. LAW,  
C. DILLY, T. VERNOR, G. G. J. and J. ROBINSON,  
J. JOHNSON, T. CADELL, P. ELMSLY, J. BEW, R. BALD-  
WIN, W. RICHARDSON, J. SEWELL, G. and T. WILKIE,  
W. BENT, and C. D. FIGUENET.

M.DCC.XC.

Exnet 21517.90.6

~~6252.24~~

~~Exnet~~

~~1167.90~~ 1878, Sept. 25.

Gift of  
Prof. William Everett,  
of Cambridge.  
(H. U. 1859)

---

T H E  
P R E F A C E.

THE Pronunciation of a language consists of sounds and articulations; and the greatest difficulty met with in learning to read, arises from the words being written and spelt otherwise than they are pronounced. If then the sounds and articulations of a foreign language, and the combinations of those sounds and articulations, that is, the various ways of representing them in writing, were exhibited in proper tables to the learner, with the corresponding sounds and articulations of his own language, that difficulty would be in a great measure removed \*. The nature of the thing itself points out the true method of obtaining the pronunciation.

Of the seventeen sounds of the French language, fifteen are in English, even our nasal vowels, and *e* both guttural and mute; *eux* and *un* only are not; and liquid *g* only, as expressed in *gueux*, is perhaps the only articulation that is not in English: for I dare maintain that our liquid *n* and *l* are in the English words *minion*, *billiards*, *million*. I maintain likewise, that these following English words are exactly pronounced like the French ones underneath:

fat,	hall,	long,	parlour †,	fare,
<i>un fat,</i>	<i>le bâlé,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	<i>parleur,</i>	<i>faire or fer.</i>

\* I say in a great measure, because of the final consonants of words, some of which are always dropt, and some always pronounced; some are sometimes articulated, and sometimes not.

† There is a difference of accent, not of sound, in the pronunciation of these two words.

bell,	pen,	swear,	sum or some,	sweat.
<i>belle,</i>	<i>peine,</i>	<i>soir,</i>	<i>somme,</i>	<i>souhaite,</i>
pull,	kit,	we, &c.		
<i>poule,</i>	<i>quitte,</i>	<i>oui.</i>		

Those who deny it, only proclaim their ignorance of the French pronunciation. The English sounds, that are compared to the French ones in my tables, have been weighed, as it were, in a pair of scales. This comparative view has been the object of above twenty years meditation; and the sounds have been found exactly corresponding to each other, by several English Gentlemen, who have been long enough conversant with people of fashion and character abroad, to become masters of their pronunciation, and who are therefore competent judges of the matter.

This work is divided into three parts: and I have printed in a small character such observations as are not fit for beginners: but must be omitted, in order for them to learn first what is essential to the language; that they may thereby be the sooner enabled to enter into the construing of the French books. Each part of Speech is treated of, both with respect to its accidence and construction, in a manner that leaves nothing further to be said upon the same subjects. There is not one construction in French, but is taken notice of and reduced into rules. And I have reserved for an Appendix some more particular observations, that could not be inserted in the body of the work, without interrupting that order which I proposed; but which are nevertheless necessary to the understanding and writing French.

Another advantage that youth, and illiterate people, will reap from it, is, that in learning French, they will at the same time learn the art of speaking, the reason of the words they utter, the œconomy of all languages. Therefore after a succinct, but clear and exact analysis of the analogy and foundations of languages, prefixed by way of introduction, I give in the sequel true and perfect notions of the parts of Speech, and other Grammatical terms used in the work: and both the division of the work, and definitions used in it, will be found grounded

in the nature of things, and formed after the most exact rules of Logic. This (though the young learner need not at first trouble himself with it) seemed to me the more necessary, as there is no treatise on Grammar fit for youth and illiterate persons; all the English, as well as the Latin and French Grammars used in schools, being quite defective in that respect, and the definitions in them for the most part false, tho' generally used by Grammarians.

I think, after the generality of Grammarians, that all the words of which speech is composed, may be ranged into eight or nine classes: but I differ from them as to the true species of words, which are the constituent parts of speech. Thus I keep from that number the Participle, which is no distinct species from the Verb, of which it is only a mode; and I admit the Adnoun, which they confound with the Noun, tho' essentially different. I acknowledge the Particles for one of the Parts of Speech: but I fix them to a particular species of words, which are neither Adverbs nor Prepositions, nor Conjunctions. How these came to be so confounded by Grammarians, as to be all promiscuously called by one name, to which they have fixed no idea, and be at the same time distinguished by particular ideas, which fix their species, is what is not to be easily accounted for. Things specifically distinguished must have distinct appellations. Again: I admit of one Article only, and of no case at all in nouns, contrary to all those who have written upon the French language before me. I give my reasons for that singularity. Reason, and the right of the thing, not imitation, is my guide, and the rule which I go by throughout this performance.

And now, having given an account of this work, I shall say something of the method of teaching and learning French, whereon depends the whole success of those who are desirous of attaining to the knowledge of that language: for I am satisfied that the little progress of Learners is often owing to the mismanagement of Teachers, who are so far from being qualified for their art, that they do

not so much as suspect that it is one. Teaching French is become the profession of Foreigners of all sorts, who know not how to shift for a living, and often have no qualification at all. The generality of the French know not their mother-tongue: but the few who are masters of it, are not on that single account capable of teaching it. I have composed this performance, not only for the instruction of the English who learn French, but also for the use of such teachers as are not masters of that language. I hope it will be advantageous to them in all respects: for they must have the mastery of it, and make the rules familiar to them, that they may readily represent them upon occasion to their scholars, whenever they happen to write or speak wrong. I shall therefore subjoin my own method of teaching, which is grounded both upon reason and experience.

The lesson consists of four or five parts, which ought to keep an equal pace together: the materials of the language, I mean the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech; the way of using them, or the Grammar; the Exercise, which is the practice of the Grammar rules; and the pronunciation, or reading: to which, translating and construing must be added, when the scholar has learnt his Accidence. The lesson must always begin with the pronunciation, and each part always follow in its turn in the same order, for fear of forgetting something.

Before the Master shews his scholars the vowels of the first table, he himself must pronounce distinctly to them each vowel one after another, and make them pronounce the same after him; then make them pronounce the first four together, then four more, and so on: and when he is satisfied that his pupils have got the pronunciation of them all, he must shew them in the first table the letters by which those sounds are represented; pronouncing again first the vowel, as he points it out to his pupils, and making them pronounce it after him. He may then explain to them what a vowel is, in the very words of the definition set down in page 5; and tell them that the  
vowels

vowels marked with a circumflex over them, have a much broader and longer sound than the others; and that the nasal vowels are so called, on account of their being pronounced through the nose. Afterwards he must shew them the mute *e*; but must take care not to pronounce it.

When the scholars know their vowels, as represented in the first table, the Master must shew them the second, which contains the several ways of representing the vowels; and inform them, that all those combinations of letters, such as *ai, ei, oi, et, &c.* represent each of them only the sound of the vowel beginning the line, and that *ai, ei, oi, et, &c.* must be pronounced *è*. They are to pronounce each combination after him, and then repeat or pronounce them by themselves, as he points at each of those combinations. The Master must then observe to them, that *e* mute is represented these three ways, *e, es, ent*.

The table of the consonants is to be used after the same manner, the Master pronouncing them first with the guttural sound of *e* (or *eu*) but very weak, just to shew the articulation. They are ranged according to their several efficient causes; those which are produced by the same disposition and motion of the lips, or tongue, being placed against each other.

The tables of the syllables must be learnt next, the Master still pronouncing first the syllable, and making his pupil pronounce it after him, without spelling, that is, without causing him to name first the consonant, and then the vowel of which the syllable is formed. But the learner must read the syllables, not only in their natural order, from the left to the right, but also from the right to the left, from top to bottom, and again from bottom to top, till he is perfect in the pronunciation of them. Next comes the table of Monosyllables; then two other tables to acquaint the learner when the consonants ought not to be pronounced at the end of words and syllables, and when they ought; lastly, the table of the combinations of sounds. The learner must get this last table by heart, and have six or eight syllables, with the words annexed to them, set him

every time, as part of his task : and when he has learnt all those combinations, go through them over again after the same manner ; adding a rule of the final consonants, with its exception ; and thus repeat these tables a third and fourth time, nay, till the Master is convinced, by his pupil's reading, that he has them thoroughly, and they have made a lasting impression on his mind. Afterwards he must make him read the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech (but still without spelling), reading each word first, and making the pupil repeat it after him : and give him a certain number of words and sentences to get by heart, more or less according to his capacity.

Spelling will not do at all ; and is, on the contrary, the greatest hinderance to the learning of the pronunciation. Children must be accustomed to read the words without naming each letter separately, one after another : they will soon learn to read, if they are taught their letters and syllables after the manner contained in the tables. The usual method of teaching children to read, in making them name the vowels and consonants by themselves, is quite absurd. To evidence this beyond contradiction, let us suppose the pronunciation of this word *champs* is to be learnt. If you make the pupil spell, he will say, *cey, ash, â, em, pey, efs*, and he will stop of course, because the separate sounds of *c, h, a, m, p, s*, cannot give him any idea of the combined sound, which is to be pronounced. How should they ? These letters, named singly one after another, make six different sounds and articulations, none of which separately has, or altogether have, any manner of affinity or resemblance to the single articulated sound expressed by *champs*. The Master seeing his pupil stop after spelling this word, pronounces himself *champs* to him ; and the pupil, echo-like, repeats *champs*. Spelling therefore can only serve to confound the learner, and lead him into error, in intimating to him that there are six sounds in *champs*, though the teacher is obliged, after all, to convince him by his own pronunciation that there is but one. Let the word be pronounced at first to the learner,

learner, and the difficulty is removed; that sound will make a right impression upon his mind; and whenever he sees the same combination of letters, he will remember the sound represented by them, and will pronounce the word right.

Moreover, the names of the letters most commonly offer false notions, nay sounds and articulations directly opposite to those which are to be pronounced. The letter *c* is pronounced sometimes *k*, and sometimes *s*. Its name *cey* leads the learner to pronounce *sa* for *ka*, and to read *lâce* for *lac*. *G* is sometimes pronounced *gue*, as is *Gog*, *Agag*, and sometimes *je*. The name of *gey*, which the learner gives it in spelling, leads him naturally to read *Jogé* for *Gog*, and *Ajagé* for *Agag*. Some Masters, hearing a child make such mistakes in reading, are apt to fret, to fall into a passion, and perhaps to abuse him. But how can the child help it, if he pronounces false sounds, into which he is naturally led by those names of the letters, which his Master has been at great pains to teach him? He must not blame the child, but his own method only, and reform it.

The method here recommended to the Teacher has experience for its voucher: it has never failed me. But, upon the whole, those that are fond of spelling, may as well make their pupils spell the words of the Vocabulary and Forms of speech, as a set of unmeaning words of two, three, or four syllables; since those materials of the language cannot be learnt too early. I make my scholars begin with the Adverbs, instead of the common nouns, that they may have the indeclinable parts of speech, the Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, treasured up in their memory, against the time they will be capable of construing French. This is the most difficult and necessary part of the Vocabulary: and, when once learnt, the scholar will meet with nothing to stop him in construing, but the signification of the Nouns, Adnouns, and Verbs, which he will learn of course by dint of translating and construing, besides his usual task out of the Vocabulary.

After

After minding the pronunciation and materials of the language, the Grammar must be thought of. Therefore the Master shall set his scholar a lesson out of the Accidence; explain to him what a noun is, that it has two genders and numbers, and is commonly preceded by the article, and what is meant by each of these terms; make him read the four rules for the formation of the plural number (p. 101.) with the two last paragraphs of page 111 about the article: apply the rules to the nouns set down for his pattern (p. 112.) and take notice to him of the conformity of the examples to these rules; then exercise him immediately upon the same, in making him write down the first noun of the *Introduction to the writing of French*, in French and English, through its three states in both numbers, according to his examples, to shew him how to do it by himself; and set him, for his exercise, three or four nouns to be done after the same manner; and give him, besides, those rules about the plural number and agreement of the article with the noun, to get by heart as part of his task. A grown person will easily learn this in one lesson. Young scholars of an indifferent capacity may be made two, or three, or four lessons of the same, and they will have it perfect, before they have done half a dozen exercises upon the accidence of nouns. Afterwards they must learn the rules for the formation of the verbs (p. 137.) omitting the exceptions at first, which are to be learned only the second time of going through these rules: for as soon as they have been got by heart, they must be repeated with the exceptions; and the scholar be put to the practice of them, in turning into French the Exercises upon the accidence of verbs: and he must prove every tense and person of his exercise by his rules.

The six rules about the Gender of nouns (p. 105 and 6.) are to be learnt next with the exceptions; afterwards the rules for the formation of the feminine gender of the Ad-nouns (p. 114 & 15.); lastly those of the construction of the Article (p. 209). When the pupil has learnt so far, he

he must put the first chapter of the second part of the Exercises into French, and, after his Master has corrected his exercise, prove the same by his Grammar Rules: but the Teacher must first prepare the Exercise to his young scholar, after the manner set down in the preface to that book. Whilst he is exercising upon the article, he must learn the rules for the construction of the Pronouns personal; and, as soon as he can say them, be put into that chapter of the Exercises: then return to the accidence of the adnouns, and learn also their construction (p. 221 and following); and whilst he is exercising upon the same, learn a new set of rules, in order to be put into the next chapter of the Exercises, and so on, till he has gone through all the Parts of Speech and their principles.

When the scholar has learnt his Accidence, he must construe a French book, and enter into the understanding of the language. He must also repeat his verbs, especially the irregular; conjugate a new verb every time, after saying first where the irregularity of the verb lies; and then learn the observations belonging to each verb. He must likewise go through his syntax over again, and learn the notes. But the Masters must insist upon their scholars learning well their rules, and never suffer them to learn any thing new, before they thoroughly understand, and can readily repeat what is before; which is also a light and help to what follows. The contrary would be prejudicial to children, and rather retard than forward them. They learn fast enough, when they learn well. *Sat citò, si sat benè.*

But the great difficulty is to procure books fit for beginners. *Télémaque* and *Molière* are excellent books, but never were composed nor designed for learning French. They suppose a thorough knowledge of the language, and are the last books that ought to be read, in order to relish the beauties and delicacies of it, and learn its figurative, idiomatical, and proverbial ways of speaking; and a Teacher cannot more plainly shew his want of judgment, than in causing beginners to construe such books. Who would  
advise

advise a Foreigner, who wants to learn English, to read *Milton's Paradise Lost*, which a great part of the English themselves do not rightly understand, or some witty play? I say the same of French-books of literature. They must certainly be read, but in their turn. The rule in all kinds of learning is, or ought to be, to proceed by insensible steps from what is easy to what is difficult. Beginners must read only books easy to be understood, written in the most plain and natural style, without any thing puzzling, either in the expression, or in the turn of the sentences, and the subject ought to be known and agreeable to their capacity: for the whole business at first is to make them learn the true import and proper signification of words and their general construction.

I recommended about twelve or fourteen years ago, a book which has gained an immortal honour to its author; I mean *Commenius's Janua linguarum reſerata*: a performance contrived with incredible art and pains to promote more effectually the learning of languages; and which has been translated not only into all the languages of Europe, besides the Latin and Greek, but also into the Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and even the Mogul's language; and has gone through a great many Polyglot editions. The ingenious author, in methodising all the works of nature and art, all that is the object of our senses and understanding, has not only brought under proper heads all the words and common constructions of a language, but also explained things and their differences: so that his performance is a compendious system of learning, altogether proper to form the minds of youth, and enrich them with knowledge, at the same time that they are learning languages. How it comes to pass that so valuable a book is now quite disused in schools, and known only to some Men of Letters, is indeed a matter of wonder. Would it not be worth a Bookseller's while to get that work reprinted in French and English?

As to the first construing book, the scholar must first translate his lesson, then construe it; and the construction must

must be literal, taking one French word only, then one English word, except the article and noun, the pronoun and verb, which must not be parted. By and by, after he shall have gone through a dozen of pages, he must take three or four words together, so as to make a sense, as the noun and adnoun, the subject and the verb, with its regimen. But this is only one half of the business. The young scholar must now digest his lesson (if I may use the expression) in studying it over again another way; and, after he has construed it, must be called upon for every word, first in French, then in English, according to the order of the parts of speech: noun, adnoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle. By that means, and the set of words which he is to get by heart every time out of his Vocabulary, a child will treasure up in his memory the words of the language, of which he will understand the divers significations, and of which he will soon find the advantage for speaking French. The Master must keep to this method all the first construing book throughout, taking notice besides all along to his pupil of the constructions of which he has learnt the rules: and when he has gone through his Grammar, make him parse, that is, account for the construction of every word of his lesson, and shew how each governs, or is governed by another in the sentence.

Of the books which are to be read next, some are to be construed only to the Master, the scholar having first studied his lesson, and others to be translated and rendered according to the beauties of the English Tongue: but in both he must pass over nothing unexplained, and that he does not entirely understand. The Master must make him render faithfully the true spirit of the author: I say faithfully, and not literally, which is necessary only in the beginning, and when the scholar is at a loss how to find out the sense himself. He must take notice to him of the divers forms of speech, turns and idioms of the two languages: of the propriety of the French words, that is, their significations both proper and figurative; of the choice of the expressions,

sions, in mentioning others almost alike, but which would not sufficiently express the thought, or which might be used in common discourse, but would be unsuitable to the dignity of composition; and especially he ought to explain the use and force of the prepositions, and adverbial ways of speaking, in which consists the idiom of a language, which he must always have in view with his scholars. I cannot swell this preface with examples, to shew by their application that true way of studying French Authors which I here recommend. An ingenious and able teacher, who has his duty at heart, that is, the improvement of the learners, won't be at a loss how to promote it: but there is little to be expected from those, who either want the qualifications necessary for their business, or are so bigoted to their own method, as to scorn to listen to any new instructions.

By this time the scholar will pronounce pretty well; therefore he must read with his Master the treatise on the Pronunciation, which makes the first part of this work. He will then see with pleasure the principles of the pronunciation of which he has got the practice already; will easily correct the few defects in his reading; and, in a little time, become entirely perfect therein. He must likewise try to speak French. If he exerts himself, he will find that he can speak a great deal more than he imagined, and will be surpris'd at his own progress. But this wants explanation: which will, at the same time, lead me to the resolution of a question frequently put to French Masters, *In how much time can one learn French?*

The term of *scholar, learner, pupil*, which I am obliged to make use of in this Essay, has a two fold signification. A scholar signifies first a person whose judgment is formed, a man of parts, who, being sensible of the benefit of learning, learns French of his own accord, and therefore acts his part, and pursues his study with diligence and steadiness. A scholar is also a child of ten or twelve years of age, or under, whose understanding is not open yet, of an indifferent capacity, and no inclination at all for learn-

learning. A grown person of parts and application will learn his Accidence in a couple of months; be able in less than three to construe a French book, and turn into French the first chapter of the Exercises; and go through the whole course of the language, all along with the Exercises upon the Grammar Rules, in less than a twelvemonth. Such scholars indeed can then exert themselves in the practice of what they have learnt. They understand common French, and can make themselves understood. Yet they are not masters of the French language. They have learnt too fast, without allowing themselves time for digesting their learning. The matters which they have been studying, have only grazed on their mind, without making any deep impression; a new set of rules generally driving away those that were learnt before. Moreover, when they are out of the drudgery of the Accidence, and have once entered into the understanding and writing of the language, they are generally apt to neglect their Vocabulary and Forms of Speech, and forget that the several parts of their business ought to keep an equal pace together. They must therefore go through their principles over again, and keep to their method of studying for twelve months longer: for it is by dint of reading only they can learn the several significations of the words, and make themselves masters of the Idioms.

But supposing a grown person of parts and application, can learn French in a twelvemonth, it is also reasonable to suppose that he applies himself to his business and reads four times more, and takes four times more pains, than a child will or is able to do: therefore a child cannot be less than four or five years learning the same. There is no proposition in Euclid more evident. It is as plain as that two and two make four.

The learning of a language is the work of time and application. It cannot be learnt in a short time, nor without taking great pains. That is impossible in the nature of the thing: and children learn nothing but by repeating the same thing over and over again. But if they do  
not

not learn so fast as grown persons, they generally learn better. They will speak French of course, after they have learnt how to speak; for we are all apt to shew our accomplishments. If both they and their Master act their part, you may rest satisfied that they come on well, tho' they cannot speak. Do not be impatient at the operations of Nature; she works but slowly. Children, in a good state of health, and under a wholesome diet, grow constantly, tho' their growing is not constantly observable. It is even so with the mind: it improves constantly, so it is properly cultivated; tho' 'tis in process of time only that we can perceive the improvement. It is impossible for one not to be able to speak the language, when thus made capable of it: and it is as impossible to be made capable of it, otherwise than by studying its genius, and learning methodically.

It is a great abuse introduced in most schools to force beginners to speak nothing but French among themselves. They of necessity must either speak wrong (even supposing that they have a competent stock of words and expressions, for it is the utmost absurdity to pretend that they will learn them by guessing) or condemn themselves to silence. The first cannot but be very detrimental to them; since they thereby accustom themselves to a barbarous broken French, which is no language at all, and cannot be worn out without infinite pains. The second is still worse, for it hinders them from disclosing freely their thoughts; and straitens in some measure their understanding; but, above all, gives them the utmost aversion to the language, their books, and master: to prevent which too much care cannot be employed.

It is amazing to see how apt people are to deceive themselves, and how easy to be imposed upon by designing crafty men, who improve the general simplicity to their own private gain. To this is owing the abuse which I am complaining of. The generality of people, being incapable to reflect duly upon the nature of a language, and the faculties of the human mind, have hardly put their children to  
the

the study of the French language, than they expect them to speak it, before they have learnt how to speak: and in case they don't, never fail to task the Master either with incapacity or neglect of his business.

The Masters, on the other hand, being at a loss to satisfy those unreasonable expectations, and knowing not what to contrive for forwarding their boys, presently begin by making them learn words, dialogues, and phrases, and labour hard to beat into their heads as many common sentences as they can; pretty near after the same manner as parrots are instructed. And, as has been hinted before, the absurdity is even carried so far in some schools, as to confine the poor boys, under all sorts of penalties and punishments, to the talking nothing else but French. The consequence of which is, they acquire the knack of talking a Gibberish, which nobody can make any thing of. The ignorant parents, charmed, however, with the shew their children make of their learning, think them great proficient in the French tongue. They recommend the school as one of the best for learning, and so the Master gets his ends; but in truth the poor boys know nothing of French, and the parents are deceived and imposed upon.

To evidence this, let us observe, that two things are chiefly to be considered in the learning of a language: first the words, then the using those words conformably to the Genius of the language. The one is the object of memory, the other that of judgment and reflection. The learning of words is nothing less than getting by heart the whole Dictionary of a language, and cannot be performed within a small compass of time, even by the best memory that youth was ever blessed with. The right placing and using of words in speech require a constant and steady application of the mind, and cannot be acquired but by much meditation upon the language, either by one's self, or with a teacher; by frequent construing, and turning that language into our Mother-tongue, and *vice* *versim* our Mother-tongue into that language, and comparing all along the Genius and Idiom of the two languages.

guages. Although it is evident that this must require a vast compass of time, yet it is the more speedily brought about, when one proceeds with method. Afterwards comes the practice of both, to acquire a due readiness of the mind for writing and speaking.

If nothing more was necessary than to learn to jabber, or to shew in company that they can speak some French words and phrases, that indeed would not require so much art and method. But as for those who are either designed to be Scholars; or to be concerned in some trade, that requires a correspondence with foreign Merchants; who either intend to travel like rational creatures, with a design to adorn their mind by the conversation of the learned and polite part of Europe; or who, by reason of their birth and qualities, are intitled to those honourable stations, wherein they shall be intrusted, either at home or abroad, with the interests of their King and Country: for these, I say, who must of course attain to a mastery in the language, there is much art and method required; though, at the same time, there is seldom any used.

One may daily see in schools young lads who have been learning French for five or six years, and who pass with some for good scholars, on account of that readiness with which they express themselves. But they observe no concord at all; cannot so much as make the adnoun agree with the noun; are utterly incapable of writing four lines, or even to make sense of half a page of a common French book; in short, they know no more than the words and phrases of their own book. Can this be called knowledge of a language, without perverting our ideas of things, and renouncing our own sense and understanding? Whereas, studying half of that time, in the manner I propose, would have made them perfect masters of the language, and enabled them to converse, and correspond, with foreigners upon all subjects.

As to the time, therefore, that children must be put to the speaking of French, these rules, in my humble opinion, ought to be strictly observed. First, that they should have a sufficient

ficient stock of words, and even of ways of speaking, to express themselves; and, besides, that they should be capable of using them according to the Genius of the language. In the next place, that they should not be suffered to speak French too soon among themselves, without somebody with them to correct them. Therefore, when a Master finds a boy capable of speaking French under these two limitations, I would have him discourse himself with him in a way suitable to his capacity, doing it at first in the same sentences, and expressions, that he has learnt in his forms of speech, changing only the order of the construction, but keeping to the same words. Moreover, in schools, a teacher should, twice or thrice a week, spend some time in exercising his scholars in the speaking of French, conversing in an easy and friendly manner with them; asking the youngest, questions within their reach; helping them to make their answers; requiring, from those that are more forward, descriptions and recitals of what they have heard, seen, or read; and speaking nothing but French to the forwardest and most perfect in the language, nor suffer them to speak English, except to those who cannot discourse with them in French. 'Tis after this manner boys will be effectually brought to the speaking of French, and not at all by using themselves to the afore-said gibberish that prevails in schools.

It will not be amiss to set before the Reader a specimen of that barbarous language wherein School-boys are trained up, under the specious pretence of speaking French.

*Bad French,*  
as it is generally spoken  
in England.

*Demain est un jour de fête  
pour un nouveau garçon.*

*Il est douze ans vieux,  
quoiqu'il ne regarde pas si  
vieux; mais il est court de son  
âge.*

*Il a été à l'école ces quatre  
années.*

*Smith, qui n'est que dix,  
est plus grand que lui par  
un demi-tête.*

*English.*

To-morrow is a half ho-  
lyday for a new boy.

He is twelve years old,  
though he don't look so  
old, but he is short of his  
age.

He has been at school  
these four years.

Smith, who is but ten,  
is taller than he by half a  
head.

*Good French,*  
as it is spoken in France.

*C'est demain congé, or  
Nous aurons demain congé  
pour un nouveau pensionnaire.*

*Il a douze ans, quoiqu'il  
ne paroisse pas si âgé, mais  
il est petit pour son âge.*

*Il y a quatre ans qu'il va  
à l'école.*

*Smith, qui n'a que dix  
ans, est plus grand que lui  
de la moitié de la tête.*

*Bad French.*

*Un nouveau garçon de jour est aussi pour venir la prochaine semaine, mais nous ne sommes pas pour avoir sés pour lui.*

*Nous rompons l'école dans une semaine.*

*Je puis dire déjà ce que je suis pour gagner pendant les fêtes.—Il est un aisé leçon, mais l'exercice est fort dur.*

*Vous faut aller, ma maîtresse manque vous.—Elle a appelé pour vous trois fois déjà.*

*Quelqu'un demande pour mon maître.*

*Nous irons prendre une promenade si le sous-maître veut venir avec nous : autrement nous n'irons pas dehors, car mon maître ne veut pas avoir nous aller par nous mêmes.*

*Je desirer vous pour donner moi un demouveau chemise (sald once a boy to a maid).*

*Il manque quinze minutes de douze.*

*Il est trente minutes après trois.*

*Il vous faut venir.*

*Vous regardez bien.*

*Vous êtes à jouer.—Vous êtes pour jouer.*

*Appelez pour du pain.*

*Demandez pour une pièce de pain.*

*Aucune personne vous dira.*

*English.*

A new day-boy is also to come the next week, but we are to have no holy day for him.

We shall break up in a week.

I can say already what I am to get during the holy-days.—It is an easy lesson, but the exercise is very hard.

You must go: my mistress wants you. She has called for you three times already.

Somebody asks for my master.

We shall go and take a walk, if the usher will go with us, otherwise we shall not go out; for my master won't have us go by ourselves.

I desire you to give me one of my new shirts.

It wants fifteen minutes of twelve.

It is thirty minutes after three.

You must come.

You look well.

You are to play.

Call for bread.

Ask for a piece of bread.

Any body will tell you.

*Good French.*

*Il doit aussi venir un nouvel externe, or Il y aussi un-externe qui doit venir la semaine prochaine, mais nous n'aurons pas congé pour lui.*

*Nous aurons vacances dans huit jours.*

*Je sais déjà ce que j'aurai à apprendre pour les vacances. C'est une leçon bien aisée, mais le thème est fort difficile.*

*Madame (une telle) a besoin de vous, or vous demande: il faut que vous alliez voir ce qu'elle vous veut. Elle vous a déjà appelé trois fois.*

*Quelqu'un demande, or Voilà quelqu'un qui demande monsieur (un tel).*

*Nous irons à la promenade, or Nous irons faire un tour, si monsieur (un tel), or si le précepteur veut venir avec nous: sinon nous ne sortirons pas; car monsieur (un tel) ne veut pas que nous sortions seuls.*

*Je vous prie de me donner une de mes chemises neuves.*

*Il est midi moins un quart.*

*Il est trois heures & demie.*

*Il faut que vous veniez.*

*Vous avez bon air, or bon visage.*

*C'est à vous à jouer.*

*Demandez du pain.*

*Demandez un morceau de pain*

*Tout le monde vous dira.*

It now remains to answer the Objections that may be made against this method of learning and teaching French.

Some people urge, that the best way of learning a language, is to learn by practice: that it is impossible to make sure rules upon a living language, which is entirely grounded upon use: that these rules are destroyed by the exceptions, which prove that they are groundless: and, in fine, that 'tis too tedious and painful for children to get

get such rules by heart : that 'tis overloading their memory, and losing a great deal of time, which may be better employed in making them speak French : and that the rules serve only to puzzle their understanding.

1<sup>st</sup>, I am so much convinced of the excellency of practice in all things, and especially that a living language is a practical science, that it is for no other purpose I have taken so much pains in composing this Grammar, and the Exercises upon the different rules which it contains, than to put the learner the sooner and more effectually into the practice of the language ; and thereby remedy the general complaint, that the generality of those who learn French get no other benefit from their pains and application, than that of understanding common French books, without ever being able to speak or write that language. But I also easily persuade myself, that those who make this objection, mistake *rote* for *practice* ; than which nothing is more absurd.

Practice, rightly understood, consists in exercising one's self upon what one has learnt, and in the frequent using of the terms and idiomatical phrases of a language. It therefore supposes the previous learning, not only of words to speak, but also of the rules for using them, conformably to the Genius of that language. Practice, then, has not learning for its object, but it is itself the object of learning, and is no more than the exercise of the mind upon the thing learnt. It is undeniably true, that any one, who has once learnt how to write and speak a language, ought afterwards to speak it, as often as he can find an opportunity, as well in order to retain it, as to use it with greater fluency and ease ; and this only is called Practice. But as to the means of attaining a due exactness and propriety in the writing and speaking of a language for beginners, who most certainly cannot practise what they have never learnt before, unless they come at the knowledge of the words of a language, and the way of using them, by Conjugation, there is no other, I dare maintain,

maintain, than that of studying methodically the principles and rules of it, after the manner I propose.

Neither let it be urged, in support of that wrong notion some people entertain of practice, that infants learn their mother-tongue without being taught, and only by hearing others speak. For without enquiring here into the faculty of the soul in this respect, which would not prove favourable to those who plead this instance, it may suffice to answer, that it is obvious to any body, who reflects ever so little upon the case, that that knowledge which young children have of their mother-tongue, is confined within a very narrow compass: nor does it extend further than merely to express the most common concerns and wants of Nature in that tender age; till, after having learnt to read, they gradually improve in the learning of the words and expressions of their mother-tongue, in proportion as by reading and instruction they improve their intellectual faculties.

As to putting young persons into French families where not one word of English is spoken, or even sending them over to France, both reason and experience convince us, that unless they are previously grounded in the principles, they can receive no other benefit than that of practising common compliments, or exercising themselves in the trifling topics of familiar discourse. For unless they study with some qualified person, who makes them read much, and translate French into English, as well as English into French, pointing out, as they go on, the Genius and Idiom of that language, they will be so far from becoming Masters of its Scope and Beauty, that, even after staying ten, nay twenty or more years in France, they will find themselves almost as far from understanding the true spirit of a French Author, or conversing in an intelligible manner upon any material subject, as at their first going thither.

The French Refugees are a striking proof of this. An English Gentleman hearing once an old French Refugee say, that he had been fifty years in England, and expressing

ing his surprise that he could not speak English at all; Lack-a-day, Sir, said the Frenchman, what English can one learn in fifty years? *Hélas, Monsieur, qu'est-ce qu'on peut apprendre d'Anglois en cinquante ans!* Neither is it an uncommon thing to see English people, who can hardly make themselves understood in French, though they have lived twenty or thirty years in that country.

Should a parent, who is desirous that his son should learn Music, say to an excellent Master of that Art, *I will have my son learn Music; but pray don't make him lose a deal of time in learning what you call the principles of your art, without singing a pretty tune. Put him at once in the practice: there's nothing like it. Let your rules alone, your gamuts and keys, which are only the cant of Music. I will have him learn by practice\**, I say. Sing airs to him, and make him sing. Never speak to him but in singing: he can't fail of learning to sing when he hears nothing else. His child could never learn Music after this manner. He might perhaps learn how to sing some airs, which he had often heard repeated to him; but he could never sing at the opening of a book, for want of having first learnt the nature, use, and power, of the several notes that compose Music, which are the rules of Harmony, and guides to the voice. It is the same with a language. Those who are desirous to learn it, must begin with the principles, proceed by the application, and finish by the practice of them. To act contrarily, is to pervert the natural order of things, and attempt impossibilities. To obtain an end in any thing, one must use the necessary means to it; and that the principles are the necessary means of learning a language, is agreed upon by all judicious men, both ancient and modern.

2dly, I grant, that use alone has, without reason, and oftentimes contrary to it, established several ways of speaking in a language; but they must know those ways of speaking thus established for the understanding of the authors that have written, and daily do write, in that

\* Practice is here taken in the sense of those who make this objection.

language, and conform themselves to them, if they are desirous to write or speak it. These particularities, therefore, which use has thus established, and to which the learner must necessarily conform, must either be in some manner distinguished to him, or he must fix upon them by his own observation: for no other method can be thought of to know them, and yet they must be known.

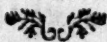
Now, who will pretend to learn by himself, and without help, those caprices of use which make the essence of a language, by studying deeply the books written therein; meditating upon the nature and use of every different expression; taking notice that many hundred nouns are of one gender, many hundred others of another, and many besides used in both genders, but with divers significations according to their gender; that among verbs some require one relation in the noun, and some another; that they are affected by such and such conjunctions as to their moods; and remembering all those nouns, verbs, and conjunctions severally; and making many more such observations, without which one cannot attain to the knowledge of a language, and which also suppose the knowledge of Grammar? But though a man might dive in this manner into the bottom of a language, will it not be shorter and easier for him to read only one performance, where he shall find all those observations ready digested in a clear method, so that he needs only reflect upon them to have a key to the entire knowledge of that language?—All ways of speaking were originally established independent upon any rule; but they are become by use the very rules of speaking, which make the Grammar of a language; and if they are not studied and entirely known, it is impossible ever to speak or write conformably to use.—As to the exceptions, far from destroying the general rules, they are more particular rules, which oftentimes strengthen and illustrate them.

3dly, It is well known that children do not want memory, that memory is active in them only, and it is of great

great moment to cultivate it, in that tender age, in those that have but little. To overload the memory of a child, would be to make him learn too much at once, and things which he does not understand; but not to give him a moderate lesson to get by heart, after having well explained it to him. To learn the examples that attend the rules, and promote the understanding of them, is a very great help to the memory. There is no doubt but some children have more memory and capacity than others, and therefore can be sooner forwarded; but they must all learn the Grammar, since it is the only means to attain to the knowledge of a language, as I have, I think, sufficiently proved. Moreover, must not they learn, sooner or later, the words of the language, which are the mere object of memory? If so, one of the great benefits which they will reap from this performance is, that in learning the rules of their Grammar, they will at the same time, insensibly, and as if by artificial memory, learn almost all the words of the French tongue; so much is it calculated for their improvement. Should they learn the words and examples only, without any observation upon them, they could get no knowledge of the language at all, the words being only the materials of it, and its Genius and Idiom consisting in the use of them. And should they learn but few rules, they could know but part of that Genius and Idiom, as this Grammar would be defective, if it did not contain all the observations that can be made upon the language. Besides, there is always in a language matter enough left to be learnt by practice only, which no art can reduce into rules, as may be seen in the Idioms all over my Dictionary. It would be therefore to no purpose to urge, that the learning of these rules is too hard for children, and that they can only serve to puzzle their understanding: for if there are any children that cannot learn them, I declare them altogether incapable, not only of learning French, but of any sort of learning at all. “The art of Grammar  
“ is necessary for children, says Quintilian; it forms the  
“ minds

“minds of those who begin.” And as the understanding of languages serves for an introduction to all sciences, so by studying the rules of Grammar, children begin to reflect, to have their understandings opened, and exert their tender and hopeful parts; and thereby render themselves capable of studying in time more difficult sciences.

If notwithstanding these proofs of the most effectual means of mastering a language, which carry all the conviction in the world along with them, there are people that still continue to be prejudiced against a regular and methodical way of learning, they must be left to their irrational conceptions; my design being to be serviceable to those only who are desirous to make themselves, or their children, perfect in the French tongue, who seek earnestly for the best means to effect it, and are sensible of the benefit of a good guide in the pursuit thereof. And if the method which I have here proposed will not bring them to the happy accomplishment of their wishes, I dare insist on it, no other ever will.



# A TABLE of the CONTENTS.

## The INTRODUCTION.

<b>T</b> HE Grounds and Principles of the Art of Speaking,	Page 1
Definitions of the words Art, Speaking, Language,	Ibid.
Two sorts of signs by means of which we convey our thoughts to one another,	Ibid.
Words are images of our thoughts,	2
The thinking faculty consists in conceiving and judging,	Ibid.
Four things to be considered in speech,	Ibid.
The Parts of speech reduced to nine,	4
The true definition of a Grammar,	Ibid.
The division of this Work,	Ibid.

## PART I. Of PRONUNCIATION and ORTHOGRAPHY.

Pronunciation,—Orthography,—Vowels,—Consonants, their definitions,	5
The French Alphabet, with the true appellations of the letters, erroneous,	6
A table of the simple Sounds of the French Language,	7
A table of the Vowels, with the several ways of representing them,	8
A table of the Consonants, with the several ways of representing them,	9
First table of Syllables,	10 and 11
Second table of Syllables,	12 and 13
A table of all the Monosyllables in the French Language,	14 and 15
First table of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables,	16
First table of the words wherein the same consonants are dropt at the end of Syllables,	17
Second table of the Consonants that are usually dropt at the end of Syllables,	18
Second table of the words wherein these consonants are pronounced at the end of Syllables,	19
	A table

# The CONTENTS.

<i>A table of the Combinations of the letters which compose the syllables, with their corresponding sounds in English,</i>	Page 20
<i>Combinations of a, à, an,</i>	20 and 21
<i>Combinations of e, eux, eur, œil, é,</i>	21
<i>Combinations of è, oi, ê, oie, er,</i>	22
<i>Combinations of oir, être, i, in, ien,</i>	23
<i>Combinations of oin, o, ô, or, ou,</i>	24
<i>Combinations of our, on, u, ur, un,</i>	25
<i>Words difficult to pronounce,</i>	26
<i>Of the sounds expressed by the vowels,</i>	Ibid.
<i>a receives two sounds,</i>	Ibid.
<i>e expresses six different sounds at least,</i>	27
<i>e guttural,</i>	Ibid.
<i>e mute,</i>	28
<i>é acute,</i>	33
<i>è grave,</i>	36
<i>ê circumflex,</i>	37
<i>The intermediate sound of è,</i>	Ibid.
<i>i,</i>	38
<i>o and ô,</i>	38 and 39
<i>u,</i>	Ibid.
<i>y,</i>	Ibid.
<i>Of Proper Diphthongs,</i>	41
<i>Of Improper Diphthongs,</i>	42
<i>æ, æ, ai, and ay,</i>	Ibid.
<i>ao,</i>	43
<i>au and eau,</i>	44
<i>ea, eai, ei, and ey, eo,</i>	45
<i>eu, oe, and œ,</i>	46
<i>oi and oy,</i>	47
<i>ois,</i>	48
<i>ou, ui, uei and eui,</i>	46
<i>Of Nasal Vowels,</i>	Ibid.
<i>a, e, i, o, u, followed by n or m, take the nasal sound,</i>	50
<i>Of Consonants,</i>	53
<i>b, c,</i>	Ibid.
<i>d,</i>	55
<i>f, g,</i>	56
<i>h,</i>	58
<i>j, k,</i>	62
<i>l,</i>	63
<i>m,</i>	65
<i>n,</i>	66
	P,

# The CONTENTS.

	p,	Page 68
20	q,	69
21	r,	70
21	s,	71
22	t,	74
23	v, x,	76
24	z,	78
5	General observations upon pronunciation,	Ibid.
6	General observations upon orthography,	79
1.	Terminations whose penultima is short,	80
1.	Terminations whose penultima is long,	82
7	Of the several Marks used in writing French,	84
1.	The vowels which suffer Elision, and in what cases,	85
8	Hyphen,	86
3	Cedilla,—Dialysis,—Accent,	87
5	The French Language most harmonious; a late writer confuted,	91
7	Capitals, or great Letters, their use,	92
	Stops, their names, shapes and practice,	93
	Parenthesis,—Index,—Obelisk,—Asterisk,—Quotation,—	
	Section,—Paragraph,—Caret,	94
	Abbreviations used mostly in foreign Gazettes,	95
	List of the words wherein h is aspirated, and wherein it is not aspirated,	96

## PART II. Of the PARTS of SPEECH. 100

	Accidence of the Nouns, the formation of the Plural,	101
	Of the Gender of Nouns,	104
	Of the Article,	110
	Rule for making th <sup>e</sup> article agree with the noun,	111
	Examples of all the ways of considering the noun,	112
	Accidence of Adnouns, the formation of their feminine, 114 and	115
	Of the Comparison of Adnouns,	117
	Accidence of Pronouns, Pronouns Personal,	119
	Pronouns Possessive, or rather Pronominal Adnouns,	120
	Pronouns Relative and Interrogative,	121
	Pronouns Demonstrative,	122
	Pronouns Indeterminate,	123
	Of numbers.—Cardinal,	124
	————— Ordinal, —Collective,	127
	————— Distributive, —Multiplicative,	128
	Accidence of Verbs, Substantive, —Active, —Neuter, —Re-	
	flected,	129
	The	

# The CONTENTS.

<i>The Mood, Tense, Number and Person, are to be distinguished in verbs, and what each is,</i>	Page 130
<i>Conjugating a verb, what it is,</i>	131
<i>The Auxiliary Avoir,</i>	132
<i>The verb Substantive Etre,</i>	134
<i>Rules for the formation of the Tenses,</i>	137
<i>Rules for the formation of the Persons,</i>	139
<i>First conjugation, of verbs in er,</i>	144
<i>Second conjugation, of verbs in ir (gerund in issant),</i>	146
<i>Third conjugation, of verbs in ir (gerund in ant),</i>	147
<i>Fourth conjugation, of verbs in enir,</i>	149
<i>Fifth conjugation, of verbs in evoir,</i>	151
<i>Sixth conjugation, of verbs in aire,</i>	153
<i>Seventh conjugation, of verbs in aindre and oindre,</i>	154
<i>Eighth conjugation, of verbs in ôtre,</i>	157
<i>Ninth conjugation, of verbs in uire,</i>	159
<i>Tenth conjugation, of verbs in endre and ondre,</i>	161
<i>The reflected verb, Se lever,</i>	165
<i>Verbs neuter which form their compound tenses from être,</i>	167
<i>Verbs irregular, s'en aller, puer, envoyer,</i>	168
<i>Observations upon aller and s'en aller,</i>	171
<i>Acquérir, Bouillir, Courir,</i>	172
<i>Cueillir, Dormir, Fuir and S'enfuir,</i>	173
<i>Hair, Mourir, Ouvrir,</i>	174
<i>Saillir, Assaillir, Tressaillir, Revêtir,</i>	175
<i>S'asseoir,</i>	176
<i>Pouvoir, Savoir,</i>	177
<i>Voir, Vouloir, Valoir,</i>	178
<i>Mouvoir, Plaire,</i>	179
<i>Faire, Boire, Croire,</i>	180
<i>Naître, Dire, Lire,</i>	181
<i>Rire, Ecrire, Vivre,</i>	182
<i>Suivre, Prendre, Rompre,</i>	183
<i>Battre, Mettre, Conclure,</i>	184
<i>Convaincre, Coudre, Moudre,</i>	185
<i>Résoudre, Clorre, &amp;c.</i>	186
<i>Verbs Impersonal,</i>	187
<i>Of Adverbs, their definition,</i>	188
<i>Adverbs of Time,</i>	189
<i>Adverbs of Place,</i>	191
<i>Adverbs of Order,</i>	192
<i>Adverbs of Quantity and Number,</i>	193
	<i>Adverbs</i>

# The CONTENTS.

<i>Adverbs of Quality and Manner,</i>	Page 194
<i>Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, &amp;c.</i>	196
<i>Accidence of Prepositions,—their definition,</i>	197
<i>Accidence of Conjunctions,—their definition,</i>	200
<i>Conjunctions Copulative and Comparative,</i>	Ibid.
<i>Conjunctions Disjunctive, Adversative, Conditional, &amp;c.</i>	201
<i>Conjunctions Concessive, Concluding, Transitive, &amp;c.</i>	202
<i>Of Particles,—their definition,</i>	203
<i>Discurfive and Interjective Particles,</i>	204

## PART III. Of SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION.

<i>Its definition,</i>	205
<i>Syntax of Nouns,</i>	206
<i>An odd Construction of partie,</i>	207
<i>Four manners of expressions in Nouns,</i>	207 and 208
<i>Syntax of the article,</i>	209
<i>One-and twenty prepositions always will have the article before the next noun: ten others sometimes require it, sometimes not,</i>	212
<i>The limited sense is expressed by the preposition de,</i>	213
<i>Proper names take the article, when they are used in a determinate sense, or qualified by an adnoun,</i>	215
<i>The preposition de only, without the article, is used in five cases, especially after words of quantity,</i>	216
<i>Bien used for beaucoup,</i>	217
<i>Nouns are used without either article or preposition in five cases,</i>	218
<i>Syntax of Adnouns,</i>	220
<i>Adnouns that come after the nouns,</i>	221
<i>Sixteen adnouns only necessarily come before the noun,</i>	222
<i>Adnouns always attended by the preposition de,</i>	223
<i>Adnouns always attended by the preposition à,</i>	224
<i>The construction of adnouns of Dimension,</i>	225
<i>The construction of Nouns and Verbs attending the adnoun in the comparative and superlative degrees,</i>	226
<i>Syntax of Pronouns,</i>	229
<i>The pronouns governed of the verb come before the verb, except in two cases,</i>	233
<i>And the pronoun in the 3d state comes before that in the 4th, except also in two cases,</i>	234
<i>Construction of ne and pas or point.</i>	235
<i>The several ways of asking questions,</i>	236
	The

# The CONTENTS.

<i>The pronouns, whether governing or governed of the verb, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not,</i>	Page 239
<i>The use and construction of the pronoun indeterminate on,</i>	240
<i>The passive voice, both in French and English,</i>	241
<i>The use and construction of the pronouns relative le, en, y,</i>	244
<i>Particular observations upon the construction of the pronouns personal of the 3d person il, lui, elle,</i>	247
<i>The use and construction of the Pronominal adverbs,</i>	249
<i>The construction of the pronouns relative, qui, lequel, &amp;c.</i>	252
<i>The use and construction of dont,</i>	253
<i>The use and construction of où,</i>	254
<i>The use and construction of quoi,</i>	257
<i>A very remarkable Pleonasm used in asking questions,</i>	258
<i>The use and construction of the pronouns demonstrative ce, celui, ceci, cela, celui-ci, &amp;c.</i>	259
<i>The use and construction of the pronouns indeterminate,</i>	261
<i>Quelqu'un and Chacun,—Quiconque, Personne,</i>	262
<i>Nul, pas un, aucun,—Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	263
<i>L'un l'autre, Plusieurs—Tout,</i>	264
<i>The use and construction of Quelque,</i>	265 and 266
<i>Observations upon nouns of Number,</i>	267
<i>Syntax of Verbs.</i>	273
<i>The use and construction of the tenses,</i>	275
<i>The use and construction of the Moods,—Verbs governing the subjunctive,</i>	280
<i>Verbs governing the indicative,</i>	281
<i>Verbs Impersonal governing the subjunctive,</i>	283
<i>Verbs Impersonal governing the indicative,</i>	284
<i>The use of the present and preterite of the subjunctive,</i>	286
<i>Of the government of Verbs,</i>	288
<i>Verbs active requiring the preposition de before the next infinitive,</i>	289
<i>Verbs neuter requiring the preposition de before the next noun and infinitive,</i>	290
<i>Verbs active requiring the preposition à before the next infinitive,</i>	292
<i>Verbs neuter requiring the preposition à before the next noun and infinitive,</i>	293
<i>Verbs taking indifferently de or à before the next infinitive,</i>	294
<i>Verbs taking no preposition at all before the next infinitive,</i>	295
<i>Adverbs, construed with être, requiring à before the next noun and infinitive,</i>	296
<i>Adverbs, construed with être, requiring de before the next noun and infinitive,</i>	297
<i>Nouns</i>	

# The CONTENTS.

<i>Nouns chiefly construed with avoir, requiring de before the next infinitive,</i>	Page 297
<i>A list of nouns requiring de before the infinitive,</i>	298
<i>Terms of comparison requiring que de before the infinitive,</i>	299
<i>De, à, pour, answer the English preposition to,</i>	300
<i>Particular observations upon the construction of the English Gerund with the particles of, from, with, in, by, for,</i>	301
<i>Construction of the Gerund,</i>	302
<i>Construction of the Participles,</i>	304
<i>Of the Impersonals—C'est and Il est,</i>	306
<i>Il y a,</i>	309
<i>Il fait,</i>	310
<i>Il faut,</i>	311
<i>Of the French Negatives,</i>	313
<i>Words requiring ne, but without pas or point, before their verbs,</i>	314
<i>Particular cases where ne is used without pas or point,</i>	316
<i>Formation of Adverbs,</i>	318
<i>Adnouns used adverbially with some verbs,</i>	319
<i>Syntax of adverbs,</i>	320
<i>rien and tout are construed like adverbs,</i>	321
<i>Syntax of Prepositions,—à, au, aux,</i>	322
<i>de, du, des,</i>	325
<i>avant,</i>	327
<i>après,</i>	328
<i>devant,</i>	329
<i>derrière—chez—contre,</i>	330
<i>dans and en,</i>	331
<i>depuis,</i>	333
<i>jusque,</i>	334
<i>hors—hormis—excepté—à la réserve,</i>	335
<i>loin—malgré—en dépit—par,</i>	336
<i>pour,</i>	337
<i>près,</i>	339
<i>auprès—proche,</i>	340
<i>vis-à-vis—à l'opposite—sans—selon—suivant—sur,</i>	341
<i>au-dessus—au-dessous,</i>	342
<i>vers—envers—à l'égard—au lieu,</i>	343
<i>à rebours—au rebours—à travers—au travers,</i>	344
<i>Prepositions which must always be repeated,</i>	345
<i>Observations upon some English prepositions,</i>	346
<i>Syntax of Conjunctions. Conjunctions governing the indicative,</i>	347
<i>Conjunctions governing the subjunctive.</i>	348
b	Gen-

# The CONTENTS.

<i>Conjunctions governing the infinitive,</i>	Page 348
<i>The conjunction que used instead of repeating the conjunctions si, quand, lorsque, pourquoi, &amp;c.</i>	349
<i>Difference between lorsque and quand,</i>	ibid.
<i>Si is never construed with the conditional,</i>	350
<i>Particular observations upon some conjunctions,</i>	351

## A P P E N D I X.

<i>THE Analogy of Speech, or the Grounds and Principles of the Art of speaking continued,</i>	353
<i>Reason has not been regarded in the invention of Languages,</i>	355
<i>The several species of words, invented for representing our thoughts, are grounded in the nature of things,</i>	359
<i>Definitions of such Grammatical terms as most occur,</i>	361
<i>Observations upon certain words, wherein chiefly consists the Idiom of French,—Amitié, Amours, An, Année,</i>	362
<i>Accoutumer, s'accoutumer, Avoir coutume, &amp;c. Agir,</i>	363
<i>Aider,—Aimer,—Present and Imperfect of Aller and Venir,</i>	364
<i>Apparoître and Paroître,—Avoir,</i>	365
<i>Avoir beau,—N'avoir garde,—Ne faire que, &amp;c. Au reste, &amp;c.</i>	366
<i>Aïeux,—Savoir,—Connoître,—Devoir,</i>	367
<i>Ecouter,—Entendre,—Emplir, Enfermer,—Enfer,</i>	368
<i>Espérer,—Eveiller and Réveiller,—Faire,</i>	369
<i>Faire grâce and Faire une grâce,—Fleurir,</i>	370
<i>Se fier,—Fournir,—Gens,</i>	371
<i>Bonne grace,—Jouer,</i>	372
<i>Jour and Journée,—Laisser,</i>	373
<i>Livres and Francs,</i>	374
<i>Un coup de main, &amp;c.—Marcher and se promener,</i>	375
<i>Marier and Epouser,—Mener and Porter,—Amener and Apporter,</i>	376
<i>Mourir—Neuf and Nouveau—Parents,</i>	377
<i>Personne,</i>	378
<i>Pâque.—Se passer de—Plus, Davantage, Encore,</i>	379 and 380
<i>Plaire—Peinture, Portrait, Tableau,</i>	381
<i>Prendre garde—Rompre, Briser, Casser,</i>	382
<i>Seulement—Suppléer—Traiter mal and Maltraiter—Valoir—Voilà,</i>	383
<i>Ne faire que de Venir de—Il y a,</i>	384
	<i>The</i>

# The CONTENTS.

<i>The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English,</i>	Page 384
<i>The Sounds of beasts,</i>	385
<i>Verbs which, together with a noun without the article, form but one particular idea,</i>	386
<i>Observations upon Verbs, considered with respect to the idiom of the English Tongue,</i>	395
<i>Of the construction of certain English particles, with respect to French,</i>	399
<i>The various Significations and Constructions of que,</i>	400
<i>Of inseparable Prepositions,</i>	405
<i>Observations upon Proper Names,</i>	406
<i>Observations upon the Titles annexed by custom to the divers ranks and stations of civil life,</i>	408
<i>Observations upon the writing of Letters,</i>	412
<i>Of some adnouns, whose signification is different according to the different placing of them,</i>	413
<i>Nouns masculine in one signification, and feminine in another,</i>	415
<i>Nouns that are applied to both sexes, and have therefore their feminine gender,</i>	418
<i>Adnouns used substantively, or like nouns,</i>	420
<i>List of nouns Masculine ending in e mute,</i>	423



---

# The ART of SPEAKING FRENCH.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

**A**N ART is a rational method, a collection of observations digested into convenient order for the teaching and learning of something: and the methodical collection of observations made upon the particular custom of a nation, in the institution, order, and use of the words by which they are used to express the thoughts, is what is meant by a Grammar.

SPEAKING is exhibiting our thoughts; and a LANGUAGE is nothing else than the means towards that end: that is, a language is the manner, or signs, which a set of men have agreed, and are used, to express their thoughts by.

And because men want to make their thoughts known, not only to those with whom they live, but also to others they are very distant from, or who are to be born many ages after them, they have, for that purpose, invented two sorts of means, or signs; the one instantaneous and transient, and serving only to represent thought actually, SOUNDS; the other permanent, and designed to represent it in all times and places, CHARACTERS.

These sounds and characters, *i. e.* all that is spoken and written, form SPEECH, which is composed of sentences, sentences of words, and words of syllables.

SYLLABLES, in speaking, are sounds of which words are composed and formed; and, in writing, they are parts of the same words, composed of characters which represent those sounds: as *ad-mi-ni-s-tra-ti-on*, that has six parts, six sounds, six syllables. Syllables are either simple or compound. They are all compound in the word just mentioned: but in the words *about*, *elect*, and many others, the first syllable is simple. Sometimes one sound only, one syllable, makes a word, called MONOSYLLABLE, as *but*, *man*, *it is not*; which three last sounds make three words: otherwise a syllable has no signification of itself.

WORDS are images of thoughts. They differ from the sounds and characters, in that men have applied to these last only the general power of making words, without representing other ideas but those of sounds and characters : whereas they have, besides, applied to the words the distinct and particular power of representing their thoughts. Just as, in painting, colours make of themselves no distinct object that exhibits to the mind other ideas but those of green, red, blue, &c. but being applied with proportion, and according to the rules of art, they make a whole which represents all the figures that one has a mind to draw.

The THINKING FACULTY, which shines so wonderfully in the invention of speech, consists in conceiving and judging. To *conceive*, or to apprehend, is to have the image of a thing in our mind. To *judge*, is to unite our conceptions or ideas together in declaring that a thing is or is not such. But, as we can conceive either things, or the manner of being of things ; as, likewise, we can judge of them either simply and absolutely, or with restriction and respectively to some circumstance or other ; so four things are to be considered in speech :

1<sup>st</sup>, That which is spoken of, which philosophers call the SUBJECT.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That which is declared of it, which they call the ATTRIBUTE.

3<sup>dly</sup>, The DECLARATIVE TERM, which joins the attribute to the subject.

4<sup>thly</sup>, The CIRCUMSTANCES which may attend the subject, the attribute, and the declarative term.

As, for instance, when conceiving what learning is, and what usefulness is, I form this judgment, " Learning is useful ;" *learning* is the *subject* I speak of ; *useful* is what I declare of it (*the attribute*) ; and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the two other terms together.

Again. When I say, " A guilty conscience is at all times a very tormenting pain," *a conscience* is the subject I speak of ; *a pain*, what I declare of it ; and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the attribute and subject together. But, besides that, these words, *guilty*, *tormenting*, and *at all times*, are so many circumstances which specify the subject which I speak of, what I declare of it, and the declarative term : for I do not speak of conscience in general, but of a *guilty conscience* ; I do not barely declare that it is a pain, but a *tormenting pain* ; nor do I affirm that it is only a tormenting pain, but that it is *at all times* a very tormenting pain ; the word *very* being only a circumstance, which  
specifies

specifies the word *tormenting*, as this last does what sort of pain I judge a guilty conscience is.

Whoever reflects ever so little, will easily be sensible that the whole of speech amounts to the expressing of those four things only, which constitute it, and make all its essence. Therefore several sorts of expressions, or words, must needs have been instituted to represent, not only all the things that can be conceived, and their manners of being, but also the judgments which can be made of them, with the modifications of which they are susceptible. It does not follow, nevertheless, that one can express no judgment, without making use of three or four sorts of words. For men have naturally a desire to express their meaning as quick as they can, and a speech the less encumbered with words being less difficult to be delivered, and even the more perfect, as it draws nearer to the simplicity of thinking; so they have instituted words, in the signification whereof is included, at the same time, the attribute and the declarative term. In others they have, besides, included the signification of the subject. And even they have instituted some, which express at once the subject which they speak of, the attribute which they declare of it, the declarative term, and the circumstances that modify one or all the three other terms.

Thus in this proposition, "Man thinks," the word *thinks* includes both the attribute which is declared of the subject *man*, and the declarative term; and is as much as to say *is thinking*, or *is a thinking being*. These words, *yes*, *no*, *never*, *always*, *certainly*, and a great many others of the same kind, which we answer to the questions that are asked us, comprehend those very questions: so that the *yes* or *no* which I answer to this question, "Does he study?" is as much as if I answered, "He studies," or "He does not study;" the first of which the Latins expressed by the single word *studet*, which is equal to "He is studying."

Again. If to this question, "Is a guilty conscience at all times a very tormenting pain?" I answer *yes*, *yes sure*, or *certainly*; it is evident that either of these expressions is as much as if I repeated the whole proposition without interrogation, "A guilty conscience is at all times a very tormenting pain;" and includes therefore a subject which I speak of, the attribute I declare of it, the declarative term, and the modifying terms, or the circumstances which those three terms are attended by.

Neither does it follow that four sorts of words might have been sufficient for expressing all that can be thought of. For as the

natural desire which men have to convey their ideas quickly, has induced them to invent terms of abbreviation, which though ever so short, comprehend, nevertheless, whole and long propositions: so the necessity of making themselves understood clearly, and without the least ambiguity, especially in considering and speaking of the several relations which things bear to one another; and the disagreeableness of repeating the same terms too often, has made them invent many others, both for the more fully expressing all that passes in their mind, with the manner of their conceptions, and how they stand affected by them, and for adorning their language.

All the words that men have instituted for representing their thoughts, may be reduced to nine sorts. Grammarians call them in general PARTS of SPEECH, because speech, or all that is spoken or written, is composed of those nine sorts of words, to each of which they have given particular names, which shall be explained in the Second Part of this Work.

The several words made use of for expressing what one thinks about a subject, are, all together, called by philosophers, a PROPOSITION, and by grammarians a SENTENCE. And several sentences joined together, in such a manner as the one has a coherency with and dependance upon the other, for the making one entire and complete sense, are called a PERIOD by the latter, and ARGUMENT or REASONING by the others.

Hence may appear the injudicious and false definition of Grammar given by most writers. Logic is the art of thinking, conceiving, or forming ideas. Dialect is the art of speaking, exhibiting our thoughts, or expressing ourselves. Oratory, eloquence, rhetoric (for these terms are synonymous), is the art of persuading. But a Grammar is nothing but the collection of the rules of a language; or (if you like it better) the art of reducing into rules the manner of speaking of a nation.

These things being premised concerning the essence and foundation of languages, we shall consider the sounds and characters of the *French* tongue, the nature of the words of which it is composed, and the use which is to be made of them in speech: three parts into which this Grammar is divided. The First shall treat of Pronunciation and Orthography, or Spelling; the Second of Etymology, or the nature of the Parts of Speech, as likewise of their power and different forms; the Third of the Construction of the same, or their grammatical order, otherwise called Syntax.

---

---

P A R T I.  
O F  
P R O N U N C I A T I O N  
A N D  
O R T H O G R A P H Y.

**P**RONUNCIATION is the expressing the sounds and articulation of a language ; as ORTHOGRAPHY is the drawing of them, or representing them with characters.

The sounds are nothing else but the voice, that is, the air emitted out of the lungs, or the breath made sonorous ; from which they are called VOWELS, as *a, e, i, o, u*.

The vowels, in their way through the mouth, receive modifications, or articulations, from the several motions of the lips or the tongue ; and as these articulations cannot be expressed, or heard, but jointly with the sounds, they are called CONSONANTS.

For example, *a* is a vowel, or a simple sound ; but *ba* and *ga* are articulated, or compound sounds ; because the motions of the lips in *ba*, and of the tongue in *ga*, affect the vowel *a* with those modifications, or articulations, heard in the sounds *ba* and *ga* : and those differences of sounds which are between *ba* or *ga* and the vowel *a*, are what is called consonants.

The *French* grammarians usually reckon five vowels and nineteen consonants, constituting the alphabet, or table of the letters of the language, in this order, with their true appellations underneath :

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
*aw, bey, cey, dey, ey, eff, gey, ash, e, kaw, ell, emm, nn, oa, pey,*  
 q, r, s, t, u, x, y, z, and &, (an abbreviation for *et*),  
*qu, err, esi, tey, u, ix, ee grec, zed.*

How erroneous this alphabet is, must needs appear from what has just been said of the sounds and articulations of which speech is formed. Parting from those principles, the *French* language will be found to have seventeen distinct sounds or vowels, though the present alphabet contains these five only, *a, é, i, o, u*; and the twelve others, namely, *e, è, ou, â, eû, ê, ô, an, en, in, on, un*, sounds as simple as the first five, are not so much as taken notice of to the learner. There are one-and-twenty consonants in the language; but the alphabet contains only eighteen, and acquaints you only with fifteen different articulations, as the letters, *c, k, x*, represent no other articulations than those represented by other consonants: and there remain four others, of which the alphabet gives no manner of knowledge, namely, *ch, gn, ill*, and *ï* represented by two consonants, each of which serve to represent other articulations.

Most vowels and consonants are represented several ways. For instance, the vowel *è* is represented by *ei* in *peine*, by *ai* in *vaine*, by *oi* in *foible*, &c. the consonant *f* by *ph* in *philosophe*, &c. Some vowels and consonants cannot be represented, for want of proper simple characters, but by several letters. Such are the vowels *ou, eu*, (or *eux*), and the five nasal, *an, en, in, on, un*, which are also represented several ways, and such the consonants *ch, gn, ill*, and *ï*. Now each of the letters, which make up these divers combinations, has not the sound or articulation which it has when pronounced by itself: and these letters blended together represent a sound, which has no manner of affinity with those which each of them represent singly. Thus in *au, ou, eû*, neither the sound of *a*, or of *o, e*, nor the sound of *u*, are heard, but only another simple sound very different, represented by these combinations of letters, *au, ou, eû*. If therefore the master makes his pupils name each of the letters which make up those combinations, he will make them pronounce false sounds, which, as they have no connection or affinity with the true sounds,  
 that

that are to be pronounced, will serve only to give them a wrong impression thereof; and by that means to puzzle, confound, and quite dishearten them.

Since, then, the present alphabet does not contain all the sounds and articulations of the language, nor all the ways of representing them, and yet it is necessary for those who learn reading to be acquainted with every one of them, a more rational and easy method must be thought of to facilitate that knowledge. The following Tables will remedy all the aforesaid inconveniences, and thoroughly acquaint a learner of the lowest capacity with the pronunciation of the *French*.

*A TABLE of the simple Sounds of the French Language.*

*Eight Acute Sounds.*

a, e, é, è, i, o, ou, u.

*Four Grave.*

â, eû, ê, ô.

*Five Nasal.*

an, en, in, on, un,

e mute.

*A TABLE of the Vowels, with the several ways of representing or writing them.*

A.	a, à, at, ac, ap, ach, act, &c.
Â.	â, as, ats, aps, acts, acs, achs, &c.
AN.	an, am, en, em, aen, ean, aon, aons, &c.
E.	e, eu, eut, euf, œu, œud, &c.
EÛ.	Eû, eus, eut, eux, œufs, &c.
É.	é, ez, &, ed, er, és, ai, eai, æ, œ, &c.
È.	è, ai, ci, oi, eg, ep, et, oit, &c.
Ê.	ê, es, ès, est, ets, aie, aient, ais, oie, ois, cois, coient, &c.
EN.	en, ain, aim, em, ein, in, im, &c.
I.	i, is, y*, &c.
IN.	in, im, &c.
O.	o, au, eœ, &c.
Ô.	ô, aû, aux, &c.
OU.	ou, où, oup, ous, out, &c.
ON.	on, om, um, ons, ont, eon, &c.
U.	u, eu, &c.
UN.	un, eun, um, &c.
E.	(e mute) es, ent.

\* y in the middle of words stands for two ii's, the former whereof belongs to the foregoing Syllable; but the latter denotes a particular articulation, which shall be observed in the dissertation upon that letter.

**A TABLE of the Consonants, with the several ways of representing or writing them.**

*Five Labial Consonants.*

*Weak Consonants.*

M, m, ma, mon.  
B, b,  
Bombe.  
V, v.  
Vin, vivant.

*Strong Consonants.*

mm, homme.  
P, p.  
Pompe,  
F, f, ff, PH, ph.  
Fin, affable, Phare.

*Four Hissing.*

J, j, G, g (*before e and i*). Ch, ch, sch.  
Jeu, dis-je, jaugé. Char, chiche, schisme.  
Z, z, s (*between two Vowels*). S, s, ss, ç, C, c (*before e and i*).  
Zizanie, asile. Sa, si, son, lasé, reçu, ceci.

*Five Palatal or Lingual.*

N, n, Nârine. nn, bonne.  
D, d. T, t, tt.  
Dindon. Tinte, nette.  
L, l, ll. R, r, rr.  
La, lèvres, elle. Redire, arracher.

*Two Guttural.*

G, g, GU, gu. Q, q, qu, K, k, C, c, ch.  
Goguenard, garre. Coquemar, cap, quand, cruche, écho.

*Five Liquid.*

GU, gu. Qu, qu.  
Gueux. Queue.  
ILL, ill, IL, il. Gn, gn.  
Vaillant, Régna.  
i.  
Aïeul, païen.

X, x, stands for two articulations together, to wit, gz, as in exil,  
and cs, as in vexa.

H, h, is only a note of aspiration in some words, for in most words  
it is quite mute.

*First*

## First TABLE of

a	â	e	—	é	è	—	i	o	oh !
ha	hâ	—	—	hé	hè	—	hi	ho	—
ma	mâ	me	meux	mé	mè	mê	mi	mo	mô
ba	bâ	be	bœufs	bé	bè	bê	bi	bo	beau
pa	pâ	pe	peux	pé	pè	pê	pi	po	pô
va	vas	ve	vœux	vé	vè	vê	vi	vo	vô
{ fa	fâ	fe	feux	fé	fè	fê	fi	fo	fau
{ pha	phas	phe	—	phé	phè	phois	phi	pho	—
{ ja	jâ	je	jeux	jé	jè	jets	ji	jo	jau
{ gea	geas	ge	geux	gé	gè	gê	gi	—	geo
cha	châ	che	cheux	ché	chè	chê	chi	cho	chau
{ za	zâ	ze	—	zé	{ zè	—	zi	zo	zô
{ sa	sas	se	—	sé	{ sè	—	si	so	—
{ ça	ças	ce	ceux	cé	{ cè	ces	ci	—	ceau
{ fa	fas	fe	feux	fé	{ fè	ses	fi	fo	fots
na	nas	ne	neufs	né	nè	nê	ni	no	nô
da	dats	de	deux	dé	dè	des	di	do	dos
ta	tâ	te	teux	té	tè	tes	ti	to	tô
la	lâ	le	leux	lé	lè	les	li	lo	lots
ra	ras	re	reux	ré	rè	rê	ri	ro	rô
{ ga	gâ	—	—	—	—	—	—	go	gau
{ gua	guas	gueu	gueux	gué	guè	guê	gui	guo	—
{ ca	cas	—	—	—	—	—	—	co	cô
{ qua	quas	que	queue	qué	què	quê	qui	quo	cau
gna	gnas	gne	gneux	gné	gnè	gnê	gni	gno	gneaux
illa	illas	illeu	illeux	illé	illè	illois	illi	illo	illots

## SYLLABLES.

ou	u	ah	in	on	un	
hou	hu	han	hin	hon	hum	
mou	mu	mem	min	mon	mun	
bou	bu	ban	bain	bon	bun	
pou	pu	pam	pin	pon	—	
vou	vu	ven	vin	von	—	
fou	fu	fan	fin	fon	fun	}
—	—	phan	phin	phon	—	
jou	ju	jean	j'in	jon	jeun	
—	—	gen	gin	geon	—	
chou	chu	cham	chain	chon	—	
zou	—	—	zin	zon	zun	}
fou	fu	fan	fin	fon	fun	
—	cu	cen	cein	con	—	}
fou	fu	ferm	fin	fon	—	
nou	nu	nan	nym	non	—	
dou	du	dan	din	don	dun	
tou	tu	tan	tin	ton	tun	
lou	lu	lan	lin	lon	lun	
rou	ru	ran	rin	ron	—	
gou	gu	gan	gain	gon	—	}
—	—	guan	guim	guon	—	
cou	cu	cain	cain	con	cun	}
qu'ou	qu'u	quan	quin	qu'on	qu'un	
—	—	gnan	gnin	gnon	—	
—	—	illan	—	illon	—	

1  
Second TABLE of

*Consonants which are coupled together.*

bl pl fl gl cl br pr vr fr phr dr tr gr cr  
chr ct ctr fp squ pf fc fcr ft ftr

bla	blâ	ble	bleus	blé	blet	blê	bli	blo	blô
pla	plâ	ple	—	plé	plai	plets	pli	plo	plots
fla	flâ	fle	—	flé	floit	flois	fli	flo	flots
gla	glas	gle	—	glé	glet	glets	gli	glo	glots
cla	clats	cle	—	clé	clai	claie	cli	clo	clau
bra	bras	bre	breux	bré	broit	broient	bri	bro	brocs
pra	prâ	pre	preux	pré	pret	près	pri	pro	prô
vra	vas	vre	—	vré	vrai	vraie	vri	vro	vreau
phra	frâ	fre	freux	fré	frè	frê	fri	fro	frau
dra	dras	dre	dreux	dré	dret	drois	dri	dro	drô
tra	tras	tre	—	tré	trai	trê	tri	tro	—
gra	gras	gre	—	gré	grè	grê	gri	gro	gros
cra	crâ	cre	creux	cré	cret	crê	cri	cro	crocs
cta	ctas	cte	—	cté	ctoit	ctois	cti	cto	—
spa	—	—	—	spé	sposit	spos	spi	spo	—
sca	scâ	sque	—	squé	squoit	squoient	squi	sco	—
sta	stas	ste	—	sté	stoit	stoient	sti	sto	—
stra	—	—	—	stré	stroit	stroient	stri	stro	—
ctri	—	spla	—	splen	—	—	scru	pfa	—

## SYLLABLES.

**X x**, pronounced with the double articulation of cs. xa, xe, xé, xè, xi, xo, xan, xin, xon.

**X x**, pronounced with the double articulation of gz. xa, xè, xi, xo, xem.

---

blou	blu	blan	blin	blon	—
plou	plu	plan	plein	plom	—
frou	flu	flan	flin	fion	—
glou	glu	glan	glin	glon	—
clou	clu	clan	clin	clon	—
brou	bru	bran	brin	bron	brun
prou	pru	pren	prin	prom	prun
—	—	vran	vrin	vron	—
frou	fru	fran	frin	fron	—
drou	dru	dran	drin	dron	—
trou	tru	tran	trin	tron	—
grou	gru	gran	grin	gron	—
crou	cru	cran	erin	cron	—
—	cu	can	cin	con	—
spou	—	span	spin	spon	—
scou	scu	scan	squin	squon	—
—	ftu	ftan	ftin	fton	—
—	ftu	ftan	ftin	fton	—
pseau	pfa	pfi	pfo	—	—

## A TABLE of all the Monosyllables in the French Language.

a,	brun,	clef,	cours,	Dieux,	fut,	gril,	Juin,
ai,	broc,	clerc,	coups,	doigts,	fin,	glu,	joint,
ais,	brin,	chair,	coing,	deux,	font,	gré,	Juif,
ait,	bois,	craie,	coud,	doux,	faim,	Grec,	joug,
as,	boit,	croc,	court,	dur,	fond,	gant,	jeu,
au,	bal,	crois,	cœur,	dut,	feins,	gens,	jeux.
an,	bu,	croix,	cran,	Dreux,	fonds,	gond,	
ail,	bref,	croit,	chœur,	Dol,	fri,	geai,	la,
arc,	bus,	coi,	creux.	deuil.	froc,	gît,	le,
aux,	buis,	coin,			frit,	gain,	les,
art,	but,	choc,			fat,	grain,	lac,
air,	blanc,	ceint,	de,	en,	foin,	groin,	lacs,
Août.	bled,	cru,	des,	eu,	fit,	gué,	lard,
	brut.	cri,	dé,	es,	franc,	goût,	las,
bac,		crin,	dans,	eut,	frein,	gai,	leur,
bar,	car,	crut,	dors,	est,	frais,	guet,	lors,
bas,	cal,	cris,	dont,	eau,	foi,	gueux.	lier,
bat,	ça,	craint,	dort,	eux,	fief,		lieu,
bain,	ce,	Christ,	dos,	eaux,	fois,	hais,	lien,
bats,	cet,	cieux,	don,	et, &.	froid,	haut,	liant,
bail,	ces,	coq,	dot,	EST.	Foix,	hier,	Luc,
baux,	ceux,	cerf,	du,		fort,	hart,	lent,
banc,	ciel,	clin,	donc,		fuis,	hem,	lin,
bec,	cep,	cerfs,	dais,	fi,	flot,	hors,	lis,
beau,	cor,	cuir,	dam,	fard,	fleur,	huis,	long,
bel,	camp,	chez,	dard,	fil,	flots,	huit.	lit,
bien,	Cam,	cuis,	dent,	fil,	fou,		Linx,
bis,	corps,	choir,	dix,	fer,	fleurs,	je,	legs,
bon,	chat,	chou,	dis,	fiel,	feu,	jet,	lu,
bouc,	champ,	cuit,	drap,	faon,	feux,	j'ai,	lot,
bous,	chats,	choux,	dit,	se fier,	front,	Jean,	loin,
bord,	chant,	clos,	daim,	fier,	four,	j'eus,	lots,
bout,	char,	cent,	draps,	faut,	flux.	il,	laid,
bourg,	cher,	cinq,	dru,	flanc,		jour,	lus,
bœuf,	chaux,	clou,	dois,	fais,	gai,	ils,	lait,
bras,	chef,	cous,	dû,	faix,	grand,	jours,	lut,
bœufs,	chaud,	clous,	doit,	faux,	gras,	jeun,	loi,
bleu,	chien,	cou,	Dieu,	fait,	gris,	jus,	lui,
blond,	choix,	cour,	doigt,	fus,	gros,	joins,	louer,
bleus,	clair,	coup,	droit,	fis,	gland,	jonc,	loup,

lourd,	ne,	œufs,	prend,	rats,	s'en,	tout,	val,
loups,	nez,	œil.	pond,	ris,	fus,	tort,	veaux,
ma,	nais,		pris,	roc,	sein,	tous,	vos,
mal,	né,		prit,	rit,	sur,	tords,	viens,
me,	niais,	pal,	près,	rôt,	seing,	Turc,	ver,
mes,	nain,	pas,	prix,	rang,	fors,	tonds,	vers,
mais,	neuf,	pin,	plut,	rend,	fuc,	temps,	vœu,
moi,	nos,	pain,	plaît,	Rhin,	fort,	tint,	vert,
mon,	neufs,	paix,	pleut,	rond,	fix,	tend,	veux,
mien,	nous,	pais,	par,	rapt,	Sud,	tein,	voir,
miel,	ni,	pis,	pieu,	reins,	fis,	tien,	veut,
mieux,	nef,	pait,	perd,	romb,	fait,	tends,	vois,
m'ont,	nid,	peau,	prêt,	rien,	Seth,	tronc,	voit,
mois,	nu,	plat,	perds,	romps,	fauf,	troc,	voix,
m'en,	nids,	pot,	plis,	rieur,	Saul,	trop,	vais,
moins,	nerf,	plus,	pied,	roi,	seau,	très,	vas,
marc,	non,	pu,	pair,	rois,	sien,	trot,	vin,
mil,	net,	pots,	pieds,	Ruth.	sied,	tu,	vif,
Mars,	nom,	pus,	poix,		fleur,	t'en,	vins,
mot,	Nil,	peaux,	peur,		fois,	traits,	vit,
Mons,	Nord,	peu,	puits,	fa,	soif,	tard,	vingt,
Metz,	naît,	Paul,	pleurs,	se,	soit,	trait,	vis,
mont,	nuit,	poil,	poux,	fon,	soin,	Tyr,	vint,
met,	nul,	peut,	pour,	fac,	soir,	toît,	vil,
mut,	nuis,	puis,	pur.	sain,	sou,	trois,	vol,
mets,	noir,	point,		facs,	suif,	toîts,	vent,
meurs,	noix,	pieu,	quand,	fel,	sous,	tas,	veuf,
meut,	nœud,	pend,	que,	ses,	seoir,	tais,	vends,
mer,	nœuds.	plan,	quel,	saint,	sourd,	train,	vain,
mort,		part,	qui,	si,	seul,	teint,	vu,
maux,		peins,	qu'il,	faut,	stuc,	taux,	vaut,
mords,	on,	port,	qu'en,	tot,	sœur,	thym,	vient,
mur,	or,	plains,	qu'a,	fots,	seuil.	toux,	vains,
muids,	ou,	peint,	queue,	sec,		tiers,	vaux,
mœurs,	ont,	porc,	quoi,	fers,	ta,	tour,	vieux,
Mai,	où,	parts,	qu'un,	fans,	ton,	trou,	vont,
main,	os,	plaint,	qu'on,	son,	te,	tut,	vous,
mus,	oie,	plais,	qu'eux.	fert,	thé,	Turcs.	vrai.
main,	oing,	plein,		sang,	tes,		
mot,	oui,	pan,	ras,	font,	thon,	va,	yeux.
mou,	ours,	plomb,	rat,	fent,	tel,	van,	
maint.	œuf,	pont,	rets,	saints,	toi,	veau,	Zest.

*First TABLE of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables.*

- b. Absent, subvenir, radoub, Achab, Job, &c. *rumb* de Vent, (pron. *romb*.)
- c. Avec, échec, aspect, Marc, Arc, (*but not in arc-boutant*) sac, (*though not in un sac de blè*) froc, Troc, &c.
- f. and ph. Chef, vis, sois, rétif, Asaph, Joseph, &c.
- l. Calcul, fil, poil, sel, seul, &c. *This consonant has a liquid articulation at the end of* Avril, babil, Brésil, grésil, mil, péril: *as likewise in these syllables,* ail, eil, uel, eul, ouil, *as in* mail, soleil, écueil, deuil, travail, *and* travailler, fenouil, *and in* gentilhomme.
- r. Car, avoir, air, auteur, fer, hiver, cuiller, enfer, s'affecoir, &c, Jupiter, Luther, Cranmer, &c.
- y. *This letter stands for two ii's, in the middle of words, as* voyons, moyen, essayer, nous employons, fuyard, ennuyeux, &c.

*First TABLE of the Words wherein the same Consonants are dropt at the End of Syllables.*

b. Plomb.

c. Almanach, cotignac, clerc, échecs, estomac, banc, blanc, broc, flanc, franc, (*except in franc arbitre, and franc alleu*) instinct, jonc, un marc, respects, tabac, croc, (*except in croc-en jambe*) and du porc, (*except in porc-épic, wherein the first c is pronounced.*)

f. Apprentif, Clef, chef-d'œuvre, Baillif, bœufs, œufs, neufs, cerf.

l. Baril, chenil, coutil, cul, un fils, fusil, gentil, gril, nombril, outil, perfil, le poul, saoul and sourcil.

r. Monsieur and messieurs, (*though r is pronounced in le sieur, les sieurs*), volontiers, danger, berger, Barbier, (*with all nouns in er, without excepting the French proper Names, as Didier, Roger, &c.*): as also er at the end of infinitives, as chanter, &c.

ï. This letter has in the following words the very same articulation as in the English words yacht, yell, yon.

Aïeul, baïonette, caïeu, camaïeu, faïence, glaïeul, païen, tavaïolle, Baïatd, Baïeux, Baïonne, Caïenne, and Caïette.

*Second TABLE of the Consonants that are usually dropt at the End of Syllables.*

- m. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a nasal one, as in chambre, membre, timbre, ombre, nom, renom, parfum, &c.*
- p. *drap, sept, beaucoup, trop, coup, camp, loup, compte, exempt, prompt, promptement, temps, &c.*
- s. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel broad, as in appas, palais, effets, repos, &c.*
- d. *laid, froid, chaud, muid, nid, pied, sourd, fond, &c.*
- t. *bât, mât, effet, lit, veut, mot, but, goût, tant, ouvert, est, est, &c.*
- n. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a nasal one, as in bien, entendre, plan, fin, brun, &c.*
- g. *doigt, legs, vingt, long, rang, faubourg, &c.*
- x. *paix, prix, chevaux, la toux, des choux, &c.*
- z. *This consonant gives the sound of é to the preceding e, as in assez, allez, vous lisez, &c.*

*Second TABLE of the Words wherein these Consonants are pronounced at the End of Syllables.*

- m.** hem, item, Amsterdam, Abraham, Cham, Matusalem, Sélim, Stockholm, with all proper names, except Adam and Abfalom.
- p.** cap, julep, Gap, with beaucoup and trop, before a word beginning with a vowel, as trop obligeant.
- s.** as, anus, agnus, bis, bibus, blocus, calus, gratis, iris, orémus, ours, phébus, rébus, sinus, virus, vis, Amos, Cérès, Pallas, Vénus, and all proper names.
- d.** addition, reddition, Sud, Ephod, David, &c. It takes the articulation of t in quand, and adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel; as likewise in the third persons singular of Verbs, before il, elle, on; as also in de fond en comble.
- t.** brut, de but en blanc, correct, direct, dot, exact, échec & mat, Est, and Ouest, fat, un fait, pact, rapt, sot, zénith, Brest, &c.
- n.** ennemi, inné, innover, abdomen, amen, examen, hymen, and in all proper names.
- g.** Bourg-mestre, Agag, Sarug, and all proper names: and g takes the articulation of k or qu in suer sang & eau, le sang & le carnage, long espâce; un Bourg; but it is silent in faubourg and other compounds.
- x.** This consonant has the articulation of cs in Ajax, Alix, Anthrax, Béatrix, du borax, Félix, Linx, le larinx, onix, le pharinx, phénix, préfix, perplex, Pollux, Siphax, Sphinx, Styx, Storax. It takes the hissing sound of s in Cadix; and that of z at the end of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel, or h mute, as in doux amusement, heureux homme.
- z.** This consonant takes the hissing articulation of s in these proper names, Booz, Rodez, Sénez, Usez; but it is dropt in Rez, Sèez, and Vivarez (when so spelt).

A TABLE of the combinations of the letters which compose the Syllables, or of the divers forms and various shapes which one and the same sound can receive.

**O** Bserve, 1<sup>st</sup>, that though one and the same sound can receive divers forms, and be represented in writing many various ways, yet one cannot indifferently spell a word or syllable in such or such a manner. Thus *an* (year) cannot be spelt like *en* (in); nor *dans* (in) like *dent* or *dents* (teeth); though *an* and *en*, *dans*, *dent* and *dents*, have one and the same sound; this table shewing only the circumstances, or rather words, wherein a certain number of letters, coupled together, express only the sound that is at the head of that class.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That those various ways of spelling one and the same sound, seldom take place, except in the final syllables of words; and that too, saving the observations that shall be made, in their proper places, about final consonants.

Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.      Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.

a			aps.	des draps,	sheets.
sounded like a in at and ally.			as.	des bras,	arms.
a.	il a,	he has,	ât.	un mâ <sup>t</sup> ,	a mast.
â.	à Paris,	at Paris.	âts.	des mâ <sup>t</sup> s,	masts.
ac.	tabac,	tobacco.	an.		
ach.	Almanach,	Almanack.	sounded like an in want.		
al.	arsenal, storehouse of arms.		an.	un an,	a year.
ap.	drap,	cloth.	anc.	blanc,	white.
as.	un bras*,	an arm.	ancs.	des bancs,	benches.
at.	chat,	cat,	and.	un tisserand,	a weaver.
â			ands.	des gland <sup>s</sup> ,	acorns.
sounded like a in all, or aw in law.			ang.	du sang,	blood.
			angs.	les étangs,	the ponds.
â.	de la pâ <sup>t</sup> e,	dough.	ans.	dans,	in.
acs.	des lac <sup>s</sup> †,	nets.	ant.	devant,	before.
achs.	almanachs,	almanacks.	ants.	savants,	learned.

\* It is only in this word that *as* has the slender acute sound of *a*, every where else *as* has the broad grave sound of *â*.

† *c* is sounded in *lacs* (and *a* is slender, acute, and short) when it signifies lakes.

Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.      Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.

am.	Adam,	Adgm.	œux.	vœux,	vows.
amp.	un camp,	a camp.	œufs.	{ des œufs,	eggs.
amps.	les champs,	the fields.		{ des bœufs,	oxen.
en.	entre,	between.	eut *	il veut,	he is willing.
eng.	un hareng,	a herring.		eur.	
engs.	des harengs,	herrings.			
end.	il prend,	he takes.			
ends.	tu rends,	thou renderest.			
ens.	gens,	people.	eur.	une fleur,	a flower.
ent.	cent,	an hundred.	eurs.	des pleurs,	tears.
ents.	les dents,	the teeth.	heur.	bonheur,	happiness.
em.	emploi,	employment.	heurs.	malheurs,	misfortunes.
empt.	exempt,	exempt (or)	œur.	le cœur,	the heart.
empts.	exempts,	free.	hœurs.	des chœurs,	choirs.
emps.	le temps,	the time.	eurre.	du beurre,	butler.
aen.	Caen, (the name of a city.)		heure.	une heure,	an hour.
ean.	Jean,	John.	eures.	demeurs,	abodes.
zon.	un faon,	a fawn.	eurent.	ils meurent,	they die.
zons.	dés paons,	peacocks.		œil.	
	e		œil.	un œil,	an eye.
	sounded like e in her.		euil.	le deuil,	the mourning.
e.	{ le,	the, him, it.	ueil.	écueil,	sands.
	{ je,	I.	euils.	fauteuils,	great chairs.
eu.	{ jeu,	play.	euilles.	des feuilles,	leaves.
	{ jeune,	young.	ueilles.	tu cueilles,	thou pickest.
euf.	veuf,	a widower.	ueillent.	ils recueillent,	they gather.
eut.	il peut,	he can.		é	
œ.	{ œillet,	pink.			
	{ œil,	eye.			
œu.	un vœu,	a vow.	é.	vérité,	truth.
œud.	un nœud,	a knot.	ed.	un pied,	a foot.
œuf.	un bœuf,	an ox.	eds.	les pieds,	the feet.
œuf.	un œuf,	an egg.	ef.	une clef,	a key.
ue.	un écueil,	sands.	efs.	des clefs,	keys.
	eux.		er.	donner,	to give.
eu.	jeûne,	a fast.	ers.	dangers,	dangers.
eux.	les feux,	the fires.	és.	les santés,	the toasts.
eufs.	habits neufs,	new coats.	ez.	vous lisez,	you read.
			et or &		and.

\* In any other word eut sounds like eu in jeu.

## OF PRONUNCIATION

*Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.      Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.*

ai.	j'ai,	<i>I have.</i>	egs.	des legs,	<i>legacies.</i>
eai.	je mangeai,	<i>I ate.</i>	est.	il est,	<i>he is.</i>
æ.	Ægypte,	<i>Egypt.</i>	êts.	des forêts,	<i>forests.</i>
œ.	œconomie,	<i>œconomy.</i>	oi.	connoître,	<i>to know.</i>

è

*sounded like e in bell, fed, pen, &c.*

e.	elles,	<i>she.</i>	ois.	je lisois,	<i>I did read.</i>
ai.	vrai,	<i>true.</i>	eois.	je changeois,	<i>I did change.</i>
ay.	May,	<i>May.</i>	eoient.	ils mangeoient,	<i>they did eat.</i>
ei.	peine,	<i>a pain.</i>			
aid.	laid,	<i>ugly.</i>			
ait.	fait,	<i>made.</i>			
et.	effet,	<i>effect.</i>			

oi

*a double sound like wea in sweat.*

oi.	moi, toi,	<i>I, thou.</i>	ois.	du bois,	<i>wood.</i>
oit.	il doit,	<i>he owes.</i>	oix.	une noix,	<i>a walnut.</i>
oigt.	un doigt,	<i>a finger.</i>	oids.	le poids,	<i>the weight.</i>
ouet.	un fouet,	<i>a whip.</i>	oigts.	les doigts,	<i>the fingers.</i>
ouhait.	un souhait,	<i>a wish.</i>	ouets.	fouets,	<i>whips.</i>
ouoit.	il louoit,	<i>he did praise.</i>	ouhairs.	des souhaits,	<i>wishes.</i>

è, ê

*sounded like e in were, there, &c.*

es.	tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>
ès.	très, mast.	<i>thèse, thesis.</i>
ê.	fête,	<i>a feast.</i>
ai.	maître,	<i>master.</i>
ais.	frais,	<i>fresh.</i>
aie.	futaie,	<i>l-fy trees.</i>
aies.	plaies,	<i>wounds.</i>
ait.	il plaît,	<i>it pleases.</i>
aits.	des traits,	<i>features.</i>
êt.	prêt,	<i>ready.</i>
ets.	valets,	<i>servants.</i>
aids.	laid,	<i>ugly.</i>
aix.	paix,	<i>peace.</i>
ecs.	échecs,	<i>chess.</i>

er

*sounded like er.*

er.	du fer,	<i>iron.</i>
ers.	les mers,	<i>the seas.</i>
air.	l'air,	<i>the air.</i>
airs.	des airs,	<i>tunes.</i>
aire.	faire,	<i>to do.</i>
erc.	un clerc,	<i>a clerk.</i>
ercs.	des clercs,	<i>clerks.</i>
erds.	tu perds,	<i>thou losest.</i>
erf.	un cerf,	<i>a stag.</i>
erfs.	les cerfs,	<i>the stags.</i>
ert.	un désert,	<i>a desert.</i>
erts.	déserts,	<i>deserts.</i>

cro.

*Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.      Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.*

ère.	un père,	a father.	its.	des habits	clothes.
ères.	des frères,	brothers.	ix.	le prix,	the price.
èrent.	ils espèrent,	they hope.			
erre.	la terre,	the earth.		in	
uères.	guères,	seldom.			
aires.	affaires,	affairs.			
aient.	ils flairent,	they smell.			
errent.	ils ferment,	they shoe.			

*sounded like en in length, or ain in saint.*

in.	du vin	wine.
ins.	tu vins,	thou camest.
aim.	la faim,	hunger.
aims.	des daims,	deers.
ain.	du pain,	bread.
ains.	tu crains,	thou fearest.
aint.	saint,	holy.
aints.	les Saints,	the Saints.
eim.	Rheims, (a French city.)	
ein.	seindre,	to seign.
eint.	ceint,	girt.
eints.	teints,	died.
int.	il tint,	he held.
inct.	l'instinct,	the instinct.
ingt.	vingt,	twenty.
im.	le timbre,	the stamp.

oir

*a double sound almost like war in warm.*

oir.	noir,	black.
oire.	gloire,	glory.
oires.	des foires,	fairs.
coires.	nageoires,	fins.
pirent.	ils soirent,	they squitter.

être.

être.	champêtre,	rural.
êtres.	fenêtres,	windows.
âtre.	naître,	to be born.
âtres.	maîtres,	masters.

ien, or

*en after i, making a double sound.*

*sounded like i in bit, fit, filial, &c.*

i.	ici,	here.
y.	il y a,	there is.
ie.	la lie,	the dreg.
ies.	des poulies.	pullies.
ient.	ils lient,	they tie.
id.	un nid,	a nest.
ids.	des muids,	hogheads.
il.	chenil,	a dog-kennel.
ils.	le fils.	the son.
is.	des amis,	friends.
it.	il dit,	he says.

ien.	bien,	well.
iens.	tu viens,	thou comest.
ient.	il tient,	he holds.

oin

*or in after o, making a double sound pretty near like wen in went.*

oin.	du soïn,	hay.
oins.	moins,	less.
oint.	point,	not.
oints.	des points,	itches.
oing.	le poing,	the fist.
		ouin,

## OF PRONUNCIATION

Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.      Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.

ouin. marsouin, a porpoise.      ort. fort, strong.  
ouen. St. Ouen (a proper name.)      orts. des ports, harbours.

o

sounded like u in cut, or o in some.

o. l'odorat, smelling.      ore. hellébore, hellebore.  
oc. un croc, a hook.      ores. tu dorés, thou gildest.  
op. trop, too much.      orient. ils dorent, they gild.  
ot. un mot, a word.      horrent. ils abhorrent, they abhor.

ou

sounded like ou in you, cou'd, &c.

sounded like o in old, or oa in coast.

ô. une côte, a coast.      ou. un fou, a fool.  
os. un os, a bone.      où. d'où, whence.  
ôt. bientôt, very soon.      oud. elle coud, she sews.  
ocs. des crocs, books.      ouds. tu couds, thou sewest.  
ots. des mots, words.      oug. un joug, a yoke.  
oths. les Goths, the Goths.      ougs. jougs, yokes.  
au. la Gaule, Gaul.      oup. un coup, a blow.  
aud. chaud, hot.      oups. des loups, wolves.  
auds. réchauds, chaffing-dishes.      ous. nous, we, us.  
aut. un défaut, a defect.      out. tout, all.  
auts. des défauts, faults.      outs. des égouts, sinks.  
ault. Pérault, (a proper name.)      oux. doux, sweet.  
eau. de l'eau, water.      oue. une joue, a cheek.  
aux or } des chapeaux, hats.      oues. les roues, the wheels.  
eaux. }      ouent. ils louent, they praise.  
ao. la Saone, (a river's name.)      Août. le mois d'Août, August.  
ouï. souï, satiated.

or

sounded as in Tudor.

our

sounded like oor in Moorish.

or. de l'or, gold.      our. un four, an oven.  
orc. du porc, pork.      ours. le cours, the course.  
orcs. des porcs, swine.      ourd. lourd, heavy.  
ord. le bord, the brim.      ourds. sourds, deaf.  
orps. un corps, a body.      ourg. un faubourg, a suburb.  
ors. alors, then.      ourgs. les faubourgs, the suburbs.  
ords. tu tords, thou wringest.      ourt. court, short.  
ourre.

Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found. Sounds. Words wherein the sounds are found.

ourre.	de la bourre,	cow's hair.	ues.	des statues,	statues.
ourres.	tu fourres,	thou fluffest.	ut.	salut,	a salute.
ourent.	ils courent,	they run.	uts.	statuts,	the statutes.
•			uent.	ils tuent,	they kill.
	on		ux.	le flux,	the ebb.
	sounded like on in won't.		us.	du pus,	corrupted matter.
on.	non,	no.	eu.	ayant eu,	having had.
onc.	donc,	(in the middle of a sentence), then.	eus.	j'eus,	I had.
oncs.	des jones,	rushes.	eut.	il eut,	he had.
ons.	les dons,	the gifts.	eût.	il eût,	he might have.
eon.	un pigeon,	a pigeon.	ur.		
eons.	mangeons,	let us eat.	ur.	dur,	hard.
ond.	le fond,	the bottom.	urs.	des murs,	walls.
onds.	des ronds,	circles.	ure.	mure,	ripe.
ong.	long,	long.	ures.	ordures,	filth.
ongs.	longs,		eures.	balayeurs,	sweepings.
ont.	le front,	the forehead.	urent.	ils endurent,	they endure.
onts.	des ponts,	bridges.	eurent.	ils eurent,	they had.
om.	un nom,	a name.	un.		
omb.	du plomb,	lead.	un.	chacun,	every one.
ombs.	des plombs,	leads.	uns.	les uns,	the ones.
omps.	tu romps,	thou breakest.	um.	un parfum,	a perfume.
ompt.	prompt,	quick.	ums.	des parfums,	perfumes.
ompts.	prompts,		unt.	défunt,	deceased.
un.	un factum,	(a law term.)	unts.	des emprunts,	loans.
aon.	un taon,	an ox-fly.	eun.	à jeun,	fasting.
aons.	des taons,	ox-flies.			

u

sounded almost as in prostitute.

u.	usure,	usury.
ue.	une nue,	a cloud.

*Words difficult to pronounce.*

car, gâre, qualité, casse, gai, geai, quai, gué, marqué, guet, loquet, guêtres, laquais, qu'est-ce, caisse, gain, Vulcain, publicain, guindé, le quint, quintal, gueux, queue, belliqueux, vigueur, vainqueur, aigu, cu, qu'un, reçu, gui, qui, quoi, aigues, figue, vogue, guidant, figuier, viguier, Echiquier, Perruquier, moyen, Roi, royal, voyons, voyions, payons, payions, pays, paye, Abbaye, ayant, aïeul, faïence, Naïade, Pleïades, louions, suppléions, de l'ail, mail, éventail, attirail, éventails, travail, travailler, travaillons, de la paille, des mailles, Versailles, qu'ils aillent, taille, Tailleur, elle, une aile, soleil, pareil, abeille, bouteilles, veiller, veillant, ils veillent, qu'ils veuillent, oseille, treille, seul, seuil, deuil, feuille, cerfeuil, fauteuils, écuelle, écueil, linceul, recueil, l'œil, ouille, ouaille, veille, vielle, vieille, quille, anguille, aiguille, du fil, le fils, une fille, coïne, cogner, je cogue, baigner, régner, ils règnent, hargneux, une oie, monnoie, grenouille, ils fouillent.

After exhibiting, in the preceding tables, all the sounds and articulations of the *French* language, we shall, in the following section, treat of each sound and articulation separately, and consider, in the minutest manner, 1<sup>st</sup>, the *Vowels*, 2<sup>dly</sup>, the *Diphthongs*, 3<sup>dly</sup>, the *Nasal Vowels*, 4<sup>thly</sup>, the *Consonants*; and 5<sup>thly</sup>, conclude with the several *Marks* used in writing *French Abbreviations*, &c.

## SECTION I.

*Of the sounds expressed by the six vowels, a, e, i, o, u, y, when not attended in the same syllable by another vowel, which makes them Diphthongs, nor followed by n or m, which makes them Nasal.*

a.

**T**HIS letter receives two alterations or two sounds: the one acute, slender, and commonly short; the other grave, broad, and always long; as they are expressed in these two words, *matin*, and *mâtin*, and these *English* words, *at*, *fat*, *rat*, *mad*, *alley*, and *all*, *awe*, *law*. *a* grave and broad is usually marked over with a circumflex, thus (*â*): or followed by a single *s*, thus *pas*; and its derivatives *passer*, *surpasser*, &c. though there are two *s*'s. Whenever *a* is named or spelt by itself, it is always by the grave and broad sound (*un â*, *an a.*)

In

In the syllables *ail* and *aille*, *a* keeps its sound, as we shall see in its place ; and it is always short when 'tis followed by *il* only (*ail*), and grave and long when followed by *ills* (*aille*). Therefore, it takes its acute and short sound in *mail*, a mall, and the grave and long one in *maille*, a stitch ; except in *médaille*, *ailleurs*, *d'ailleurs*, wherein *a* is acute and short.

This observation is not so strictly applicable to *ail* and *aille* when they meet in the middle of words. One may however say in general, that if the word is a *Derivative*, whether noun or verb, one must consider the final syllable of the *Primitive*, for *ail* and *aille* keep in the *Derivative* the same sound which they have at the end of the *Primitive*. Thus *a* is acute and short in *il travaille*, and *ils travaillent* (he works, they work), though at the end of words, because that verb is derived from *travail*, wherein *a* is acute and short : and for the same reason it is acute and short too in the middle of the words of the same verb *travailler* to work, *nous travaillons* we work, &c. Thus again *a* is grave and long in *tailler* to cut, *tailleur* a taylor, *paillasse* a straw-bed, &c. because it is so too in the *Primitives* *taille* cut, *paille* straw.

As for these persons of *aller* to go, *qu'il aille* let him go, *qu'ils aillent* let them go, *a* must be grave and long there by its nature, because these persons are irregularly formed, without being derived from any *Primitive* of that termination.

*a* followed by *y* don't make altogether a vowel or a syllable, because *y* stands for two *i*'s, the first whereof is joined to *a*, and makes the improper diphthong *ai*, as in *pays* country, which is pronounced as if it was writ *pai-is* : the spelling of that word and some others like with a single *i* with two dots over it, as is but too commonly met with in books, is contrary to the analogy of the language.

This vowel expresses six different sounds, at least, in *French*, which, for clearness sake, I'll call the first *e guttural*, on account of its receiving its sound so immediately through the throat ; the second *mute*, because it is not sounded ; the third *acute* ; the fourth *grave* ; the fifth *circumflex* ; and the sixth *intermediate*, that is, open and short ; as in *belle*, *dentelle*, *blesser*, *peine*, *haleine*, *effet*, &c. Whenever this latter is named by itself, 'tis always by the acute sound (*un é*, an *e*).

*e guttural.*

*e guttural* is never accented. It is found in the monosyllables *je*, *me*, *ne*, *te*, *le*, *que*, *de*, &c. in the two first syllables of *recevoir* spelt by themselves, and in a great many other words, wherein it cannot

cannot be sounded like one of the *e*'s accented; I mean, neither acute nor grave, but has a sound peculiar to itself. That *e* is usually dropt in common conversation; as *je dis*, I say, pronounce as if it was spelt *j'dis*. But when two or three of these monosyllables meet together, one of them at least must be sounded, either the first or the last as *je ne le veux pas*, I won't, pronounce *je n'l'veux pas*, or better *je n'le veux pas*. In this last sentence, as well as in repeating verses, and especially in the particle *de* in these words, *ordre de demeurer dehors*, order to stay without doors, that *e* expresses a sound exactly the same as that of the improper diphthong *eu* as expressed in the word *jeu*, play, these two monosyllables *je* and *jeu* being pronounced alike. And the sound *e* or *eu* is almost the same sound expressed in the *English* monosyllable *her* (which is pronounced almost like the *French* word *heure*), and the last vowel of these words, *dinner*, *summer*, *maker*, *porter*, *parlour*, &c. these *English* syllables answering most precisely to the *French* ones *neur*, *meur*, *heur*, *ieur*, *leur*. The only difference is, that the *English* make it an obtuse, deafened, and exceedingly rapid sound, the last consonant of which is articulated very strong: whereas the *French* do not articulate the consonant so much, and express the sound quite full, and dwell upon it longer. But whether the accent is upon a syllable or no; whether the consonants, which enter into the composition of the syllable, are articulated or not; the sound is, and must needs be, the same.

There is such a vast variety in the contractions of that *e*, and wherein it is not pronounced, as can be learnt only by hearing one read and speak who has the true *French* accent. But besides the dropping of *e* guttural in the aforesaid syllable, there are more particular cases, as in the middle and end of words, wherein it must not be sounded at all; and 'tis in that quality only it has been hitherto considered by our Grammarians, under the appellation of *e* mute, or not sounded.

*e* mute.

*e* mute is more particularly met with in the middle and at the end of words, either alone, as in nouns and adnouns of the feminine gender and singular number, as *âme* soul; *belle* fine; or followed by *s*, or even *nt*, as in all the plural numbers and in verbs, as *âmes* souls, *tu parles* thou speakest, *ils aiment* they love; or, in fine, preceded by another vowel, as in *vie* life, *armée* an army. In all which cases *e* discharges no other part than does the final *e* of these *English* words, *love*, *life*, *done*, *same*, *prince*, &c. wherein  
it

it is not sounded at all : only in the latter case it causes the preceding vowel to be drawn out somewhat longer.

*e* is suppressed both in pronunciation and writing.

1<sup>st</sup>, In all monosyllables before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated, and it is supply'd by an *apostrophe* thus :

<i>l'enfant,</i>	the child,	} instead of	<i>le enfant,</i>
<i>l'homme,</i>	the man,		<i>le homme,</i>
<i>j'aime,</i>	I love,		<i>je aime,</i>
<i>il n'aime pas.</i>	he don't love,		<i>il ne aime pas,</i>
<i>l'amour qu'elle a,</i>	the love she has,		<i>le amour que elle a, &amp;c.</i>

The *apostrophe* is also put after *parce que*, and *jusque*, when a vowel follows : as *parce qu'il est*, because he is ; *jusqu'à demain*, till-morrow : and likewise after *lorsque*, *puisque*, *quoique*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, In the adnoun *grande* before the following nouns, tho' beginning with a consonant,

<i>grand'mère,</i>	grandmother,	<i>grand'pitié,</i>	great pity,
<i>grand'chambre,</i>	large chamber,	<i>grand'part,</i>	great share,
<i>grand'salle,</i>	large hall,	<i>grand'messe,</i>	high mass,
<i>grand'chère,</i>	great cheer,	<i>à grand'peine,</i>	with much diffi-
<i>grand'faim,</i>	great hunger,		culty, hardly,
<i>grand'soif,</i>	great thirst,	<i>ce n'est pas grand'chose,</i>	'tis no
<i>grand'peur,</i>	great fear or fright,		great matter.

It is better, in writing, to make no elision at the end of *grande* before these words, especially when this adnoun is preceded by one of these particles, *une*, *la*, *plus*, *très*, *fort* : nay, excepting *grand'mère*, and *grand'messe*, when *une* comes before, 'tis better to pronounce *grande* than *grand*. Therefore, write and pronounce *une grande chambre*, *la plus grande chère*, *très-grande peur*, &c.

Those cases excepted, never suppress *e* in writing, nor spell *un' indign' action*, } for { *une indigne action*, an unworthy action,  
*ent'reux, entr'elles*, } *entre eux, entre elles*, amongst them ;  
*fair' un' éloquent' & merveillex' histoire*, for *faire une éloquente*  
*& merveilleuse histoire*, to write an eloquent and marvellous history : tho' *e* is not sounded in all those cases, and you must pronounce as if it was written (in French \*) *fai ru nélokan, té mervèilleu zistoire*.

\* N. B. Whenever, to represent the true pronunciation of one or many words together, I express them by other letters than those in use, that must always be understood with respect to the *French* language ; it being, strictly speaking, absolutely impossible to represent such words or sentences as if they should be pronounced so with respect to the *English*. It is sufficient to have shewn, as exactly as can possibly be, in the Tables prefixed to this Treatise, all the *French* sounds with their combinations, and the *English* sounds that answer to them. To pretend to more, that is, dressing *French* words and sentences in *English* sounds and letters, would be willingly running headlong into those gross, shocking absurdities, that are seen in a monstrous and shocking book extant, most impertinently usurping the title of a *French Grammar*.

3dly, *e* is quite dropt in future and conditional tenses of verbs : as,

<i>Je serai,</i>	I shall or will be,	} pronounce {	<i>Je frai,</i>
<i>tu porteras,</i>	thou wilt carry,		<i>tu portras,</i>
<i>il aimeroit,</i>	he will love,		<i>il aimroit,</i>
<i>nous trouverons,</i>	we shall find,		<i>nous trouverons.</i>

Except when it is followed by two consonants, the first of which is *r*, as in *je verrai*, I shall see, *il perdrait*, he would lose, wherein *e* has the sonorous pronunciation that shall be described in the sequel.

And in verbs ending in *ier*, as *prier* to pray, *étudier* to study, and even in *yer* preceded by a vowel, as *payer* to pay, and *employer* to employ, it is better to cut off the *e* not founded in those tenses, and to write these words as they are pronounced, *Je prierai* I shall pray, *vous étudieriez* you would study, *il emploieroit* he would employ, instead of *prierai*, *étudieriez*, *emploieroit*.—It is the same with the nouns derived from those verbs, as *remerciement* for *remerciement*, from *remercier* to thank, &c.

4thly, *e* after *g*, and followed by *o*, as in *pigeon* a pigeon, serves only to give *g* the articulation of *j*, which otherwise would take the hard articulation of *g*. For the same reason *e* is added in spelling before *a* and *o* in gerunds, and preterite tenses of verbs ending in *ger*, as *changer* to change, *manger* to eat, *juger* to judge : in all which cases *e* is no more founded than in these words, *pigeon*, *changeable*. Therefore, don't write *changant*, *il juga*, *nous mangons*, as, according to the analogy of the language, you must write *commençant*, and *commença*, from *commencer* to begin ; but *changeant* *jugea*, *mangeons*, and pronounce *chanjant*, *juja*, *mangons*, *pigon*, &c.

5thly, *e* is not founded in the *penultima* (the last syllable but one) of nouns ending in *té* and derived from adnouns ; as *dûreté* hardness, *bonnêteté* kindness, derived from *dur* hard, and *bonnête* kind. Except in such nouns in *té* as have *e* preceded by *i*, as *impiété* ungodliness, *sobriété* sobriety, &c. which are derived from *impie* and *sobre*, &c. *e* in these words takes both the acute sound and accent.

6thly, In the *penultima* of nouns in *ment* derived from verbs : as *jugement* judgment, *mouvement*, motion, *contentement* contentment, derived from *juger*, *mouvoir*, *contenter*. Except *agrément* liking, *supplément* supplement, and these three words *élément* element, *élément* element, and *vélement* vehement.

7thly, In the *penultima* of adverbs in *ment*; as *franchement* frankly, *sottement* sillily, &c. Except, *1st*, these eight *avenglement*, blindly, *commodément* conveniently, *communément* commonly, *confusément* confusedly, *expressément* expressly, *impunément* with impunity, *profondément* deeply, *uniformément* uniformly, 2dly, adverbs derived from adnouns ending in *é* (*acute*); as *aisément* easily, *effrontément* in a bold manner, &c. derived from *aisé* and *effronté*, &c.

8thly, In the *penultima* of the infinitive of verbs ending in *eler* or *eller*, *emer*, *ener*, *eser*, *eter*, *etter*, *ever*, *enir*: as *celer* to conceal, *jeter* to throw, *semer* to sow, *peser* to weigh, *venir* to come, &c. except in these verbs:

<i>aliéner</i> , to alienate,	<i>s'enquêter</i> (now a days	<i>interpréter</i> , to ex-
<i>arrêter</i> , to stop,	very seldom used	pound,
<i>bêler</i> , to bleat,	for <i>to inquire</i> ),	<i>mêler</i> , to mingle,
<i>blasphémer</i> , to blas-	<i>entêter</i> , to cause the	<i>prêter</i> , to lend,
pheme,	head-ache, mean-	<i>quereller</i> , to quarrel,
<i>gangréner</i> , to gan-	ing smells,	<i>quêter</i> , to go a begging
grene,	<i>s'entêter</i> , to be obsti-	<i>regretter</i> , to grudge,
<i>décéder</i> , to decree,	nately resolved,	<i>se rebeller</i> , to rebel,
<i>égréner</i> , to take out	<i>exceller</i> , to excel,	<i>répéter</i> , to repeat,
of the grain,	<i>fêter</i> , to celebrate,	<i>réfréner</i> , to refrain,
<i>empiéter</i> , to incroach	<i>fouetter</i> , to whip,	<i>révéler</i> , to reveal,
upon,	<i>guetter</i> , to spy,	<i>sceller</i> , to seal,
<i>étréner</i> , to hanel,	<i>hebeéter</i> , to besot,	<i>seller</i> , to saddle,
<i>s'endetter</i> , to run in	<i>inquiéter</i> , to disquiet,	<i>tempêter</i> , to storm.
debt,		

'Tis to be observed, that tho' *e* is not founded in the *penultima* of those verbs mentioned in the last observations, yet it takes the intermediate sound of *è* in the *penultima* of such tenses of the same verbs, wherein the final *er* of the infinitive becomes *e* not founded, or when it becomes the *antepenultima*; as *je sème* I sow, *je pèserai* I shall weigh, *j'appellerai* I would call.

9thly, In the *penultima* of nouns in *eur*, derived from the verbs of the same terminations as those of the last observation; as *recèleur* one that receives stolen goods, *sèmeur* a sower, from *semer* and *receler*; as likewise in the *penultima* of nouns ending in *tier*, as *pelletier* a skinner, *cabaretier* one who keeps an ale-house, &c.

10thly, In the syllable *re*, in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes reiteration or reduplication of the action expressed by

the word: as *redire* to say again, *refaire* to make again, *ressortir* to go out again, &c.

Except, *first*, when the reduplicative particle comes before words beginning with *e* sounded, or any vowel, or *h* not sounded; in which case *e* is sounded, and marked over with the accent acute, and the particle *re* loses its final *e*: as *récrire* to write again, from *écrire*; *ressuyer* to wipe again, from *essuyer*; *réunir* to reunite, from *unir*; *réhabituer* to use one's self again to a thing, from *habiter*, &c.

2dly, When the word implies reiteration or reduplication, tho' the particle *re* cannot be said to be added to it, because, without it, it would not be a *French* word: such are these words and their derivatives,

<i>réductif</i> ,	reduplicative,	<i>réhabiliter</i> ,	to reinstate,
<i>récapituler</i> ,	to resume,	<i>réparer</i> ,	to repair,
<i>récidiver</i> ,	to relapse,	<i>réclamer</i> ,	to reclaim,
<i>réciter</i> ,	to recite, to say by heart,	<i>récolte</i> ,	the crop,
<i>répéter</i> ,	to repeat,	<i>récollektion</i> ,	recollection,
<i>réitérer</i> ,	to repeat,	<i>réconcilier</i> ,	to reconcile,
<i>récollement</i> ,	a re-examination,	<i>répercussion</i> ,	repercussion,
<i>récrimination</i> ,	recrimination,	<i>répiscence</i> ,	amendment of life,
<i>redimer</i> ,	to free, to exempt,	<i>résumer</i> ,	to resume, to sum up,
<i>réfléchir</i> ,	to reflect,	<i>réverbération</i> ,	and <i>réverbère</i> ,
<i>régénérer</i> ,	to regenerate,		reverberation.
<i>réintégrer</i> ,	to restore,		

In *réconfronter* and *réformer* *e* is also sounded, tho' we say *confronter* and *former*.

11thly, In the syllable *re* followed by a double *s*, as *ressembler* to resemble, *se ressouvenir* to remember, &c. Except *ré susciter* to rise again, and *résurrection*, wherein the first *e* is acute.

12thly, Sometimes, but in conversation only, *e* is not sounded in the pronouns demonstrative, *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ceci*, *cela*, this, or that; nor in the pronoun personal *le*, after a verb at the imperative, when the verb is a polysyllable; as *ce livre* this book, *cet enfant* that child, *cette femme* that woman, *cherchez-le*, look for it; pronounce, *sta*, *siore*, *stefant*, *stefmme*, *cherchez-l'*; and never *cherchez-lé* or *lè*. But when the verb is a monosyllable, or ends with a mute *e*, *le* is sounded; as *dis-le*, *fais-le*; *dites-le*, *faites-le*.

13thly, *e* is not sounded in the penultima and antepenultima of these words and their derivatives:

<i>Arlequin</i> , Harlequin,	<i>cheville</i> , a peg,	<i>menin</i> , a minion,
<i>arsenal</i> , an arsenal.	<i>fenêtre</i> , a window,	<i>meneuse</i> , a nurse's de-
<i>arsenic</i> , arsenick,	<i>fenouil</i> , fennel,	puty,
<i>benêt</i> , a booby,	<i>forgeron</i> , a smith,	<i>menotte</i> , handcuff,
<i>besogne</i> , work,	<i>genou</i> , the knee,	<i>menoux</i> , hog's feet,
<i>besoin</i> , want,	<i>grenouille</i> , a frog,	<i>neveu</i> , nephew,
<i>caqueter</i> , to prattle,	<i>guenille</i> , a rag,	<i>passe-temps</i> , pastime,
<i>chaperon</i> , a hood,	<i>guenon</i> , a monkey,	<i>pelisse</i> , a furred cloak,
<i>chenil</i> , a dog kennel,	<i>hallebarde</i> , an halberd	<i>pelote</i> , pincushion,
<i>chenille</i> , a caterpillar,	<i>hameçon</i> , a fish-hook,	<i>petit</i> , little,
<i>chenet</i> , an hand-iron,	<i>hanneton</i> , a May-bug,	<i>retour</i> , return,
<i>chemin</i> , a way,	<i>boqueton</i> , a sort of ser-	<i>secourir</i> , to succour,
<i>cheminée</i> , a chimney,	<i>jeant</i> ,	<i>taffetas</i> , taffety.
<i>chemise</i> , a shirt,	<i>levain</i> , leaven,	

Lastly, *e* is not founded in any of the derived words that have it from their primitives. Thus all adnouns feminine ending in *e* are not founded, as likewise the first person in most verbs : that final *e* is not founded neither in the words derived from them ; as in *fortement* strongly, and *forteresse* a fortress, from *forte* strong ; *proprement* neatly, and *propreté* neatness, from *propre* neat ; *arrangement* ordering, *jugement* judgment, *logement* lodging, &c. from *j'arrange*, *je juge*, *je loge*, &c. Except the adverbs mentioned above, *aveuglement*, *communément*, &c. In *agrément* an agreement, and *j'agrerais*, *j'agrerais*, I shall, or should like, and *supplément* supplement, *e* is acute, because they are derived from *agrée* and *supplée*, whose first persons are *j'agrée*, *je supplée*, and the first *e* only is kept in the derivatives.

### *é* acute.

This *e*, that has the sound of *a* in *bate*, *face*, *fate*, *made*, should always be marked over with an acute accent, as it is really at the end of nouns of both numbers, and of the second person plural of verbs, when it is spelt with an *s* ; for it is now-a-days generally spelt with *z*, leaving out the accent : as *bonté* kindness, *aimé* loved, *bontés* kindnesses, *ils sont aimés* they are loved, *vous aimez* you love.—In words wherein that *é* is before another vowel, as in *géant* a giant, *réunir* to reunite, &c. it denotes for certain, that the two vowels keep each of them their proper sound.

*er*, at the end of infinitives, is founded like *é* acute ; as likewise at the end of nouns in *ger*, *ier*, and *ied* : as

D

*parler*,

<i>parler,</i>	to speak,	} Pronounce	{	<i>parlé,</i>
<i>danger,</i>	danger,			<i>dangé,</i>
<i>barbier,</i>	a barber,			<i>barbié,</i>
<i>pied,</i>	a foot.			<i>pié.</i>

Except 1<sup>st</sup>, In all monosyllables in *er*, as *mer* sea, *cher* dear, *fer* iron, &c. wherein *e* is grave and *r* strongly articulated.

2<sup>dly</sup>, In these following words :

<i>amer,</i>	bitter,	<i>cuiller,</i>	spoon,	<i>biver,</i>	winter,
<i>belvédér,</i>	a belveder,	<i>enfer,</i>	hell,	<i>bier,</i>	yesterday.
<i>cancer,</i>	a canker,	<i>fier,</i>	proud,		

3<sup>dly</sup>, At the end of all *Latin*, and foreign proper names, as *Jupiter*, *Luther*, *Grutter* : but not in *French* proper names, as *Didier*, *Roger*, &c. pronounce *Lutèr*, *Rogé*, &c.

At the end of a sentence, *es* in the pronoun *les* takes both the grave sound and accent ; as also in *dès* preposition ; as *renvoyez-les*, send them back again, and not *renvoyez-lé* ; *dès qu'il eut fait*, as soon as he had done, and not *dé qu'il*, &c. though the accent is not always used in those cases.

As *e* is often met with in the beginning and middle of words, but, through the carelessness of printers and authors, not marked over with that accent which should denote its pronunciation, in order to supply that defect, we make the following observations :

1<sup>st</sup>, All *e*'s that have the sound of *e* acute at the end of a word, keep it also in any syllable whatever, in the derivations and inflexions of the same word. Thus *e* being founded acute in the end of *aisé* easy, must be so too in *aisément* easily. Thus again *e* having the resonant sound of *e* grave in *amer* bitter, must have it too in the second syllables of *amèrement* bitterly, and *amertume* bitterness. Except only in verbs in *er*, wherein *e* is never pronounced in future and conditional tenses, as we have said.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *e* is acute in *é*, *dé*, *pré*, and *tré*, first syllables of a word : as *éclat* a crack, noise, *été* been, *écrit* writing, *dépit* spite, *détourner* to deter, *prélude* a prelude, *préparer* to prepare, *trépas* death, *trésor* a treasure, &c. Except,

1°. *pre* in *premier* first, and its derivatives, and these persons of the verb *prendre* to take, *prenons*, *prenez*, *prenois*, &c. wherein *pre* is pronounced with the guttural sound of *e*, but short.

2°. *de* in the following words and their compounds, wherein *e* is not founded in a rapid conversation :

*demain,*

<i>demain</i> , to-morrow,	<i>depuis</i> ,	since,	<i>devancer</i> , to outrun,
<i>demeurer</i> , to live,	<i>Denis</i> , Dionysius,		<i>devise</i> , motto,
<i>demander</i> , to ask,	<i>dedans</i> ,	within,	<i>deviner</i> , to guess,
<i>demi</i> , half,	<i>dessus</i> ,	upon,	<i>devoir</i> , duty,
<i>demeurant</i> , dwelling,	<i>dessous</i> ,	under,	<i>il devient</i> , he becomes,
<i>demoiselle</i> , a miss,	<i>devant</i> ,	before,	

tho' *de* in *devenir* has the guttural sound of *e*, and the second *e* is almost dropped. *e* in *de*, first syllable of *dégouter*, to make to loath, is acute, and in *dégouter*, to drop.

N. B. Words beginning with *des*, fall under the last observation: as, *désabuser* to undeceive, *désavouer* to disavow, *désespérer* to despair, *désigner* to denote, *désister* to desist, *désoler* to vex.

3dly, *e* is sounded acute but short before *rer* in infinitives in *érer*: as *espérer* to hope, *digérer* to digest, *modérer* to moderate, &c.

4thly, *e* is sounded acute in the syllable *re* in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes neither reiteration nor reduplication of action: as *récent* recent, *réfugier* to fly for refuge, altho' it is mute in *refuge*. Except the following words and their derivatives, wherein *e* is mute in *re*:

<i>rebut</i> ,	cast out,	<i>refrein</i> ,	burden of a song,
<i>rebelle</i> ,	rebellious,	<i>refrogner</i> ,	to knit one's brows,
<i>rebellion</i> ,	rebellion,	<i>refus</i> ,	denial,
<i>rebours</i> , the wrong side of a		<i>regarder</i> ,	to look,
thing,		<i>regimber</i> ,	to kick,
<i>rebrousser</i> ,	to go back,	<i>regret</i> ,	regret,
<i>rebuffade</i> ,	rebuff,	<i>relais</i> ,	post-stages,
<i>rebuter</i> ,	to dishearten,	<i>reland</i> ,	musty,
<i>receler</i> , to receive stolen goods,		<i>reléguer</i> ,	to banish,
<i>recoin</i> ,	a by-place,	<i>relégation</i> ,	banishing,
<i>recueil</i> ,	a collection,	<i>relief</i> ,	relievo,
<i>recueillir</i> ,	to collect,	<i>relier</i> ,	to bind,
<i>recommander</i> , to recommend,		<i>relique</i> ,	relick,
<i>reconnaissance</i> ,	gratitude,	<i>reliquat</i> ,	remnants,
<i>recourir</i> , to have recourse,		<i>religion</i> , religion (but <i>e</i> is acute	
<i>recevoir</i> , to receive (but not		in <i>irréligion</i> , irreligion),	
<i>récipient</i> , nor <i>réception</i> ),		<i>reluire</i> ,	to glitter,
<i>reculer</i> ,	to draw back,	<i>remarquer</i> ,	to remark,
<i>redevable</i> ,	indebted to,	<i>remède</i> ,	a remedy,
<i>redoute</i> ,	a redoubt,	<i>remercier</i> ,	to thank,
<i>redoutable</i> ,	dreadful,		

<i>remettre</i> , to remit (but not <i>ré-</i> <i>mission</i> , remitting),	<i>repos</i> ,	rest,
<i>remuer</i> ,	to stir,	<i>reprendre</i> , to correct,
<i>renard</i> ,	a fox,	<i>représailles</i> , reprisals,
<i>renier</i> ,	to disown,	<i>se retirer</i> , to retire,
<i>renégat</i> ,	a renegado,	<i>reproche</i> , reproach,
<i>renifler</i> , to snuff up one's snout,	<i>retrancher</i> , to cut off,	<i>requête</i> , a petition,
<i>renoncer</i> ,	to renounce,	<i>requérir</i> , to request (but not in <i>réquisition</i> , request),
<i>renom</i> ,	renown, fame,	<i>retenir</i> , to keep (but not in <i>ré-</i> <i>tention</i> , retention),
<i>repaire</i> ,	a lurking hole,	<i>retenue</i> , moderation,
<i>repartir</i> ,	to set out again,	<i>retentir</i> , to resound,
<i>se repentir</i> ,	to repent,	<i>revanche</i> , revenge,
<i>repas</i> ,	a meal,	<i>revêche</i> , froward,
<i>repic</i> ,	repique,	<i>revers</i> , the reverse.
<i>réplique</i> , reply (but not <i>répli-</i> <i>quer</i> ),		

Some words have different significations, according as the *e* of their first syllable *re* is pronounced and marked over with the accent acute, or not pronounced at all; as,

*répondre*, to answer, *repondre*, to lay eggs again,  
*répartir*, to divide, *repartir*, to reply, or to go back again.

Observe besides, that *ez* denotes only the sound of *é* acute; as *assez* enough: as doth likewise the conjunction *et* or *é*, and.

#### *è grave.*

This *e*, whose sound is sonorous, or resonant, is found,

1°. In the prepositions *dès* from, *près* near, the adverb *très* most, and in all nouns ending in *ès*, as *abcès*, abscess, *profès* a professed monk.

2°. In all these monosyllables, *des*, *les*, *mes*, *tes*, *ses*; as likewise the syllables of words wherein it is followed by *r* pronounced, as in *mer* the sea, *fer* iron, *enfer* hell, *amer* bitter, *ouvert* open.

But it has the sound of the following *é* in the last syllable of the plural number of the words wherein it is indifferently resonant in the singular; as sing. *effet* effect, plur. *effets*; *projet* project, *projets*.

#### *ê circumflex.*

*e* circumflex is always marked over with the accent which characterises it; and it is exceeding broad and long, especially when it makes the penultima of a word, the last syllable whereof is *e*

mute, as may be observed in *bête* beast, *ébété* stupid; *grêle* hail, *grêler* to hail; *pêche* a peach, *pêcher* a peach-tree; *tête* head, *entêté* strong-headed; *même* even, *champêtre* rural, &c. And both this grave *è* and circumflex *ê* express the same sound as *e* in *there* and *were*; or in these other *English* words, *fare*, *tare*, which exactly correspond, as to sound, to these *French* ones, *faire*, *taire*.

*The intermediate sound of è.*

It is found, 1°. in monosyllables, and all syllables of words where it is followed by any other consonant than *r* pronounced, or *t* not pronounced. Thus *e* has the intermediate sound in *bec* beak, *sel* salt, *effet* effect, *projet* project. I said in the last paragraph but one, that the final syllable of these words is very broad and long in their plural: I shall observe further here, that *et* is more open in *il met* he puts, than in *mettre* to put, but not so broad as *je mets* I put, *tu mets* thou puttest, which is the sound of the conjunction *mais* but.

2°. Before two consonants, or *x* in the beginning and middle of words, as *infecter* to poison, *examen* examination, and *examiner* to examine, tho' in these two last *e* takes a little of the acute sound. Except when *n* or *m* is one of the two consonants with which it is followed: for they then denote either the nasal sound, as in *entrer* to enter, *emplir* to fill; or the third person plural of verbs, where the final *ent* is mute.

This intermediate sound of *e* is expressed in the *English* words *bell*, *fed*, *less*, *progress*, *effect*, *protect*, *amen*, *examen*, &c.

The *e* of the penultima of the words, the last syllable whereof is *e* mute, is either most sonorous, as in *grêle* hail, *problème* a problem, *tempête* a tempest; or but a little sonorous, as in *chandelle* a candle, *mèche* match, *trompette* a trumpet: except in these five words, *collège* college, *liège* cork, *piège* snare, *privilege* privilege, and *siège* seat, wherein the *e* of the penultima is acute and a little long.

All the words just mentioned prove how necessary the accents are to our *e*'s, in order to shew their pronunciation; and that the perpendicular accent proposed of late years by some Grammarians would have been as necessary as the acute, the grave, and the circumflex. But as it has not been adopted by the *French* Academy, and it is not to be found in any book, we have omitted it throughout in this present edition. See p. 89.

From these observations it follows, that the improper diph-

thong *ai*, which is naturally sounded like *é* acute, receives the same alterations of sounds as *e*; and is more or less resonant in a word, according to the consonants that follow it: as *faire* to do, *maître* master, *naître* from *naître* to be born.

## i.

This vowel has almost the same sound in *French* as in the *English* words, *bit*, *fin*, *pin*, *filial*, &c.

*i*, followed by *n* or *m* in monosyllables, or in the beginning of words of two syllables, gives a sound like to that of *an* in *thank*, *en* in *length*, or *ain* in *saint*; as *vin* wine, *Indes* Indies, pronounce *vain*, *ainde*; and likewise in *imbu* imbued, *impur* impure, *ingrât* ungrateful; *infini* infinite, *imprudent* imprudent.

*i* in the particle conditional *si* is contracted, both in writing and speech, before and with the pronouns *il* and *ils* only, and never before any other vowel, not even before *i* in any other word: as *s'il vient* if he comes, instead of *si il*, &c. *s'ils disent* if they say: but write and pronounce *si elle vient* if she comes, *si illustre* so illustrious, *si après cela* if after that; and not *s'elle vient*, &c.

*i* is not sounded after *enjoindre* corner, pronounce *encogure*.

*i* is not sounded, and makes no diphthong with the preceding vowel, when it is followed by *l* or *ll*; *i* then serving only to give *l* or *ll* a particular articulation, called the liquid articulation of *l*: as in *soleil* the sun, *travail* work, *veiller* to sit up, *travailler* to work. That liquid articulation of *l* is the same that is heard in *English* in the articulation of the double *l*, of the words *million*, *billiards*: all the difference is, that that *i* which causes the liquid articulation is in *French* before *l*, whereas it is after it in *English*.

## o.

This vowel receives two sounds as well as *a*; the one acute, slender, and commonly short; and the other grave, broad, and always long, as they are expressed in these words, *cotte*, or *cotillon*, a petticoat, and *côte* a coast. *o* acute and short has the same sound as in the *English* words *come*, *some*, *done*, *cover*, &c. or as *u* in *but*, *cut*, *rub*, &c. and *ô* grave and long, as in *globe*, *robe*, *old*, &c. or *oa* in *coast*, *roast*, &c. *ô* long is usually marked over with a circumflex thus (*ô*), or followed by a single *s*, thus *chose*: *gros*, and its derivative *grosse*, *grossir*, &c. tho' there be two *s*'s. When-  
ever

ever *o* is named or spelt by itself, it is always by the long and broad sound of *ô* (*un o*, an *o*).

1. *o* is almost dropt in the second syllable of *accommoder* to fit up, and *raccommoder* to mend; and in the first of *commander* to command; pronounced, as it were, *cmandé*, *acmodé*; but in conversation only.

2. In *coopérer* to cooperate, *coobligé*, &c. each *o* makes a syllable.

3. The pronounciation of *notre* and *votre* is worth observing. These words are pronounced with the broad and long sound of *ô* in the pronouns relative, *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, yours, *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, ours, and *o* is marked over with a circumflex. When they are only pronouns adjective, they are sounded with the short and slender sound of *o*, without being marked over with a circumflex: and if the substantive begins with a consonant, *r* is not pronounced in *votre* and *notre*; as *votre livre* your book, *notre maison* our house; pronounce *votte livre*, *notte maison*: but when the noun begins with a vowel, pronounce, as it is spelt, *vo*tre ami your friend, *no*tre affaire our affair; as also in *Notre-Dame* Our Lady, and in the Lord's prayer, *Notre Père qui es*, &c. Our Father who art, &c.

#### u.

This vowel, which is expressed in *bu*, *tu*, *lu*, *statut*, *volume*, is the very same sound that the *English* expresses in *prostitute*, *imposthume*, *volume*; only the *English u* of these words is shorter and more obtuse.

*ui* makes a proper diphthong in *buisson* a bush.

*u* in foreign or *Latin* words that are become *French*, followed by *m*, takes the nasal sound of *on*; as *un factum* a plea, pronounce *façton*.

*un* has likewise the sound of a nasal *o* in *junte* a junto, but not in *défunt* dead, wherein it is pronounced as in the monosyllable *un* one.

#### y.

*y*, generally speaking, has no other sound but that of the *French i*, and is used in *French* in the following circumstances only.

1<sup>st</sup>, As adverb of place or pronoun, and then *y* makes a word by itself; as *il y a*, there is; *y pensez-vous?* do you think of it?

2<sup>dly</sup>, In the beginning of these four words only, *yacht*, pron. *Iaque* yacht, *yeux* eyes, and *yeuse* a holm-oak; *ypreau* Dutch elm.

Some add indeed *yve* got drunk, *yvoire* ivory, and *yvraye* tare ; but they are now generally spelt with *i* by the best writers, *ivre*, *ivoire*, *ivraie*.

3dly, In the middle of some words wherein *y* stands for two *i*'s, as in *pays* country, and in its derivatives, *paylage* a landscape, and *payfant* a peasant, wherein *ay* is founded as *ai*, with another *i* before *s*, *sage*, and *sant*. *Abbaye* abbey, *essayer* to try, *voyons* let us see, *Royal*, *ayant*, &c. which words are pronounced as if they were written *pai-is*, *pai-isant*, *essai-ier*, *voi-ions*, *Roi-ial*, *ai-iant*, &c.

The following words, wherein *a* keeps its natural sound, making a vowel by itself, and *i* takes a liquid articulation as in *you*, are written now with an *i* *trema*, that is, marked over with two dots.

<i>aïeul</i> , grand-father,	<i>faïence</i> , Delft-ware,	<i>Baïonne</i> ,	} (proper names.)
<i>baïonnette</i> , a bayonet,	<i>glaiëul</i> , corn-flag,	<i>Blaïe</i> ,	
<i>camaïeu</i> , a camaïeu,	<i>païen</i> , a pagan,	<i>Caïenne</i> ,	
<i>caïeu</i> , a sucker,	<i>tavaïole</i> , a mantle,	<i>Maïenne</i> ,	
<i>coïon</i> , a trifling fellow,	<i>Aïen</i> ,	<i>Maïence</i> ,	
<i>coïonner</i> , to trifle,	<i>Baïard</i> ,	<i>Caïette</i> ,	
<i>coïonnerie</i> , trifling,	<i>Baïeux</i> ,	<i>La Faïette</i> .	
			} proper names.

The two dots over *i* shew that the vowel makes a syllable by itself, as, *haïr* to hate, *naïf* no way counterfeit, *héroïque* heroical, *Laïs*, &c. whereas otherwise it makes, with the foregoing vowel, an improper diphthong, as in *je haïs* I hate.

*y* denotes the sound of two *i*'s, the former whereof makes with the foregoing vowel an improper diphthong ; as in *pays* country, *royaume* kingdom, *essayer* to try.

Most writers preserve still *y* in words derived from Greek, to shew the etymology ; as in these words, *étymologie*, *analyse*, *my-  
stère*, *syllabe*, &c.

## SECTION II.

## Of Diphthongs.

**T**HE meeting of many vowels in one and the same syllable, is called Diphthong. When many vowels together keep each of them in the syllable their particular and proper sound, they are called *Proper* or *Syllabic Diphthongs*; as *lui* he, *lier* to tie. When they all together make but one single sound, they are called *Improper* or *Orthographical Diphthongs*; as *air* air, *eau* water.

*Proper Diphthongs.*

*ia, iai, iañ, ié, iè, ien, ieu, io, ioi, ion, iau, oa, oè, oé, oi, eoi, oin, oua, ouan, oué, ouè, ua, uè, ui, uin, oui, ouen, ouin.*

All that can be said of these Proper Diphthongs amounts to this: that though these vowels, united together, make really two distinct syllables, each of which keeps its natural and peculiar sound, yet they are sounded and pronounced as quickly, and in as small a compass of time, as a single ordinary syllable. Therefore never pronounce in two syllables *Di-eu* God, *di-ab'le* devil, *li-er* to tie, *vi-olon* a fiddle, *jou-er* to play, *rou-et* a spinning wheel, *fu ir* to avoid, *ro-i* king, *ou-i* yes, *Rou-en*: but sound the two vowels in one syllable quickly: *Dieu, diable, jouer, rouet, &c.* N. B. *quen* in *St. Ouen* is not pronounced as in *Rouen* (a city in *Normandy*), but like *oin* in *foin* hay.

There is an exception to this, *viz.* when those diphthongs come after two consonants, the last of which is *r* or *l*; as *nous prions* we desire, *vous voudriez* you would, *il plioit* he bent, and the word *hier* yesterday, which are pronounced like two syllables. Nevertheless the adverb *hier* is sounded in one syllable only, when it comes with the other adverb *avant* (*avant-hier*, the day before yesterday).

In *coadjuteur* a coadjutor, *coactif* coercive, *coaguler* to coagulate, *cloaque* a common sewer, *croasser* to croak, *Croatie* Croatia, *Groate*, *retroactif* retroactive, and in *Goa, Moab, Soarès*, and other foreign words, which are the only words wherein *oa* is found, each vowel makes a particular syllable; but in *aio* and *Aiol*, *a* makes a syllable by itself, and *io* a proper diphthong.

*Improper*

*Improper Diphthongs.*

*ae, ai, ay, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oi, oeu, oi, ou, ui, uei.*

Observe first, that when these vowels together do not make the same syllable, but two distinct ones, two dots are put over that which begins the last syllable; as in *haïr*, *Piritboüs*; or an accent over the first vowel when it is an *e*: as in *géant* a giant, *déisme* deism, *météore* a meteor, *Géorgie* Georgia, *Léonidas*, &c.

2dly, That, excepting *eu* and *ou*, the natural and peculiar sound of the other improper diphthongs is quite the same as, and not at all different from, that of some of the five vowels treated of before.

*ae.*

*ae* is found only in *Caën*, the name of a city, wherein *a* nasal only is sounded (*Can*).

In *aérien*, *aérer*, *Danaé*, *Ticho-Braé*, and such other words, the accent that is over *e* shews its pronunciation, and that it makes a vowel by itself.

*e.*

*e* or *Æ* is now out of use in *French* words derived from the *Greek* and *Latin*, written formerly with *æ*, being now-a-days written with an *e* sounded like *é* acute; as *Egypte* for *Ægypte*, *Ægypt*, *Equinoxe* for *Æquinoxe*.

*ai and ay.*

*ai* or *ay* denotes the sound of *e*, sounded sometimes acute, sometimes grave, and sometimes intermediate. Nay, it is not sounded at all in the gerund, present, and imperfect tenses of the verb *faire* to do; *ai* being now-a-days converted into *e* mute. *Faisant* doing, *je faisais* I did, *nous faisons* we do; pronounce *fezant*, *fezois*, *fezons*.

1st, *ai* or *ay*, being the two last letters of a word, is sounded like *é* acute; as *je parlai* I spoke, *je dirai* I'll say; pronounce *parlé*, *diré*. Except in these four words, *vrai* true, *essai* an essay, *délai* delay, *Mai* May, wherein *ai* has the intermediate sound, being pronounced as in *English* in the word *May*. But observe that the adnoun *vrai* true, takes the grave and broad sound of *è* long, when it comes before its noun, as in *le vrai sens d'une loi*, the true sense of a law; pronounce *vrès*, or *vrais*: whereas, when it is not followed by a noun, or when it terminates a sentence, it

it only has the short sound of *è*, as in *c'est vrai*, it is true; *il est vrai que*, it is true that, &c.

2dly, *ai* being followed by *s*, *ts*, *x*, (*ais*, *aits*, *aix*), or *e* not founded (*aie*) at the end of a word, takes the most resonant sound of *è* grave; as *jamais* never, *des faits* facts, *paix* peace, *plaie* a wound.

3dly, *ai* in the middle of a word, and followed by a consonant, is more or less resonant according to the consonant that follows. (See the observation at the end of the paragraph of *è* grave.)—*ai* has the most resonant sound of *è* in *haine* hatred, *traître* a traitor; and in the words wherein *ai* comes before *r*, as in *faire*, *braire* to bray, &c. pronounce, *fer*, &c.

4thly, In *ai* followed by a double or single *l*, *a* keeps entirely its proper sound, *i* serving only to give *l* or *ll* a liquid articulation; as in *bail* a lease, *vaillant* courageous.

*ai* is likewise founded as a single *a* in *St. Aignan* (the proper name of a duke).

In the interjection *ai* (for pain) *i* takes the liquid articulation of *y*, so that *ai* is pronounced like *ai* in *aïeul*, or *Blaie*.

*ait* has the same pronunciation in *il fait*, *plait*, *paît*, *naît*, and *braît* (third persons of *faire* to do, *plaire* to please, *paître* to graze, *naître* to be born, and *braire* to bray): but *fait* (a participle or noun) has the pronunciation of the intermediate *è*: as *Il fait beau*, It is fine weather; *J'ai fait*, I have done; *C'est fait*, It is over; *C'est un fait*, It is fact. On the contrary, *ais* in the two first persons of *savoir* to know, and *ait* in the third, have only the pronunciation of *é* acute. *Je sais*, *tu sais*, *il sait*, pronounce *je sé*, *tu sé*, *il sé*.

#### ao.

*ao* is found in the following words: 1st, In *corte* (an artery), *aovara* (a fruit), *Aonie*, *Aonides*, *Aorne*, *Baar*, *Lacton*, *Laodamie*, *Laodicée*, *Laomédon*, *Laonice* (proper names), and *extraordinaire* extraordinary, wherein *a* and *o* make each a syllable, and keep their proper sound.

2dly, In *paon* a peacock, *faon* a fawn, *Laon* (the name of a city), which are pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as if they were spelt *pan*, *fan*, *Lan*.

3dly, In *aorasse*, *aoriste*, *aoste*, *Saone*, wherein *a* is quite lost, these words being pronounced *orasse*, *oriste*, *oste*, *Sône*.

4thly, In *taon* ox-fly, which is founded with the nasal sound of *o*, like the pronoun *ton*.

5thly, In *Août* August (a month), which is pronounced *ou*, or in English *oo*; but *a* is sounded in its derivative *aoûter*; not in the other derivative *aoûte-on*, wherein *a* is silent: pronounce then *Oût*, *aoûter*, *outeron*. *Raoul* (a proper name) is pronounced *Ra-oul*.

*au* and *eau*.

*au* and *eau* at the end of words are sounded more open than the short and slender sound of *o*, as *chapeau* a hat, *marteau* a hammer, &c. but not quite so broad as the word *eau* water, and the particle *au* to the, which have the long and broad sound of *ô*, or *au* followed by *d*, *t*, *x*, in the last syllable; as *chaud* hot, *défaut* defect, *chapeaux* hats.

*au*, in the middle of dissyllables, always has the broad and long sound of *o*, as in *beauté* beauty, *baudrier* a belt, *faucher* to mow: but in the beginning of words it is pronounced sometimes like *ô* long, and sometimes like *o* short. *au* has the slender and short sound of *o* in the beginning of the following words:

auberge,	an eating-house.	austère,	austere.
audace,	audaciousness.	austral,	austral.
audience,	audience.	authentique,	authentic.
auditoire,	congregation.	automate,	automaton.
auditeur,	auditor.	automne ( <i>m</i> is silent)	autumn.
augmenter,	to augment.	autorité,	authority.
augure,	omen.	autoriser,	to authorise.
augurer,	to augurate.	auxiliaire,	auxiliary.
Aurore,	Aurora.	mauvais,	bad.

But *au* has the broad sound of *ô* in the beginning of the following words:

aubade,	a piece of music.	autruche,	ostrich.
aubaine,	escheat.	auteur,	author.
aube,	dawn of the day.	autour,	about.
aucune,	none.	autre, other,	with its derivatives.
auguste,	august.	auvent,	a pent-house.
aujourd'hui,	to-day.	aumône,	alms.
aulique,	aulick.	auprès,	near, by.
aumuce,	an ameys.	auspice,	auspice.
aune,	an ell.	aussi,	also.
auparavant,	before.	autant,	as much.
Autriche,	Austria.	autel,	altar.

*Beau* has the broad sound of *ô*: as *Cela est beau*, That's fine; *Voilà un beau coup*, That's a fine stroke: pronounce *fla é bâ*, *voilà un bâ cou*,

*fléau*

*fléau* a scourge, is pronounced like a proper diphthong, *flé-au*; as likewise *préau* a little meadow, and *éaux* in *Despréaux* (a proper name), wherein *s* is mute; and in *fléaux*, plural of *seal* trusty, (used only in royal patents, proclamations, &c.)

*ea.*

*ea* is found only in the words *Jean* and *Jeanne*, John, Jane; *e* is left out in the diminutives *Janot*, *Janette*, *Janneton*. *Jean* is pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as *Jan*; *Jeanne* with the long and broad sound of *â*, as *Jâne*; and *Janot*, *Janette*, and *Janneton*, with the shorter and slender one.

*ea* is also found in some verbs after *g*, as in *mangea*, wherein (as we have seen before) *e* loses its sound, and serves only to make *g* take the articulation of *j*, as if it were spelt *manja*.

*eai.*

*eai* is found only in the word *geai* a jack-daw, and in the same verbs just mentioned after *g*, wherein *eai*, or rather *ai*, takes the sound of *e* intermediate, *e* serving to the same purpose as in the words of the last paragraph; *eai* takes the sound of *é* acute in *je mangeai* I did eat: pronounce *manjé*, *unjé*.

*ei* and *ey.*

*ei*, or *ey*, denotes the same sound as in English *e* before a consonant, as in the word *pen*, which answers exactly to the sound of this French word *peine*, pains.—Except in *Reine* a queen, *seize* sixteen, and *seizième* sixteenth, wherein *ei* has the most resonant sound of *è* long.

In *ei* followed by *l* or *ll*, *e* keeps its sound (the resonant sound of the intermediate *è*), and *i* serves only to give *l* or *ll* the liquid articulation; as in *soleil* sun, *veiller* to sit up. (See the paragraph of *i*)—*eil* in *orgueil* pride, *recueil* a collection, and *cueillir* to gather, is not pronounced as in *soleil*, but as *eu* in *deuil*, mourning: but it keeps its proper sound in its derivatives *orgueilleux* proud, &c.

*eo.*

*eo* is found in the verb *asseoir* to sit down, in the syllable *geon* or *geons* of some verbs, and in the words *geolier* a jailer, and *George*; in which cases *e* loses quite its sound, and the preceding *g* is sounded like *j*. Pronounce *asseir*, *forge*, &c. (See the 4th paragraph of *e* not sounded.)

Observe, that when there are two dots over *o*, or an accent acute over *e*, as in *géographie* and *météore*, both vowels keeps their proper sounds.

*eu.*

*eu* receives two sounds; the first of which is the guttural sound of *e*, and is found in *feu* fire, *il peut* he can, &c. which is (I say) the very same sound as *e* in the English monosyllable *her*. (See page 28.)—*x* joined to *eu* (*eux*) gives it another peculiar sound not to be found in English, but not hard to express.—*eu* in *jeune* young, is sounded as in *feu*; but in *jeûne* and *jeûner* fasting, it is sounded as *eux*, tho' not in *dejeuner* to breakfast. *eu* in *Hébreu* is pronounced like *eux*; and it takes the slender and short sound of *o* in *filleul*, and *filleule* (a god-child).

The second sound of *eu* is that of the vowel *u*, and is found only in these two or three words, *eunuque* an eunuch, *Eustache* (a proper name), *gageure* a wager, and in *eu* had, and the other tenses of *avoir* to have. Pronounce, *u*, *vous utes*, *unuc*, *ustache*, *gajure*.—We now write *vu* seen, *vue* sight, *sûr* sure, *mûr* ripe, *reliure* binding, *tu pusses* thou could'st, and all participles without *e*, instead of the old way of writing *veu*, *veue*, *seur*, *relicure*, *tu peusses*, &c.—*eut* in *il veut*, he is desirous, is not sounded as in *il peut* he can, but like *eux* in *je veux*, but it is in that word only: and *eus* or *eux* in *je peux*, I can, is not pronounced as in *je veux*, but like *eut* in *il peut*, he can.

*æ and œ.*

*æ* is found in *cœur* heart, and *chœur* choir or chorus, *mœurs* manners, *œuf* egg, *œuvres* works, *sœur* sister, and *vœu* a vow, in which words *o* quite loses its sound: and in *œil* eye, its derivatives *œillade* an ogle, and *œillère* (*les dents œillères*, the eye-teeth;) as also in *œillet* a pink, *æ* takes the first sound of *eu*. Some authors think it better to write all these words without *o*, but the contrary custom is prevailing. Therefore pronounce *keur*, *meur*, *œuil*, *œuillè*, &c.

*æ* denotes only the sound of *é* acute in *œconomie*, *œcuménique*, and *Oedipe*, which even now-a-days are spelt as pronounced with *é*, *économie* œconomy.

*o* and *e* in *poète* a poet, *moëlle* marrow, and other such like words, wherein *e* is marked over with two dots, make a proper diphthong, wherein *e* takes the intermediate sound of *è*; as likewise in *coercible*, *coercitif*, and *coercition*. In *coégal* coequal, *coéternel* coeternal, &c. the acute accent over the *é* shews its pronunciation, and is a proof at the same time that the *e* of the preceding words should be marked over with the straight accent.

## oi and oy.

*oi* and *oy* are sometimes improper diphthongs that take only the resonant sound of *e* grave; but more commonly they are proper diphthongs expressing the two distinct sounds of *o* and *e* or *é*.

*oi* is an improper diphthong; 1<sup>st</sup>, in the imperfect and conditional tenses of verbs: as *j'aimois* I loved, *tu dirois* thou would'st say, *il parleroit* he would speak, &c. pronounce *aimais*, *dirais*, *parleret*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, In verbs which have more than two syllables in the infinitive, as *paraître* to appear, *connoître* to know, and their derivatives: pronounce *paraître*, *connaître*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, In these words *foible* weak, *foiblesse* weakness, *foiblement* weakly, *affoiblir* to weaken, *roide* stiff, *roideur* stiffness, *roidir* to stiffen, *harnois* harness, and *monnaie* coin, pronounce *fèble*, *fèblesse*, *rède*, *monnaie*; but pronounce *oy* like a proper diphthong in *monnoyé* coined, thus: *monnoi ie*.

These persons of *être*, *sois*, *soit*, *soyons*, *soyez*, *soient*, and even the verb *croire* throughout, *je crois*, *il croit*, *nous croirions*, &c. *froid* cold, *froideur* coldness, *froidement* coldly, *adroit* skilful, *adroitement* skilfully; the adnoun *droit* right; the adverb *tout-droit* straight along, *endroit* place, *étroit* narrow, *nettoyer* to clean, *croître* to grow, throughout, with its derivatives, and all monosyllables, are pronounced with the sound of the proper diphthong *o-è*. Some people, I know, thinking themselves fine speakers, adopt the affected utterance of the *petites-maitresses*, and pronounce in an effeminate way *craire*, *craître*, *fraid*, *sayons*, *que je fais*, *qu'ils sayent*: which is very bad, as in repeating verses, in the pulpit, and at the bar, those words are pronounced with the double sound of *o-è*. In the conjunction *soit* either, or let it be so, *soit que* whether, in the phrase *ainsi soit-il* so be it, *tant soit peu* never so little, and in the beginning of the Lord's prayer, *soit* is pronounced with the two sounds of the proper diphthong even by those who pronounce *oi* like *ai* in the aforesaid words.

But *oi* and *oy* are always proper diphthongs sounded like *o-è* in the noun *droit* right, in *effroi* fright, *effroyable* frightful, *un noyer* a walnut-tree, and *se noyer* to drown one's self; and before *g* and *n*, as *témoigner* to shew, *joindre* to join. Therefore pronounce, like a proper diphthong with the two sounds, the following monosyllables and other words:

*moi*,

<i>moi,</i>	I,	<i>faire,</i>	a fair,	<i>poison,</i>	poison,
<i>toi,</i>	thou,	<i>fois,</i>	time,	<i>une oie,</i>	a goose,
<i>soi,</i>	one's self,	<i>voir,</i>	to see,	<i>miroir,</i>	looking-glass,
<i>quoi,</i>	what,	<i>soin,</i>	care,	<i>mouchoir,</i>	handkerchief,
<i>roi,</i>	king,	<i>soir,</i>	evening,	<i>mademoiselle,</i>	miss,
<i>loi,</i>	law,	<i>joie,</i>	joy,	<i>écritoire,</i>	an ink-horn,
<i>foi,</i>	faith,	<i>pois,</i>	peas,	<i>devoir,</i>	duty,
<i>bois,</i>	wood,	<i>poids,</i>	weight,	<i>recevoir,</i>	to receive,
<i>choix,</i>	choice,	<i>poix*,</i>	pitch,	<i>Je reçois,</i>	I receive,
<i>voix,</i>	voice,	<i>moitié,</i>	half,	<i>concevoir,</i>	to conceive,
<i>croix,</i>	cross,	<i>poitrine,</i>	breast,	<i>appercevoir,</i>	to per-
<i>foie,</i>	liver,	<i>poisson,</i>	fish,		ceive, &c.

\* *poix* is not pronounced like *pois* or *poids*, but as if it was spelt *paix*.

*oi* takes only the sound of *o* short in *poignet* wrist, *poignée* hand-ful, *poignard* a dagger, and *poignarder* to stab, *coignée* a hatchet, and *coigner* to knock (when these two last are spelt with *i*).

*ois* takes the most resonant sound of *è* grave in the following names of nations and countries :

*Anglois,* English, *Milanois,* Milanese, *Nivernois,*  
*François,* French, *Liennois,* of Lyons, *Soissonnois,*  
*Ecossois,* Scotch, *Béarnois,* of Bearn, *Ferrarois* (inhabitants  
*Irlandois,* Irish, *Bourbonnois,* of provinces.)  
*Hollandois,* Dutch, *Charolois,*  
*Polonois,* Pole, *Orléannois,*

But it is sounded like the proper diphthong *oè* in

*Bavarois,* of Bavaria, *Chinois,* Chinese, *Génevois,* of Geneva,  
*Danois,* Dane, Danish, *Suédois,* Swede, Swe- *Gaulois,* a Gaul,  
*Hongrois,* Hungarian, dish, *Carthaginois,* a Car-  
*Liégeois,* of Liege, *Hèssois,* Hessian, thaginian,  
*Siamois,* of Siam, *Genois,* of Genoa,  
*Crétois,* *Navarrois,* *Angoumois,* *Beaujodois,*  
*Japonois,* *Arragonois,* *Champenois,* *Condomois,*  
*Iroquois,* *Narbonnois,* *Piémontois,* *Vermandois,*  
*Moroquois,* le *Modénois,* le *Blésois,* *Rhételois,*  
*Hibernois,* le *Barrois,* l'*Auxerrois,* *Valois,*  
*Vaudois,* *Crémontois,* *Agénois,* *Bazadois,*  
*Maltois,* *Albigeois,* *Artois,* *Bruxellois,*  
*Comtois,* *Rochelois,* *Valentinois*  
*Franc-Comtois,* *Rémois,* *Nantois,*  
*Dunois,* *Gatinois,* *Gantois,*

*Sénonois,*

*Senonais* and *Châlonais*, if ever used, as likewise all names of cities and towns in *France* ending in *oi*, *ois*, or *ois*, are pronounced like the proper diphthong *o-è*: as *Blois*, *Crois*, *Fois*, *Mirepois*, *Rois*, *Rois*, *Rocroi*, &c. But we say, *un Maloin*, and not *Malois* (of *St. Malo*), *un Lorrain* (of *Lorraine*); *un Prusse*, and *un Prussien*, a *Prussian*, *un Russe*, *un Ruffien*, and *un Moscovite*, a *Russian*, *un Suisse*, a *Swiss*, *un Croate*, a *Croatian*, &c.

Observe that *ois* in the proper name *François*, *Françoise*, *Francis*, is sounded *o-è*, like a proper diphthong, and not with one sound only as the noun or adnoun of the nation, *un François*, a *Frenchman*, *une Françoise*, a *French woman*.

*oit* takes the most resonant sound of broad and long *è* in *il paroît*, it appears, and *il connoît*, he knows, which are pronounced like the first persons *saurois*, *parois*, *connois*: every where else *oit* has the sound of *è* intermediate.

*ou* is sounded as *u* in *pull*; the French word *poule* a hen, being pronounced exactly like the English word *pull*. Nay the English have the same improper diphthong in *could*, *would*, *should*, *you*.

*ui* (improper diphthong) is found only in the words *vide* and *vuide* to empty, wherein *u* is quite lost. These words are now written and pronounced *vide* and *wider*.

*uei* and *eui* is found only before liquid *l*, and then it takes the first sound of *eu*; as in *recueil* a collection, *cueillir* to pick, *deuil* mourning, *feuillet* a leaf, &c.

### SECTION III.

#### Of Nasal Vowels.

BESIDES the vowels that have been considered in the first section, the *French* have five others derived from them; each of the vowels having its nasal one that answers it, and makes really a quite different vowel. (See the forms of those nasal vowels in the Tables.)

That difference of sounds which the English are at a loss how to express (tho' they are in their language except nasal *u* or *un*), consists only in being formed through the nose, from whence they

are called *nasal*; that is, in causing to pass through the nose, in expressing them, a part of the air driven by the lungs, instead of causing the whole to pass through the mouth.

*The nasal vowels with their corresponding sounds.*

<i>Nasal Vowels.</i>	<i>English words where the same sounds are expressed.</i>
an,	want.
en (after i) or	} length, strength. thank, saint. loving, doing, reading, &c. won't.
in and ain,	
in and im,	
on,	
un,	• • •

*a, e, i, o, u*, followed by *n* or *m*, take the nasal sound; or in other terms, *n* or *m* usually gives the nasal sound to the vowels which come before them: as, *an* year, *ambre* amber, *rien* nothing, *instruire* to instruct, *bon* good, *un* one. Except,

1<sup>st</sup>, In some proper names, as in *Amsterdam*, *Cham*, *Abraham*, though not in *Adam*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, When *n* and *m* are between two vowels; as in *animal*, *émeraude* an emerald, wherein each of these three letters *a, n, i*, and *e, m, e*, keeps its proper sound and articulation: whereas in *enfant* a child, *emploi* an employment, *rien* nothing, *en, am, em*, and *ien*, are nasal.

3<sup>dly</sup>, When *n* or *m* are followed by another *n* or *m*; for then the foregoing vowels *a, e, i, o*, are not sounded nasal, but keep their peculiar proper sounds; as *année* a year, *homme* a man, *bonne* good, *ennemi* an enemy: pronounce *a-née, -o-me, bo-ne, en-mi*; except that in *ennui* weariness, *emmener* to carry away, and in the beginning of like words that have more than two syllables, *en* and *em* are sounded like the nasal *an*. Thus pronounce *an-nui, am-mener*; but *condamner* to condemn, *enflammer* to enflame, *femme* a woman, *innocent* innocent, *innocence* innocence, *solemnel* solemn, *solemnité*, *indemniser* to indemnify, with *indemnité*, *bennir* to neigh, *bennissement* neighing, are pronounced *condané, anflamé, fame, innocent, solanel* *indamniser, indamnité, hanir, hanissement*.

In *Grammaire* a Grammar, and *Grammairien* a Grammarian, the first *a* is nasal; but it is not nasal (and therefore the double *m* is articulated) in *Grammatical* and *Grammaticalement*, *Grammatical*, &c. In *lemme* a lemma, and *dilemme* a dilemma, the first *e* is pronounced with the most resonant sound of *è grave (dileme)*.

In

In some few words the two *mm*'s or *nn*'s are articulated, as in *inflammation* inflammation, and *annotation* annotation.

Observe here, that the doubling of *m* in all adverbs derived from adnouns in *ent*, causes the foregoing *e* to be sounded as a short: as in *innocemment* innocently, from *innocent*; *ardemment* eagerly, from *ardent* eager; *prudemment* prudently, from *prudent* prudent, &c. pronounce *arda-ment*, *pruda-ment*, &c.

*en* and *em* before any other consonant but *n*, take the nasal sound of *an*: as *enfant* a child, *emploi* business; pronounce *anfan*, *anploi*; but to this rule there are three exceptions.

1<sup>st</sup>, In the syllable *ien* not ending with *t* in its original or root: as *rien* nothing, *tu viens* thou comest, *il tient* he holds. I say not ending with *t* in its original, or root: for *viens*, *tient*, and their compounds *il convient*, *il soutient*, &c. being derived from their first persons *je viens* I come, *je soutiens* I maintain, the final *t* serves only to characterise the third person of the singular that keeps the same sound as the first, which I call here its *original* or *root*. Whereas *ent* is sounded *ant* in *Orient* East, *patient*, patient, &c. because of *t* ending the last syllable of these words which are not derived from any other.

Observe all along what has been said several times before, that *ent* in the plural of verbs, far from taking any nasal sound, is quite dropt like *e* not sounded; as *ils disent* they say, pronounce *il dise*: and you may know that a word, the last syllable whereof ends in *ent*, is the third person plural of a verb, and therefore that *ent* is not sounded, when the *e* of the *penultima*, or the syllable coming before (when 'tis *e*) has or should have either the grave accent or the intermediate one, as in *ils différent* they differ, *ils précédent* they go before: whereas in the adnouns *différent* different, and *précédent* foregoing, the accent acute of the *penultima* shews that the last syllable is sounded with the nasal sound of *an*. Again, the third persons plural of verbs have always the pronouns *ils*, *elles*, or a noun plural before them, which the other words ending with *ent* have not.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *en* is pronounced *ein* or *ain*, in *Benjamin*, *Agen*, *benjoin*, *placenta*, *agenda*, and *commensurable*, as likewise when it is preceded by *é* (or at the end of words in *éen*), as in *Europé-en*, *Gallilé-en*, &c.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *en* and *em* keep the peculiar sound and articulation of *e* and *n* and *m* in foreign words, and such as have passed entire from the *Latin* and *Greek* languages into *French*, both in the middle and end of words; as *abdomen*, *amen*, *examen* examination, *bem*,

item, *Hymen*, *Jérusalem*, *Masusalem*, *Bimédocès*, *Agamémnon*, &c. but in *Encyclopédie*, *enclitique*, and *nomenclature*, &c. *en* keeps the nasal sound of *ai*. *Mentor* is pronounced *Maintor*.

Observe, moreover, that the proper sound of *e* nasal (*en*) is not (as one might happen to mistake it) the same as that of *a* nasal (*an*), but that which is in *rien*; *e* having two nasal sounds, which must be carefully distinguished from one another, according to the aforesaid observations.—The true sound of *e* nasal is never found in the beginning of words, but only in the middle and end, and after *i*; as *bien* well, *il vient* he comes, *je viendrai* I'll come: whereas in *enfant*, and *entendre*, *en* takes the sound of *a* nasal. The true sound of *e* nasal is in the words of the second observation just mentioned, *Benjamin*, *Agén*, *benjoin*, &c.

The nasal *in* and *im*, which (as has been said in the paragraph of *i*) express a sound like that in the English termination *ing*, take also the sound of *ain* and *en* in *rien*; but in *in* and *im*, beginning a word, are pronounced with their proper nasal sounds *in* and *im*, which one must take care not to mistake for the other nasal sound of *ain* or *ein*. Thus pronounce *imbu* imbued, *inhumain* inhuman, with the proper sound of *i* nasal, and not as if it was spelt *almbu*: but pronounce *Indes*, as if it was spelt *aindes*. The true and proper sound of nasal *in* and *im* are found only in the beginning of words, never in the middle nor end. *Inde* and *Indien* are the only words excepted. (See further what has been said concerning the letter *i*.)

In final *im* and *in*, *m* and *n* are articulated in *interim*, and all foreign names, as *Ibrahim*, *Sélim*, *Ain*, the desert of *Sin*, &c.

There is hardly any thing to observe about the nasal *un* but its sound, the only nasal French sound that is not in English: it is in the French words *parfum* perfume, *chacun* every one.

But *um* and *un* are pronounced like the nasal *on* in *factum*, as also in some proper names, as *Humbert*, *Dunkerke*; and like *omme* in these two Latin words frenchified, *opium* and *Te Deum*.

But concerning the spelling of those nasal vowels observe, that as to the choice between the several combinations serving to the same sound, *m* is always used before *b*, *p*, *m*, and *n* before the other consonants; as *ambassade* an embassy, *emploi* an employment, *immolé* sacrificed, *symbolique* symbolical, *tomber* to fall, *humble* humble; *antimoine* antimony, *endormi* sleepy, *intérieur* inward, *songe* dream, &c.

Again, *ant* is consecrated to the gerunds, and *ent* to the nouns and adverbs.

## SECTION IV.

## Of Consonants.

b.

**B** always keeps the same articulation as in English, except that before *s* and *t* it sounds pretty near *p*; as *observer* to observe, *obtenir* to obtain. Pronounce *opserver*, *optenir*.

*b* is found at the end of these three words only, *plomb* lead, *romb de vent* (a sea-term), and *radoub* the refitting of a ship. It is not founded in *plomb*; but it is in *romb* and *radoub*, as also in foreign names; as *Achab*, *Jeb*, *Caleb*, &c.

*b* is hardly doubled but in these two words, besides foreign names, *abbé* an abbot, and *Sabbat*, wherein *bb* is pronounced only like *b*; but the two *b*'s are strongly articulated in *abbatial*, *Sabbatique*, *Barabbas*, and other foreign names.

c.

*c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the improper diphthong *ai*, and the consonants *l*, *r*, *t*, denotes the articulation marked in the table, which is properly that of *k*; but before *e* and *i*, it takes the hissing articulation of *s*; *camard* a flat-nosed man, *cochon* a hog, *cure* a cure, *caisse* a chest; *céder* to yield, *civil* civil; *clou* nail, &c. pronounce *kamar*, *koshon*, *kaïsse*, *cure*; *sédé*, *civil*; *klou*, &c. It takes also the hissing sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when there is a dash under it thus (*ç*); as in *força* he forced, *garçon* a boy, *reçu* received; pronounce *garson*, *ressu*, *força*, &c.

*c* is kept in the word *contracter* to contract, tho' left out in the root *contrat* contract. It is likewise dropt, as well as *t*, at the end of *instinct* instinct, and *succinct*, and in *succinctement* succinctly, when spelt with *c* before *t*. It is quite turned out of *bienfaiteur* benefactor, and *bienfaitrice* benefactress. It is preserved still in *amict* (a sort of vestment), but without being articulated.

*c* takes the articulation of *g*, especially in conversation, in *Claude* Claudius, and *Claudine*, *Czar* and *Czarine*, *second* second, *seconde* secondly, *seconder* to second, to assist, *secret* secret, *secretement* secretly, *secrétaire* a secretary, *secrétariat* a secretary's office or place; and in the second syllable of *cicogne* stork.

Therefore pronounce *Glaude, Gzar, segon, secondé, segret, sigogne.*

*c* is pronounced in *respect*, only at the end of a sentence, or before a word beginning with a consonant; and the second *e* has the intermediate sound of *e*; as *sans respect* without any respect, *le respect que je lui dois* the respect which I owe him; pronounce *sans respèc, le respèc que je lui dois.* When the next word begins with a vowel, *c* likewise is articulated, but not the final *t*; as *portez respect à qu'il est du*, respect or reverence your betters: pronounce *respè ka qui, &c.* and in the plural (*respects*) *es* are altogether mute, the final *s* being not articulated even before a vowel: but *e* has the most resonant sound of *e* grave; as *présentez mes respects à madame*, present my respects to my lady; pronounce *mes respè à madame.*

In *lacs* nets, *c* is mute; but it is articulated when that word signifies *lakes*, and *a* is not broad.

*c* is articulated at the end of words, as *roc* a rock, *sac* a sack, *avec* with, &c. Except, *ist*, in *un sac de blé*, a sack of wheat, though it is articulated in *un sac de farine, &c.*

2dly, At the end of the following words, *aecroc* a rent, *almanach* an almanack, *arsenic* arsenic, *broc* a large jug, *cognac* marmalade of quinces, *clerc* a clerk, *croc* a hook, *estomac* stomach, *tabac* tobacco, *marc* (weight of eight ounces, or the gross substance that remains of any thing strained), and *porc* pork. But in *porc-épic* porcupine, *c* is articulated at the end of *porc*, and not at the end of *épic*; as also in *Marc* (a proper name), and in *croc-en-jambe*, the tripping up one's heels.

3dly, At the end of such words as have a nasal vowel before *c*: as *banc* bench; *donc* then, in the middle of a sentence; *il convainc* he convinces. Except *blanc* white, and *franc* free, when before a conjunctive beginning with a vowel; as *du blanc au noir*, going upon extremes, *franc arbitre* free-will, *franc alleu* free-hold, allodial lands: pronounce *fran-kalleu, du blanc kau noir, &c.* but pronounce *ban, don, convain*, and other like words ending in *c*, without articulating final *c*: unless in reading verses, when the next word begins with a vowel. Except also *donc* beginning a sentence, which is a consequence drawn from two or more premises; as *donc vous vous imaginez*, therefore you think, &c.

*c* doubles in the beginning of words between the vowels *a, o, u*, when one of them begins the word, and *l* or *r* comes between the consonant and the latter vowel; as also when this last makes a diphthong jointly with another; as may be seen in *accabler* to overcharge,

overcharge, *accommoder* to fit, *accumuler* to heap up, *occurrence* emergency, *acclamation* acclamation, *accrédité* in authority, *accroissement* increase, *accoucher* to lay in, *accueillir* to make welcome, &c.

Except in *acabit* good or bad taste in fruit, *acante* bears-foot, *acariâtre* peevish, *âcre* acrid, *acrimonie* acrimony, *ocre* oker, *acrostiche* acrostick, *académie* academy, with their derivatives.

After *e* and *i*, *c* is always single; as in *écarter* to scatter, *écouter* to hearken, *écolier* a scholar, *écume* the scum, *écrevisse* a crawfish, *iconoclaste*.

Double *c* is pronounced only before *e* and *i*, the first with the articulation of *k*, and the other with the hissing articulation of *s*; as in *accident* accident, *accélérer* to accelerate, *succéder* to succeed: pronounce *ak-sidan*, *ak-sêléré*, *suk-sédé*. But the two *c*'s are always articulated in proper names, as in *Accaron*.

#### d.

*d* is not articulated, nor even written now-a-days in *amiral* admiral, *amirauté* admiralty, *blé* wheat, and *Piémont* Piedmont.

*d* final is articulated only, first, at the end of *sud* south, and foreign words, as *Ephod*, *David*, &c.

2dly, At the end of the word *fond*, in this expression only, *de fond en comble*, utterly to the ground; of *quand* when, before pronouns of the third person; and of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: as *grand esprit*, great wit, *grand homme*, a great or tall man, *quand il* or *elle* parle, when he or she speaks, *quand on* dit, when they say: in which cases final *d* has the articulation of *t*; *quan ton* di, *gran* tespri, *de fon* tan comble, *gran* tome, *quan* tel parle.

3dly, At the end of the third person singular of verbs, but only when they are immediately followed by their pronouns subjective *il*, *elle*, *on*; as *prend-il* or *elle*, does he or she take? *répond-on*, do people answer? pronounce, articulating *d* like *t*, *répon-ton*, *pren-ti*: but do not pronounce *il répon* ten Norman for *il répond* en Norman, he answers like a Norman. Do not articulate *d* at all.

*d* before *re* in the infinitive of verbs (*dre*), is cut off in the two persons singular of the present of the indicative in polysyllables, but it is kept in monosyllables, except in these same persons of *plaindre* to pity, *craindre* to fear, and *joindre* to join. Thus write *je vends*, *tu vends*, from *vendre* to sell; *je défens*, *tu défens*, from *défendre* to defend; *je répons*, from *répondre* to answer, &c. but

write *je plains, tu plains; je crains, tu crains; je joins, tu joins*; instead of *je plains, je crains, je joins*.

*d* is double in some words derived from the Latin only; as *addition* addition, *reddition* reddition, wherein the two *d*'s are articulated.

*f* is articulated at the end of words; as *chef* chief, *vif* alive, *soif* thirst, *suif* tallow, *bœuf* an ox, *nerf* sinew, &c. Except, 1<sup>st</sup>, in *chef-d'œuvre* a master-piece of work, *clef* a key, *cerf* a stag, and at the end of *apprentif* an apprentice, and *bailif* bailiff, which are now-a-days spelt *apprenti*, *bailli*. 2<sup>dly</sup>, At the end of these words in the plural number, *bœuf* an ox, *neuf* new, and *œuf* egg; as *des bœufs* oxen, *des habits neufs* new coats, *des œufs à la coque* eggs in the shell; *un nerf de bœuf* a bull's pizzle; but pronounce with the articulation of *f* *de la corne de cerf*, hart's horn.

*f* is articulated at the end of *neuf* nine, when that word of number is alone, or at the end of a sentence; as *j'en ai neuf*, I have got nine. But when in a sentence *neuf* is followed by a word beginning with a consonant, as *neuf guinées*, or *neuf livres sterling*, nine guineas or pounds sterling, *f* final is not articulated at all: and when it is followed by a vowel, as *neuf écus* nine crowns, *neuf ans* nine years, *f* takes the soft articulation of *v*. Therefore pronounce, *neu guinées*, *neu vécus*, *neuv an*.

*f* doubles after the vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, and the syllables *di* and *su* in the beginning of words; but double *f* is only articulated like single *f*, as in *affaire* an affair, *affront* affront, *effroi* fright, *effet* effect, *offense* an offence, *office* an office, *diffamant* defaming, *différent* different, *difficile* difficult, *diffus* prolix, *suffisant* sufficient, *suffrage* vote, &c.

Except in *afin* to the end that, *basouer* to abuse, *café* coffee, *défense* defence, *réforme* reform, *refaire* to do again.

*g*.  
This consonant has three different articulations, all included in the word *gagnages* (a hunting term which signifies the ploughed grounds where cattle and deer are used to feed).

*g* immediately before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the improper diphthong *ai*, and consonants except *n*, takes an articulation very near like *k*, except that it is not quite so hard. Nay, in *gangrene* gangrene, the first *g* is articulated quite like *k*; and very likely this word will be spelt in time with *c*, as it is pronounced; as has been the

case

case with others. — There are two different articulations of *g* expressed in the word *Gregory*: the others are in *garni* garnished, *gorge* throat, *aigu* acute, *cargaison* a cargo, &c.

*g* before *e*, and *i*, *ea*, *eo*, and *eu*, denotes the articulation of *j* consonant; as *manger* to eat, *régir* to rule, *mangeons* let us eat, *il jugea* he judged, *gageure* a wager; pronounce *manjé*, *juja*, *gajur*, &c. *e*, in the improper diphthongs, serving only to give *g* the articulation of *j* which falls upon *a* or *o*, it being quite dropt before these two vowels, as has been already said, except it is marked over with an accent, as in *géant*.

When after *g* there follows *u*, followed too by another vowel, *g* keeps its hard articulation (in English *ghee*), which falls not upon *u*, that is then quite dropt, and serves only (as Dr. Wallis says) to make *g* a palate letter, but upon the following vowel; as in *guérir* to cure, *guide* a guide, *anguille* an eel: pronounce *ghéri*, *ghid*, *anghille*. Except in *aiguille* needle, *aiguïser* to whet; and their derivatives; *ciguë* hemlock, *contiguë* contiguous, *ambiguë* ambiguous, and *ambiguïté* ambiguity, *arguer* to argue, *Guïse* and *Guïde* (proper names). In which case two dots are put over the vowel that follows *u*, to shew that the articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, which is drawn out upon the account of the final *e* not being sounded: whereas, when that *e* is not marked over with two dots, as in *figue*, *vogue*, &c. *g* has no other articulation than that of the final *g* in the English word *fig*: the English have the same syllable and articulation in *fatigue*, *vogue*, *plague*, &c.

*g* is not articulated in *doigt* finger, *legs* legacy, *vingt* twenty.

*gh* is articulated like *gu* in these proper names *Bergben*, and *le Ghilan*.

*gn* expresses a certain liquid articulation like that of *n* between two *i*'s in English (*minion*), as in *mignon* delicate, *digne* worthy, *compagnon* companion, *régner* to reign. Except in *agnat* and *agnation*, *cognat* and *cognition*, *bagnauder* and *bagnaudier*, *Gnidien*, *Gnome*, *Gnomonique*, *Gnostique*, *magnésie*, *magnétisme*, *régnicole*, *Progné*, and other proper names, wherein *g* and *n* keep each their proper articulation.

*g* at the end of words is not articulated; except, 1<sup>st</sup>, in *zig-zag*, and at the end of proper and foreign names: as *Agag*, *Sarug*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, In these expressions, *fuér sang* & *eau*, to labour with might and main, *le sang* & *le carnage*, the blood and slaughter, *long espace*, a long space; and at the end of the words *sang* blood, *rang*

*rang* rank, *joug* yoke, only in repeating verses when the next word begins with a vowel : in which cases *g* is quite articulated like *k*. Therefore pronounce *san ké eau*, *un lon késpace*, *le san ké*, *le karnage*.

Double *g* is always pronounced, as in *suggérer* to suggest ; except however in *aggrave*, *aggraver*, and *réaggrave* : but it is not an easy matter to determine when *g* is double, and when it is single.

### *h.*

*h* in the beginning and middle of words, is either *aspirated*, or *not aspirated*; that is, either it is pronounced with a hard aspiration, as in *best*, *hunting*, or not pronounced at all, as in *hour*, *honour* : for, strictly speaking, *h* is no letter, but only a mark of aspiration, though not always so in our modern languages.

In order to know in what cases *h* must be aspirated, and when it must not be heard at all, French Grammarians have laid for a constant principle, that the words beginning with *h*, that are derived from Latin, in the beginning of which Latin words there is also *h*, have that *h* not aspirated ; and that, on the contrary, *h* is aspirated in words merely French, and by no means derived from Latin. Thus *honneur* honour, being derived from the Latin word *honor*, beginning with *h*, you must pronounce without *h*, and write with the elision *l'honneur*, and not *le honneur* : *haut* is indeed derived from *altus* ; but as there is no *h* in the Latin word, you must pronounce it hard in French, and read with aspiration *en haut* up, and not *en nhaut* ; *la hauteur* the height, and not *l'hauteur* : *honte* shame, is not derived from Latin ; therefore you must pronounce with aspiration, and write without elision *la honte*, and not *l'onte*, nor *l'honte*.

From French words derived from Latin, beginning with *h*, wherein however *h* is aspirated, seven are excepted ; *héros* (though *h* is not aspirated in its derivatives *héroïne*, *héroïque*), &c. *bennir* to neigh, *bennissement* neighing, *harpie* a harpy, *hargneux* morose, *haleter* to breathe short, *hareng* herring. And from words merely French, or derived from Latin words not beginning with *h*, wherein however *h* is not aspirated, eight also are excepted : *hermine* an ermin, *hermite* an hermit, *huit* eight (with its derivatives), *huitre* oyster, *huile* oil, *huis* a door, *huissier*, usher, and *hièble* wallwort.

This observation, though ever so infallible, being of no use to youth, and especially to young ladies, who oftentimes prove the best French scholars, I will, for their sake, make, at the end of

this treatise, an exact list of all the words of the language wherein *b* is to be aspirated, and wherein it is not. You must only observe here,

1<sup>st</sup>, That *b* is not aspirated in the middle of words, or in compound words, when it is not aspirated in the beginning of the simple; as *honneur, honorer, déshonneur, déshonorer*, to dishonour; pronounce *onorer* and *désonoré*. On the contrary, as it is aspirated in the beginning of *hardi* bold, it must be so too in *hardiment* boldly, and *enhardir* to embolden; except in the word *exhausser* to raise higher, which is pronounced as *exaucer* to grant, though being derived from *haut*.—*b* in *trahir* to betray, *trahison* betraying, *envahir* to invade, and other like words not compound, is left out also in the pronunciation, and serves only to cause both the vowels to be sounded as two distinct syllables (*tra-ir*).

2<sup>dly</sup>, That *b* is aspirated in the plural of the word *Henri* (*les Henris*), as likewise in its derivative *la Henriade*, in *Hesse*, and in *Hollande, Hongrie*, when these words have not the particle *de* before them; for when they follow that particle, *b* is not aspirated. Thus, though we say *la Hollande & la Hongrie*, and not *l'Hollande & l'Hongrie*, yet we say *de la toile d'Hollande* Holland cloth, *du fromage d'Hollande* Dutch cheese, *la Reine d'Hongrie* the Queen of Hungary, *du vin d'Hongrie* wine of Hungary, and not *la Reine de Hongrie, du fromage de Hollande*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Though *b* is not aspirated in *huit* eight, not in its derivatives, *huitième* eighth, *huitain* (a stanza of eight verses), and *huitaine* (a space of eight days), yet we don't say or write with the elision *l'huit, l'huitième*, as we do *l'huile, l'huitre*; but *le huit, le huitième, la huitaine, &c.* as if *b* was aspirated.

*b* following *c* (*ch*) answers the English *sh*, and expresses the same articulation; as *chats* cats, *chérir* to cherish, *chiffre* cypher, &c. pronounce as in English *shaw, shiff, &c.* We now-a-days write as we pronounce *colère* anger, *colique* colick, *caractère* character without *b*; but we write still *chaos* chaos, to distinguish it from *cabot* jolt.

But the difference is however to be observed in regard to the pronunciation of the following words derived from Greek and Hebrew, as some being pronounced according to the proper articulation of *ch*:

<i>Achéen,</i>	Achean,	<i>Cbimie,</i>	Chymistry,
<i>Achéron,</i>	Acheron,	<i>Cbimiste,</i>	Chymist,
<i>Achille,</i>	Achilles,	<i>Chirurgie,</i>	Surgery,
<i>Alchimie,</i>	Alchymistry,	<i>Chirurgien,</i>	Surgeon,
<i>Alchimiste,</i>	Alchymist,	<i>Eustochie,</i>	Eustochium,
<i>Antioche,</i>	Antioch,	<i>Eutyche,</i>	Eutyche,
<i>Archidame,</i>	Archidamus,	<i>Eutychéen,</i>	
<i>Archipel,</i>	Archipelago,	<i>Eschyle,</i>	Eschyle,
<i>Achitophel,</i>	Achitophel,	<i>Eschines,</i>	Eschines,
<i>Anarchie,</i>	Anarchy,	<i>Ezéchiâs,</i>	Ezechiah,
<i>Anchise,</i>	Anchises,	<i>Ezéchiël,</i>	Ezechiel,
<i>Archevêque,</i>	Archbishop,	<i>Hierarchie,</i>	Hierarchy,
<i>Archidiacre,</i>	Archdeacon,	<i>Joachim,</i>	Joachim,
<i>Archiprêtre,</i>	Archpriest,	<i>Malachie,</i>	Malachi,
<i>Archiduc,</i>	Archduke,	<i>Machiavel,</i>	Machiavel,
<i>Archiduché, with</i>		<i>Manichéen,</i>	Manichean,
<i>Archiduchesse,</i>	Archduchess,	<i>Melchisédec,</i>	Melchisedeck,
<i>Archimède,</i>	Archimedes,	<i>Michée,</i>	Micah,
<i>Architecte,</i>	Architect,	<i>Michel,</i>	Michael,
<i>Archives,</i>	Records,	<i>Monarchie,</i>	Monarchy,
<i>Bacchique, belonging to</i>	Bacchus,	<i>Patriarche,</i>	Patriarch,
<i>Barachie,</i>	Barachius,	<i>Psychee,</i>	Psyche,
<i>Chérubin,</i>	Cherubim,	<i>Rachel,</i>	Rachel,
<i>Chéronée,</i>	Cheronea,	<i>Schisme,</i>	Schism,
<i>Cacoehyme, ill-complexioned,</i>		<i>Sichée,</i>	Sicheus,
<i>Chyle,</i>	Chyle,	<i>Tétrarchie,</i>	Tetrarchy,
<i>Chiron,</i>	Chiron,	<i>Trochisque,</i>	
<i>Colchide,</i>	Cholchis,	<i>Tychique,</i>	Tychicus,
<i>Chimère,</i>	Chimæra,	<i>Zachée,</i>	Zaccheus.

But *ch* is articulated like *k* in the following words, and all other foreign names, which therefore should be better spelt with *k*, especially if we consider what an idle letter *k* is in the French.

<i>Achaïe,</i>	Achaia,	<i>Archéarnasse,</i>	Archearnassus,
<i>Achéloüs,</i>	Achelous,	<i>Archeſtratus,</i>	Archeſtratus,
<i>Antiochus,</i>	Antiochus,	<i>Archiépiscopal,</i>	Archiepiscopal,
<i>Archélaüs,</i>	Archelaus,	<i>Archiépiscopat,</i>	Archbishoprick,
<i>Achilous,</i>	Achilous,	<i>Archigènes,</i>	Archigenes,
<i>Archétype,</i>	Archetype,	<i>les Archontes</i>	Archontes,
<i>Archange,</i>	Archangel,	<i>Bacchus,</i>	
<i>Archangel,</i>	Archangel,	<i>les Bacchantes,</i>	Bacchantes,
			les

*les Baccénales*, *Bacchanals*, *Chœur*, *Chorus*, a *Choir*,  
*Charybde*, *Charybdis*, *Choriste*, *Chorist*,  
*les Charités*, *Charities*, *Chorographie*, *Chorography*,  
*Charon*, (the ferryman of hell); *Dyrbachium*, *Dyrbachium*,  
 for *ch* is sounded like *sh* in *un*; *Echinades*, *Echinades*,  
*charon*, a cartwright. *Epicharme*, *Epicharmus*,  
*Chélidoine*, *Celandine*, *Exarchat*, *Exarchat*,  
*Cham*, *Cham*, *Echo*, *Echo*,  
*Chanaan*, *Canaan*, *Euchariste*, *Euchariste*, and  
*Chus*, *Chus*, *Euchariste*,  
*Calchas*, *Calchas*, *Leschès*, *Leschès*,  
*Chères*, *Ceres*, *Michol*, *Michol*,  
*Chélydre*, a water-snake; *Nabuchodonosor*, *Nebuchadnezzar*,  
*Charès*, *Charles*, *Orchestre*, *Orchestra*,  
*Charchédon*, *Charchedon*, *Pulchérie*,  
*Chosroès*, *Chosroes*, *Réhabite*,  
*Chabrias*, *Chabrias*, *Scholastique*, *Scholastic*,  
*Chérsonèse*, *Chersonesus*, *Scholaste*, *Scholast*,  
*Chio*, *Chio*, *Scholie*, *Scholium*,  
*Chiliarque*, *Chyliarchus*, *Synecdoche*, *Synecdoche*,  
*Chiromantie*, *Chyromancy*, *Tycho-Brahé*,  
*Choreb*, *Choreb*, *Zacharie*, *Zachariah*,  
 and the syllables in *chal* of foreign words become French; as  
*Monachal*, &c.

*ch* is pronounced in *catéchèse*, and *catéchisme* a catechism, and  
 it is articulated like *k* in *catéchumène*. We pronounce *machine* and  
*stomachique* French like, and *mécanique* and *stomachal*, Greek like,  
 when these words are spelt with *h*.

We now-a-days write *pascal*, instead of *paschal*.

*Chypre* Cyprus, is sometimes spelt and pronounced with *ch*,  
 and sometimes with *c* only, according to the circumstances of the  
 time spoken of; for if one speaks of something relating to an-  
 cient geography, one must spell and pronounce *l'île de Chypre*, the  
 island of Cyprus; and *l'île de Cypre*, if what one says relates to  
 modern geography. Therefore we always say *de la poudre de*  
*Chypre*, powder of Cyprus: as likewise

*Caton fut envoyé par le peuple Romain dans l'île de Chypre*,  
*Cato* was sent by the Roman people into the island of Cyprus.

*Les Turcs se rendirent maîtres de l'île de Chypre sous Sélim II.*  
 The Turks made themselves masters of Cyprus under Selim II.

*ch*,

*ch*, in common conversation, is articulated like *j* in *j'achète*, with the two other persons sing. of *acheter* to buy, and *revenge*. Pronounce *revenje*, *jajète*.

*ch* before *r* is articulated like *k* in *chrême* chrism, *Christ*, and other words beginning with *chr*, wherein it is pronounced as in English, *Christ*.

*lh* takes the liquid articulation of *l* in these two proper names, *Milhaut* and *Pardalbac*.

*h* after *p* (*ph*) is articulated like *f*, as in *philosophe* philosopher. But *ph* is no longer found, except in proper names, and some scientific words, as in *Phaëton*, *Philippe*, *Physicien*, *Pharmacie*, *Phénomène*, *Phtisie*, *Physionomie*: as to the others used in common discourse, they are spelt French like, in spite of their Greek derivation. Thus we write *fantaisie* fancy, *fantôme* a phantom, *faisan* a pheasant, *frénésie* phrensy, &c.

*h* after *r* or *t* is not pronounced at all: as *rhétorique* rhetorick, *thèse* thesis; pronounce *tèse*, *rétorique*.

*h* in *hiérarchie* is aspirated: it is not in *hiéroglyphe* and *hiéroglyphique*. We now write *Jérusalem*, *Jérôme*, *jacinthe*, instead of *Hiérusalem*, *Hiérôme*, *hyacinthe*.

Final *h* is found only at the end of *Auch* (a city in France), and some foreign and chiefly Hebraic words, wherein it is not pronounced; as in *Abimélech*, *Enoch*, &c. At the end of *Joséph*, it forms with *p* the sound of *f*. Pronounce *Joséf*, *Enoc*, &c. *ch* is dropt at the end of *almanach*: but *Auch* is pronounced *Aûche*.

In the interjections *ah*, *eh*, *oh*! *h* is sometimes pronounced with aspiration, as if it was the first letter.

*j.*

*j* consonant is of the same use in French as in English, but is articulated like *s* in the words *pleasure*, *leisure*, &c. It differs from the English *j*, in that one must express no articulation of *d* before, no more than before *g*, for these two consonants are pronounced in English with a double articulation.

*k.*

*k* is used in French only in the word *kyrielle*, which signifies, in familiar discourse, a long and grievous series of things in a story, and abusively formed from the litany *Kyrie eleison*. As to the foreign words wherein *k* is found, as in *Stockholm*, *k* is articulated as in English.

*l* is

## l.

*l* is not articulated in *fil* son; it is silent also in *quelque* some, *quelquefois* sometimes, and *quelqu'un* somebody, but only in conversation; though it is always pronounced in *quelconque*, any body whatever. Neither is it pronounced in *Chaulnes* (a proper name).

Double *l* is no otherwise articulated but as a single *l*, as in *molir* to soften, *sal*le a hall. Except in the following words, and when *i* comes before double *l* in the beginning of words, as *il-lustre* illustrious, *ill-égitime* illegal, &c.

<i>Allégorie,</i>	allegory,	<i>ébullition,</i>	ebullition,
<i>allusion,</i>	allusion,	<i>ellébore,</i>	ellebore,
<i>allision,</i>	allision,	<i>flagellation,</i>	scourging,
<i>appellatif,</i>	appellative,	<i>flageller,</i>	to scourge,
<i>Apollon,</i>	Apollo,	<i>Gallicane,</i>	Gallic,
<i>Bellone,</i>	Bellona,	<i>imbécillité,</i>	imbecility,
<i>belligérant,</i>	at war,	<i>intelligence,</i>	understanding,
<i>belliqueux,</i>	warlike,	<i>intelligent,</i>	intelligent,
<i>bellissime,</i>	extraordinary fine,	<i>intelligible,</i>	Intelligible,
<i>circonvallation,</i>	circumvallation,	<i>intellectuel,</i>	intellectual,
<i>collatéral,</i>	collateral,	<i>millénaire,</i>	millenary,
<i>collateur,</i>	one that has a living in	<i>millésime,</i>	the year or date of a
his gift,	medal,		
<i>collation,</i>	collation,	<i>Magellanique,</i>	Magellanic,
<i>collationner,</i>	but not in collation,	<i>nullité,</i>	nullity,
a meal, &c.		<i>Palladium,</i>	Palladium,
<i>colloquer,</i>	to rank,	<i>Pallas,</i>	
<i>colliger,</i>	to collect,	<i>pallier,</i>	to palliate,
<i>recolliger,</i>	to recollect, but not	<i>polluer,</i>	to pollute,
in <i>récollection,</i>		<i>Pollux,</i>	(and all proper names
<i>collusion,</i>	collusion,		spelt with double <i>l</i> .)
<i>collusoire,</i>	collusory,	<i>puffillanime,</i>	puffillanimous,
<i>constellation,</i>	constellation,	<i>puffillanimité,</i>	puffillanimity.

Therefore pronounce *il-lustre*, *il-légitime*, *Pal-las*, *bel-liqueux*, *intel-ligent*, *pel-licule*, &c. but pronounce *molir*, *sal*e, &c.

You may pronounce *syllogisme* a syllogism, as you please.

It is not therefore an easy matter to determine when *l* doubles in words. It may be said only in general for the adnouns, when the masculine ends in *l*, it is doubled in the feminine; but remains single, if the final *l* of the masculine is followed by a not sounded; as

M. *bel*\*, F. *belle*, handsome. M. *cruel*, F. *cruelle*, cruel.  
 M. *mol*\*, F. *molle*, soft. M. *fol*\*, F. *folle*, fool.  
 M. and F. *fidelle*, faithful, *tranquille* quiet, *utile* useful, *frivole*  
 frivolous, &c.

There is another exception for nouns in *il*, as *vil* vile, *subtil*  
 subtle, &c. in whose feminine *vile*, *subtile*, *l* is not doubled.

*i* before double *l* in the middle of words, denotes only the li-  
 quid articulation of *l*; as in *fille* a daughter, *filon* a furrow, ex-  
 cept in these words,

*Achille*, Achilles, *Gilles*, St. Giles, *Séville*, Seville,  
*argille*, clay, *imbécille*, feeble, an *syllabe*, a syllable,  
*armillaire*, armillary, idiot, *vacillant*, vaciller, &c.  
*camomille*, camomile, *mille*, a thousand (with reeling,  
*il distille*, he distils, its derivatives), *ville*, city, town,  
*idylle*, idyl, *pupille*, an orphan,

*l* takes the liquid articulation at the end of *Avril* April, *babil*  
 prattling, *béril*, *Brésil* Brasil, *grésil* (a sort of rime or hoar-  
 frost), *mil* millet, and *péril* peril; as likewise at the end of the  
 improper diphthongs *ail*, *eil*, *ueil*, *euil*, and *ouil*: as *de l'ail* gar-  
 lick, *mail* mall, *soleil* sun, *deuil* mourning, *fenoil* fennel; and in  
*gentilhomme* nobly descended: but *l* is quite dropt in the pronun-  
 ciation of the plural of that noun *gentils-hommes*, which is pro-  
 nounced *jantizom*.

Double *l* takes likewise the liquid articulation in these two pro-  
 per names *Nulli* and *Sulli*; as also *lh* in these two others, *Mil-  
 haut* and *Pardalbac*.

*l* is pronounced at the end of words; as *sel* salt, *fil* thread,  
*royal* royal; except, *l's*, in  
*baril*, barrel, *gentil*, genteel, *persil*, parsley,  
*chenil*, dog-kennel, *gril*, gridiron, *pouls*, pulse,  
*fil*, son, *nombril*, navel, *foul*, fuddled,  
*fillet*, god-son, *outil*, a tool, *sourcil*, eye-brow,  
*fusil*, a gun,

2dly, In the pronoun *il* before a consonant in common con-  
 versation, (nay *il* coming after its verb, don't articulate its *l* even  
 before a vowel); and in the plural *ils*, even before a vowel, and  
 final *s* before a vowel, is articulated like *z*: as *il dit* he says, *ils  
 ont fait* they have done, *parle-t-il-encore*? is he speaking still?  
 Pronounce *i di*, *i zon fai*, *parl ti enor*; but to avoid double  
 meanings, the best is to sound *l*: besides, in reading, it cannot  
 be silent. In the phrase *ainsi soit-il*, *l* must be articulated.

\* Old Masculines still used before nouns beginning with a vowel.

We now-a-days spell and pronounce *fou* for *fol* a fool, *fou* for *sol* a penny, *cou* for *col* a neck, and *moü* for *mol* soft. But we always spell and pronounce *sol* soil, *le col d'une chemise*, the neck of a shirt, as likewise when *col* signifies a *défilé*, or narrow passage between two hills; as *le col de Tende*, the straights of *Tend*; as also *le col de la vessie & de la matrice*, the neck of the bladder or *matrix*, and *un b mol*, a *b* flat in music.

We say, in terms of hawking, that *un oiseau a fait un beau vou* for *vol*, the bird has made a fine flight.

*m.*

*m* after a vowel, and followed by a consonant, serves, like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel; as *prompt* quick, *sembler* to seem; pronounce *pron*, *sambler*. Except,

1<sup>st</sup>, *amnistie* amnesty, *hymne* hymn, *Amsterdam*, and some other foreign words, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation, though followed by a consonant.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *immédiat* immediate, *immoler* to sacrifice, and all words beginning with *im* followed by another *m*, wherein both *m*'s must be articulated; pronounce *am-nistie*, *im-médiat*, *im-moler*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *om* followed by *m* is not nasal, but *o* keeps its slender and short sound, and the two *m*'s are pronounced only like a single one; as in *commun* common, *commander* to command, *commode* convenient, *sommer* to summon, &c. pronounce *comandé*, *comode*, &c. but articulate the double *m* in these four words; *commuer*, *commutation*, *commutatif*, and *incommuniquable*.

Neither is *am* nasal in *damner* to damn, nor in its derivatives *condamner* to condemn, &c. pronounce *dâner*.—*m* is articulated in *indemniser* to indemnify, and *indemnité* indemnity; but it causes the foregoing *e* to take the sound of slender *a* (*indam-nité*).—It is not articulated in *solemnel* solemn, though the foregoing *e* is sounded like *a* (*solanel*).

*m* at the end of words serves, like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel: as *nom* name, *parfum* perfume; pronounce *non*, *par-fun*. Except in the interjection *hem*, wherein *b* and *m* are articulated hard; in *item*, and in foreign words; as *Matusalem*, *Amsterdam*, *Stockholm*, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation; though at the end of *Adam*, and *Abfalom*, final *m* gives the preceding vowel the nasal sound; as also doth *n* at the end of *Salomon*.

*m* is commonly doubled after *im*, *com*, *gom*, *pom*, *hom*, *fom*, beginning a word; as *immense* immense, *comme* as, *commerce* trade,

F

*gomme*

*gomme* gum, *pomme* an apple, *sommet* the top, *homme* a man, *sommer* to summon, &c.

Except in these words, *comète* a comet, *comite* (an officer on board a galley), *comité* a committee, *comédie* a comedy, *comique* comical, *concomitance* concomitancy, *homogène* homogeneous.

*m* is also doubled in these six words, *dommage* damage, *femme* a woman, *lemme* a lemma, *dilemme* a dilemma, *nommer* to name, *nommément* namely.

Double *m* is articulated in foreign words, as *Ammoniac*, *Ammonite*, after the same manner as in French words beginning with *imm*, as *im-médiat* immediate, *im moler* to sacrifice, *im-mense*.

### *n.*

*n* keeps its peculiar and proper articulation (such as it is expressed in the English monosyllables *not* and *in*) 1<sup>st</sup>, when it begins a syllable, or is between two vowels, as in *nonagénaire* one fourscore and ten years old, *inimitié* enmity.

2<sup>d</sup>y, When *in*, beginning a word, is followed by another *n*; as in *innover* to make innovations: pronounce *in-nover*, *in-i-mitié*, &c. except *innocent* innocent (with its derivatives), which is pronounced as if it was spelt with a single *n*, *i-nocent*.

In all other cases *n* serves only to give the nasal sound to the foregoing vowel, as has been said in the third section about nasals: where we have seen, that *in* beginning a word, and followed by a vowel, is not nasal; *i* and *n* keeping each of them its peculiar sound and articulation, as in *inattention* want of attention, *inouï* unheard of, pronounce *i-nattention*, *i-nouï*.

*n* at the end of words is not pronounced before consonants; but as for those words beginning with a vowel, make these following observations:

*bien* well, and *rien* nothing, articulate in a particular manner their final *n* before a vowel, even in common and familiar discourse. Therefore pronounce

<i>bien néloquent,</i>	} for {	<i>bien éloquent,</i> very eloquent,
<i>bien n'étudier,</i>		<i>bien étudier,</i> to study well,
<i>ne rien n'apprendre,</i>		<i>ne rien apprendre,</i> to learn nothing,
<i>rien nau monde,</i>		<i>rien au monde,</i> nothing in the world.

But custom is against pronouncing final *n* in the noun *bien*, in the pronouns *mien*, *tien*, *sien*; in *vin* wine, *dessein* design, and *rien* before *ouï* heard. Therefore don't pronounce

<i>je n'ai rien noui dire,</i> <i>un dessein nadmirable,</i> <i>du vin nexcellent,</i> <i>le mien nest meilleur,</i> <i>un bien nà désirer,</i>	} but {	<i>rien ouï dire, I've heard nothing,</i> <i>dessein admirable, a marvellous design,</i> <i>du vin excellent, mighty good wine,</i> <i>le mien est meilleur, mine is better.</i> <i>bien à désirer, a thing to be wished for,</i>
---	---------	---

*en*, either proposition or pronoun relative, always articulates its *n* before a vowel ; as

<i>en un clin d'œil, in a trice,</i> <i>en entrant, as he went in,</i> <i>en êtes-vous sûr, are you sure of it?</i> <i>j'en ai dit assez, I've said enough on't.</i>	} pro-nounce {	<i>en nun clin d'œil,</i> <i>en nentrant,</i> <i>en nêtes-vous sûr,</i> <i>j'en nai dit assez.</i>
---	----------------	---

Except after the imperative ; as *donnez-en à tous*, give some to every body, and not *donnez en nà tous*. *Parlez-en encore*, not *en nencore*, speak of it again.

*on* always articulates its final *n* before a vowel, except in sentences of interrogation : as,

<i>on observe,</i> <i>on en peut être as-</i> <i>suré,</i>	} pronounce {	<i>on nobserve, it is observed,</i> <i>on nen peut, &amp;c. one may be sure</i> <i>of it.</i>
--	---------------	---

But when a question is asked, pronounce

<i>en peut on être sûr,</i> <i>apprend on avec joie,</i>	} and not {	<i>en peut-on nêtre sûr, can one be sure of it?</i> <i>apprend on navè joie, can one hear with</i> <i>gladness ?</i>
---	-------------	--

*un* articulates its *n* before its noun beginning with a vowel ; but never when it is a noun of number. Therefore pronounce *un narbre*, for *un arbre* a tree, *un nami*, for *un ami* a friend. But

*Il y en eut un assez hardi*, and not *un nassez hardi*, there was one so bold as to, &c. *n*, however, is articulated in this instance : *il n'y a qu'un homme*, there is but one man ; pronounce *un nome*.

As to the other final nasals, they articulate *n* before a vowel in all words, especially adnouns immediately followed by their nouns ; - as *d'un commun accord* unanimously, *mon âme* my soul, *certain auteur* a certain author, *ancien établissement* ancient establishment ; pronounce *mon nâme*, *commun naccord*, *certain nau-*  
*teur, &c.*

Nay *bon* and *divin* seem to lose entirely their nasal sounds before their nouns beginning with a vowel ; as *bon orateur* a good orator, *divin amour* divine love ; pronounce *bo norateur*, *divi namour* ;

as also *bien aise* very glad ; pronounce *biè-naïse*. — *Benin* benign, and *malin* malign, are seldom met with before nouns beginning with a vowel, except that *malin esprit* (an evil spirit) are construed together.

*n* is pronounced at the end of foreign words, or those derived from Latin ; *e* (as has been said) being not nasal in these words, *hymen*, *examen*, &c.

*n* is quite dropt in all the third persons of the plural number of verbs after *e* ; as *ils aiment* they love, *ils aimoient* they loved ; pronounce *izaime*, *izaimai* ; *nt* serving to make that syllable a little longer than it is in the third person singular ; *il aime* he loves, *il aimoit* he loved. That final *t* is articulated in repeating verses before the next word beginning with a vowel ; as *elles aiment à parler* they love speaking ; pronounce *el zaimè tà parler*.

We write now-a-days *couvent* a convent, and *Marmoutier*, instead of the old manner of *convent*, *Marmontier* (a proper name).

*n* is, of all consonants, that which is most frequently doubled in words, though it is single in a great many cases. Generally speaking, it don't double between two *o*'s. Thus we write with a single *n* *sonore* sonorous, *honorable* honourable, and *honorer* to honour, though we write with a double *n* *sonner* to ring, or resound, *honneur* honour, *honnête* honest, &c.

We most commonly double it in derivatives when the primitives end in *n* coming from *a*, *e*, *o* ; as *an*, *année* year, *le mien*, *la mienne* mine, *pardon* pardon, *pardonnable* what is to be forgiven, *occasion* occasion, *occasionner* to occasion, *marron* a horse-chestnut, *marronnier* a horse chestnut-tree, *savon* soap, *savonnette* a wash-ball, &c. But when that final consonant comes after *i* or *u*, or any diphthong, it remains single in the derivative ; as *badin* wanton, *badine* ; *fin* fine, *fine* ; *brun* brown, *brune* ; *soin* care, *soigner* to take care, &c.

Double *n* is pronounced in these words only, *annal* annal, *annexe* annexed thing, *annotation* annotation, *annuel* annual, *annuité* annuity, *annulaire* annular, *annuler* to annul, *inné* innate, *innover* to innovate, *connexité* connexion, *conniver* to connive, and their derivatives.

*p*.

*p* is not pronounced in *baptême* baptism, *baptiser* to christen, *baptistère*, and *baptiste* : but it is in *baptismal* and *baptismaux*. — It is not articulated in *sept* seven, but it is in its derivatives *septante* seventy, *septuagenaire* one seventy years old, and *septuagésime* septuagesima. — Neither is it pronounced by some people in

in

in *pseaume* psalm, *pseautier* psalter, nor in *psalmiste* psalmist, tho' it is in *psalmodie* psalmody, and *psalmodier* to sing.

*p* is likewise dropt in

<i>corps,</i>	body,	<i>manuscript,</i>	manu-	<i>sculpture,</i>	statuary,
<i>compte,</i>	account,	<i>script,</i>			with its deriva-
<i>compter,</i>	to reckon,	<i>prompt,</i>	quick,		tives, <i>sculpter</i> and
<i>exempt,</i>	free,	<i>promptitude,</i>	quick-	<i>sculpteur,</i>	
<i>exempter,</i>	to exempt,	<i>ness, promptement,</i>		<i>symp:ome,</i>	symptom,
		<i>quickly,</i>		<i>temps,</i>	time.

But *p* is pronounced in *dempter* to tame, *exemption*, *impromptu*, *accepter*, *redempteur*, *contemptible*.

*p* at the end of words is not articulated; as *drap* cloth, *loup* wolf, *champ* field, &c. Except these three, *cap* a cap, *Gap* (the name of a city); *julep* a julep; and the adverbs *beaucoup* much, and *trop* too much, before a word beginning with *el*; as *beaucoup aimé* much loved, *trop obligeant* too obliging; pronounce *dra*, *lou*, *tro poligeant*, *julep*, *Gap*, *cap*.

Good writers double *p* now-a-days in most words, only to preserve etymology: in proper names, as *Appius*, &c. it is sounded.

*q.*

*q* is always followed in words by *u* (*qu*) even before another *u*, and articulated like *k* or *c* in *call*; as *quatre* four, *quelque* some, *qui* who, *quintal*, *piquure* pricking, &c. pronounce *katr*, *key*, &c. but in *questeur* questor, *équestre* equestrian, *équiangle* equiangular, the first syllables of *Quinquagésime* Quinquagesima, *Quirinal*, *Quintilien*, *Quinte-Curce* Quintus Curtius, and the third of *ubiquiste*, with their derivatives, pronounce *ku esteur*, *écu-estre*, *cuincuagésime*, *ubicu-iste*: and in *aquatique* marshy, *quadragénaire* one forty years old, *quadragésime* quadragesima, *quadrature* quadrature, *quadruple* four-fold, *quadrupède* a quadruped, *équateur* æquator, *équation*, and the second syllable of *quinquagénaire* one fifty years old, and *quinquagésime*, *qua* is pronounced like *quoua*, or *kwa*. Therefore pronounce *akwatic*, *ekwateur*, *kwadratur*, &c. It is not amiss to observe here, that *ua* is likewise pronounced like *oua*, in *linguale*, *la Guadeloupe*, and *la Guadiane*.

*qu* followed by nasal *i* (*quin*), is pronounced in *Charles-quint*, Charles the fifth, and *Sixte-quint* Sixtus the fifth, like *Kent* without sounding the final *t*.

*q* takes the articulation of *g* hard in *souquenille* a frock, -as also in *Don Quixotte*, which is pronounced *Don Ghisbut*.

*q* is articulated like *k* at the end of *coq* a cock; but it is not pronounced in *coq d'Inde* a Turkey-cock, nor at the end of *cing* five, when in a sentence the next word begins with a consonant; but when *cing* comes before a vowel, or at the end of a sentence, final *q* is articulated, as in *coq*. Therefore pronounce *un coq*, *co-dinde*, *cin soldâ* for *cing soldats*, five soldiers, *cin kofficié* for *cing officiers*, five officers, *j'en ai cink* for *cing*, I have got five.

Pronounce also *cink* in *cing pour cent*, five per cent.

*r*.

*r* is not pronounced in common discourse, in *votre* your, *notre* our, *quatre* four; as also most times in *autre* other, immediately followed by their nouns beginning with a consonant. Thus pronounce *votre sœur* your sister, *notre maison* our house, *quatre guinées* four guineas, *un autre cheval* another horse. Otherwise, that is, when those words meet before a vowel, or alone, or at the end of a sentence, *r* is articulated; as, *c'est votre ami & le nôtre*, he is your friend and ours, *un autre ouvrage*, another work, *quatre écus*, four crowns, *il en a quatre*, he has four.—*r* is also pronounced in *Notre Dame*, Our Lady, and in the Lord's prayer, *Notre Père qui es aux Cieux*. Our Father which art in heaven.

Sometimes, in common conversation, *r* is not pronounced in the first syllable of *Mercredi* Wednesday, in the second of *chirurgien* a surgeon (though it is articulated in *chirurgie* surgery), and the last of *volontiers* willingly, (no more than the final *s*.) Pronounce *Mècredi*, *volontié*, *chirugien*, and *chirurgie*.—It is usually dropt, in common conversation, in *être* to be, before a word beginning with a consonant; as *il doit être convaincu que je l'estime*, he ought to be persuaded that I esteem him; pronounce *il doit ète convaincu*, &c. The ear only is to judge when *t* in *être* sounds too harsh, as in the aforesaid example.

*r* is articulated at the end of words, as *car* for, *bonheur* good fortune, *pur* pure, *avoir* to have, &c. Except,

1<sup>st</sup>, In *mon-sieur* sir, and its plural *messieurs* gentlemen, tho' it is articulated in *sieur* and *sieurs*; pronounce *mon-sien*, *messieu*, *le sieur*, *les sieurs*.

It is indifferent to articulate it or no in *sur*, and to pronounce *su la terre*, or *sur la terre*, upon the earth.

2<sup>dly</sup>, At the end of infinitives in *er*, even before a vowel, except in reading verses; as *chanter* to sing, pronounce *chanté un air*, to sing an air.

3<sup>dly</sup>, At the end of nouns in *er*; as *danger* danger. (See in the

the paragraph of *é* acute, what concerns those words and their exceptions.)

*r* doubles after *a, e, o*; as in *arracher* to pluck out, *guerre* war, *horrible* horrid; except in some words, as *araignée* a spider, *aride* dry, *mère* mother, *sonore* sonorous. It is doubled also in *résurrection*: but the two *r*'s are articulated only in *Corréridor*, *corroder* to corrode, *corrosif* corrosive, *corroboratif* corroborative, *corroborer* to corroborate; *errant*, *errata*, *errer*, and *erreur*; *horreur* (though not in *horrible*, &c.) *irrégulier*, &c. *irreligion*, *irrésolu*, and in all words beginning with *ir* followed by another *r*; as likewise in the future and conditional tenses of *courir* and *mourir*. Therefore pronounce *courrois*, *mourra*, snoring half a dozen of *r*'s between your teeth.

s.

This letter has two articulations. *s* in the beginning of words, and in the middle before a vowel, and after a consonant, expresses the same articulation as *s* in *so* and *slow* (which articulation I shall call the hissing articulation of *s*), as *si* if, *persécuter* to persecute, &c. Except in these five words, *Alsace*, *balsamine*, *balsamique*, *balsan* and *balsane*. And when it is between two vowels, it has the articulation of *z*; as also at the end of the preposition *trans* followed by a vowel; as in *transaction* transaction, *oser* to dare, *baïser* to kiss; pronounce *âzé*, *baïzé*, *tranzaction*.

Double *s* between two vowels, denotes only the hissing articulation of *s*; as *baïsser* to stoop, *ressort* a spring, &c. — *s* in the following words keeps its hissing articulation, though between two vowels, because, they being compounds, it is considered as if it was in the beginning of the simples:

<i>Melchisedech</i> ,	<i>resaisir</i> ,	to seize again,
<i>monosyllable</i> ,	<i>monosyllable</i> ,	<i>tournesol</i> ,
<i>polysyllable</i> ,	<i>polysyllable</i> ,	<i>vraisemblable</i> ,
<i>préséance</i> ,	precedence,	<i>vraisemblablement</i> ,
<i>parasol</i> ,	an umbrella,	<i>vraisemblance</i> ,
<i>présupposer</i> ,	to presuppose,	

Pronounce *préséance*, &c. whereas it is pronounced with the soft articulation of *z* in *réserver* to reserve, *résister* to resist, and *présumer* to presume, though these words are compounds, because their simples are not in use.

*sc* are articulated before *a, o, u*, and any consonant, as in *scapulaire* scapulary, *scorpion* scorpion, *scrupule* a scruple: but before

*e* and *i*, or when *c* has a dash under it (*ſç*), they take the hissing articulation of *s*, as *ſcience* science, *ſceau* seal, *ſçavoir* to know, (old manner of writing that verb).

*s* is not pronounced in the beginning of *ſchiſme* schism, nor in its derivatives; pronounce *chiſme* and *ſchiſmatique* a schismatic. But it is articulated in *ſcholaſtique* scholaſtic, *ſcholiaſte* ſcholiaſt, and *ſcholie*, when theſe words are ſo ſpelt.

*s* at the end of words is not pronounced, even before a vowel; as *un bras eſtropié*, a maimed arm; pronounce *bra eſtropié*. Except,

1ſt, In, *un as* an ace, *l'as de pique* the ace of ſpades, *un ours* a bear, *une vis* a ſcrew, and *le cens* (cenſus); but not in *deux*, *trois*, &c. *cens* two or three hundred.

2dly, At the end of foreign words and proper names, as *Aloës*, *Fabius*, *Véhus*, *Daphnis*, *Cérès*, *Pallas*, *Eſdras*, *Joſias*, &c. except *Barnabas*, *Judas*, *Lucas*, *Mathias*, and *Thomas*. It is likewise pronounced in theſe Latin words become French, *ânus*, *agnus*, *bis*, *bibus*, *bolus*, *blocus*, *calus*, *ſœtus*, *iris*, *gratis*, *orémus*, *phœbus*, *rébus*, *ſinus*, *virus*, (but not *chaos*), at the end of which *s* is pronounced with its hisſing articulation.—*s* is articulated in *Mars*, the name of the God of war. It is pronounced in *Themis des Jacobus*, (but not in *des Carolus*). It is articulated at the end of *Rheims*, *Sens*, and *Senlis* (cities of France); but not of *Charles*, *Jules*, and *Pâques*, when ſpelt with *s*.

3dly. At the end of pronouns, articles, and propoſitions before a vowel, or *h* not aſpirated, and the imperative before the pronouns *en* and *y* only, in the other perſons of verbs, it is omitted in common diſcourſe; as *les enfans* the children, *nous aimons* we love, *viens-y* come thither, *faites-en* make ſome, *dès à préſent* from this time forward, *j'avois été* I had been, *vouz avez eu mes habits* you have had my coats, *nous irons à Paris*, &c. we ſhall go to Paris; give it the ſound of *z*, and pronounce *dè za préſen*, *vien zi*, *nou zéman*, *j'avoï zété*, *vou zavé u mè zabits*, *nou ziron à Paris*, &c. But when *nous* and *vous* are uſed interrogatively, we don't pronounce their final *s* before the next vowel. Therefore do not pronounce, without ſounding *s*, *a vens nous à manger*, have we ſomething to eat? *vien avec moi*, come along with me, *li encore*, read again.—Neither is *s* pronounced at the end of the pronoun *les* before a vowel, but only gives *e* the moſt reſonant ſound of *è* grave; as *donnez-lès à votre ſœur*, give them to your ſiſter; pronounce *donnez-lè à votre jœur*, tho' we pronounce *il le za donné* for *il les a donnés*, he has given them.

4thly,

4thly, In the first syllable of *vis-à-vis* over-against, and *de temps en temps* from time to time, as also most commonly in that of *pas-à-pas* step by step, *de pis en pis*, worse and worse, and *de plus en plus* more and more.

5thly, *s* is not pronounced in *puis* then, nor *depuis* since, even before a vowel. It is articulated in *puisque* since, as well as in *lorsque* when.

6thly, *s* is always pronounced at the end of adnouns plural, before their nouns beginning with a vowel; but when the nouns come first, their final *s* is seldom articulated before their adnouns, except in repeating verses; as *les belles âmes* noble souls, *les grands hommes* great men; pronounce *bel zâmes*, *gran zomes*.

Observe besides, *1/t*, that excepting *âs*, *ours*, *vis*, *le cens*, and foreign words wherein final *s* is pronounced with the hissing articulation; in all other cases wherein it is pronounced at the end of words, it is always with the soft articulation of *z*.

2dly, There were formerly a great many French words spelt with *s*, though not pronounced at all. They particularly used to write with *s* all the preterite tenses of the subjunctive; *fust* for *fût* were, *vist* for *vît*, *aimast* for *aimât* loved, and *abyssme* for *abyme* abyss; *chrestien* for *chrétien* christian, *mesme* for *même* ever, *maistre* for *maître* master, *naistre* for *naître* to be born, &c. But the new orthography having suppressed *s*, which was useless in all those words, and substituted in its place the syncope (') over the foregoing vowel, and there being no modern book or dictionary but what is conformable to this new way of spelling, so *s* is not now found in the middle of words, but when it is necessarily pronounced; except in *est* is, (3d pers. pres. of *être* to be), and *Basle* (the name of a city, when spelt with *s*).

3dly, *s*, which is pronounced in *Christ* (as well as *t*), when that word is alone, is dropt with the final *t* when they come after *Jésus*, the final *s* whereof is never articulated neither. Therefore pronounce *Jésu*, and *Jésu Chri*.

4thly, *s* in the middle of words has the soft articulation of *z* before *b*, *d*, *v*, *g*, called weak consonants; and the hissing articulation before *c* and *k*, *f*, *m*, *p*, *q*, *t*. Thus *Asdrubal*, *presbytère* parsonage, &c. are pronounced *Azdrubal*, *prezbiter*: but do not pronounce *Jazpe*, *jazmin*, *auzière*, *prezque*, for *Jaspe* Jasper, *jasmin* jessamin, *austère* austere, *presque* almost, &c.

You may pronounce it or not in *enregistrer* to register; but it is never pronounced in *registre*, when this noun is spelt with *s*.

*s* is not sounded in this word *tous* all, when it is followed by some other words; as *tous vos livres* all your books, pronounce

*tou vô livr* : but when *tous* is at the end of a sentence, *s* is founded as *sa je les ai vus tous* I have seen them all, pronounce *je lê zé vu tous*.

*t.*

*t* followed by *i* (*ti*) before *a*, *e*, *o*, in the middle of words, has the hissing articulation of *s*; as in *action* action, *martial* warlike, *patience* patience, &c. pronounce *passiance*, *acson*, &c. but *ti* keeps its proper articulation,

1<sup>st</sup>, After *x* and *s*; which extends only to these twelve words :

<i>bastion</i> ,	a bastion, <i>hostie</i> ,	a victim,
<i>bestial</i> ,	bestial, <i>indigestion</i> ,	surfeit,
<i>bestiole</i> ,	a little beast, <i>mixture</i> ,	mixture,
<i>bestion</i> ,	the head of a ship, <i>question</i> ,	a question,
<i>combustion</i> ,	combustion, <i>suggestion</i> , which is	} suggestion,
<i>digestion</i> ,	digestion, pronounced <i>sug-</i>	
<i>gestion</i> ,	management, <i>jestion</i> ,	

and these two proper names, *Ephestion* and *Sébastien*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Before *en*, being the proper sound of nasal *e*, and not that of nasal *a*; as *je tiens* I hold, *soutien* support.

3<sup>dly</sup>, After *en* pronounced like *a* nasal, or *an*, as in *entier* entire, *entièrement* entirely. Therefore the spelling *essenciel* and *essenciellement*, *pénitencier* and *pénitenciel*, with *t* instead of *c*, is contrary to all analogy.

4<sup>thly</sup>, In verbs; as *châtier* to chastise, *nous étions* we were, *vous battiez* ye did beat, &c.

5<sup>thly</sup>, In words ending in *tie*, *tié*, and *tier*; as *partie* a part, *amitié* friendship, *métier* a trade. Except *minutie*, *impéritie*, *inertie*, *inertie*, and some names of countries; as *Dalmatie*, *Galatie*, *Nigritie*; and other words derived from the Greek, as *primatie* primacy, *prophétie* prophecy, *Aristocratie*; pronounce *Aristocrassy*, *propheffy*, *Dalmassy*, &c. Except *Corinthie* and *Gothie*, wherein *thie* is articulated as in *partie*; and these three proper names, *Fortia*, *Nantia*, and *Santia*.

*t* as well as *h* is suppressed in *asthme* asthma, and *asthmâtique*; pronounce *asme*, *asmatic*.

In the plural of monosyllables ending in *nt* in the singular; as sing. *un enfant* a child; plu. *des enfants* children; *un bâtiment* a building, *des bâtiments* buildings: sometimes *t* is left out, and you may say likewise *enfants*, *bâtimens*: but monosyllables retain it; as *un pont* a bridge, *des ponts* bridges, *une dent* a tooth, *des dents* teeth. Except *cent* and *tout*, which makes in the plural *cens* and *tous*.

*t* is put between two hyphens (-t-) between a verb and the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *on*, when questions are asked, and the verb ends in a vowel;

a vowel; *y a-t-il*, is there? *parle-t-elle*, does she speak? *va-t-on*, do they go?

*t* is pronounced at the end of these following words only:

<i>brut</i> ,	rough,	<i>correct</i> ,	<i>correct</i> ,	<i>rit</i> ,	a rite,
<i>dot</i> ,	portion,	<i>direct</i> ,	<i>direct</i> ,	<i>set</i> ,	a fool,
<i>exact</i> ,	exact,	<i>un fait</i> ,	a fact,	<i>taet</i> ,	touching,
<i>échee</i> & <i>mat</i> ,	check-	<i>indult</i> ,	<i>indult</i> ,	<i>zénit</i> ,	zenith,
mate,		<i>gambit</i> ,	<i>gambit</i> ,	<i>zest</i> ,	zest,
<i>fat</i> ,	a dunce, sop,	<i>lest</i> ,	ballast,	<i>Apt</i> ,	(the name of a
<i>est</i> and <i>ouest</i> ,	east and	<i>paet</i> ,	paet,		town).
west,		<i>rapt</i> ,	a rape,		

*t* is also pronounced at the end of the impersonals, *il faut*, *il plaît*; and of *vingt* twenty, *prêt* ready, and some other adnouns; but it is only when the next word begins with a vowel: as *il faut y aller*, one must go thither, *s'il plaît à Dieu*, if-God pleases, *vingt écus* twenty crowns, *savant esprit* a learned mind.—And yet we do not only pronounce *t* in *vingt* & *un* one and twenty, but also in *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, &c. and what is still more remarkable, we do not pronounce it in *quatre vingt-un*, *quatre vingt-deux*, &c. pronounce *vin-té un*, *vingt-deux*, *quatre vin-un*, *quatre vin deu*, &c. *t* is also pronounced in *est* is, before a vowel; as likewise at the end of a verb, when a question is asked: as *c'est un grand fou* he is a great fool, *que fait-on* what are they doing? *doit-il* does he owe? pronounce *doi ti*, *fai ton*, *c'é tun gran fou*.

*t* at the end of *cent* is pronounced only before a noun beginning with a vowel; as *cent-écus* a hundred crowns, *cent hommes* a hundred men; but never in *cent un* one hundred and one, *cent onze* one hundred and eleven, *un cent ou deux* one hundred or two.

*t* is articulated in the first syllable of *mot à mot* word for word; pronounce *mo ta mo*.—*t* is not pronounced at the end of *contrat*; *c* and *t* are articulated in *contracter* to contract.

In *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, some pronounce *t*, some drop it.

*t* is not pronounced in *Dantzique* (the name of a city), in *Metz*, (another name of a city), nor in *Rhetz* (that of a cardinal), wherein *e* has the most resonant sound of *e* grave, and *tz* that of the hissing articulation of *s* (*mêss*). Neither is it pronounced in the plural of nouns that end their singular in *t*; as *un chat* a cat, *des chats* cats; *un habit* a suit of clothes, *des habits* suits of clothes; pronounce *un sha*, *des shaw*, *dè zabi*; *s* serving only to make the syllable long in the plural, which was short in the singular.

This word *fort* is sometimes an adnoun, signifying *strong*; sometimes an adverb, signifying *very*. When it is an adnoun, as *fort* & *grand*

*grand* strong and tall, the final *t* is silent, and *r* only is joined to the next word beginning with a vowel, and you pronounce *faré-gran*: when it is an adverb, as *fort aimable* very amiable, *t* is joined to the next word beginning with a vowel, and you say *fort aimable*: in *fort & ferme* stoutly, *t* is sounded likewise.

*t* is never pronounced in the enclitic *et* or *&* (and), which is sounded like *é* acute; and *et* at the end of words is sounded like *ai* in *May*; as *net* clean, *placet* a petition. — *t* is articulated in *sept* seven, and *huit* eight, when alone, or at the end of a sentence, and before a word beginning with a vowel: as *sept ou huit* seven or eight, pronounce both final *t*'s; as also in *j'en ai sept* I have got seven: but do not pronounce it in *sept guinées* seven guineas.

Two *tt* together are sounded like a single one; as *frotter* to rub, *attirer* to attract: *t* is doubled only to make the foregoing syllable short.

*t* hardly doubles but after *a* and *o* (tho' not always), as in *attaquer* to attack, *combattre* to fight, *botte* a boot, *sotte* foolish, *sottise*, &c. but write with a single *t*: *établir* to establish, *citron*, citron, *brutal* brutish, *tutélaire* tutelar, and other words wherein *t* comes after *e*, *i*, *u*, &c. though we also spell with a single *t*: *matière* matter, *latitude* latitude, and some others: and with a double *t*: *betto* beet, *betterave* red beet.

The two *tt* are sounded in *Attique*, *Atticisme*.

v.

There is no room for any particular observations upon the consonant *v*, it having in French the articulation, and being of the same use as in English.

x.

*x* denotes either of these two articulations, *cs* and *gz*.

*x* has the articulation of *cs*, in all proper names, both in the beginning, middle, and end; before consonants, except *b*; and between two vowels, except when the word begins with *e*; as *Xavier*, *Xerxès*, *Ximènes*, *Alexandre*, *Mexique*, *axiome*, *axe* axle-tree, *extrait* extract, *maxime*, *luxe* luxury, *flexible*, &c. pronounce *acsiome*, *Alecsandre*, *Cfersès*, *estrai*, *luise*, &c.

*x* has the articulation of *gz* between two vowels, the first whereof is *e*, even tho' the second vowel should be preceded with *b*, as in *examen*, *exil*, *exarque*, *exaucer* to grant, *exemple* example, *exhumer* to unbury: pronounce *egzil*, *egzumé*, &c.

*x* in *soixante* sixty, and *soixantième* sixtieth, takes the hissing articulation of *s*; but the soft one of *z* in *deuxième* second, deux-

*deuxièmement* secondly, *dixième*, *dixaine* tenth, *dixain* a stanza of ten verses, and *dixièmement* tenthly, *dix huit* eighteen, *dix-neuf* nineteen, *sixième* sixth, *sixièmement* sixthly, and *sixain* a stanza of six verses. Therefore pronounce *soiffante*, *deuzième*, *sizain*, &c. nay we write now-a-days *sizain*, and *dizain*.

*x* takes also the hissing articulation of *s* in the following names of places, which even are commonly spelt with *s*; *Xaintes*, *Xaintonge*, *Bruxelles*, *Flexelle*, *Auxerre*, *Auxonne*, *St. Maixant*, *Uxell*, ou *Uxelles*, and the second *x* in *Xerxes*: pronounce *Saintes*, *Brussels*, *Xersès*, &c.

*x* takes the articulation of *sh* in *Don Quixotte*, which is pronounced *Gbishut*.

*x* takes the articulation of *k* before *ce* and *ci*; *excellence* *excellency*, *exciter* to *excité*; pronounce *ekciter*, *eksellance*, &c.

*x* has the articulation of *cs* at the end of these Greek and Latin names only, *Ajax*, *Alix*, *Anthrax*, *Béatrix*, *du borax*, *Contumax*, *Félix*, *index*, *Linx*, *Lârinx*, *Phénix*, *Onix*, *Pollux*, *Sphinx*, *Styx*, *Storax*, *Syphax*, *préfix* prefixed, and *perplexe* perplexed.—It has the hissing articulation of *s* at the end of *Cádiz*, but that of *z* at the end of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel, or *b* mute, as *doux amusement* sweet amusement, *heureux homme* happy man: as likewise at the end of plural nouns that have no *x* in their singular, when they are followed by an adnoun beginning with a vowel, as *cheveux épars*, dishevelled hair. Those aforefaid cases excepted, *x* is not pronounced at the end of words; as *des choux* cabbages, *toux* cough; pronounce *chou*, *tu*: but in the former *dou zamuseman*, &c. *Aix* (the name of a city) is pronounced like *Aisse*, or *est-ce*.

There are three observations to make upon *x* at the end of *dix* ten, *six* six.

1<sup>st</sup>, *x* is not pronounced at all in *dix* and *six* before nouns beginning with a consonant; as *dix guinées* ten guineas, *six livres sterling* six pounds sterling.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *dix* and *six*, being at the end of a sentence, or in the middle before words beginning with a consonant, but not their nouns, articulate their final *x* like hissing *s*; as *j'en ai dix* I have ten, *les six que vous avez* the six which you have. It is also after this manner that *x* is pronounced in *dix-sept* seventeen.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *x* in *dix* and *six*, before nouns beginning with a vowel, takes the soft articulation of *z*; as also in *dix-huit* eighteen, and *dix-neuf* nineteen. Therefore pronounce *dix-uit*, *dix neuf*, *dizécu* ten crowns, *dis-set*, *sifs*, *difs*, *si livres*, &c.

## 2.

*z* is now-a-days used only in the four following cases: 1°, In the end of the second person plural of verbs, as *vous aimez* you love, *vous faisiez* you did, &c. 2°, In these three words only, *le nez* the nose, *assez* enough, *chez* at: for we no longer write with *z* *un dé* a die, *un pré* a meadow. 3°, In the beginning of some words derived from the Greek; as *zèle* zeal, *zéphire* zephyrus, &c. and in the numbers *onze*, *douze*, *treize*, *quatorze*, *quinze*, and *seize*, with their derivatives. 4°, In the end of these proper names, wherein it takes the hissing articulation of *s*; *Boez*, *Rhodesz*, *Sénez*, *Ufiez*; except *Séez*, *Rèz*, *Milanèz*, and *Vivarèz* (when so spelt, for they are better spelt with *ois*), wherein *z* is not pronounced at all: but the foregoing *e* has the most resonant sound of *è* grave.—In *l'Abruzze*, the double *z* takes the hissing articulation of *s*, as if it was spelt *l'Abbrusse*.

*z* is not pronounced (except in solemn speech and reading verses) at the end of the few words wherein it is used, before a vowel: *assez aimable* agreeable enough, *vous avez eu* you have had: pronounce *assè aimable avé u*; but it is never pronounced after *nez* nose.

All that has been said throughout this last section concerning final consonants, is to be understood only of the pronunciation practised in common conversation; for in declamation, that is, in the pulpit, or at the bar, as also in reading verses, we always pronounce before vowels final consonants that are quite dropt in common conversation. And as we make it our chief task in this treatise to instruct the learner in that true, familiar, and ordinary way of speaking which *Tully* calls *Sermo quotidianus*, and make him perfect master of it, he must, in order to speak properly and politely, observe the following rules as constantly true.

1<sup>st</sup>, That when the final consonant of a noun is not pronounced in the singular number, it is also mute in the plural, as well as the final *s*, which only serve to make that syllable long, or longer, in the plural, which was short, or already long, in the singular; as sing. *un chat*, a cat; plur. *des chats*, cats; sing. *un bourg*, a borough; plur. *des bourgs*, boroughs: pronounce *shaw* and *boorc*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That final consonants are always pronounced in words immediately before their conjunctives, beginning with a vowel; as,

First,

*First*, The article and adnoun before its noun (*les amis* the friends, *son ouvrage* silly work, *franc animal*, mere brute or block-head).

*Secondly*, The preposition or adverb before its regimen (*chez eux* at their house, *bien habile* very learned, *fort adroit* very skilful, *trop irrité* too much incensed).

*Thirdly*, The pronoun personal before its verb (*il aime* he loves, *vous offrez* you offer, *on apprend* we learn): pronounce *on* *n*aprend, *i* *l*aime, *tro* pirité, *ché* zeux, *so* tourage, *le* zamis, &c.

*3dly*, That final consonants are pronounced in proper and foreign names; as *Jacob*, *Périclès*, *Stanislas*, *Norris*, &c. Except, *1st*, when it is *s* after *e* not sounded, as in *Athènes*; or after *i* in common French names, as *Paris*, *Louis* (tho' *s* is pronounced in *Pâris*, *Priamus's* son). *2dly*, When there is a nasal vowel before the final consonant; as in *St. Cloud*, *St. François*, *Pharamond*, &c. pronounce *St. Clou*, *la ville de Pari*, *le perfide Pâris*, *Athène*, *Périclès*, *Stanislas*, &c.

As to orthography, or spelling, we now-a-days generally leave out all those useless consonants which are not pronounced, when the suppression of them causes no ambiguity. Thus we write *avis* advice, *ajouter* to add, *lait* milk, *sujet* subject, *répondre* to answer, *tête* head, &c. instead of the old way of spelling *advis*, *adjouter*, *laiet*, *subjeet*, *respon dre*, *teste*, &c. Some authors write a circumflex over most of those syllables, to shew that a letter has been suppressed: but first, to act consistently with themselves, they should put the circumflex over all those syllables, in *avis* as well as *ajouter*, and *lâit*. In the next place, it is using an useless mark to shew, to no purpose, that an useless letter is suppressed: the scholars don't want that mark to know the etymology of the word, and the illiterate are not a bit the wiser for it: and finally, that mark may occasion a false pronunciation; for, as it is also used to denote long syllables, people are apt to think that *ou* in *ajouter* is long, as *e* in *tête*, which is the *Normand* accent and pronunciation.

If we keep still some useless consonants in some words, it is both to denote their derivation (*Etymology*), and distinguish them from other words that are pronounced alike. Thus we spell *poids* weight, with *d*, to distinguish it from *pois* peas, and *poix* pitch, which have the same sound; *compte* account, with *p*, to distinguish it from *comte* earl, and *conte* a story.

And as to the double consonants (which are pronounced in some cases only) observe, moreover, that these seven consonants never

never double, *b, j, k, q, v, x, z*; neither do the others double after a long vowel, or marked over with a circumflex, or after a vowel nasal, or an improper diphthong (except however these three, *l, r, and s*); and it is therefore after short vowels only double consonants may come. Thus we write with single consonants *côte* coast, *bâtiment* building, *tête* head, *encourager* to encourage, *ensanier* to be delivered, *entendre* to hear, *traiter* to treat, *goûter* to taste, &c.

But we spell these following with double consonants, *bouffon* a buffoon, *botte* a boot, *battre* to beat, *nette* clean, *affecter* to affect, *syllabe* syllable, &c.

The characteristic consonant of verbs must be kept in the tenses, such as it is in the infinitive: that is, if it is single in the infinitive, it must be so too all along the verb, and double if it is double in that root. Therefore *j'abhorre* I abhor, *vous lutez* you wrestle, *nous promettons* we promise, *il donne* he gives, *ils se rebellent* they rebel, &c. are spelt with double consonants, because the consonants are double in their infinitives *abhorrer*, *lutter*, *promettre*, &c. and *je colore* I colour, *vous rebutez* you repulse, *nous dotons* we endow, *il épèle* he spiles, *ils volent* they fly, &c. are spelt with a single consonant, because there is but one in the infinitive.

I shall conclude this treatise with two tables of the Terminations wherein the *Penultima* is pronounced short, and wherein it is pronounced long; which will be a great help to attain to the harmony of the pronunciation.

### TERMINATIONS *whose PENULTIMA is short.*

Terminations.	Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.
<i>abe</i> and <i>able</i> .	<i>syllabe</i> , <i>table</i> , <i>érable</i> , <i>aimable</i> , <i>agréable</i> , &c. Except <i>diable</i> , <i>fable</i> , <i>table</i> , <i>cable</i> , <i>table</i> , and <i>accable</i> .
<i>acre</i> .	<i>diacre</i> , <i>fiacre</i> , <i>massacre</i> , &c. Except <i>âtre</i> .
<i>ade</i> and <i>adre</i> .	<i>fade</i> , <i>malade</i> , <i>pommade</i> , <i>salade</i> , <i>ladre</i> , &c. Except <i>Câdre</i> .
<i>age</i> and <i>ache</i> .	<i>page</i> , <i>courage</i> , <i>image</i> , <i>nage</i> , <i>vache</i> , <i>tache</i> , <i>pa-</i> <i>nache</i> , <i>nager</i> , &c. Except <i>âge</i> , <i>fâche</i> , <i>tâche</i> , and others, whose <i>a</i> is circumflexed. — <i>a</i> is likewise long in <i>âgé</i> , <i>fâcher</i> , <i>tâcher</i> , &c. aspi-

## Terminations.

*Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.*

*afe and aphe.  
agne.*

agrafe, épitaphe, géographe, paragraphe, &c. campagne, montagne, Ascagne, &c. *Except* gâgne, *with* gâgner, *and other derivatives.*

*ale, alle, and aile.*

balle, halle, scandale, ovale; spectacle, receptacle, &c. *Except* râle, pâle, le hâle, mâle, râcle, *and* râcler, &c.

*ane, anne.*

cane, chicane, canne, &c. *Except* âne, crâne, mânes, mânne, *and* dâmnne, &c.

*ape and aque.*

cloaque, attrape, frappe, &c. *Except* Jâques *and* Pâques.

*arbe, arbre, arde.*

barbe, marbre, bâtarde, moutarde, &c.

*arme, arte, asme,  
astre.*

carte, charme, désastre, asthme, cataplasme, &c.

*ame.*

dame, polygame, nous aimames (*and all persons plural of the perfect tense of the 1st conjugation*). *Except* l'âme, flamme, infâme, blâme, pâme, pâmer, blâmer.

*ale, atte, and attiez.*

pirate, patte, agate, gatte, *and* gratter; battez, bâtons, &c. *and the termination of the 2d pers. plur. perf. of the 1st conjugation*, pirates, animates, &c. *Except* pâte (*dough*), gâte, hâte, hâter, gâter, &c.

*atre and aître.*

bâttre, quâttre, &c. *Except* l'âtre, théâtre, blanchâtre, noirâtre, &c. châtre, *and in* châtrer, *and* châtier.

*ave.*

brave, cave, rave, lave, laver, &c. *Except* esclâve: *but both a's are short in* esclavage.

*aite, ette, ede, and  
aide.*

désaite, retraite, &c. sonnette, remède, laide, &c. *Except* faite *and* aide.

*ail, eille, oil, oile.*

soleil, veille, *and* veiller; poil, toile, voile, *and* voiler, &c.

*oible and oide.*

foible, roide, &c. *with their derivatives*, foibleffe, roidir, &c.

*oine and oite.*

avoine, pivoine, il boite, boiter, *with deriv.*

*ome and one.*

homme, astronome, personne, colonne, &c. *Except* Dôme, Jérôme, Vendôme, prône, trône, *and others wherein ô is circumflexed.*

*ole, otte, and oxe.*

monopole, polyglotte, botte, cotte, paradoxe, &c. *Except* pôle, côte, *and others wherein ô is circumflexed.*

*Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.*

*ouble, ouple, ouille.* double, couple, souple; rouille, la Tri-  
mouille, &c.  
*ourse and ouffe.* bourse, je touffe, &c. *Except pousse, and je*  
*pouffe, &c.*  
*ourpre, ouve, and* pourpre, couve, couvre, Louvre, *as likewise*  
*ouvre.* *in couver, couvrir, and their derivatives.*  
*ougue, igue, ugue, uge.* fougue, figue, fugue, déluge, refuge, &c.  
*ique, uque, use.* domestique, perruque, tartuffe, &c.

### TERMINATIONS *whose PENULTIMA is long.*

*abre.* câbre, fâbre, délâbre, &c. (*a is long likewise*  
*in délâbrer, and deriv.*). *Except cinabre.*  
*are and arre.* barbâre, barré, gârre, &c. *Except égare,*  
*mare, fanfare, pare, prépare, répare, com-*  
*pare, and derivatives égarer, &c. N. B.*  
*These words are not excepted because the a*  
*of the Penultima is short; but because it is*  
*sounded with the slender sound of a, though*  
*long.*  
*ace, asse, ase, and* espace, grâce, tasse, bafe, gaze, &c. *Except*  
*aze.* *beface, glace, coriace, bécasse, liasse, chassé,*  
*and chasser, agace, and agacer.*  
*aine and éne.* chaîne, entraîne, gêne, &c. *Except vaine,*  
*and veine.*  
*aille.* bataille, taille, vaille, &c. *Except médaille,*  
*and travaille, &c. from travailler.*  
*ape and apre.* rape, *as also raper, &c. capre, &c. Except*  
*attrape, with its deriv. from attraper, and*  
*Satrape.*  
*aindre, eindre, inde,* contraindre, feinte, feindre, coq d'Inde, cy-  
*indre, einte.* *lindre, &c.*  
*aire, erre, oire.* chaire, faire, terre, &c.  
*aïse, aïsse, est-ce, èse,* bien-aïse, thèse, baïse, baïsse (*from baiser and*  
*exe, oïse, oïsse.* *baïsser, wherein ai is long too), qu'est-ce,*  
*l'Oïse, croïsse, &c.*  
*âitre and ôître.* maître, connoître, cloître, &c.  
*aube, auce, auisse.* daube, sauce, exauce, *and exhause, with*  
*derivatives.*  
*auche, aude, auisse.* gauche, claude, cause, &c.

*auge,*

## Terminations.

*Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.*

auge, aule, ôle.	fauge, gaule, drôle, &c.
aume, aune.	baume, jaune, with derivatives embaumer, &c.
aure, ore, aute,	centaure, aurore, haute, faute, apôtre, un
autre, and ôtre.	autrè, &c.
auve and auvre.	chauve, pauvre, &c.
êche and âche.	bèche, fraîche, as also in bêcher. Except brèche, flèche, mèche, sèche.
ême.	crème, extrême, &c. but not in sème; and others without a circumflex.
enre and endre.	genre, entendre, défendre, &c.
êpe and épre.	guêpe, Vêpres, &c. Except lèpre, and Dieppe.
ête and être.	bête, prêtre, fenêtre, &c. but not the terminations in ete, or ette, as sonnette.
eûne.	jeûne (fast), but not without a circumflex, as jeune, young.
euse and euze.	gueuse, heureuse, scrupuleuse, &c.
ympe and uimpe.	olympe, guimpe, &c.
imple and ymphe.	simple, nymphe, &c.
ingle and inte.	épingle, pinte, &c.
ire, uire, ivre.	lire, détruire, confire, vivre, suivre, &c.
ise and ize.	église, frise, dise, from dire, and friser, &c.
oindre, ointe.	joindre, pointe, &c.
oire, oivre.	boire, croire, poivre, &c.
ôme and aume.	dôme, royaume, baume, &c.
ose and offe.	repose, grosse, &c. Except bosse. o is also long in engrosser.
oule and oudre.	foule, coudre, moudre, &c. Except boule.
ourre.	il fourre, bourre, &c.
ouse, oute, outre.	blouse, croûte, coûte, goûte, &c. Except doute, goutte, route, toute.
ure and use.	coupure, foulure, muse, amuse, &c. but not u in amuser.

Moreover, first, the penultima is long in terminations made of two vowels, the latter whereof is *e* not founded; as in *armée, vie, joie, vue, rue, jolie, aimée*, and all participles feminine.

2dly, The last syllable of words terminating in a consonant or diphthong, which is short in the singular, becomes long in the plural,

plural, by the addition of *s* or *x*; as *sing. chef, fagot, lieu, trait, sac, &c. plur. chefs, fagots, lieux, traits, sacs, &c.*

3dly, *a* being a monosyllable, or the last syllable of a word, either absolutely, or with one or more consonants, is short and slender, so *s* be not the final consonant; as *il a, sac, chat, animal, dard, magistrat, &c.* but in the plural number, or with a final *s*, it is long and broad; as *sacs, chats, magistrats, tu vas, tu feras, un bas.* Except *les arts, darts, regards, renards*, and the monosyllable *bras* in the singular, with *je bats*, which are short.

So much concerning the terminations of words, considered with respect to prosody. As to the quantity that syllables bear in the middle of words, it may be said in general, that they are all short; as *abus, abrégé, babil, babiller, cacher, deviner, flatter, hostie, plaider, juste, loger, peler, docile, frapper, cruper, fanfaron, cousin, douter, peste, quitter, triste, voisner, &c.* Except those which consist of nasal vowels; as *entrer, chambranle, branler, montrer, instruire, tremblant, trompons, tember, &c.*

*a* is also long and broad in the middle of words before a double *r*, or a single *r* followed by *e* not founded: as *barreau, bigarreau, larron, &c.* as likewise before the termination *tion* or *ssion*, as in *nation, création, passion, &c.*

*a* is short and slender in *Paris* (the name of the capital of France), and long and broad in *Pâris* (a man's name).—It is short and slender in *Madrid*, and long and broad in *Cádiz* and *Calais*.

Most of the aforesaid observations would be needless, if the long vowels were always marked with the circumflex; which is the true, and ought to be the only, use of that accent, as will be proved in the following section.

## SECTION V.

*Of the several Marks used in writing French.*

**T**HESE marks are of six sorts: the Elision, Hyphen, Cedilla, Dialysis or Diæresis, Accents, Capital Letters, and Stops.

ELISION is the cutting off of a final vowel before a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; and the vowel thus cut off, is supplied by a comma, called *Apostrophe*, and set above the empty place, thus (*'*).

These three vowels, *a, e, i*, suffer elision in French.

*a* and

*a* and *e* are cut off in *la* and *le*, whether articles or pronouns; in all monosyllables, as *je, me, se, te, de, ce, ne, que*; and the conjunctions composed of *que*, as *jusque, parceque, puisque, &c.* and *i* in the conjunction *si* if, before *il* and *ils* only.

Thus we write

<i>l'âme,</i>		<i>la âme,</i>	the soul.
<i>l'héroïne,</i>		<i>la héroïne,</i>	the heroine.
<i>l'homme,</i>		<i>le homme,</i>	the man.
<i>l'esprit,</i>		<i>le esprit,</i>	the mind.
<i>j'aime,</i>		<i>je aime,</i>	I love.
<i>je l'estime,</i>		<i>je le or la estime,</i>	I esteem her or him.
<i>m'entendez-vous,</i>		<i>me entendez vous,</i>	do you understand me?
<i>s'en aller,</i>		<i>se en aller,</i>	to go away.
<i>c'est fait,</i>	instead	<i>ce est fait,</i>	it is done or over.
<i>l'âge d'or,</i>	of	<i>le âge de or,</i>	the golden age.
<i>n'allez pas,</i>		<i>ne allez pas,</i>	do not go.
<i>qu'a-t-il dit,</i>		<i>que a-t-il dit,</i>	what did he say?
<i>jusqu'au soir,</i>		<i>jusque au soir,</i>	till night.
<i>quoiqu'il dise,</i>		<i>quoique il dise,</i>	altho' he says.
<i>puisqu'il sait,</i>		<i>puisque il sait,</i>	since he knows.
<i>lorsqu'il vit,</i>		<i>lorsque il vit,</i>	when he saw.
<i>s'il vient,</i>		<i>si il vient,</i>	if he comes.
<i>s'ils veulent,</i>		<i>si ils veulent,</i>	if they please.

But when *si* coming after *Et* (*Et si*) signifies yet, *i* is not contracted with the next vowel; as *il le fait Et si il n'en dit rien*, he knows it, yet he says nothing of it. — We also write and say *m'amie* and *m'amour* (love), for *ma*, or rather *mon amie*, *mon amour*, and *quelqu'un* for *quelque un*.

There are two cases wherein *le* and *la* and *ce* don't suffer elision: 1<sup>st</sup>, The articles *le* and *la* and the pronoun demonstrative *ce* before *onze* and *onzième*, and *oui* yes. Thus we spell and pronounce *le onze du mois* the eleventh of the month, *il est le onzième*, *elle est la onzième*, he or she is the eleventh, *le oui qu'il prononça* the yes which he spoke, *ce oui-là lui a coûté cher* that yes has cost him dear: but it is only *le* and *la* and *ce* which suffer no elision before these two words; for all the other monosyllables do. Thus we spell and pronounce *je n'en ai qu'onze*, and not *que onze*, I have got but eleven, *je dis qu'oui*, and not *que oui*, I say yes.

Observe moreover, concerning *onze* and *oui*, that the final consonant of the particles coming before these two words, is not articulated as it is before any other word beginning with a vowel.

Therefore pronounce, without joining *s*, *les onze mille vierges*; *un oui, des oui*, not *le zonze*, &c. *un noui, de zoui*.

2dly, *le* and *la* being pronouns governed of an imperative, do not suffer elision, unless they are followed by either of these two other pronouns *en* and *y*; as *Portez-le au logis*, carry him or it home (tho' we pronounce *portél au logis*); *Mariez-la au plutôt*, marry her as soon as possible. But write and pronounce *Tirez l'en au plutôt*, get him, her, or it, from thence as fast as you can; *Laissez l'y aller*, let him or her go thither.

*e* suffers elision also at the end of the adnoun feminine *grande*, before these words beginning with a consonant; *grand' chambre* great chamber, *grand' messe* high mass, *grand' peur* great fright, *grand' chose* a great matter, *grand' chère* a great cheer, *grand' faim* & *grand' soif* a great hunger and great thirst, *grand' pitié* ten thousand pities, *grand' peine* great trouble, *la grand' chambre* the high court of parliament at *Paris*, *ma* or *sa grand' mère* my or his grand-mother, *grand' salle* a large room or hall, *grand' part* a great share.

HYPHEN is a short line across, marked thus -, and used, 1<sup>st</sup>, to join pronouns expressing the subject with their verbs, especially in interrogations; as likewise the particles *en* and *y*, and other conjunctive pronouns, with an imperative: as *que dit-elle*, what does she say? *irons-nous* shall we go? *vient-il* does he come? *vas-y* go thither, *prends-en* take some, *sauvons-nous* let us take to our heels, *allons-nous-en* let us go away, *donnez-les lui* give them to him.

Note, that when the verb ends in *a* or *e*, *t* ought to be inserted between two Hyphens, between the verb and pronoun subjective or the particle *on*, in order to soften the pronunciation; as *parla-t-elle* did she speak? *va-t-on* do they go? *mange-t-il* does he eat?

2dly, To join the particles *ci*, *là*, *çà*, to the words which are attended by them, and from which they cannot be properly parted in speech; as likewise *ce* after *être*: as *celui-ci* this, *celui-là* that, *cet homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman, *demeurez-là* stay there, *là-haut* above, *là-bas* below, *venez-ça* come hither, *est-ce-là le livre* is that the book? *sont-ce-là vos gens* are these your servants?

3dly, To join together the parts of a compound word: as *porte-manteau* port-manteau, *arc-en-ciel* rainbow, *c'est-à-dire* that is to say,

4thly, At the end of a line, to denote that a word is parted which could not be writ entirely in the line, and that the remainder

der of it is at the beginning of the next line; as in this word *présentement* presently. But note, that whenever a word is thus parted, the part which begins the next line must always begin with a consonant.

CEDILLA is a short curve line, or a comma, put under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to divest it of the articulation of *k*, and give it the hissing articulation of *s*, which it always has before *e* and *i*: as in *menaça* he threatened, *leçon* lesson, *conçu* conceived.

DIALYSIS } is two dots put over the last of the two vowels  
DIÆRESIS } that meet together in a word, to part them into two several syllables: as *hai*, hated, makes two syllables: whereas *je hais*, I hate, makes but one. In *Saül*, the king of *Israel*, *a* and *ü* make two syllables, and so distinguish it from *Saul* (*Paul*) wherein *au* make but an improper diphthong.

*e*, *i*, *u*, are the only vowels on which the two dots are marked, custom having not as yet prevailed to put them over *o* in *géomètre*, and other such words wherein *e* and *o* make two distinct vowels, very differently pronounced from the same in *geolier*. It is therefore sufficient to mark the preceding *e* with an accent, to make it keep its proper sound, and at the same time part it from *o*.

It is moreover usual to put the two dots over *e* final, not sounded, in *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, *ciguë*, &c. to denote that the hard articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, as it does in *aiguille* a needle, and so distinguish it from that which *gu* has in *figue*, *guide*, *guérir*, *guenon*, &c. (See the letter *g* in the treatise on the pronunciation.) These cases excepted, never put the two dots over any vowel that makes but one and the same syllable with the foregoing vowel, as in *jouer* to play, *avouer* to own, &c. which some writers very viciously spell *joüer*, *avoüer*, as if these words were to be pronounced *avo-u-er*, *jo-u-er*, and not *avou-er*, *jou-er*: whilst on the contrary, others, in omitting the two dots over the second syllable of *aiguille* induce the reader to pronounce it as in *anguille* an eel.

ACCENT is a note put chiefly over our *e*'s, to denote their several pronunciations; as likewise over some words, to distinguish their nature and signification.

There are three sorts of accents; Acute ´, Grave ` , and Circumflex ^.

The accent *acute* is put over all *e*'s, which our Grammarians have been pleased to call *é* masculine; as in *prémédité* premeditated.

The accent grave over those called *é* open; as in *très* most, *près* near, *dès* from; and the last syllables of words ending in *ès*, as *excès* excess, *après* after, &c.

With what ground our Grammarians have distinguished our *e*'s by these several appellations of *é* masculine, *e* feminine, *é* open, *é* shut, *é* French, and *é* Latin, I am not able to apprehend, and therefore have chosen to call them by that accent which distinguishes them. When two syllables made of *e* follow one another, without having any accent over them, the first is always to be pronounced grave, and the last is not founded.

The nature of these following particles is distinguished by the accent grave, being both articles and adverbs, verbs, or prepositions, or conjunctions.

<i>a</i> ,	has,	<i>à</i> ,	at, or to,
<i>la</i> ,	the,	<i>là</i> ,	there,
<i>de la</i> ,	of, or from the,	<i>de là</i> ,	from thence,
<i>des</i> ,	of, or from the,	<i>dès</i> ,	from,
<i>ça</i> ,	come on,	<i>çà</i> ,	hither,
<i>ou</i> ,	or,	<i>où</i>	where.

It is also usual to mark over with the accent grave the pronoun *les*, after an imperative terminating a sentence: as *donnez-les* give them; and these two particles, *holà* hold, and *ouïà* ay, ay.

The accent circumflex is used in words over a syllable, which has now-a-days lost a vowel or an *s* of its own spelling, and the circumflex makes that syllable long; as *âge* age, *bête* beast, *être* to be, *le nôtre* ours, *vû* seen, &c. which were formerly spelt *aage*, *best*, *estre*, *le nostre*, *veu*, &c.

The last syllable of the 3d perf. sing. of the preterite subj. is also marked over with a circumflex, to distinguish it from the same person of the pret. ind. *qu'il aimât*, *parlât*, *fût*, *crût*, *entendât*, *vût*, &c. of which *s* is cut off; but these syllables are not pronounced long.

Some other words take also the circumflex, to prevent one's mistaking their signification; as *dû*, from *devoir* to owe, to distinguish it from *du* of the; *crû*, from *croître* to grow, to distinguish it from *cru* believed; *sûr* sure, to distinguish it from *sur* upon: but this practice is not generally received.

The tone of words is not then the proper object of accents in our language. Their office is not to mark the raising or sinking of the voice on syllables: they were at first introduced only to ascertain the pronunciation of our *e*'s. Our forefathers, surprised to see different sounds represented by the same sign, bethought them-

selves

selves of remedying that disorder, by adopting the accents which the Greeks and the Latins had instituted, though for a different purpose. This practice, had it been carefully observed, would have effectually supplied the want of other signs: but it was no sooner established, than it was again almost entirely laid aside, through the negligence of Printers and Authors. It has however been insensibly re-established, and even perfected. A perpendicular accent \* has moreover been introduced for some years, to mark the intermediate *e*, that *e* which has a middle sound between the sonorous *e* and that which is most sonorous: so that as these accents characterize *e*'s, so they are more essential to them than the dots over our *i*'s, of which I know not the use.

And indeed our *e* is either guttural, or mute, or acute, or grave, or circumflex, or intermediate, or nasal. There can be no possibility of mistaking the *e* guttural or mute in reading, if the others are accented; and a few observations will sufficiently enable us to distinguish the mute *e* from the guttural. The whole difficulty lies in being acquainted with the others, so as to pronounce them according to their powers: now the accents entirely remove this difficulty. The *e* which is called *fermé* is marked with an acute accent. The *e* called *ouvert*, is (according to the authors of these denominations) either simply open, or most open, or keeps a medium between these two sounds. If it is simply open, it is marked with the grave accent, as in *très, après, père, mère*. If most open, with the circumflex, as in *bête, grêle, même, pêche*. And the intermediate *e* is marked with the perpendicular accent, as in *régle, fidèle, flèche, amène*. As this same accent serves likewise to distinguish, without confusion, the true nasal *e*, from that which has only the sound of nasal *a*, one can no longer mistake the pronunciation of the following words, *lien, rien, soutien, je viens, il tient, prudent, entièrement, orient, patient, &c.* *ger* is not pronounced in *léger*, as in *berger*. As the termination *eve* is pronounced quite differently in these three words, *fève, Geneviève, Genève*, so the accent determines their true pronunciation. The acute accent on the penultima of *différent* shews it to be an adnoun, and the grave in *différent* to be a verb. The same rule holds good with respect to *précédent* adnoun, and *précédent* verb, and many other words, which cannot be distinguished in writing otherwise than by the accent. The grave and perpendicular accents show moreover, that the following or preceding them is

\* As custom has not authorised that perpendicular accent, we have laid it aside in this new edition; particularly as it is not to be found in any book printed since the French Academy have published a new edition of their Dictionary.

mute, as in *amèrement, tellement*. They indicate also, that in the words, *fiel, manière, tiers, muet, &c.* the vowel that precedes the *e* forms with it a proper diphthong, and not an improper one, as happens very frequently in the English.

Custom has not yet authorised our affixing the acute accent to the last syllable of the infinitive and nouns ending in *er*, as *parler, danger*. It would certainly be more uniform to mark all the *e*'s with the accent that determines their pronunciation: but after all, the omission of the accent on these occasions, where the eyes are not accustomed to see it, can produce no great inconvenience, if it is not omitted on the others. The true use and designation of the circumflex is to mark a long syllable: therefore it ought to be set over not only the long *e*'s, but also over all the other long vowels; as in the words *âme, île, abîme, côte, côté, les autres, nôs, hûre, ils pûrent*; as likewise over these improper diphthongs, *chaîne, reine, haine, seize, je fais*, whose pronunciation is thereby distinguished from the same syllables, when this improper diphthong is short, as in the following words, *laine, peine, une plaine, elle est pleine, fontaine, treize\*, il a fait, c'est un fait*.

To conclude, it is evident from the aforesaid observations, that the accents shew the pronunciation of our vowels, and ought to be the most essential part of orthography. Their omission bewilders the reader: nay, I have strong reasons to believe that it is often owing to the ignorance of the writer. I myself have been sometimes at a loss how to read some words, which I never heard read or spoken, and have therefore applied to the French Academy, to be informed of their pronunciation. An accent over an *e* would have cleared the point.

Such is the use of our accents; from whence it appears, that accent in French is of a very different use than in English, wherein it denotes that *the tone, or stress of the voice in pronouncing, is upon the syllable over which it is placed*, and therefore serves only to shew the quantity of syllables. The French language has indeed its quantity: the length and shortness of syllables must be so carefully observed in pronouncing, that the mistaking a long vowel for a short one is enough, in some words, to change their signification; as *aveuglement*, which is a noun signifying *blindness* when the penultima is short, or (as the English phrase it) when the accent is over the last syllable but one; and an adverb signifying *blindly*, when *e* is long with an accent acute over it, or (according to the English) when the accent is over the last syllable

\* *ei* in *treize* is long, as in *seize*, but it has the acute sound.

but one. Mr. Rollin observes, that the vowel *e* in these words, *severe* severe, *évêque* bishop, *repêché* got out of the water, and *revêtir* to put on, has three different sounds, and three quantities, of which perhaps no instance can be found in the Greek and Latin tongues; and it is by their accent, so different from the true French accent, that the people of the divers provinces in France are known. But notwithstanding what I have said of that quantity which syllables have in words, and the great help which I have laboured to give the learner to attain the harmony of the pronunciation, it is altogether impossible to become master of it, otherwise than by hearing such speak and read who have the true French accent, and are perfect masters of their language.

A late writer, who, some years ago, read Lectures on the English Language in the City, the design of which was, as far as I could apprehend, to convince his hearers and readers of this great and important point; namely, that the English, as well as other nations, spell otherwise than they pronounce; and who has been since, labouring very hard, to make the two Universities learn reading English; advances, in his Lectures on Elocution, that the French have no quantity, or, which is the same, that they make all their syllables long\*. The contrary is so evident to any body who has the least tincture of French, that it is difficult to say which is most amazing, the ignorance or assurance of the author, who treats of matters to which he is quite a stranger: for in those very lectures, all notions of Grammar and Oratory are confounded and mistaken. The French language abounds in Dactyles, Iambes, Troches, Anapests, and Choriambes. The Spondees are few in comparison of the other metres, the variety of which makes it a most harmonious language. And notwithstanding its nasal sounds, and guttural *e*, which, though a little grating to the ear, an able Poet and Musician can nevertheless use to advantage, it may claim the preference of all modern languages, without excepting even the Ita-

\* The best way of seeing clearly the difference between the genius of the French tongue and ours in this respect, will be to sound a number of words immediately borrowed from them, and see in what the diversity of pronunciation consists. Such as *abandon* āban'dōn, *combat* com'bāt, *college* collēge, *communion* com'mū'ōn, *company* pan'ion, *Europe* Eūropē, *obstacle* ob'stācle, *solid* solīd, *Docteur* Doc'tor, *favor* fāvōir, *honneur* hon'ōir, &c. in most of which words the syllables are all long in the French, and short in the English, as the accents are placed on the vowels in the French, and on the consonants in the English. This it is which makes most of their words appear to an English ear to have as many accents as syllables, by obliging them to give an equal stress to them. *A Course of Lectures on Elocution, Lect. 3d, on Accent.*

lian. But this same writer has, by an extraordinary effort of reason, found out that England could never have been, or continue to be, a flourishing nation, without a revelation \*. *Risum teneatis.* A true Comedian indeed !

CAPITALS or Great Letters are used,

1<sup>st</sup>, In the beginning of a sentence in prose, and every line or verse in poetry.

2<sup>dly</sup>, All Christian and proper names of persons, places, ships, rivers, arts, sciences, dignities, titles of honour and professions ; as also adnouns derived from thence, begin with a great letter ; as *George Roi*, *George Rex*, *un Mathématicien Anglois*, an English Mathematician, *un Tailleur François*, a French Taylor.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Such nouns in a sentence that bear some considerable stress of the author's sense upon it, to make it the more remarkable and conspicuous. The introduction to this work contains several examples of such words. Sometimes the Italic letters are used for that purpose : tho' these are particularly appropriated to distinguishing the words and sentences cited as examples of what is advanced. Those cases excepted, do not begin with a capital any common noun, as was most generally, and abusively too, done in English some years ago. At present the other extreme is prevailing, and every noun is printed in a small letter, even to the very names of countries and professions : yet is it not as absurd to write *king* and *god* with a small *k* or *g*, as *Bread* and *Beer* with a capital *B* ? The writing the initials of the nouns mentioned in the second paragraph with a small letter, or those of appellatives with a capital, is nothing less than entirely disfiguring our writings, whether in manuscript or from the press, and totally abolishing that distinction which different characters should preserve.

\* If ever a divine revelation was necessary to man, it was more particularly so to the British nation, than to any other upon earth : it was impossible, without such a revelation, we should ever be, or continue to be, a great and flourishing people : and the system now nominally established amongst us as the revealed will of God, were it really believed to be such universally, and accordingly practised, would raise us above all other nations that either do, or ever did, exist upon earth, and preserve us unalterably such to the end of time, provided that system continued to retain its due influence. *British Education, Book I. Chap. XIV.*

This system was not only calculated in the most exact manner for all the purposes of society in general, but peculiarly adapted to the particular circumstances of this country above all others. *Ibidem.*

STOPS are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are thus :

<i>une virgule</i>	,	a comma	,
<i>un point-virgule</i>	;	a semicolon	;
<i>deux points</i>	:	a colon	:
<i>un point</i>	.	a period, or full stop	.
<i>un point d'interrogation</i>	?	a note of interrogation	?
<i>un point d'admiration</i>	!	a note of admiration	!

The use of these stops, which the French call *Punctuation*, seems pretty arbitrary, and to differ not only according to the genius of languages, but also according to the style of authors; yet as they are necessary to avoid obscurity, and prevent misconstructions, and therefore for the better understanding of what we write and read, here follows the use which the generality of the learned make of them; which use is itself grounded upon reason.

A *comma* is used to distinguish the several parts of a sentence, and give the reader a proper time for breathing; as likewise to distinguish, in enumerations, the things that are enumerated, whether they be of the same or of a different kind: as,

*Si tant de gens se plaisent à lire des bagatelles, c'est peut-être que leur esprit ayant peu de force, ils aiment les choses aisées à comprendre.* If so many people take a pleasure in reading trifles, it is perhaps because, being of a little genius, they like things easy to understand.

*Les neuf parties du discours sont le nom, l'adnom, le pronom, le nombre, le verb, l'adverbe, la préposition, la conjonction, & la particule.* The nine parts of speech are these; noun, adnoun, pronoun, number, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle.

*On ne devient point savant, que l'on n'étudie constamment, méthodiquement, & avec application.* One cannot get learning without studying steadily, methodically, and with application.

A *semicolon* is used likewise to distinguish a part of a sentence of a pretty good length, but in such a manner, that the remaining part of the sentence is not necessary to make a complete sense, which is perfect at the semicolon: as,

*Le siècle d'Auguste a tellement été celui des excellens Poètes, qu'ils ont servi de modèles à tous les autres; cependant il n'a point produit de Poètes tragiques.* The Augustan Age has in such a manner been that of excellent Poets, that they have served as models to all others; yet it has produced no tragic writers.

A colon

A *colon* marks a sense that seems to be complete, but so that something may still be added to it. The colon and semicolon may sometimes indeed be used promiscuously; but when the sentence is tolerably long, or the period composed of four or five sentences, one must observe to make the pauses in the order of the aforesaid stops; finishing by the full stop, when the sense of the sentence is quite out. More examples would be needless.

A note of *interrogation* is used when a question is asked; as, *Quelle heure est-il?* What o'clock is it?

A note of *admiration* is used when we express our wonder or admiration at something; as, *O temps! O mœurs! O times! O manners!*

There are besides some other figures in writing: as

**PARENTHESIS**, which is a distinct sentence interposed in the main sentence, within these two figures ( ), which being left out, the sense of the sentence is entire. If the occasional sentence is a short one, it is not necessary to use the two aforesaid figures, but only to inclose it in two commas. But the parenthesis is now-a-days of no use in French, because no long occasional sentence is suffered in the style.

**INDEX** ☞, the fore finger pointing, signifies that passage to be very remarkable against which it is placed.

**OBELISK** † and **ASTERISK** \* are used to refer the reader to some remark in the margin, or at the foot of the page. And several stars set together \*\*\* signify that there is something wanting, defective, or immodest in that passage of the author. In dictionaries, *Obelisk* commonly denotes a word to be obsolete, or little used.

**QUOTATION** (“) or a double comma turned, is put at the beginning and end of such lines as are quoted out of another author in his own words.

**SECTION** or **Division** § is used in subdividing of a chapter or book into lesser parts.

**PARAGRAPH** ¶ is the part of a section or chapter, comprehending several sentences under one head or subject.

**CARET** (^) is placed underneath a line between two words, to denote that some letter, syllable, or word, has, by inadvertence, been left out in writing or printing. Several points . . . . , or a dash —, denotes a reticence, or a sense that is imperfect.

ABBRE-

ABBREVIATIONS *Sometimes used in writing and printing, especially in foreign Gazettes.*

S. M.	Sa Majesté, <i>his or her Majesty.</i>
L. M.	Leurs Majestés, <i>their Majesties.</i>
S. M. Imp.	Sa Majesté Impériale, <i>his or her Imperial Majesty.</i>
L. M. Imp.	Leurs Majestés Impériales, <i>their Imperial Majesties.</i>
S. M. T. C.	Sa Majesté très Chrétienne, <i>his most Christian Majesty.</i>
S. M. Cath.	Sa Majesté Catholique, <i>his Catholic Majesty.</i>
S. M. Brit.	Sa Majesté Britannique, <i>his or her Britannic Majesty.</i>
S. M. Pruss.	Sa Majesté Prussienne, <i>his Prussian Majesty.</i>
S. M. Polon.	Sa Majesté Polonoise, <i>his Polish Majesty.</i>
S. A. R.	Son Altesse Royale, <i>his or her Royal Highness.</i>
S. A. E.	Son Altesse Electorale, <i>his Electoral Highness.</i>
S. A. S.	Son Altesse Sérénissime, <i>his most Serene Highness.</i>
L. N. & H. P.	Leurs Nobles & Hautes Puissances, <i>their High Mightinesses.</i>
S. E.	Son Excellence, <i>his or her Excellence.</i>
S. S.	Sa Sainteté, <i>his Holiness.</i>
S. Emin.	Son Eminence, <i>his Eminence.</i>
V. S.	Vieux Stile, <i>Old Stile.</i>
N. S.	Nouveau Stile, <i>New Stile.</i>
J. C.	Jésus Christ, <i>Jesus Christ.</i>
N. D.	Notre-Dame, <i>Our Lady.</i>
C. P.	Constantinople.
Mr.	Monsieur, <i>Sir or Master.</i>
M <sup>de</sup> . M <sup>e</sup> .	Madame, <i>Madam or Mistress.</i>
M <sup>lle</sup> .	Mademoiselle, <i>Miss or Madam.</i>
M <sup>ss</sup> . or M <sup>ms</sup> .	Messieurs, <i>Gentlemen, Masters.</i>
MS.	Manuscript, <i>Manuscript.</i>
Sept. or <sup>bre</sup> .	Septembre, <i>September.</i>
Oct. <sup>8bre</sup> .	Octobre, <i>October.</i>
Nov. <sup>9bre</sup> .	Novembre, <i>November.</i>
Déc. <sup>xbre</sup> .	Décembre, <i>December.</i>

## A LIST of the words wherein h is

<i>aspirated.</i>		<i>not aspirated.</i>	
ha!	oh! ah!	habile,	fit, able.
habler,	to romance, tell stories.	habiller,	to clothe.
hablerie,	romancing.	s'habiller,	to dress one's self.
hableur,	a romancer, a liar.	habit,	a suit of clothes.
hache,	axe.	habiter,	to inhabit.
hacher,	to mince.	habitable,	inhabitable.
hachette,	hatchet.	habitant,	inhabitant.
hachis,	chopped meat.	habitude,	habit, custom.
hachure,	hatching.	habitué,	used.
hachoir,	a chopping board.	habituel,	habitual.
hagard,	haggard, fierce.	haleine,	breath.
haïr,	to hate.	hameçon,	a fishing-book.
haïne,	hatred.	harmonie,	harmony.
haïssable,	hateful.	hast,	hast.
haïe,	hedge.	hebdomadaire,	weekly.
haillon,	rag, tatter.	heberger,	to harbour, lodge.
Hainaut,	(a country).	hébêter,	to besot, make dull.
haïre,	hair shirt.	Hébreu,	Hebrew.
halage,	towage, or towing.	Hébraïque,	
halbran,	a young wild duck.	hécatoïse,	an hecatomb.
hâle, dripping wind, or weather.		hégire,	hegira.
hâlê,	fun burnt.	Helicon,	
haléner,	to smell one's breath.	héliotrope,	turn-sol.
hâler,	to tow, or haul.	hellébore,	bellebore.
halle,	market place.	hémisphère,	hemisphere.
halebarde,	halberd.	hémistich,	hemistich.
halebardier,	halberdier.	hémorragie,	bloody flux.
haleter,	to pant.	hémorroïdes,	piles.
halier,	thicket.	hépatique,	hepatic.
halte,	halt.	heptagone,	a heptagon.
hamac,	hammock.	herbage,	grass, pasture.
hameau,	hamlet.	herbe,	herb, grass.
hampe,	{ the staff or shaft of a halberd.	herboriste,	an herbalist.
hanche,	hip.	héréditaire,	hereditary.
hanap,	a sort of bowl.	hériter,	to inherit.
hanneton,	a May-bug.	héritage,	inheritance.
hangar,	a cart-house.	héritier,	an heir.
hanter,	to keep company with.	hérésie,	heresy.
hapelourde,	a false stone.	hérétique,	heretic.
		hermaphrodite,	hermaphrodite.
			hermé-

*aspirated.*

happer,	to snap.
haquenée,	ambling nag.
haquet,	a dray.
hareng,	a herring.
harangere,	a fish-woman.
harangue,	speech, oration.
haranguer,	to make a speech.
harangueur,	a speech maker.
haras,	stud, or breed of horses.
harasser,	to harass, tire.
harceler,	to tire, tease.
hardes,	cloaths.
hardi,	bold, daring.
hardiesse,	boldness.
hardiment,	boldly.
hargneux,	cross, peevish.
haricots,	French beans.
haricot,	(a sort of French dish).
haridelle,	a sorry horse, a jade.
harnacher,	to harness.
harnois,	harness.
hâro,	a hue and cry.
harpe,	harp.
harpon,	a harping iron.
harpie,	harp.
hart,	a faggot band.
hasard *	chance.
hasarder,	to venture.
hale,	a doe-bare, or coney.
hâte,	haste.
hâter,	to hasten.
se hâter,	to make haste.
hâtif,	hasty, forward.
hävage,	hangman's fees.
have,	wan, pale.
hävir,	to burn.
havre,	haven, harbour.
havre-sac,	knap-sack.
haubert,	a coat of mail.
haut-bois,	hautboy.
hausser,	to raise.

*not aspirated.*

hermetique,	hermetical.
hermine,	ermine.
hermite,	an hermit.
hermitage,	hermitage.
héroïne,	an heroine.
héroïque,	heroical.
hésiter,	to hesitate.
hésitation,	hesitation.
hétéroclite,	heteroclite.
hétérodoxe,	heterodox.
hétérogène,	heterogeneous.
heure,	hour.
heureux,	happy.
heureusement,	happily.
hexagone,	an hexagon.
hexamètre,	hexameter.
hiatus,	a gap.
hiëble,	wall-wort.
hier,	yesterday.
hiéroglyphique,	hieroglyphick.
hippocras,	hypocras.
hypocrite,	hypocrite.
hirondelle,	a swallow.
histoire,	history.
historien,	historian.
historique,	historical.
histrion,	a buffoon.
hiver,	winter.
hiverner,	to winter.
hoir and hoirie,	heir, inheritance.
holocauste,	a burnt sacrifice.
homélie,	an homily.
homicide,	an homicide.
hommage,	homage.
homme,	man.
homogène,	homogeneous.
homologuer,	to confirm.
homologation,	confirmation.
honnête,	honest.
honnêtement,	honestly.
honneur,	honour.

\* We also say *une chose d'hasard*, a second-hand thing.

<i>aspirated.</i>		<i>not aspirated.</i>	
hausse-col,	<i>a neck-piece.</i>	honoré,	<i>to honour.</i>
haut,	<i>high.</i>	honnêteté,	<i>honesty.</i>
haut-mal,	<i>falling-sickness.</i>	honorable,	<i>honourable.</i>
hautain,	<i>haughty.</i>	hopital,	<i>hospital.</i>
hautement,	<i>with a loud voice.</i>	hospitalier,	<i>hospitable.</i>
hauteur *,	<i>height.</i>	hospitalité,	<i>hospitality.</i>
hautesse,	<i>Grand Signor's title.</i>	horison,	<i>horison.</i>
haute-contre,	<i>counter-tenor.</i>	horloge,	<i>a clock.</i>
hé! hem!	<i>(interjections).</i>	horloger,	<i>watch-maker.</i>
heaume,	<i>helm, helmet.</i>	horoscope,	<i>horoscope.</i>
hennir, ( <i>pron. hanir</i> )	<i>to neigh.</i>	horreur,	<i>horror.</i>
hennissement,	<i>neighing.</i>	horrible,	<i>horrible.</i>
hérald,	<i>herald.</i>	horriblement,	<i>horribly.</i>
héros,	<i>an hero.</i>	hostie,	<i>victim.</i>
hériffler,	<i>to stand on end.</i>	hostilité,	<i>hostility.</i>
hérifflon,	<i>a hedge-hog, urchin.</i>	hôte,	<i>landlord.</i>
hernie,	<i>rupture.</i>	hôtesse,	<i>landlady.</i>
héron,	<i>a hern.</i>	hôtel,	<i>a great man's house.</i>
herse,	<i>barrow.</i>	hôtellerie,	<i>an inn.</i>
herfèr,	<i>to harrow.</i>	huile,	<i>oil.</i>
herfèur,	<i>a harrower.</i>	huiler,	<i>to oil.</i>
hêtre,	<i>beech tree.</i>	huileux,	<i>oily.</i>
heur,	<i>a knocking, a hit.</i>	huis,	<i>door.</i>
heurter,	<i>to knock.</i>	huissier,	<i>usher, door-keeper.</i>
hibou,	<i>an owl.</i>	huit,	<i>eight (with derivatives).</i>
le hic,	<i>the difficulty.</i>	huitre,	<i>oyster.</i>
hideux,	<i>hideous, dreadful.</i>	humain,	<i>humane.</i>
hie,	<i>a paviour's beetle.</i>	humainement,	<i>humanely.</i>
ho!	<i>oh!</i>	humaniser,	<i>to tame.</i>
hobereau,	<i>hobby.</i>	humaniste,	<i>humanist.</i>
hoçà,	<i>now.</i>	humanité,	<i>human nature.</i>
hoche,	<i>notch.</i>	humble,	<i>humble.</i>
hochement,	<i>shaking of the head.</i>	humblement,	<i>humbly.</i>
hocher,	<i>to shake.</i>	humecter,	<i>to moisten.</i>
hochepot,	<i>hotch-potch.</i>	humectation,	<i>moistening.</i>
hochequeue,	<i>a wag-tail.</i>	humeur,	<i>humour.</i>
hochet,	<i>a coral.</i>	humide,	<i>damp, moist.</i>
holà,	<i>hold.</i>	humidité,	<i>dampness.</i>
Hollande,	<i>Holland.</i>	humilier,	<i>to humble.</i>

\* We write and pronounce *la hauteur*, though we nevertheless say in common conversation, *un homme de six pieds d' hauteur*, a man six feet high.

*aspirated.*

homard,	a large lobster.
hongre,	a gelding.
Hongrie,	Hungary.
honni,	evil.
honte,	shame.
honteux,	shameful.
honteusement,	shamefully.
hoquet,	hiccough.
hoqueton,	a sort of serjeant.
horion,	a great blow.
hormis,	but, besides.
hors,	out.
hotte,	scuttle, dorser.
hottour, one who carries a dorser.	
hottée,	a scuttle full.
houblon,	bops.
houblonnière,	bop-ground.
houe,	a grubbing-axe.
bouer,	to dig.
houlette,	a sheep-hook.
houppe,	a puff, a tuft.
houppelande,	a great coat.
hourdage,	rough walling.
hourder,	to make a rough wall.
houx,	holly-oak.
houspiller,	to towse, tug.

*not aspirated.*

humiliant,	mortifying.
humiliation,	humiliation.
humilité,	humility.
hyperbole,	hyperbole.
hypocondre,	hypochondriac.
hypocrisie,	hypocrisy.
hypostase,	hypostasis.
hypothéquer,	to mortgage.
hypothèque,	a mortgage.
hyacinthe,	a hyacinth.
hyades,	hyades.
hydre,	hydra.
hydrocèle, a sort of watery swelling.	
hydrographie,	hydrography.
hydromancie,	hydromancy.
hydromel,	mead.
hydropisie,	dropsy.
hydropique,	hydropic.
hymen,	hymen.
hyménée,	hymeneus.
hymne,	hymn.
hypothèse,	hypothesis.
hyssope,	hyssop.
hystérique,	hysteria.

*aspirated.*

houffart, or housard,	} a houffart.	huguenote,	a kind of kettle.
or huffart,		humer,	to sup up.
houffaie,	a holly grove.	hune,	the round top of a mast.
houffé, case for a chair or bed.		hupier,	top-mast.
houffoir,	a hair broom.	huppe,	a whoop, or hoop.
houffer,	to sweep.	huppé,	topping.
houffine,	a switch.	hure,	the head of a wild bear.
hoyau,	a mattock.	hurler,	to howl.
huche, kneading-trough, hutch.		hurlement,	howling.
huée, a hollow, or hooting.		hutte,	a hut.
huer,	to hoot at.	hutté,	lodging in a hut.
huguenot,	huguenot.		

## P A R T II.

### Of the PARTS of SPEECH.

**T**HE French Tongue may be considered as composed of, and every word of which is comprehended under, one of the nine parts of speech following :

Noun,	}	{	Adverb,
Adnoun,			Preposition,
Pronoun,			Conjunction,
Number,			Particle.
Verb,			

Of which the first five receive several variations in their terminations, and are therefore called *declinable*: the four last receive no such variations (except the *Article*), and are therefore called *indeclinable*.

### C H A P. I.

#### Of N O U N.

**T**HE NOUN is a part of speech, which serves to name every thing that can be considered, as subsisting either in nature, or in our ideas or imagination, which one can possibly speak of.

—Nouns are also called *substantives*; as *un homme* a man, *une femme* a woman, *une maison* a house, *un arbre* a tree, &c.

Three things called *Accidents* are to be considered in nouns; the NUMBER, the GENDER, and the extent of the sense in which they are taken, denoted by the ARTICLE.

Nouns have two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is said to be of the singular number, when it denotes one single thing only; as *un homme* a man, *une femme* a woman, &c. It is said to be of the plural, when it denotes two or more things at once; as *des hommes* men, *des femmes* women, &c.

### S E C T I O N I.

#### Of the formation of the PLURAL number of Nouns.

Generally speaking, in French as in English, the plural number differs from the singular only by the addition of *s*: as,

Sing.

Sing. Numb.		Plur. Numb.	
<i>un homme,</i>	a man,	<i>des hommes,</i>	men.
<i>une maison,</i>	a house,	<i>des maisons,</i>	houses.
<i>un jour,</i>	a day,	<i>des jours,</i>	days.
<i>un dé,</i>	a thimble,	<i>des dés,</i>	thimbles.

Nouns ending their singular in *s*, or *x*, have their plural alike, without any alteration or addition : as,

Sing. Numb.		Plur. Numb.	
<i>le fils,</i>	the son,	<i>les fils,</i>	the sons.
<i>une voix,</i>	a voice,	<i>des voix,</i>	voices.
<i>un nez,</i>	a nose,	<i>deux nez,</i>	two noses.

Nouns ending in *é* acute might formerly take indifferently for their plural either *s* or *x*, in leaving out the accent of the singular, as *bonté* kindness, *bontés* or *bontez* kindnesses; which sort of spelling some authors keep to still. But the best writers now-a-days keep to the general rule of forming the plural by adding *s* to the singular of nouns in *é*, reserving *ez* for the second person plural of verbs only; as *vous aimez*, ye or you love.

In nouns ending in *nt*, it is become usual to leave out the final *t* in the plural before *s*; as *enfant* child, *enfants* children, instead of *enfants*; *prudent* prudent, *prudents*, &c., but monosyllables retain it, as *des ponts* bridges, *des dents* teeth, from *pont* and *dent*: Except *cent* and *tout*, as *deux cens hommes* two hundred men, *tous les ans* every year.

### Exceptions.

1<sup>st</sup>, Nouns ending in *au* or *eau*, *eu* or *œu*, and *ieu*, take *x* instead of *s* for their plural : as,

Sing.	{ <i>chapeau,</i>	hat,	Plur.	{ <i>chapeaux,</i>	hats.
	{ <i>jeu,</i>	game,		{ <i>jeux,</i>	games.
	{ <i>lieu,</i>	place,		{ <i>lieux.</i>	places.

Except the adnoun *bleu* blue, which keeps the *s*, and makes *bleus*.

Nouns in *ou* take also *x* instead of *s*: as *un chou* a cabbage, *des choux* cabbages, *le genou* the knee, *les genoux* the knees, &c. Except *trou* hole, *cou* neck, *clou* nail, *flou* pickpocket, *fou* fool, *matou* a large cat, *mou* soft, *bibou* owl, *licou* halter, and *loup-garou* a were-wolf, which follow the general rule, and make *trous*, *choux*, *matous*, &c.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Nouns ending in *al* and *ail*, change *al* and *ail* into *aux* for their plural : as,

Sing.	{ <i>animal,</i> a living creature,	Plur.	{ <i>animaux,</i> living creatures.
	{ <i>travail,</i> work,		{ <i>travaux,</i> works.

*ail* garlic, makes *aux*, though very seldom used.

Nevertheless these fix, *bal* a ball or masquerade, *cal* (or rather *cain*) a hard skin, *car-naval* carnival, *pal* pale (a term of heraldry), *regal* a noble treat, *bocal* a kind of vessel or bottle, follow the general rule, and make in their plural *bals*, *bocals*, *cal*, *car-navals*,

*navals, pals, régals;* as also proper names in *al*; as *deux Juvenals* two Juvenals, *trois Martials* three Martials.

The following nouns in *ail* follow also the general rule.

<i>attirail,</i>	train,	<i>éventail,</i>	fan.	<i>portail,</i>	front gate of a
<i>camail,</i>	a sort of priest-	<i>épouvantail,</i>	scarecrow.		church,
dress.		<i>gouvernail,</i>	helm.	<i>serail,</i>	seraglio,
<i>détail,</i>	particulars.	<i>mail,</i>	mail.		

These two, *bercail* sheepfold, and *poitrail* the breast of a horse, have no plural. — *Béail* cattle, is a noun of multitude singular without plural; as *bestiaux*, a noun plural of the same signification without singular.

These following adnouns in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine.

<i>austral,</i>	southern.	<i>frugal,</i>	frugal.	<i>nuptial,</i>	nuptial.
<i>boréal,</i>	northern.	<i>jovial,</i>	jovial.	<i>pastoral,</i>	pastoral.
<i>claustral,</i>	claustral.	<i>lustral,</i>	lustral.	<i>pascal,</i>	pascal.
<i>conjugal,</i>	conjugal.	<i>littéral,</i>	literal.	<i>total,</i>	total.
<i>diamétral,</i>	diametral.	<i>matinal,</i>	early.	<i>trivial,</i>	trivial.
<i>fatal,</i>	fatal.	<i>nasal,</i>	nasal.	<i>venal,</i>	venal.
<i>filial,</i>	filial.	<i>natal,</i>	native.	<i>spécial,</i>	special.
<i>final,</i>	final.	<i>naval,</i>	naval.	<i>libéral,</i>	liberal.

Except that we say *les arts libéraux* liberal arts, and *des cierges pascals* (large wax-tapers burnt in churches at Easter among the Roman catholics). — Neither is *martial* warlike, used at all in the plural.

We do say *des armées navales* sea armaments; but instead of *combats navals*, or *batailles navales*, we say *des combats sur mer*. — We say *les psaumes pénitentiels* the penitential psalms; but not *un psaume pénitential* or *pénitentiel*, but *un des psaumes pénitentiels*, one of the penitential psalms, that adnoun being not used in the singular.

3dly, <i>ciel,</i>	heaven,	} make {	<i>cieux,</i>	heavens,
<i>œil,</i>	eye,		<i>yeux,</i>	eyes.
<i>aïeul,</i>	grand-father,		<i>aïeux,</i>	grand-fathers.
<i>gentil-homme,</i>	one nobly		<i>gentils-hommes</i>	nobly de-
descended. ( <i>l</i> is liquid)			scended. ( <i>l</i> is silent)	

*Loy* and *loix*, as also *Roy* and *Roix*, are quite obsolete; we now-a-days spell *loi* a law, and *Roi* a king, and their plural *lois* and *Rois* are regular.

When a compound noun is formed of a noun and an adnoun, both take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un arc-boutant*, a buttress; *des arcs-boutans*, buttresses.  
*un cerf-volant*, a paper-kite; *des cerf-volans*, paper kites.  
*des bouts-rimés*, rhymes of verses given to fill up.

*les Gardes-Françoises*, the French Guards.

When a compound noun is formed of a preposition and a noun, or of a verb and a noun, the noun only takes the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un avant-coureur*, a fore-runner; *des avant-coureurs*, fore-runners.  
*un entre-sol*, an enter-sole; *des entre-sols*, enter-soles.  
*un abat-jour*, a sky-light; *des abat-jours*, sky-lights.  
*un cure-dent*, a tooth-picker; *des cure-dents*, tooth-pickers.  
*un tourne-broche*, a jack; *des tourne-broches*, jacks.  
*un garde-fou*, a rail; *des garde-fous*, rails.

When a compound noun is formed of two nouns united by a preposition, the first only must take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un œil-de-bœuf*, an oval window; *des œils-de-bœuf*, oval windows.  
*un ciel-de-lit*, a tester; *des ciels-de-lit*, testers.  
*un jet-d'eau*, a water-spout; *des jets-d'eau*, water-spouts.

*un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece; *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.  
*un cul-de-lampe*, a tail-piece; *des culs-de-lampe*, tail-pieces.  
*un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

I cannot help mentioning a gross mistake that has crept into the French Academy's Dictionary, and misled some modern Grammarians, who write *des chefs-d'œuvre*, *des arc-en-ciel*, *des ciels-de-lit*; which implies contradiction, and even nonsense: can the mark of the plural be affixed to a thing which is not presented as numerable? However, we say, in painting, *le ciel*, *les ciels*; but we mean only the air, the clouds, not the skies.

Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon*, *ma*, change *mon*, *ma*, into *mes* in the plural, besides the characteristic final letter of that number; as,

Sing.	<i>monieur</i> ,	master,	Plur.	<i>mesieurs</i> ,	gentlemen,
	<i>madame</i> ,	madam,		<i>mesdames</i> ,	ladies,
	<i>monseigneur</i> ,	my lord,		<i>messeigneurs</i> ,	my lords,
	<i>mademoiselle</i> ,	miss,		<i>mesdemoiselles</i> ,	ladies.

In all languages several nouns have no plural: such are,  
 1<sup>st</sup>, Nouns of virtues and vices; as *la charité* charity, *la haine* hatred, *la foi* faith, *l'orgueil* pride, &c. so far only as they express habits; for when they express acts, they are used in the plural: as *faire des charités*, to give alms.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Nouns of metals; as *de l'or* gold, *du cuivre* copper, *du plomb* lead, &c. but in another sense we say *des plombs* leaden vessels, *des fers* fetters.

3<sup>dly</sup>, These following:

<i>absinthe</i> ,	wormwood.	<i>courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>le toucher</i> ,	feeling.
<i>artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Eucharistie</i> ,	Lord's supper.	<i>repos</i> ,	rest.
<i>attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Extrême-onction</i> *,		<i>naturel</i> ,	nature.
<i>bienheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>faim</i> ,	hunger.	<i>noblesse</i> ,	nobility.
<i>colere</i> ,	anger.	<i>fai</i> ,	gall.	<i>paupreté</i> ,	poverty.
<i>gloire</i> ,	glory.	<i>fumée</i> ,	smoke.	<i>soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>honte</i> ,	shame.	<i>difette</i> ,	scarcity.	<i>sang</i> ,	blood.
<i>jeunesse</i> ,	youth.	<i>fuite</i> ,	flight.	<i>salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>mollesse</i> ,	effeminacy.	<i>la vue</i> ,	the sight.	<i>total</i> ,	whole.
<i>le prochain</i> ,	our neighbour.	<i>l'ouie</i> ,	hearing.	<i>vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>réputation</i> ,	reputation.	<i>l'odorat</i> ,	smelling.	<i>virilité</i> ,	manhood.
<i>renommée</i> ,	fame.	<i>le goût</i> ,	the taste.	<i>miel</i> ,	honey.

\* One of the seven sacraments of the church of Rome.

As also infinitives and adjectives used substantively; as *le boire* & *le manger* eating and drinking, *l'utile* & *l'agréable* profit and pleasure.

4<sup>thly</sup>, Nouns of number have no plural in French; or rather, tho' they are plural by their nature, except *un*, yet they don't take the final *s* which characterises that number: as *trois deux* three two's, *deux quatre* two fours, *quatre six* four sixes, *dix mille* ten thousand, &c. Except *vingt*, *cent*, and *million*; as *six vingts hommes* six score men, *deux cens écus* two hundred crowns, &c. — *oui* and *non* used substantively, have no plural neither; as *je ne me soucie ni de vos oui ni de vos non*, I care neither for your yea's nor your no's.

Proper names have no plural, unless they are used metaphorically.

Thus we say, *les deux Césars*, *les Turenne*, *les Lamouignon*, &c. but we say *ils sont les Césars* & *les Alexandres de leur siècle*, they are the Césars and Alexanders of their age.

The following nouns have only the plural in use :

<i>Alpes,</i>	<i>Alps.</i>	<i>délices,</i>	delight.	<i>matériaux,</i>	materials.
<i>annales,</i>	<i>annals.</i>	<i>dépens,</i>	soft.	<i>* matines,</i>	matins.
<i>ancêtres,</i>	ancestors.	<i>écrouelles,</i>	the king's evil.	<i>mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>aïeux,</i>	forefathers.	<i>entraves,</i>	shackles.	<i>mouchettes,</i>	snuffers.
<i>agneux (dire aux)</i>	to be upon	<i>entrailles,</i>	entrails.	<i>munitions,</i>	ammunitions †.
the catch.		<i>entrefaites,</i>	transactions.	<i>nippes,</i>	goods, things.
<i>arrérages,</i>	<i>arrears.</i>	<i>écrivaines,</i>	soundly lashing.	<i>* nones,</i>	the nones.
<i>assises,</i>	<i>assises.</i>	<i>épousailles,</i>	espousals.	<i>obseques,</i>	obsequies.
<i>atours,</i>	<i>apparel.</i>	<i>fiançailles,</i>	betrothing.	<i>pleurs,</i>	tears.
<i>avives,</i>	vives (in horses a	<i>funérailles,</i>	funerals.	<i>procès,</i>	relations.
disease).		<i>fonts,</i>	the font for christen-	<i>présentes,</i>	first-fruits.
<i>beautés,</i>	dainties.	ing.		<i>Pyrennées,</i>	Pyrennees.
<i>besicles,</i>	spectacles.	<i>frais,</i>	expenses.	<i>représailles,</i>	reprisals.
<i>broussailles,</i>	briars.	<i>gallions,</i>	galleons.	<i>rets,</i>	a net.
<i>Calendes,</i>	<i>Calends.</i>	<i>gens,</i>	people.	<i>rogations,</i>	rogation-day.
<i>catacombes,</i>	catacombs.	<i>hardes,</i>	clothes.	<i>stigmates,</i>	prints, marks.
<i>ciseaux,</i>	scissors.	<i>bémorboïdes,</i>	piles.	<i>ténèbres,</i>	darkness.
<i>* complies,</i>	closing prayers	<i>immondices,</i>	filth.	<i>* vèpres,</i>	vespers.
of the day.		<i>* laudes,</i>	morning prayers.	<i>vergettes,</i>	a brush.
<i>confins,</i>	<i>confines.</i>	<i>limites,</i>	limits.	<i>vivres,</i>	victuals.
<i>confitures,</i>	sweet-meats.	<i>mânes,</i>	the ghost of one de-		
<i>décombres,</i>	rubbish.	ceased.			

\* *Matines, laudes, nones, vèpres,* and *complies*, are part of the divine service called in the church of Rome the Canonical Hours.

† Except that we say *du pain de munition*, ammunition-bread.

The following nouns, merely Latin, are of both numbers.

<i>des alleluia, des libera,</i>	(church terms.)	<i>huit in octavo,</i>	eight octavo's.
<i>des alibi,</i>	(a law term.)	<i>cing pater &amp; cing ave,</i>	five pater-nosters.
<i>des alineæ,</i>	(new paragraphs.)	<i>des ave, des ave Maria,</i>	
<i>des accessit,</i>	(certificates.)	<i>des orémus,</i>	collects.
<i>des petits item,</i>	small articles.	<i>des te deum,</i>	te deum's.
<i>des duo, des trio, des quatuor.</i>		<i>ses ergo,</i>	his therefore &c.
<i>trois errata,</i>	three errata's.	And <i>des a parte,</i>	afide (what an actor
<i>quatre duplicata,</i>	four duplicata's.	speaks afide upon the stage.)	
<i>des Acacias,</i>	Acacias.	We likewise say,	
<i>des exeat,</i>	(leave to go out.)	<i>des in-douze,</i>	duodecimo, in twelves.
<i>des fac-totum,</i>	people who do all in a	<i>des in-seize,</i>	sixteens.
family.		<i>des in-dix-huit,</i>	eighteens.
<i>trois in folio,</i>	three folio's.	<i>des in-vingt-quatre,</i>	twenty-fours.
<i>fix in quarto,</i>	fix quarto's.	<i>des a, des b, des i, &amp;c.</i>	a's, b's, i's, &c.

## SECTION II.

### Of the GENDER of Nouns.

Nouns are either of the *masculine* or of the *feminine* gender.

Nouns relating to males, or *he's*, are masculine; and those relating to females, or *she's*, are feminine: as,

Masc.

Masc. Gend.		Fem. Gend.
<i>un Dieu,</i>	a God,	<i>une Déesse,</i> a Goddess.
<i>un Roi,</i>	a King,	<i>une Reine,</i> a Queen.
<i>le Jupiter de Phidias,</i>	Phidias's	<i>la Diane d' Ephèse,</i> the Diana of Ephesus.
<i>Jupiter,</i>		
<i>un mâle,</i>	a male, a cock, or a	<i>une femelle,</i> a female, hen, or
<i>buck,</i>		<i>doe.</i>
<i>un chien,</i>	a dog,	<i>une chienne,</i> a bitch.
<i>un cheval,</i>	a horse,	<i>une jument,</i> a mare.

Except these two, *gardes* guards, and *troupes* troops, which are feminine, though they relate to men; as *les gardes Françaises sont de bonnes troupes*, the French guards are good troops. Except also *tendron*, which is masculine, tho' it relates to a girl; as *un jeune tendron*, a young lass.

Family names, common to both sexes, are masculine or feminine, according as they are said of a man or woman; as *le savant Dacier*, the learned Mr. Dacier, *la savante Dacier*, the learned Madam Dacier.

In other nouns the gender is known by their terminations.

Nouns of the following terminations are of the feminine gender.

1<sup>st</sup>, Nouns in *tié* and *té*; as *une amitié* a friendship, *la santé* health, &c.

Except of those in *té* these eight or nine:

<i>un arrêté de compte,</i>	a settled account,	<i>un pôté,</i>	a pye,
<i>le côté,</i>	the side,	<i>un traité,</i>	a treaty,
<i>un été,</i>	a summer,	<i>du thé,</i>	tea,
<i>un comité,</i>	a committee,	<i>le bénédicité,</i>	(the first word of the prayer said by the Roman Catholics before their meals).
<i>un comté,</i>	a county or earldom,		

2<sup>dly</sup>, Nouns in *ion*; as *une action* an action, *une passion* a passion, &c.

Except these twenty-four:

<i>un aiglon,</i>	an eaglet,	<i>un borion,</i>	a blow,
<i>l'alcion,</i>	the halcyon,	<i>un lampion,</i>	a sort of lamp for illuminations in rejoicing nights,
<i>un bastion,</i>	a bastion,	<i>un million,</i>	a million,
<i>le bestion,</i>	the head of a ship,	<i>le morion,</i>	a sort of military punishment,
<i>un camion,</i>	a short pin,	<i>un morpion,</i>	a crab-louse,
<i>un champion,</i>	a champion,	<i>l'Orion,</i>	(a constellation)
<i>le chorion,</i>	the chorion,	<i>un pion,</i>	a man at chess or draughts,
<i>le croupion,</i>	the ramp,	<i>le Septentrion,</i>	the North,
<i>un embryon,</i>	an embryo,	<i>un scion,</i>	a sprig,
<i>un fanion,</i>	a standard,	<i>un scorpion,</i>	a scorpion,
<i>un gabion,</i>	the gabion,	<i>le talion,</i>	retaliation.
<i>les gallions,</i>	the galleons,		
<i>gavion,</i>	throat,		

N. B. *Crayon* and *rayon*, which are masculine, don't fall under this rule.

3<sup>dly</sup>,

3dly, Nouns in *zon* and *son*, after a vowel or diphthong; as *une saison* a season, *une prison* a prison, &c. Except these eight:

<i>le blason,</i>	heraldry,	<i>un oison,</i>	a young goose,
<i>un frison,</i>	an under-petticoat,	<i>un poison,</i>	a steel-yard,
<i>un gazon,</i>	a green plot,	<i>du poison,</i>	poison,
<i>l' horizon,</i>	the horizon,	<i>un tison,</i>	a brand.

N. B. Nouns in *fion* don't fall under this rule.

4thly, Nouns in *eur*, as also in *eure*: as *une peur* a fear, *la chaleur* heat, *une heure* an hour, &c.

Except of the first these twelve:

<i>un bonheur,</i>	good luck,	<i>l' Equateur,</i>	the Equator,
<i>un malheur,</i>	a misfortune,	<i>l' honneur,</i>	honour,
<i>le cœur,</i>	the heart,	<i>un déshonneur,</i>	a dishonour,
<i>un chœur,</i>	a choir, or chorus,	<i>le labeur,</i>	the labour,
<i>l' intérieur,</i>	the inward part,	<i>le lecteur,</i>	the reader,
<i>l' extérieur,</i>	the out-side,	<i>le faiseur, (pron. sésur)</i>	the maker;

and all other nouns in *eur* derived from verbs, which change *eur* into *euse* for their feminine, or are only applicable to men; as *un docteur* a doctor, *un voleur*, *une voleuse*, a thief, &c.

Except also *pleurs* tears, which is masculine.—Of nouns in *eure*, except these three, *du beurre* butter, *le leurre* a lure (for a hawk), and *du fœurre* straw.

5thly, Nouns ending in *x*: as *la paix* peace, *une noix* a walnut, *de la chaux* lime, &c.

Except these twelve:

<i>du borax,</i>	borax,	<i>le reflux,</i>	the ebb,
<i>le choix,</i>	the choice,	<i>un lynx,</i>	a lynx,
<i>un crucifix,</i>	a crucifix,	<i>le prix,</i>	the price,
<i>le foix,</i>	the weight,	<i>le Styx,</i>	the Stygian river,
<i>du houx,</i>	holly,	<i>du storax,</i>	a sweet-smelling gum, and the
<i>un phœnix,</i>	a phoenix,	<i>leux x.</i>	letter x.
<i>le flux,</i>	the flowing,		

6thly, The following nouns, which cannot be brought under a particular class of termination:

<i>une brebis,</i>	a sheep,	<i>de la glu,</i>	bird-lime,	<i>la nuit,</i>	the night (but
<i>une clé or clef,</i>	a key,	<i>la gent,</i>	the race or	<i>not minuit,</i>	mid-
<i>de la chair,</i>	flesh,		nation*,	<i>night †),</i>	
<i>une cour,</i>	a court,	<i>la hant d' un fagot,</i>	a	<i>la loi,</i>	the law,
<i>une cuiller,</i>	a spoon,		band for a faggot,	<i>la soif,</i>	thirst,
<i>une dent,</i>	a tooth,	<i>une iris,</i>	a crocus,	<i>une souris,</i>	a mouse,
<i>une dot,</i>	a portion,	<i>une part,</i>	a share,	<i>une tour,</i>	a tower,
<i>de l'eau,</i>	water,	<i>la peau,</i>	the skin,		(but not <i>un tour,</i> a
<i>la faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>une main,</i>	a hand,	<i>turn),</i>	
<i>la fin,</i>	the end,	<i>la merci,</i>	the mercy,	<i>une tribu,</i>	a tribe,
<i>une fois,</i>	a time,	<i>la mer,</i>	the sea,	<i>la vertu,</i>	virtue,
<i>la foi,</i>	faith,	<i>la mort,</i>	death,	<i>une vis,</i>	a screw.
<i>une forêt,</i>	a forest,	<i>la nef,</i>	the body of a		
<i>une fourmi,</i>	an ant,	<i>church,</i>			

\* *la gent* is a burlesque sort of word, used only in poetry.

† *la nuit passée*, last night; *il est minuit sonné*, it has struck twelve (at night).

As to the other nouns ending in *e* not sounded, as there are as many of them of the masculine gender as of the feminine, and both in a very great number, I shall set down in the *Appendix* a list of all the nouns masculine that end in *e* not sounded; as also another of those which admit either gender, according to their several significations. One must only observe here, that the nouns of the following termination, with *e* not sounded, are of the feminine gender.

1<sup>st</sup>, Nouns ending in any vowel or diphthong before *e* not sounded: such are these terminations, *ée*, *aie*, *ie* and *uie*, *gie* and *oye*, *oue* and *ue*; as *une armée* an army, *une plaie* a wound, *de la soie* silk, *la joie* joy, *une ortie* a nettle, *la pluie* the rain, *une roue* a wheel, *de la morue* cod-fish, &c.

Except from nouns in *ée* these twenty-four:

<i>l' Apogée,</i>	Apogee,	<i>le nymphee,</i>	
<i>un caducée,</i>	a caduceum,	<i>le périgée,</i>	perigee,
<i>un colisée,</i>	a coliseum,	<i>le périnée,</i>	the perineum,
<i>le corymbée,</i>	the chief,	<i>le Pyrée,</i>	a celebrated heaven of Athens,
<i>l'Empyrée,</i>	the empyrean heaven,	<i>les Pyrénées,</i>	the Pyreneans,
<i>les champs élysées,</i>	the elysian fields,	<i>le Rapiée,</i>	
<i>le gynécée,</i>		<i>un sponde,</i>	a spondee,
<i>un hyménée,</i>	marriage, wedlock,	<i>un trochée,</i>	a trochee,
<i>le Lycée,</i>	the Lyceum,	<i>les testacées,</i>	and les crustacées,
<i>le mausolée,</i>	a mausoleum,	<i>un trophée,</i>	a trophy.
<i>le Musée,</i>	the Museum,		

And these twelve from those in *ie*, *oie*, and *ue*.

<i>Apollée,</i>	Apelion,	<i>un pavée,</i>	a nestarine,
<i>un génie,</i>	a genius,	<i>le périhélie,</i>	perihelium,
<i>un incendie,</i>	a conflagration,	<i>un paraisie,</i>	perihelium, (mock-fun)
<i>le Messie,</i>	Messiah,	<i>le bain-marie,</i>	balneum marie,
<i>un menstrue,</i>	a menstruum,	<i>le foie,</i>	the liver,
<i>un parapluie,</i>	an umbrella,	<i>du pou de foie,</i>	paduasoy.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Nouns ending in *ance* or *anse*, *ence* or *ense*: as *une balance* a pair of scales, *une anse* an ear or handle, *la conscience* conscience, *une défense* a defence, &c. Except *le silence* silence.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Nouns ending in *aile*, *eille* and *elle*: as *de la paille* straw, *une oreille* an ear, *une chandelle* a candle, &c. Except *un cure-oreille* an ear-picker, and *un perce-oreille* an ear-wig: but those in *ail*, *eil*, and *el*, are masculine.

4<sup>thly</sup>, All nouns ending in *ace* and *asse*: as *de la glace* ice, *un pailleasse* a straw-bed, &c.

5<sup>thly</sup>,

5thly, Nouns ending in *ile* and *ille*, *uille*, *uille*, and *euille*, *isse*, and *ise* or *ize*: as *une ville* a city, *une anguille* an eel, *une aiguille* a needle, *une feuille* a leaf, *de la réglisse* liquorice, *une église* a church, &c.

Except these twelve from those in *ile* and *ille*:

<i>un asile</i> ,	a sanctuary,	<i>un domicile</i> ,	an abode,
<i>le cadricil</i> ,	quadril,	<i>l'évangile</i> ,	the gospel,
<i>le chyle</i> ,	the chyle,	<i>spadille forcé</i> ,	spadil forced,
<i>un codicile</i> ,	a codicil,	<i>un style</i> ,	a style,
<i>codille</i> ,	codil,	<i>un ustensile</i> ,	utensil,
<i>un crocodile</i> ,	a crocodile,	<i>un caudeville</i> ,	a ballad,

And these two from those in *euille*, *du chèvre-feuille* honey-suckle, and *un porte-feuille* a pocket-book.

6thly, Nouns ending in

<i>igue</i> ,	} as {	<i>une brigade</i> ,	a cabal,	} Except from nouns in <i>ure</i> ,
<i>ougue</i> ,		<i>la fougue</i> ,	the fury,	
<i>oure</i> ,		<i>la bravoure</i> ,	valour,	
<i>ine</i> ,		<i>une cuisine</i> ,	a kitchen,	
<i>une</i> ,		<i>la rancune</i> ,	grudge,	
<i>ure</i> ,		<i>une ordure</i> ,	filth,	
<i>iere</i> ,		<i>une tabatière</i> ,	a snuff-box,	
<i>ire</i> ,		<i>une lyre</i> ,	a lyre.	

And from those in *ire*, *le délire*, delirium; *un navire*, a ship; *un empire*, an empire; *du porphyre*, porphyry.

Though the aforesaid observations upon the nouns feminine might be sufficient to know the gender of the other nouns; yet, for a further help in this matter, I shall also add the terminations of those of the masculine gender.

1st, All nouns in *ail* and *al*, *eil* and *el*; as *un bail* a lease, *le carnaval* the carnival, *le soleil* the sun, *un autel* an altar, &c. as also all nouns whose last syllable is *a* followed by one or many consonants whatever; as *un a* an *a*\*, *un sofa* a sofa, *un sac* a sack, *un art* an art, *un almanach* an almanac, *un plat* a dish, &c. Except *une part* a share, and *la bart* the band of a faggot.

\* The letters of the alphabet are masculine, except these seven consonants, *f*, *h*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*.

2dly, All nouns ending in nasal *an*, under whatever combination of letters that sound may be considered, as under *en*, *anc*, *ant*, *ang*, *ens*, *ent*, *ment*, and *tent*: as *un an* a year, *un enfant* a child, *un accent* an accent, *le temps* the time, &c. Except *une dent* a tooth.

3dly, All nouns ending in *œil*, *ueil*, and *euil*; as *un œil* an eye, *un deuil* a mourning, *un accueil* a reception, &c.

4thly, All nouns ending in *é* acute without *t* before; as *du café* coffee; as also those in *e* followed by any consonant, with those in *ier*; *ais* and *ois*, *air* and *oir*, *ait*: as *du blé* or *blé*, wheat; *un bec*, a beak; *du sel* salt; *un arrêt*, a proclamation; *de l'acier* steel; *le biais*, the obliquity; *un anchois*, an anchovie; *un mouchoir*, a handkerchief; *un attrait*, a bait; *un balai*, a broom, &c. Except *une clé* or *clef*, a key; *une cuiller*, a spoon; *la forêt*, the forest; *la mer*, the sea; *la soif*, thirst; and *la nef*, the body of a church.

5thly, All nouns in *eu* and *ieu*; as *un aveu*, a confession; *un lieu*, a place, &c.

6thly, Nouns in *au* or *eau*; as *un chapeau*, a hat; *un couteau*, a knife, &c. Except *de l'eau*, water, and *une peau*, a skin.

**7thly**, Nouns whose last syllable is *o*, followed by any consonant; as *de l'or*, gold; *un croc*, a hook; *un pot*, a pot; *le bord*, the brim; *un fort*, a fort, &c. Except *une dot*, a portion; and *la mort*, death.

**8thly**, Nouns whose last syllable is *i* or *un*, followed by any consonant; as *un abri*, a shelter; *un Lundi*\*, one Monday; *le lit*, the bed; *un ennui*, a weariness; *un puits*, a well; *du bruit*, a noise, &c. Except *une brebis*, a sheep; *une fourmi*, an ant; *la merci*, mercy; *la nuit*, the night; *une souris*, a mouse; *une vis*, a screw.

\* Nouns of days, months, and seasons, are masculine; as *un beau Dimanche*, a fine Sunday; *Lundi dernier*, last Monday; *le mois prochain*, the next month; *un été sec & chaud*, a dry and hot summer; &c. Except *automne*, which is of both genders, *une automne froide & pluvieuse*, a cold and rainy autumn. But when nouns of months take *mi* before them, they are feminine; as *la mi-Juin*, Midsummer; *la mi-Août*, the middle of August.

Nouns of holidays are feminine, *la Toussaint*, All-Saints; *la Saint-Jean*, Midsummer; *la Saint-Martin*, Martinmas; &c. except *Noël* and *Pâques*: *Noël* takes no article. See in the Appendix the observation concerning *Pâque*.

**9thly**, Nouns ending in *ain*, *aim*, *in*, *ins*, *uin*, *oin* and *ien*; as *un bain*, a bath; *du vin*, wine; *un béguin*, a begging; *du foin*, hay; *du bien*, wealth; &c. Except *la main*, the hand; *la fin*, the end; and *la faim*, hunger.

**10thly**, Nouns ending in *ou*, either alone or followed by a consonant; as *un bijou*, a jewel; *un coup*, a blow; *un détour*, a by-way; *le cours*, the course; *le bourg*, the borough, &c. Except *la cour*, the court; and *une tour*, a tower.

**11thly**, Nouns ending in *sson* or *çon*, and all those in the nasal *on*, through all its combinations, that have not *i* or *s* or *x* before *on*; as *le poisson*, the fish; *un poignon*, a bodkin; *un bâton*, a stick; *un bourgeon*, a bud; *du bouillon*, broth; &c. Except of nouns in *sson*, *la boisson*, drinking; and *la moisson*, harvest; and of the others, *une chanson*, a song; *la façon*, the making; *une leçon*, a lesson; *la rançon*, the ransom; which are feminine, as nouns in *son*.

**12thly**, Nouns whose last syllable terminates in *u*, or have the *u* of the last syllable followed by any consonant; as *le bur*, the aim; *un aqueduc*, an aqueduct; *le tribut*, the tribute; *du pus*, matter out of a wound; &c. Except *de la glu*, bird-lime; *la vertu*, virtue; and *une tribu*, a tribe.

Lastly, Nouns ending in *age*, *uë*, *acle*, *ème*, *aume*, *ôme*, *isme*, *iste*; as *un héritage*, an heritage; *le déluge*, the flood; *un tabernacle*, a tabernacle; *le baptême*, baptism; *du baume*, balm; *un dôme*, a cupola; *la catéchisme*, catechism; *un antagoniste*, an antagonist. Except these nine, *une cage*, a cage; *une image*, an image; *une page*, a page; *la rage*, the rage; *une plage*, a flat shore; *de la crème*, cream; *la paume*, the palm of the hand; *une liste*, a list; *une piste*, a track.

Observe further, that nouns of countries, kingdoms, counties, and provinces, ending in *e* not sounded, are feminine; as *l'Europe* Europe, *la France* France, *la Bretagne* Britain, &c. except this one, *le Mexique* Mexico. The others are masculine; as *le Danemark* Denmark, *le Portugal* Portugal, *le Chili* Chili, *le Poitou*, &c. Those of cities, towns, and boroughs, most commonly follow the gender of their terminations; but in case of doubt, you need only add the word *ville* to them, and so make them feminine. Thus instead of saying *Londres est bien grand*, or *grande*, say *Londres est une ville bien grande*; which is the best manner of expression, even with respect to those nouns of cities whose gender (feminine) is certain; as *la Rochelle est une belle ville*, rather than *la Rochelle est belle*, Rochelle is a fine city; *la Haye est un gros bourg ou un village bien peuplé*, and not *la Haye est grande*, or *bien peuplée*, the Hague is a large, or populous place.

Names of mountains are masculine; as *le Caucase* Caucasus, *le Parnasse* Parnassus, &c. Except *les Alpes couvertes de neige*, the Alps covered with snow.

Names of winds are masculine; as *le Sud* the South, *le Nord* the North, *un Zéphyr* a Zephyrus, &c. Except *la Bise* the North-east wind, and *la Tramontane*.

In poetry, *Zéphire*, a God, is spelt so, and goes without the article.

As to the names of rivers, they follow their termination; as *le Rhin* the Rhine, *le Pô*, *le Nil* the Nile, *la Seine*, *la Tamise* the Thames, *la Moselle* the Moselle; but as there are a good many of the masculine gender, tho' ending in *e* not sounded, as *le Rhône*, *le Tibre*, *le Danube*, &c. I have set in the Vocabulary the names of the most noted ri-

vers; and besides, exact lists of animals, birds, fishes, &c. trees, plants, and flowers, whose names are mostly used.

*Comté* a county or earldom, and *Duché* a duchy, formerly used in both genders, are now masculine: but we say in the feminine *la Franche-Comté* (the county of Burgundy), and *une Vicomté* a Viscounty, as likewise *une Comté-Pairie*, and *une Duché-Pairie*.

*Epithalamie* epithalamium, is masculine; but *épigramme* an epigram, and *ibériaque* treacle, are feminine.

*Couple* is feminine in the signification of number only; as *une couple d'œufs* a couple of eggs; and when it comprehends besides another accessory idea, as of union, &c. it is masculine; as *un beau couple* a fine couple, (meaning two married people.)

*Amour* love, and *orgue* organ, are masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural: as,

Sing. { *L'amour divin*, the love of God. Plur. { *de folles amours*, foolish amours.  
 { *un bel orgue*, a fine organ. { *de belles orgues*, fine organs.

But *orgue* is very seldom used in the singular; and *amours*, signifying Cupids, are masculine: as *les amours rians* & *badins* *la suivent partout*, wanton Cupids follow her every where.

<i>anagramme</i> , anagram,	} are feminine.	<i>hymne</i> , hymn,	} are masculine.
<i>énigme</i> , an enigma,		<i>d'abécé</i> , dialect,	
<i>épigramme</i> , an epitaph,		<i>épisode</i> , an episode,	
<i>épithète</i> , an epithet,			
<i>équivoque</i> , equivocation,			
<i>horoscope</i> , horoscope,			

Moreover, adjectives used substantively; nouns of number, ordinal, proportional, and distributive; infinitives, adverbs, and prepositions also, taken substantively, are masculine; as

<i>le rouge</i> , red.	<i>un cinq</i> , a five.	<i>le manger</i> , eating.
<i>le noir</i> , black.	<i>un cinquième</i> , a fifth.	<i>le devant</i> , the fore-part.
<i>le nécessaire</i> , what is requisite, &c.	<i>un dixième</i> , a tenth.	<i>le derrière</i> , the hind-part,
	<i>le double</i> , the double.	&c.
<i>un deux</i> , a two.	<i>le triple</i> , the treble.	<i>le peu que je fais</i> , the little
<i>un quatre</i> , a four.	<i>le boire</i> , drinking.	I know.

Except that we make *antique* feminine, (*une antique*) statue or médaille being understood. We also say in mathematics, *une courbe*, a curve; *une perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular; *une tangente*, a tangent; *ligne* being likewise understood.

Nouns compound of a noun and a verb, are likewise masculine. Thus tho' *oreille*, *noisette*, *broche*, &c. are feminine, yet we say *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker; *un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker; *un tourne-broche*, a jack; *un passe-velours*, a velvet-flower. Except *une garde-robe*, a wardrobe.

## SECTION III.

### Of the ARTICLE.

The noun performs divers offices in speech. Sometimes it expresses the subject of which something is spoken, and sometimes the object which particularises that which is said of the subject.

At other times, we consider in the noun the relation which one thing bears to another, or to an action: as *le Roi aime le peuple*, the king loves the people; *le peuple aime le Roi*, the people love the King; *la sagesse du Roi*, the King's wisdom; *présenter un place*

*placet au Roi*, to present a petition to the King; *ressembler au Roi*, to be like the King; *un présent pour le Roi*, a present for the King; *aller chez le Roi*, to go to the King, &c.

Those different states or relations of the noun, those various respects in which it may be considered, are denoted in Latin by a variety of terminations in the noun, which they call *cases*. In French, as well as in English, they are denoted by the place which the noun has in the sentence, and by a particular sort of words called prepositions. The noun, considered as the subject, comes before the verb, and after it, when considered as the object. The above mentioned examples, where the same nouns are used in different states, ought to make this plain, without any other illustration. *Roi* is subject in the first, and object in the second: on the contrary, *peuple* is object in one and subject in the other. In the other examples, the noun is not used either as subject or object, but its other relations to the preceding noun or verb are denoted by the words immediately coming before it: things being always in relation to each other, either of union or separation, fitness or unfitness, quality, effect, cause, end, order, dependence, situation, &c.

Therefore there are no such things as cases and declensions in our languages, wherein the several states or relations of the noun are marked by the place which they keep in the sentence, and by prepositions. But as none of them denotes so many various relations as these two *de* and *à*, which are contracted with the article in two particular cases, though each of them remain the same in English, I will set down examples of the ways of considering the noun in French, with respect to its chief relations, for method's sake only, and to accustom the beginner to that contraction, which is a little puzzling at first.

The article is a particle established to specify the extent of the sense in which the noun is taken.

		Sing. Numb.			Plur. Numb.	
		Masc.	Fem.	M. & F.	Masc. & Fem.	
First	} State	le,	la,	l'	les,	the.
Second		du,	de la,	de l'	des,	of the.
Third		au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	to the.

(The article agrees with the noun in gender and number, *the* being in French *le*, for the masculine gender; *la* for the feminine, when the noun begins with a consonant or *h* aspirate; the letter *l'* only, with the elision, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute; and *les*, for the plural number, with all sorts of nouns.

The prepositions *de* (in English *of, from*) and *à* (*to*) are contracted with the article, when the noun is masculine, and begins with a consonant or *h* aspirate; so that, instead of *de le*, we say *du* (for *of the, from the*), and instead of *à le* we say *au* (for *to the*): as likewise we say, with all plural nouns, *des* instead of *de les*, and *aux* instead of *à les*.

Therefore, to make the article agree with the noun, consider,  
 1°. Whether the noun is masculine or feminine. 2°. Whether it begins with a consonant or with a vowel; and if with *h*, whether that *h* is aspirate or mute. 3°. Whether or no the sense of the noun is limited. 4°. Whether in the limited sense, the noun is attended with an adnoun, and which of the two comes first. 5°. Whether the noun is common or proper: proper names taking no article.

1<sup>st</sup>. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a consonant.

States. Singular Number.

Plural Number.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	le Prince,	the Prince.	les Princes,	the Princes.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	du Prince,	of the Prince.	des Princes,	of the Princes.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	au Prince,	to the Prince.	aux Princes,	to the Princes.

2<sup>d</sup>. Example of a noun masculine beginning with *h* aspirate.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	le héros,	the hero.	les héros,	the heroes.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	du héros,	of the hero.	des héros,	of the heroes.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	au héros,	to the hero.	aux héros,	to the heroes.

3<sup>d</sup>. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'oiseau,	the bird.	les oiseaux,	the birds.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de l'oiseau,	of the bird.	des oiseaux,	of the birds.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à l'oiseau,	to the bird.	aux oiseaux,	to the birds.

4<sup>th</sup>. Example of a noun masculine beginning with *h* mute.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'homme,	the man.	les hommes,	the men.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de l'homme,	of the man.	des hommes,	of the men.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à l'homme,	to the man.	aux hommes,	to the men.

5<sup>th</sup>. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	la Princesse,	the Princess.	les Princesses,	the Princesses.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de la Princesse,	of the Princess.	des Princesses,	of the Princesses.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à la Princesse,	to the Princess.	aux Princesses,	to the Princesses.

6<sup>th</sup>. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a vowel.

1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'âme,	the soul.	les âmes,	the souls.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	de l'âme,	of the soul.	des âmes,	of the souls.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à l'âme,	to the soul.	aux âmes,	to the souls.

7<sup>th</sup>.

7th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with *h* aspirate.

States. Singular Number.

Plural Number.

- |      |                 |                |                |                  |
|------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1st. | la harangue,    | the speech.    | les harangues, | the speeches.    |
| 2d.  | de la harangue, | of the speech. | des harangues, | of the speeches. |
| 3d.  | à la harangue,  | to the speech. | aux harangues, | to the speeches. |

8th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with *h* mute.

- |      |                |               |                |                |
|------|----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1st. | l'habitude,    | the habit.    | les habitudes, | the habits.    |
| 2d.  | de l'habitude, | of the habit. | des habitudes, | of the habits. |
| 3d.  | à l'habitude,  | to the habit. | aux habitudes, | to the habits. |

9th. Example of a noun masculine taken in a limited sense, and beginning with a consonant.

- |      |            |           |              |            |
|------|------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| 1st. | du pain,   | bread.    | dés pains,   | loaves.    |
| 2d.  | de pain,   | of bread. | de pains,    | of loaves. |
| 3d.  | à du pain, | to bread. | à des pains, | to loaves. |

10th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a consonant, and taken in a limited sense.

- |      |                 |          |                |           |
|------|-----------------|----------|----------------|-----------|
| 1st. | de la viande,   | meat.    | des viandes,   | meats.    |
| 2d.  | de viande,      | of meat. | de viandes,    | of meats. |
| 3d.  | à de la viande, | to meat. | à des viandes, | to meats. |

11th. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, and taken in a limited sense.

- |      |                |         |                |          |
|------|----------------|---------|----------------|----------|
| 1st. | de l'esprit,   | wit.    | des esprits,   | wits.    |
| 2d.  | d' esprit,     | of wit. | d' esprits,    | of wits. |
| 3d.  | à de l'esprit, | to wit. | à des esprits, | to wits. |

12th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a vowel, and taken in a limited sense.

- |      |             |           |             |            |
|------|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1st. | de l'eau,   | water.    | des eaux,   | waters.    |
| 2d.  | d'eau,      | of water. | d'eaux,     | of waters. |
| 3d.  | à de l'eau, | to water. | à des eaux, | to waters. |

13th. Examples of nouns taken in a limited sense, when the adnoun comes first.

Sing. Masc.

Sing. Fem.

- |      |                |                |                    |               |
|------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1st. | de bon pain,   | good bread.    | de bonne viande,   | good meat.    |
| 2d.  | à de bon pain, | to good bread. | à de bonne viande, | to good meat. |

14th. Example of nouns taking no article before them.

- |      |          |         |             |            |            |            |
|------|----------|---------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1st. | Dieu,    | God.    | Londres,    | London.    | Newton,    | Newton.    |
| 2d.  | de Dieu, | of God. | de Londres, | of London. | de Newton, | of Newton. |
| 3d.  | à Dieu,  | to God. | à Londres,  | to London. | à Newton,  | to Newton. |

States.	Singular Number.		Plural Number.	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	Monfieur,	mafter.	Meflieurs,	gentleman.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de monfieur,	of mafter.	de meflieurs,	of gentlemen.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à monfieur,	to mafter.	à meflieurs,	to gentlemen.
15 <sup>th</sup> . Example of nouns ufed with the particle <i>un</i> , and <i>une</i> .				
1 <sup>st</sup> .	un Roi,	a King.	des Rois,	Kings.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	d'un Roi,	of a King.	de Rois,	of Kings.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à un Roi,	to a King.	à des Rois,	to Kings.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	une Reine,	a Queen.	des Reines,	Queens.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	d'une Reine,	of a Queen.	de Reines,	of Queens.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à une Reine,	to a Queen.	à des Reines,	to Queens.

## CH A P. II.

## Of A D N O U N S.

**T**HE ADNOUN is a part of fpeech ferving to exprefs the qualities of things, or what they are.

They are called *adnouns* or *adjectives*, becaufe they are as added to the *nouns* or *ſubſtantives*, which they are either joined with, or ſuppoſed in the ſentence, to *qualify* the things which the others ſerve to name: as *ſavant* learned, *beau* and *belle* handſome, *commode* convenient, &c. which are qualities that may be conſidered in, and affirmed of, the nouns *man*, *woman*, *houſe*: as *un homme ſavant* a learned man, *une belle femme* a handſome woman, *une maiſon commode* a convenient houſe, &c.

The adnouns agree with the nouns in gender and number; and therefore it is of moment to know how to form their genders.

## SECTION I.

## Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adnouns.

Adnouns ending in *e* not founded, are of both genders; that is, the ſame for the maſculine and feminine: as,

Masc. Gend.	Fem. Gend.
un honnête homme, an honeſt man.	une honnête femme, an honeſt woman.
un procédé indigne, unworthy proceeding.	une conduite indigne, unworthy way of behaving.

The

## OF ADNOUNS.

115

The others, generally speaking, only add *e* not founded for their feminine gender : as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
grand, great,	grande.	savant, learned,	savante.	rond, round,	ronde.

This rule never varies with respect to the adnouns that end with a vowel, and all participles : as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
aisé, easy,	aisée.	aimé, loved,	aimée.	fait, done,	faite.
joli, pretty,	jolie.	perdu, lost,	perdue.	pris, taken,	prise.

Except however *béni* holy, and *favori* darling, which make *bénite* and *favorite* in their feminine.

Here follow rules for forming the feminine gender of the other adnouns, which all end their masculine with one of these consonants, *c, f, l, n, t*, or in *eux* and *eur*.

1<sup>st</sup>, Adnouns ending in *eur* and *eux*, change *eur* and *eux* into *euse* for the feminine : as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
raillieur, jeering,	raillieuse.	heureux, happy,	heureuse.

Except these eleven, *antérieur*, foregoing, former : *postérieur*, hind, latter ; *citérieur*, cterior ; *ultérieur*, furthestmost ; *intérieur*, inward ; *extérieur*, outward ; *majeur*, senior ; *mineur*, junior ; *supérieur*, superior ; *inférieur*, inferior ; and *meilleur*, better ; which follow the general rule, and make *antérieure*, *intérieure*, &c.

Except also *vieux* old, which makes *vieille*, from its old masculine *vieil*, still used before some substantives beginning with a vowel, or *b* not aspirated : as *un vieil habit* an old suit of clothes. We use it with *homme* only in this phrase of the Gospel, *déposer le vieil homme* to put off the old man ; otherwise we express an old man by *vieillard*, as an old woman by the feminine of *vieil*, taken substantively *une vieille* ; that word being the feminine of *vieux* : as *une vieille maison* an old house.

2<sup>dy</sup>, Adnouns ending with *c*, which are only eight in number, form their feminine, the three first, in changing their final *c* into *che*, and the five others into *que* : as,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
blanc, white,	blanche.	public,	publique.
franc, sincere,	franche.	Grec,	Grecque.
sec, dry,	sèche.	Turc,	Turque.
caduc, in decay,	caduque.	ammoniac,	ammoniaque.

3dly, Adnouns ending with *f*, form their feminine in changing their final *f* into *ve*: as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
neuf, new,	neuve.	vis, quick,	vive.

4thly, Of adnouns ending with *l*, those which have *a* or *i* before *l* follow the general rule; and the others which have *e*, *o*, *u*, or *ei* before *l*, double that final *l* before *e*; as does also *gentil*: as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
fatal, fatal,	fatale.	nu, no man,	nulle.
subtil, subtle,	subtile.	pareil, alike,	pareille.
cruel, cruel,	cruelle.	gentil *, genteel,	gentille.

\* *l* is silent in *gentil*, and liquid in *gentille*.

mou, soft,	from their	mol,	and double	molle,
fou, foolish,	feminine	fol,	also <i>l</i> before <i>e</i>	folle,
beau, fine,	of their old	bel,	making in	belle,
nouveau, new,	masculine	nouvel,	their feminine	nouvelle,

which old masculines are still used before nouns beginning with a vowel; as *un fol en-têtement* a foolish infatuation, *un bel esprit* a wit, *un nouvel amant* a new lover, &c.—The masculine *bel* is not only retained in this phrase, *ce'a est bel & bon* that is very well, or very good, but also in the surname of some of the kings of France, without being followed by a word beginning with a vowel; as *Charles le Bel* Charles the Fair, *Philippe le Bel* Philip the Fair, &c.

5thly, Of adnouns ending with *n*, those only double *n* in their feminine which have *o* before *n*, or end in *ien*: the others follow the general rule; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
bon, good,	bonne.	divin, divine,	divine.
ancien, ancient,	ancienne.	plein, full,	pleine.

6thly, Of adnouns ending with *t*, those only double *t* in their feminine which have *e* or *o* before it (few only being excepted, such as *secret*, *complet*, *dévo*t); the others that have *i* or *a*, or an improper diphthong, or a consonant before *t*, follow the general rule; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
net, clean,	nette.	ingrat, ungrateful,	ingrate.
tot, foolish,	forte.	droit, right,	droite.
petit, little,	petite.	constant, constant,	constante.

These six following double their final *s* before *e*: the eleven others are not so regular:

<i>Masc.</i>	bas,	épais,	express,	gras,	gros,	las,
	<i>low,</i>	<i>thick,</i>	<i>express,</i>	<i>fat,</i>	<i>big,</i>	<i>tired,</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	basse.	épaisse,	expresse,	grasse.	grosse.	lasse,
		3				<i>Masc.</i>

Masc.		Fem.	Masc.		Fem.
bénin,	benign,	bénigne.	jaloux,	jealous,	jalouse.
malin,	malignant,	maligne.	nu,	naked,	nue.
long,	long,	longue.	vert,	green,	verte.
doux,	sweet,	douce.	To which add these two partici- ples.		
frais,	cool, fresh,	fraîche.			
roux,	reddish,	rouille.	absous,	absolved,	absoute.
cru,	raw,	crue.	dissous,	dissolved,	dissoute.
faux,	false,	fausse.			

## SECTION II.

## Of the Comparison of Adnouns.

As an adnoun expresses the quality of a thing, and, when compared with that of another, that quality may be found more or less such, or equal others, or exceed them all; hence arise what Grammarians call the three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative: which they should have rather called degrees of *signification*; since the positive is never used with comparison, and the signification of the adnoun is most times increased to the highest pitch, without any comparison at all. However,

The adnoun, in as much as it expresses only the quality of a thing, is called *positive*; as *sage* wise, *beau* handsome, *méchant* bad, &c.

The quality of a thing compared with another's, and affirmed to equal it, or exceed it, or come short of it, is called *comparative*; which therefore is threefold; as *aussi sage que lui* as wise as he, *plus beau qu'elle* handsomer than she, *moins méchant qu'eux* less bad than they.

The quality of a thing affirmed in the highest degree is called *superlative*; which is either *absolute*, as *très-sage* most wise, *fort beau* very handsome, *bien méchant* very bad; or *relative*, as *le plus sage*, *le plus beau*, *le plus méchant de tous*, the wisest, the handsomest, the worst of all.

That comparison of adnouns, that is, the raising or lessening their signification, or denoting equality in the quality of things, is made in French by placing some of these particles before them; *plus* more, *moins* less, *aussi*, *si*, as, so, *tant*, *autant* (so much, so many, as much, as many), and *mieux* better, before participles: as *aussi sage que lui*, *plus beau qu'elle*, *moins méchant qu'eux*, *mieux*

*fait* better made, *il n'est pas si grand* qu'elle *he is not so tall* as she.

*Elle n'a pas tant d'esprit que sa sœur, mais elle a autant de vivacité, & elle est aussi aimable.* She has not so much wit as her sister, but she has as much liveliness, and is as amiable as she.

And for denoting the highest or lowest degree of the adnoun, we put one of these adverbs of excess before it, *très*, most; *bien*, fort, very; *infiniment*, *extrêmement*, *prodigieusement* (extremely, vastly, mightily); or if there is relation, we put the article before the comparative adverbs, which we make agree in gender and number with the noun; as masc. *le plus sage*, fem. *la plus sage*, the wisest; masc. *le mieux fait*, fem. *la mieux faite*, the best made; masc. *les moins mauvais*, fem. *les moins mauvaises*, the least bad.

Three adnouns only, in French, denote by themselves the comparison; *meilleur* better, *pire* worse, and *moindre* less.

*Meilleur* is the comparative of *bon* good, whose relative superlative is formed by putting the article before its comparative; as,

Pos. *bon* good; Comp. *meilleur*, better; Sup. *le meilleur*, the best.

After the same manner, *mauvais* bad, has for its comparative *pire* worse; and for its superlative *le pire* the worst: and *petit* little, for its comparative *moindre* less; and for its superlative *le moindre* the least; tho' we also say,

Posit.	Comp.		Superl.	
<i>petit</i> , little,	<i>plus petit</i> ,	} less,	<i>le plus petit</i> ,	} the least.
	or <i>moindre</i> ,		or <i>le moindre</i> ,	
<i>mauvais</i>	<i>plus mauvais</i> ,	} worse,	<i>le plus mauvais</i> ,	} the worst.
bad,	or <i>pire</i> ,		or <i>le pire</i> ,	
<i>méchant</i> ,	<i>plus méchant</i> ,	} more wicked,	<i>le plus méchant</i> ,	} the most wicked.
wicked, or <i>pire</i> ,			or <i>le pire</i> ,	
But we don't say <i>bon</i> , good,	<i>plus bon</i> ,		<i>le plus bon</i> ,	
instead of <i>bon</i> ,	<i>meilleur</i> , better,		<i>le meilleur</i> , the best.	

Observe that the pronouns adjective have the same effect as the article in making the superlative degree; and *mon meilleur ami* is equal to *le meilleur de mes amis*, the best of my friends.

Adverbs increase or decrease also in their signification; as *très-sagement*, very wisely; *fort habilement*, very artfully; *plus-finement qu'on ne peut dire*, more cunningly than can be said; *le plus subtilement qu'on puisse imaginer*, with the greatest subtlety one can imagine.

imagine. And these three form their comparative and superlative irregularly.

Posit.	Comp.	Superl.
<i>bien</i> , well,	<i>mieux</i> , better,	<i>le mieux</i> , the best.
<i>mal</i> , ill,	<i>pis</i> , } worse,	<i>le pis</i> or } the worst.
	<i>plus mal</i> , }	<i>le plus mal</i> , }
<i>peu</i> , little,	<i>moins</i> , less,	<i>le moins</i> , the least.

*bien* denotes either the *quality* or the *quantity*: if it is used in the former sense, its comparative is *mieux*; if in the latter, it is *plus*: as *bien fait* well made, *mieux fait* better made, *bien fatigué* much tired, *plus fatigué* more tired.

These two adnouns, *prochain* and *voisin*, next, near, can be used only in the positive, and never in the comparative or superlative. They are supplied by the comp. and superl. of the other adnoun *proche* near, *plus proche* nearer, *le plus proche*, the nearest, instead of *plus prochain*, *le plus prochain*, *plus voisin*, *le plus voisin*.—However, *voisin* may well take *fort* or *trop* before it: as *nous sommes fort voisins*, we live very near one another, *nos maisons sont trop voisines*, our houses are too near one another.

There are besides six other words of a superlative kind and signification, that end in *issime*: as *sérénissime* most serene, *éminentissime* most eminent, *révérendissime* most reverend, *illustrissime* most illustrious, *généralissime* generalissimo, and *savantissime* most learned. This last is of a low style.

### CHAP. III.

#### Of PRONOUNS.

**P**RONOUNS are words which usually stand for the particular noun of a thing or person.

There are four sorts of Pronouns: the Personal, the Relative, the Demonstrative, and the Indeterminate.

#### Of Pronouns Personal.

Pronouns Personal are divided into five orders or classes; 1<sup>st</sup>, those of the first person; 2<sup>dly</sup>, of the second; 3<sup>dly</sup>, of the third masculine; 4<sup>thly</sup>, the third feminine; 5<sup>thly</sup>, the third indeterminate.

#### Pronouns of the first Person.

State.	Sing. Numb.		Plur. Numb.	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	Je, moi,	I.	Nous,	we.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de moi,	of me.	de nous,	of us.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à moi, moi, me,	to me.	à nous, nous,	to us.
4 <sup>th</sup> .	me, moi,	me.	nous,	us.
		I 4		Pro-

*Pronouns of the second Person.*

State.	Sing. Numb.	Plur. Numb.	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	Tu, toi,	thou. Vous,	you.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de toi,	of thee. de vous,	of you.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à toi, toi, te,	to thee. à vous, vous,	to you.
4 <sup>th</sup> .	te, toi,	thee. vous,	to you.

*Pronouns of the third Person Masculine.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	Il, lui,	he, it. Ils, eux,	they.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de lui,	of him, of it. d'eux,	of them.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à lui, lui,	to him, to it. à eux, leur,	to them.
4 <sup>th</sup> .	le, lui,	him, it. les, eux,	them.

*Pronouns of the third Person Feminine.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	Elle,	she, it. Elles,	they.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	d'elle,	of her, of it. d'elles,	of them.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à elle, lui,	to her, to it. à elles, leur,	to them.
4 <sup>th</sup> .	la, elle,	her, it. les, elles,	them.

*Pronouns of the third Person Indeterminate.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	On, soi,	one's self. 3 <sup>d</sup> St. à soi, se,	to one's self.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de soi,	of one's self. 4 <sup>th</sup> . se, soi,	one's self.

Out of the pronouns personal are made some adnouns called *Possessive*, because they shew, that the thing spoken of belongs to the person or thing which they serve to denote. It is wrongfully they are reckoned a particular class of pronouns, since their office is not to stand for the name of a thing, but only to qualify it. These pronominal adnouns are of two sorts, absolute and relative.

*Pronominal adnouns absolute* always come before the nouns which they qualify, doing the office of the article. They are six in number, viz.

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Plur.	M. & F.	
1 <sup>st</sup> State.	{ mon, ma, mes,			my.	2 <sup>d</sup> State. de mon, de ma, de
	{ ton, ta, tes,			thy.	mes, of my.
	{ son, sa, ses, his, her, its.				3 <sup>d</sup> . à mon, à ma, à
					mes, to my.
Sing.	M. & F.	Plur.	M. & F.		
1 <sup>st</sup> State.	{ notre, nos,		our.	2 <sup>d</sup> St. de notre, de nos,	
	{ votre, vos,		your.	of our.	
	{ leur, leurs,		their.	3 <sup>d</sup> . à notre, à nos,	to our.

*Pronominal adnouns relative* are so called, because they, not being joined to their noun, suppose it either expressed before or understood, and are related to it. They are also six, which answer to each of the pronominal adnouns absolute, and take the article.

Stat.

Stat.	Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Plu.	Masc.	Fem.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes,	mine.	2 <sup>d</sup> . du mien,
	le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes,	thine.	de la mienne,
	le sien,	la sienne,	les siens,	les siennes,	his, hers.	des miens,
						des miennes,
						of mine, &c.

*Masc. and Fem.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres,	ours.	2 <sup>d</sup> . du nôtre, de la nôtre,
	le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres,	yours.	des nôtres.
	le leur,	la leur,	les leurs,	theirs.	3 <sup>d</sup> . au nôtre, à la nôtre,
					aux nôtres, &c.

*Of Pronouns Relative.*

Pronouns relative are used after nouns and pronouns personal, as part of their retinue; and to which they are so nearly related, that without them they have no signification.

There are four pronouns relative, *qui*, *quel*, *quoi*, and *le*: *qui*, *quoi*, and *le*, are for both genders and numbers, and take no article; but *quel* takes the article, and forms with it but a single word, viz. *lequel*, &c.

1 <sup>st</sup> State.	qui,	who, that.	quoi, que,	what.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de qui, dont,	of whom.	de quoi, dont,	of what.
		of that, whose.	à quoi,	to what.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à qui, to whom,	to that.	que, quoi,	what.
4 <sup>th</sup> .	que, qui,	whom, that.		

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Plur.	Masc.	Fem.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	lequel,	laquelle;	lesquels,	lesquelles,	which.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	duquel,	de laquelle;	desquels,	desquelles,	dont, of which, whose.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	auquel,	à laquelle;	auxquels,	auxquelles,	to which.
1 <sup>st</sup> State.	le,				him, it.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	en,				of him, of her, of it, of them.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	y,				to him, to her, to it, to them.

These pronouns (except *le*) are used for asking questions, to which add *quel*, another pronominal adnoun, which is never used without a noun or pronoun after it: as,

*Quel est cet homme-là?* Who is that man?

*Quels sont-ils? Quelles sont-elles!* Who or What are they?

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Plur.	Masc.	Fem.
1 <sup>st</sup> State.	quel,	quelle;	quels,	quelles,	what.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de quel,	de quelle;	de quels,	de quelles,	of what.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à quel,	à quelle;	à quels,	à quelles,	to what.

*Of Pronouns Demonstrative, which are,*

*ce, cet, cette, ces.* || *ceci, cela.* || *celui, celle, ceux, celles.* || *celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci.* || *celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là.* || *ce que, ce qui.*

These

These pronouns are called *Demonstrative*, because they denote more precisely, and, as it were, demonstrate either the nouns before which they come, or those they stand for, and therefore they have no article. The pronoun *ce*, from which the others are derived, and which is for that reason called *Primitive*, is used only before nouns masculine beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate; *cet* is used before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirate; *cette* before all nouns feminine; and *ces* before all nouns of the plural number, and for both genders.

*States. Sing. Masc. Fem.*

*Plur. M. & F.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>ce</i> , or <i>cet</i> ,	<i>cette</i> , <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> ,	<i>ces</i> , <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de ce</i> , <i>cet</i> ,	<i>de cette</i> , <i>of this</i> , <i>that</i> .	<i>de ces</i> , <i>of these</i> , <i>those</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à ce</i> , <i>cet</i> ,	<i>à cette</i> , <i>to this</i> , <i>that</i> .	<i>à ces</i> , <i>to these</i> , <i>those</i> .
1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>celui</i> , <i>he</i> or <i>that</i> ,	<i>celle</i> , <i>she</i> or <i>that</i> ,	<i>ceux</i> , <i>they</i> or <i>those</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de celui</i> , <i>of him</i> ,	<i>de celle</i> , <i>of her</i> ,	<i>de ceux</i> , <i>of them</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à celui</i> , <i>to him</i> ,	<i>à celle</i> , <i>to her</i> ,	<i>à ceux</i> , <i>to them</i> .
1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>celui-ci</i> , <i>celle-ci</i> ,	<i>this</i> , <i>ceux-ci</i> ,	<i>celles-ci</i> , <i>these</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de celui-ci</i> , <i>de celle-ci</i> ,	<i>of this</i> , <i>de ceux-ci</i> ,	<i>de celles-ci</i> , <i>of these</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à celui-ci</i> , <i>à celle-ci</i> ,	<i>to this</i> , <i>à ceux-ci</i> ,	<i>à celles-ci</i> , <i>to these</i> .
1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>celui-là</i> , <i>celle-là</i> ,	<i>that</i> , <i>ceux-là</i> ,	<i>celles-là</i> , <i>those</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de celui-là</i> , <i>de celle-là</i> ,	<i>of that</i> , <i>de ceux-là</i> ,	<i>de celles-là</i> , <i>of those</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à celui-là</i> , <i>à celle-là</i> ,	<i>to that</i> , <i>à ceux-là</i> ,	<i>à celles-là</i> , <i>to those</i> .
1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>ceci</i> , <i>this</i> , <i>cela</i> ,	<i>that</i> , <i>ce qui</i> , <i>ce que</i> ,	<i>which</i> , <i>that which</i> , <i>what</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de ceci</i> , <i>of this</i> ,	<i>de cela</i> , <i>of that</i> ,	<i>de ce qui</i> , <i>de ce que</i> , <i>of which</i> , <i>of that</i> , &c.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à ceci</i> , <i>to this</i> ,	<i>à cela</i> , <i>to that</i> ,	<i>à ce qui</i> , <i>à ce que</i> , <i>to which</i> , <i>to that</i> , &c.

### *Of Pronouns Indeterminate.*

These pronouns are called *Indeterminate*, because they denote and express their object in a general indeterminate manner. Besides *on* already mentioned, these pronouns are *quelqu'un* *quelqu'une*, *chacun* *chacune*, *nul* *nulle*, *pas un* *pas une*, *aucun* *aucune*, *quiconque*, *personne*, *l'un* *l'autre*, *l'un & l'autre*, *l'un ou l'autre*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *plusieurs*, *tout*, and *rien*.

*States. Masc. Fem.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>chacun</i> ,	<i>chacune</i> ,	<i>every body</i> , or <i>every one</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de chacun</i> ,	<i>de chacune</i> ,	<i>of every body</i> , <i>every one</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à chacun</i> ,	<i>à chacune</i> ,	<i>to every body</i> , <i>every one</i> .

*States. Sing. Masc. Fem.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	<i>quelqu'une</i> .	<i>somebody</i> , or <i>some one</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de quelqu'un</i> ,	<i>de quelqu'une</i> .	<i>of somebody</i> , <i>some one</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à quelqu'un</i> ,	<i>à quelqu'une</i> .	<i>to somebody</i> , <i>some one</i> .

*Plur. Masc. Fem.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	<i>quelques uns</i> ,	<i>quelques unes</i> ,	<i>some ones</i> .
2 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>de quelques uns</i> ,	<i>de quelques unes</i> ,	<i>of some ones</i> .
3 <sup>d</sup> .	<i>à quelques uns</i> ,	<i>à quelques unes</i> ,	<i>to some ones</i> .

*States.*

<i>States.</i>	<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	aucun,	aucune,	nobody, or none.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	d'aucun,	d'aucune,	of nobody, none.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à aucun,	à aucune,	to nobody, none.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	nul,	nulle,	none, or nobody.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de nul,	de nulle,	of none, nobody.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à nul,	à nulle,	to none, nobody.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	pas un,	pas une,	not one, never a one, none, nobody.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de pas un,	de pas une,	of not one, or none, &c.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à pas un,	à pas une,	to not one, or none, &c.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'un l'autre,	l'une l'autre,	one another.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	l'un de l'autre,	l'une de l'autre,	of one another.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	l'un à l'autre,	l'une à l'autre,	to one another.
	<i>Plur. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	les uns les autres,	les unes les autres,	one another.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	les uns des autres,	les unes des autres,	of one another.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	les uns aux autres,	les unes aux autres,	to one another.
	<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'un & l'autre,	l'une & l'autre,	both.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de l'un & de l'autre,	de l'une & de l'autre,	of both.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à l'un & à l'autre,	à l'une & à l'autre,	to both.
	<i>Plur. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	les uns & les autres,	les unes & les autres,	both.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	des uns & des autres,	des unes & des autres,	of both.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	aux uns & aux autres,	aux unes & aux autres,	to both.
	<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	l'un ou l'autre,	l'une ou l'autre,	either.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de l'un ou de l'autre,	de l'une ou de l'autre,	of either.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à l'un ou à l'autre,	à l'une ou à l'autre,	to either.
	<i>Plur. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	les uns ou les autres,	les unes ou les autres,	either.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	des uns ou des autres,	des unes ou des autres,	of either.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	aux uns ou aux autres,	aux unes ou aux autres,	to either.
	<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	ni l'un ni l'autre,	ni l'une ni l'autre,	neither.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	ni de l'un ni de l'autre,	ni de l'une ni de l'autre,	of neither.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	ni à l'un ni à l'autre,	ni à l'une ni à l'autre,	to neither.
	<i>Plur. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1 <sup>st</sup> .	ni les uns ni les autres,	ni les unes ni les autres,	neither.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	ni des uns ni des autres,	ni des unes ni des autres,	of neither.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	ni aux uns ni aux autres,	ni aux unes ni aux autres,	to neither.

Stat.	Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Pl.	Masc.	Fem.
1 <sup>st</sup> .	tout,	toute,	tous,	toutes,	all.	every thing.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de tout,	de toute,	de tous,	de toutes,	of all.	of every thing.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à tout,	à toute,	à tous,	à toutes,	to all.	to every thing.

*These two are of the Singular number on'y, and both Genders.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	quiconque,	any body.	personne,	nobody.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de quiconque,	of any body.	de personne,	of nobody.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à quiconque,	to any body.	à personne,	to nobody.

*These are likewise of both Genders.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	plusieurs,	many.	rien,	nothing.
2 <sup>d</sup> .	de plusieurs,	of many.	de rien,	of nothing.
3 <sup>d</sup> .	à plusieurs,	to many.	à rien,	to nothing.

## CH A P. IV.

### Of N U M B E R S.

**N**UMBERS are words established to denote the computation, that is, to reckon the things and actions spoken of, and are of five sorts, namely, Cardinal, Ordinal, Collective, Distributive, and Multiplicative.

*Cardinal numbers join units together; such are, in their several forms.*

Un, ( <i>femin. une</i> )	One,	1.	I.
Deux,	Two,	2.	II.
Trois,	Three,	3.	III.
Quatre,	Four,	4.	IV.
Cinq, ( <i>q is sounded</i> )	Five,	5.	V.
Six, ( <i>pron. sîs</i> )	Six,	6.	VI.
Sept, ( <i>pron. set</i> )	Seven,	7.	VII.
Huit, ( <i>t is sounded</i> )	Eight,	8.	VIII.
Neuf, ( <i>f is sounded</i> )	Nine,	9.	IX.
Dix, ( <i>pron. dis</i> )	Ten,	10.	X.
Onze,	Eleven,	11.	XI.
Douze,	Twelve,	12.	XII.
Treize,	Thirteen,	13.	XIII.
Quatorze,	Fourteen,	14.	XIV.
Quinze,	Fifteen,	15.	XV.
Seize, ( <i>sei is broad</i> )	Sixteen,	16.	XVI.
Dix-sept, ( <i>pron. dis-set</i> )	Seventeen,	17.	XVII.
Dix-huit, ( <i>pron. diz-uit</i> )	Eighteen,	18.	XVIII.

Dix-

Dix-neuf, (pron. } diz-neuf)	Nineteen,	19.	XIX.
Vingt, (gt are } dropped)	Twenty,	20.	XX.
Vingt & un, } is dropt, but it is soundd.	One and Twenty,	21.	XXI.
Vingt-deux,	Two and Twenty,	22.	XXII.
Vingt-trois,	Three and Twenty,	23.	XXIII.
Vingt-quatre,	Four and Twenty,	24.	XXIV.
Vingt-cinq,	Five and Twenty,	25.	XXV.
Vingt-six,	Six and Twenty,	26.	XXVI.
Vingt-sept,	Seven and Twenty,	27.	XXVII.
Vingt-huit,	Eight and Twenty,	28.	XXVIII.
Vingt-neuf,	Nine and Twenty,	29.	XXIX.
Trente,	Thirty,	30.	XXX.
Trente & un,	Thirty-one,	31.	XXXI.
Trente-deux, &c.	Thirty-two, &c.	32. &c.	XXXII, &c.
Quarante,	Forty,	40.	XL.
Cinquante,	Fifty,	50.	L.
Soixante, (pron. } soissante)	Sixty,	60.	LX.
Soixante & un,	Sixty-one,	61.	LXI.
Soixante & deux, } &c.	Sixty-two, &c.	62, &c.	LXII, &c.
Soixante & dix,	Seventy,	70.	LXX.
Soixante & onze,	Seventy-one,	71.	LXXI.
Soixante & douze, } &c.	Seventy-two,	72, &c.	LXXII, &c.
Quatre-vingts, } (gts are dropped, and in the fol- lowing too)	Eighty,	80.	LXXX.
Quatre-vingt-un,	Eighty-one,	81.	LXXXI.
Quatre-vingt- deux, &c.	Eighty-two, &c.	82, &c.	LXXXII, &c.
Quatre-vingt-dix,	Ninety,	90.	XC.
Quatre-vingt, onze, &c.	Ninety one, &c.	91, &c.	XCI, &c.
Cent, (t in cent is } dropt, and in the following too)	an Hundred,	100.	C.
Cent un, &c.	an Hundred and one,	101.	CI, &c.
Cent-vingt,	an Hundred & Twenty,	120.	CXX.
Cent-vingt & un, &c.	an Hundred & Twenty- one,	121, &c.	CXXI, &c.

Cent-trente, &c. *an Hundred & Thirty*, 130, &c. CXXX, &c.

Deux cens, (\* is)  
dropped, and the  
final consonants  
in the following  
also, as before  
any other word  
beginning with  
a consonant)

*Two Hundred*, 200. CC.

Trois cens,	<i>Three Hundred</i> ,	300.	CCC.
Quatre cens,	<i>Four Hundred</i> ,	400.	CD.
Cinq cens,	<i>Five Hundred</i> ,	500.	D or ID.
Six cens,	<i>Six Hundred</i> ,	600.	DC.
Sept cens,	<i>Seven Hundred</i> ,	700.	DCC.
Huit cens,	<i>Eight Hundred</i> ,	800.	DCCC.
Neuf cens,	<i>Nine Hundred</i> ,	900.	CM. or DCCCC.
Mille,	<i>a Thousand</i> ,	1000.	M or CIO.
Deux Mille,	<i>Two Thousand</i> ,	2000.	II CIO or II.M.
Trois Mille,	<i>Three Thousand</i> ,	3000.	III.M.
Quatre Mille,	<i>Four Thousand</i> ,	4000.	IV.M.
Cinq Mille,	<i>Five Thousand</i> ,	5000.	V.M.
Six Mille,	<i>Six Thousand</i> ,	6000.	VI.M.
Sept Mille,	<i>Seven Thousand</i> ,	7000.	VII.M.
Huit Mille,	<i>Eight Thousand</i> ,	8000.	VIII.M.
Neuf Mille,	<i>Nine Thousand</i> ,	9000.	IX.M.

*Dix Mille*,

10000.

*Vingt Mille*,

20000.

*Trente Mille*,

30000.

*Quarante Mille*,

40000.

*Cinquante Mille*,

50000.

*Cent Mille*,

100000.

*Deux Cens Mille*,

200000.

*Cinq Cens Mille*,

500000.

*un Million*,

1000000.

*Ten Thousand*,

XM or CCIOO. or XCIO.

*Twenty Thousand*,

XXCIO.

*Thirty Thousand*,

XXXCIO.

*Forty Thousand*,

XLCIO.

*Fifty Thousand*,

ICIO.

*an Hundred Thousand*,

CCCIOO.

*Two Hundred Thousand*,

CC M or CC oo.

*Five Hundred Thousand*,

DM. or D. oo.

*a Million*.

CCCCIOOO.

*Ordinal.*

*Ordinal Numbers* denote the order and rank of things: such are,

le Premier,	1 <sup>r</sup> .	<i>the First.</i>	1 <sup>st</sup> .
le Second, le Deuxième,	2 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Second.</i>	2 <sup>d</sup> .
le Troisième,	3 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Third.</i>	3 <sup>d</sup> .
le Quatrième,	4 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Fourth.</i>	4 <sup>th</sup> .
le Cinquième,	5 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Fifth.</i>	5 <sup>th</sup> .
le Sixième,	6 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Sixth.</i>	6 <sup>th</sup> .
le Septième,	7 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Seventh.</i>	7 <sup>th</sup> .
le Huitième,	8 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Eighth.</i>	8 <sup>th</sup> .
le Neuvième,	9 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Ninth.</i>	9 <sup>th</sup> .
le Dixième,	10 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Tenth.</i>	10 <sup>th</sup> .
le Onzième,	11 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Eleventh.</i>	11 <sup>th</sup> .
le Douzième,	12 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Twelfth.</i>	12 <sup>th</sup> .
le Treizième,	13 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Thirteenth.</i>	13 <sup>th</sup> .
le Quatorzième,	14 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Fourteenth.</i>	14 <sup>th</sup> .
le Quinzième,	15 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Fifteenth.</i>	15 <sup>th</sup> .
le Seizième,	16 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Sixteenth.</i>	16 <sup>th</sup> .
le Dix-septième,	17 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Seventeenth.</i>	17 <sup>th</sup> .
le Dix-huitième,	18 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Eighteenth.</i>	18 <sup>th</sup> .
le Dix-neuvième,	19 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Nineteenth.</i>	19 <sup>th</sup> .
le Vingtième,	20 <sup>e</sup> .	<i>the Twentieth.</i>	20 <sup>th</sup> .
le Vingt & unième,		<i>the Twenty-first.</i>	
le Vingt-deuxième, &c.		<i>the Twenty-second, &amp;c.</i>	
le Trentième,		<i>the Thirtieth.</i>	
le Quarantième,		<i>the Fortieth.</i>	
le Cinquantième,		<i>the Fiftieth.</i>	
le Soixantième,		<i>the Sixtieth.</i>	
le Soixante & dixième,		<i>the Seventieth.</i>	
le Quatre-vingtième,		<i>the Eightieth.</i>	
le Quatre-vingt-dixième,		<i>the Ninetieth.</i>	
le Centième,		<i>the Hundredth.</i>	
le Cent-cinquantième,		<i>the Hundred and Fiftieth.</i>	
le Deux-centième,		<i>the two Hundredth.</i>	
le Millièmè,		<i>the Thousandth.</i>	

*Collective Numbers* denote a plurality of things expressed by a denomination of the singular number. Such are,

Un tercet,	<i>a stanza of three verses,</i>
une tierce,	<i>a tierce, a sequence of three cards,</i>
un tricon,	<i>a prial or pair-royal.</i>
	un

un quatrain,	<i>a quatrain, a stanza of four verses.</i>
une quarte,	<i>a quart, a fourth.</i>
un fixain, ( <i>pron. sizain</i> )	<i>a stanza of six verses, also six packs of cards.</i>
un huitain,	<i>a stanza of eight verses.</i>
une huitaine.	<i>eight days together.</i>
un huitième,	<i>the eighth part.</i>
une huitième	<i>a sequence of eight cards.</i>
une octave,	<i>an octave, a stanza of eight verses, &amp;c.</i>
une neuvaine,	<i>a novena, a nine days devotion.</i>
un neuvième	<i>the ninth part.</i>
un dizain,	<i>a stanza of ten verses.</i>
une dizaine,	<i>ten, tithing.</i>
un dixième,	<i>the tenth part.</i>
une douzaine,	<i>a dozen.</i>
une demi-douzaine,	<i>half a dozen.</i>
un quinzain,	<i>terms of tennis-court, fifteen all.</i>
une quinzaine,	<i>a fortnight, fifteen things.</i>
une quinte,	<i>a quint, fifth.</i>
une vingtaine,	<i>a score or twenty.</i>
un vingtième,	<i>a twentieth part.</i>
une trentaine,	<i>thirty.</i>
un trentain,	<i>terms of tennis court, thirty all.</i>
une quarantaine,	<i>forty, quarantain.</i>
une cinquantaine,	<i>fifty.</i>
une soixantaine,	<i>the number of sixty.</i>
une centaine,	<i>an hundred.</i>
un millier,	<i>a thousand.</i>
un million,	<i>a million.</i>
un milliar,	<i>ten hundred thousand millions.</i>
une milliasse ( <i>a term of contempt</i>	<i>thousands and thousands, a vast number.</i>
<i>or of familiarity</i> ),	
<i>armée an army, peuple people, &amp;c. are also collective nouns; but they differ from the numbers in this, that they indicate no quantum.</i>	

*Distributive Numbers* are those that express the parts of a totum or whole divided, as *la moitié* the half, *le tiers*, *le quart*, &c. the third or fourth part.

*Multiplicative Numbers*, also called *Proportional*, indicate an increase both of number and quantity, as *le double double*, *le triple treble*, *le centuple* an hundred fold.

## CHAP. V.

### Of VERBS.

**T**HE VERB is a part of speech which serves to express that which is attributed to the subject, in denoting the *Being* or *Condition* of the things and persons spoken of, the *Actions* which they do, or the *Impressions* they receive.

Four sorts of verbs may be distinguished in French.

1<sup>st</sup>, The verb *substantive*, which declares what the subject is, and is always followed by an adnoun, that particularises what that subject is: as *être riche, sage, savant, &c.* to be rich, wise, learned, &c.

2<sup>dly</sup>, The verb *active*, which denotes the action or impression of the subject, and is attended by a noun which is the object of that action or impression; as *aimer la vertu* to love virtue, *recevoir des lettres* to receive letters.

3<sup>dly</sup>, The verb *neuter*, which is neither substantive nor active, tho' it often has the same signification; that is, it comprehends in itself the term of the action, impression, or condition, which it serves to denote, but without being followed by any noun, specifying still more that action: as *agir* to act, *marcher* to walk, *obéir* to obey, *languir* to languish: which signifies as much as *faire quelque chose* to do something, *exercer l'obéissance* to practise obedience, *être languissant* to be languishing.

4<sup>thly</sup>, The verb *reflected*, whose subject and object, the principle and term of the action, have a reflected relation to each other; and which governs no other noun, but that which it is governed by: as *je m'ennuie* I am weary, from *s'ennuyer* to be weary; *vous vous plaignez* you complain, from *se plaindre* to complain; *il se blesse* he hurts himself, from *se blesser* to hurt one's self. In the first instance it is *I*, who am both the principle and term of weariness; in the second it is *you*, who are the principle and term of complaint; in the third it is *he*, who hurts, and is hurted.—Sometimes the preposition *entre* is put between the two pronouns and the verb, or the pronoun *l'un l'autre* after the verb, as this makes the relation quite reciprocal: as *ils s'entre-tuent*, they kill one another; *ils se ruinent l'un l'autre*, they ruin each other.

As to the verbs *Passive* and *Impersonal*, they are not particular sorts of verbs in French.

The verbs *passive* (so called, because they express not the action produced by the subject,

subject, but that which it suffers from, and is occasioned by a foreign cause acting upon it) are composed of the verb substantive *to be*, and a participle.

The verbs impersonal are only verbs neuter; so called, from their being conjugated with the third pers. sing. only; as *il pleut* it rains: whereas the four other sorts of verbs are also called *personal*, because they are conjugated with all the pronouns personal, both in the singular and plural number.

It is to be observed, that any verb active may become a reflected one, whenever the principle of the action acts upon itself; and therefore that many reflected verbs, as also impersonal, are so only grammatically, or arbitrarily, with respect to language, and not by their significations; as *je me plains* I complain, *il faut* one must, &c.

One must distinguish in verbs the Mood, the Tense, the Number, and the Person.

They call *Moods* the divers uses that are made of a verb, in using it either directly and positively, or indirectly and conditionally, or in an indeterminate and unspecified manner.

In each verb there are four moods: the Infinitive, the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

The *Infinitive* expresses the very action of the verb, but in an indefinite, indeterminate sense, without specifying any particular agent or time, and is the root of the verb; as *aimer* to love, *faire* to do.

The *Indicative* shews, in a direct and positive manner, the divers tenses of the verb; that is, the particular times wherein any action may happen: as *je fais* I do, *je fis* I did, *je ferai* I shall or will do.

The *Subjunctive* shews also divers tenses of the verb: but indirectly and conditionally, always supposing another verb affirming directly (or in the indicative), which it follows, and belongs to; or after conjunctions (that shall be taken notice of in the Syntax), and by which it is governed: as *il faut que je fasse* I must do, *afin qu'il vienne* that he may come.

The *Imperative* commands, desires, intreats, exhorts: as, *faites cela* do that, *qu'il parle* let him speak.

*Tenses* are the periods of time, denoting when such actions of verbs were, are, or shall be done; or impressions made, or conditions any one was, is, or shall be under; and properly are only three, Present, Past, and Future: tho' these are again subdivided, for a greater distinction, as will be seen in the tenses themselves.

Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; as *j'aime* I love, *nous aimons* we love: and each number three persons. The first is that who speaks, expressed by *je* I, for the sing. and *nous* we, for the plur. The second that is spoken to, expressed by *tu* thou, and *vous* you, or ye. The third that is spoken of, expressed by *il* he, for the sing. masc. *ils* they, for the

the plur. *elle* she, for the sing. fem. *elles* they, for the plur. or *on*, or some noun ; which noun always demands the third person, and regulates the sing. or plur. of the verb, according to its own number.

Observe that in French, as in English, the second pers. plur. (*vous*) is used in speaking to one single person : the second sing. (*tu*) being used only either with familiarity, intimacy, and tenderness, or out of scorn : in which two respects it is of great use ; but the following adnoun referring to *vous*, must be of the singular : as *vous êtes sage & prudent*, or *belle & vertueuse*, you are wise and prudent, or beautiful and virtuous.

In the *Indicative* mood there are *ten* tenses, five of which are *simple*, and five *compound*.

The Present.	}	{	The Compound of the Present.
The Imperfect.			The Compound of the Imperfect.
The Preterite.			The Compound of the Preterite.
The Future.			The Compound of the Future.
The Conditional.			The Compound of the Conditional.

The *Subjunctive* has *four* tenses, two whereof are likewise compound of the two first.

The Present.	}	{	The Compound of the Present.
The Preterite.			The Compound of the Preterite.

As there are in French ten sorts of verbs, that have divers terminations in their infinitive, I shall divide the regular verbs into ten Conjugations : and as those verbs form their compound tenses by the help of two others, called from thence *Auxiliaries*, we shall begin with those *Auxiliary* verbs, and first with *avoir*, which serves itself to conjugate *être*.

Observe that to conjugate a verb, is to express all its natural forms, in going through all the inflections and variations, which it can admit of in Speech : that is, considering the action which it expresses, in all the different periods of time, wherein it may take place, and in the various divers subjects, to which it may be applied. And here it may not be amiss to mention the necessity of having the Auxiliary verbs fixed in the memory to the utmost exactness ; since the compound tenses of all the verbs, and the expressing, what the Latins called, the *Passive* verbs, so entirely depend upon them.

## A VO I R.

## I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

<i>Present Tense</i>	—	avoir,	<i>to have.</i>
<i>Gerund</i>	—	ayant,	<i>having.</i>
<i>Participle</i>	—	eu,	<i>had.</i>
<i>Compound of the Present</i>	—	avoir eu,	<i>to have had.</i>
<i>Compound of the Gerund</i>	—	ayant eu,	<i>having had.</i>

## I N D I C A T I V E.

*Present.*

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. J'ai, <i>I have.</i>	tu as, <i>thou hast.</i>	il a, <i>he has.</i>
P. Nous avons, <i>we have.</i>	vous avez, <i>ye or you have.</i>	ils ont, <i>they have.</i>

*Imperfect Tense.*

S. J'avois, <i>I had.</i>	tu avois, <i>thou hadst,</i>	il avoit, <i>he had.</i>
P. Nous avions, <i>we had.</i>	vous aviez, <i>ye or you had.</i>	ils avoient, <i>they had.</i>

*Preterite Tense.*

S. J'eus, <i>I had.</i>	tu eus, <i>thou had'st.</i>	il eut, <i>he had.</i>
P. Nous eumes, <i>we had.</i>	vous eutes, <i>ye or you had.</i>	ils eurent, <i>they had.</i>

*Future Tense.*

S. J'aurai, <i>I shall or will have.</i>	tu auras, <i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>	il aura, <i>he shall or will have.</i>
P. Nous aurons, <i>we shall or will have.</i>	vous aurez, <i>ye or you shall or will have.</i>	ils auront, <i>they shall or will have.</i>

*Conditional Tense.*

S. J'aurois, <i>I would, could, should, or might have.</i>	tu aurois, <i>thou would'st, could'st, should'st, or might'st have.</i>	il auroit, <i>he would, could, should, or might have.</i>
P. Nous aurions, <i>we would, could, should, or might have.</i>	vous auriez, <i>ye or you would, could, should, &amp;c.</i>	ils auroient, <i>they would, could, should, or might have.</i>

Com-

*Compound of the Present Tense.*

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. J'ai eu, <i>I have had.</i>	tu as eu, <i>thou hast had.</i>	il a eu, <i>he has had.</i>
P. Nous avons eu, <i>we have had.</i>	vous avez eu, <i>ye or you have had.</i>	ils ont eu, <i>they have had.</i>

*Compound of the Imperfect Tense.*

S. J'avois eu, <i>I had had.</i>	tu avois eu, <i>thou had'st had.</i>	il avoit eu, <i>he had had.</i>
P. Nous avions eu, <i>we had had.</i>	vous aviez eu, <i>ye or you had had.</i>	ils avoient eu, <i>they had had.</i>

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

S. J'eus eu, <i>I had had.</i>	tu eus eu, <i>thou had'st had.</i>	il eut eu, <i>he had had.</i>
P. Nous eumes eu, <i>we had had.</i>	vous eutes eu, <i>ye or you had had.</i>	ils eurent eu, <i>they had had.</i>

*Compound of the Future Tense.*

S. J'aurai eu, <i>I shall have had.</i>	tu auras eu, <i>thou shalt have had.</i>	il aura eu, <i>he shall have had.</i>
P. Nous aurons eu, <i>we shall have had.</i>	vous aurez eu, <i>ye or you shall have had.</i>	ils auront eu, <i>they shall have had.</i>

*Compound of the Conditional Tense.*

S. J'aurois eu, <i>I would, could, should, or might have had.</i>	tu aurois eu, <i>thou would'st, could'st, should'st, or, &amp;c.</i>	il auroit eu, <i>he would, could, should, or might have had.</i>
P. Nous aurions eu, <i>we would, could, &amp;c. have had.</i>	vous auriez eu, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c. have had.</i>	ils auroient eu, <i>they would, could, &amp;c. have had.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present Tense.*

S. que J'aie, <i>I may have.</i>	tu aies, <i>thou may'st have.</i>	il ait, <i>he may have.</i>
P. Nous ayons, <i>we may have.</i>	vous ayez, <i>ye or you may have.</i>	ils aient, <i>they may have.</i>

## A C C I D E N C E.

## Preterite Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. { J'eusse, <i>I had,</i> que { or might have.	tu eusses, <i>thou had'st,</i> or might'st have.	il eût, <i>he had, or</i> might have.
P. { Nous eussions, we had, or, &c.	vous eussiez, <i>ye or</i> you had, or, &c.	ils eussent, <i>they had,</i> or might have.

## Compound of the Present Tense.

S. { J'aie eu, <i>I may</i> que { or can have bad.	tu aies eu, <i>thou mayest</i> have had.	il ait eu, <i>he may have</i> bad.
P. { Nous ayons eu, we may, c.	vous ayez eu, <i>ye or</i> you may have had.	ils aient eu, <i>they may</i> have had.

## Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. { J'eusse eu, <i>I</i> que { had or might have had.	tu eusses eu, <i>thou</i> had'st, had, or might'st have, &c.	il eût eu, <i>he had</i> had, or might have had.
P. { Nous eussions eu, <i>we had</i> bad, or, &c.	vous eussiez eu, <i>ye</i> or you had had, or might, &c.	ils eussent eu, <i>they</i> had had, or might have had.

## I M P E R A T I V E.

S.	Aie, <i>have, or have</i> <i>thou.</i>	qu' { il ait, <i>let him</i> have.
P. Ayons, <i>let us</i> have.	ayez, <i>have, or have</i> <i>ye.</i>	qu' { ils aient, <i>let</i> them have.

## E T R E.

## I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

Present Tense	—	—	être,	<i>to be.</i>
Gerund	—	—	étant,	<i>being.</i>
Participle	—	—	été,	<i>been.</i>
Compound of the Present	—	—	avoir été,	<i>to have been.</i>
Compound of the Gerund	—	—	ayant été,	<i>having been.</i>

## I N D I C A T I V E.

## Present Tense.

First Persons,	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je suis, <i>I am.</i>	tu es, <i>thou art.</i>	il est, <i>he is.</i>
P. Nous sommes, <i>we</i> are,	vous êtes, <i>ye or you</i> are.	ils sont, <i>they are,</i>

*Imperfect Tense.*

*First Persons.*

S. J'étois, *I was.*

P. Nous étions, *we were.*

*Second Persons.*

tu étois, *thou wast.*

vous étiez, *ye or you were.*

*Third Persons.*

il étoit, *he was.*

ils étoient, *they were.*

*Preterite Tense.*

S. Je fus, *I was.*

P. Nous fumes, *we were.*

tu fus, *thou wast.*

vous futes, *ye or you were.*

il fut, *he was.*

ils furent, *they were.*

*Future Tense.*

S. Je ferai, *I shall or will be.*

P. Nous ferons, *we shall or will be.*

tu feras, *thou shalt or wilt be.*

vous ferez, *ye or you shall or will be.*

il fera, *he shall or will be.*

ils feront, *they shall or will be.*

*Conditional Tense.*

S. Je serois, *I would, could, should, or might be.*

P. Nous serions, *we would, could, &c.*

tu serois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st, &c.*

vous seriez, *ye or you would, could, &c.*

il seroit, *he would, could, should, or might be.*

ils seroient, *they would, could, &c.*

*Compound of the Present Tense.*

S. J'ai été, *I have been.*

P. Nous avons été, *we have been.*

tu as été, *thou hast been.*

vous avez été, *ye or you have been.*

il a été, *he has been.*

ils ont été, *they have been.*

*Compound of the Imperfect Tense.*

S. J'avois été, *I had been.*

P. Nous avions été, *we had been.*

tu avois été, *thou hadst been.*

vous aviez été, *ye or you had been.*

il avoit été, *he had been.*

ils avoient été, *they had been.*

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

S. J'eus été, *I had been.*

P. Nous eumes été, *we had been.*

tu eus été, *thou had'st been.*

vous eutes été, *ye or you had been.*

il eut été, *he had been.*

ils eurent été, *they had been.*

## ACCIDENCE.

*Compound of the Future Tense.*

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. J'aurai été, <i>I shall have been.</i>	tu auras été, <i>thou shalt have been.</i>	il aura été, <i>he shall have been.</i>
P. Nous aurons été, <i>we shall have been.</i>	vous aurez été, <i>ye or you shall have been.</i>	ils auront été, <i>they shall have been.</i>

*Compound of the Conditional Tense.*

S. J'aurois été, <i>I would, could, should, or might have been.</i>	tu aurois été, <i>thou would'st, could'st, should'st, or, &amp;c.</i>	il auroit été, <i>he would, could, should, or might have been.</i>
P. Nous aurions été, <i>we would, could, &amp;c.</i>	vous auriez été, <i>ye would, could, &amp;c.</i>	ils auroient été, <i>they would, could, &amp;c.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. { Je sois, <i>I may be, I be.</i>	tu sois, <i>thou may'st be.</i>	il soit, <i>he may be.</i>
P. { Nous soyons, <i>we may be.</i>	vous soyez, <i>ye or you may be.</i>	ils soient, <i>they may be.</i>

*Preterite Tense.*

S. { Je fusse, <i>I was or were, or might be.</i>	tu fusses, <i>thou wast, or wert, or mightest be.</i>	il fût, <i>he was, were, or might be.</i>
P. { Nous fussions, <i>we were, &amp;c.</i>	vous fussiez, <i>ye or you were, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils fussent, <i>they were, or might be.</i>

*Compound of the Present Tense.*

S. { J'aie été, <i>I may have been.</i>	tu aies été, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	il ait été, <i>he may have been.</i>
P. { Nous ayons été, <i>we may have been.</i>	vous ayez été, <i>ye or you may have been.</i>	ils aient été, <i>they may have been.</i>

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

S. { J'eusse été, <i>I had been, or might, &amp;c.</i>	tu eusses été, <i>thou had'st been, or might'st, &amp;c.</i>	il eût été, <i>he had been, or might have been.</i>
P. { Nous eussions été, <i>we had been, or, &amp;c.</i>	vous eussiez été, <i>ye or you had been, &amp;c.</i>	ils eussent été, <i>they had been, &amp;c.</i>

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE.

First Person.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. P. Soyons, let us be.	Sois, be, or be thou. soyez, be, or be ye.	qu'il soit, let him be. qu'ils soient, let them be.

It is not with the French Verbs as with the English ones. The English distinguish the moods and tenses of their verbs by these particles, *do, did, shall, will, can, may, should, could, would, might, and let*, prefixed to the word of the verb, which is the same throughout, except in the participles and preterites; whereas French verbs change their inflexions and terminations, not only in every mood and tense, but even in every person; the different ways of expressing the action of the verb amounting to no less than ninety-four; which makes the conjugation of them pretty hard, tho' it is at the same time so important, that Foreigners cannot too much apply themselves to it. In order therefore to do it more effectually, I shall set down Rules, whereby the Learner may easily arrive at the exact and ready formation of the tenses of the verbs, and the persons of those tenses: which being once well considered, and learnt, the conjugating of the verbs will be freed from that difficulty, which otherwise it would be necessarily attended with.

Besides that, I have joined a Table of all the conjugations, wherein one may see at one view, how each tense simply is derived, and formed from its infinitive. I cannot too much recommend the Students to make themselves familiar with it, since tho' one could not lay down principles common to all verbs in the forming of their several tenses, those ten conjugations include an infallible way of conjugating above 3000 Regular verbs: so that after knowing in what consists the difference of those called Irregular, which shall be also set in order, one will be thoroughly acquainted with the French Verbs.

Before I lay down rules for the forming of the verbs, it is to be observed, that there will be none about the forming of the Participle, and Preterite and Present tenses: not that there can be no rules contrived for the forming of those tenses; but because the ten different conjugations would require twice ten different and particular rules; and the perusing of the following table with ever so little attention, will sufficiently supply the want of such further rules. It will therefore be enough to take notice of all that is general to the regular verbs.

Rules for the Formation of the Tenses of the French Verbs.

1st Rule. In all verbs the Gerund ends in *ant*, the Imperfect in *ois*, the Future in *rai*, and the Conditional in *rois*.

2d R. The Imperfect is formed from the Gerund, by changing *ant* into *ois*: as

Ger.	{ Parl-ant, speaking. }	Im-	{ Je parl-ois, I did speak.
	{ Lis-ant, reading. }	per.	{ Je lis-ois, I did read.

3d. R. The Future is formed from the Infinitive, by adding *ai* to the final *r*, or if it ends in *e* mute, by changing that *e* into *ai*: as,

Infinit.	{ Parler, to speak. }	Fu-	{ Je parler-ai, I shall speak.
	{ Lire, to read. }	ture.	{ Je lir-ai, I shall read.

4th R. The *Conditional* is likewise formed from the *Infinitive*, by adding *ois* to the final *r*, or changing the final *e* mute into *ois*: as

<i>Infinitive</i>	{ Parler, to speak. }	<i>Conditional</i>	{ Je parler- <i>ois</i> , }	<i>I would speak.</i>
	{ Lire, to read. }		{ Je lir- <i>ois</i> , }	<i>I would read.</i>

#### Exceptions.

1st. The verb *faire* to do, changes *ai* into *e* mute in its future and conditional tenses. Thus spell and read *je ferai* I shall do, *je ferois* I would do. In its gerund, present, and imperfect tenses, though you spell *faisant* doing, *nous faisons* we do, *je faisois* I did; you pronounce all these words as if they were written with *fe* instead of *fai*.

2dly. Verbs ending in *enir*, as *tenir* to hold, change *enir* into *iendrai*, and *iendrois*, for their future and conditional; *je tiendrai* I will hold, *je tiendrois* I would hold, instead of *tenirai* and *tenirois*.

3dly. Verbs in *avoir*, as *recevoir* to receive, change *avoir* into *evrai* and *evrois*, for their future and conditional; *je recevrai* I shall receive, *je recevrais* I would receive, instead of *recevairai* and *recevoirais*.

5th R. The *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *Gerund*, by changing *ant* into *e* mute: as,

<i>Gerund</i>	{ Parl-ant, speaking. }	<i>Present</i>	{ je parl-e, }	<i>I may speak.</i>
	{ Lis-ant, reading. }	<i>Subjunctive</i>	{ je lis-e, }	<i>I may read.</i>

#### Exceptions.

1st. The verb *faire* changes *aisant* of its gerund, into *asse* for its subjunctive present: as from *faisant* doing, *que je fasse* that I may do, instead of *faisse*.

2dly. Verbs in *enir* form their subjunctive, by changing *enant* into *ienne*: *tenant* holding, *que je tienne* that I may hold, instead of *tene*.

3dly. Verbs in *avoir* change *evant* into *oive*, for the subjunctive: *recevant* receiving, *que je reçoive* I may receive, instead of *receve*.

6th R. The *Preterite* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *second* person of the *Preterite* of the *Indicative*, by adding *se* (mute) as

<i>Preterite</i>	{ tu parlas, thou spok'st. }	<i>Preterite</i>	{ tu parlas-se, }	<i>I might speak.</i>
<i>Indicative</i>	{ lus, thou read'st. }	<i>Subjunctive</i>	{ lus-se, }	<i>I might read.</i>

And

And though the final *s* of the preterite of the indicative is preceded by *n*, as in preterites of verbs in *enir*, that *s* is doubled in the subjunctive, and the third person takes *t* instead of *ffe*: as *tu tins* thou heldest, *que je tinsse* that I might hold, *qu'il tinte* he might hold.

*Rules for forming the second and third Persons of the Sing.  
Numb. in all verbs.*

1<sup>st</sup> Rule. The first person of every tense always ends either in *e* mute, or in *s* or *x*, or in *ai*. When it ends in *e* mute, the second persons add *s* to it, and the third is like the first: as,

1 <sup>st</sup> P. Je parle,	I speak.	} que {	je souffre,	I may suffer.
2 <sup>d</sup> . Tu parles, thou speakest.			tu souffres, thou mayest suffer.	
3 <sup>d</sup> . Il parle, he speaks.			il souffre, he may suffer.	

2<sup>d</sup> R. When the first person ends with *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third takes *t* instead of the final *s* or *x*: as,

1 <sup>st</sup> . Je lis,	I read.	} {	Je veux,	I am willing.
2 <sup>d</sup> . Tu lis, thou readest.			Tu veux, thou art willing.	
3 <sup>d</sup> . Il lit, he reads.			Il veut, he is willing.	

In verbs that have *d* or *t* immediately before the final *s* of the first person, that *s* is left out in the third person: as

1 <sup>st</sup> . J'entends,	I hear.	} {	Je mets,	I put.
2 <sup>d</sup> . Il entend, he hears.			Il met,	he puts.

3<sup>d</sup> R. When the first person ends in *ai* (as in the Preterite and Future tenses), the second changes the final *i* into *s*, and the third leaves it out quite: as

1 <sup>st</sup> . Je parlai,	I spoke.	} {	Je parlerai,	I shall speak.
2 <sup>d</sup> . Tu parlas, thou spokest.			Tu parleras, thou shalt speak.	
3 <sup>d</sup> . Il parla, he spoke.			Il parlera, he shall speak.	

Except the third person of the preterite of the subjunctive, which ends with *t* in all verbs, *ffe* of the first person being changed into *t* with a circumflex over the preceding vowel: as

1 <sup>st</sup> . Que {	je parlasse, I might speak	} Que {	je fisse, I might do.
2 <sup>d</sup> . {	il parlât, he might speak.		il fit, he might do.

*Rules for forming the three Persons of the Plural Number of Tenses  
in all verbs.*

1<sup>st</sup> Rule. The Plural number of the present tense of the indicative is formed from the gerund, by changing *ant* into *ons* for the

the *first* person, into *ez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third : as from

Ger. parl-ant, <i>speaking.</i>		lis-ant, <i>reading.</i>	
Pres. Plur.		Pres. Plur.	
1st P. Nous parl-ons, <i>we speak.</i>	}	Nous lis-ons, <i>we read.</i>	}
2d. Vous parl-ez, <i>ye speak.</i>		Vous lis-ez, <i>ye read.</i>	
3d. Ils parl-ent, <i>they speak.</i>		Ils lis-ent, <i>they read.</i>	

Except, 1st. The two last persons of the present of *faire*, which, though it forms its first person plural *faisons* from its gerund *faisant*, yet makes *faites* in the second, instead of *faisez*, and in the third *font*, instead of *faisent*.

The same exception takes place for the second person plural of the same tense in the verb *dire*, *disant*, which makes *dites* instead of *disez*.

2dly. The last person of verbs in *enir*, which ends in *iennent*, as from *tenant* holding, *nous tenons* we hold, *vous tenez* you hold, *ils tiennent* they hold, instead of *tennent*.

3dly. The last person of verbs in *evoir*, which ends in *oivent*, as from *recevant* receiving, *nous recevons* we receive, *vous recevez* you receive, *ils reçoivent* they receive, instead of *recevent*.

2d R. The plural of the imperfect is formed from the first person singular, by changing *ois* into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *oient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third : as from

<i>Sing.</i> Je parl-ois,	<i>I</i>	} <i>did speak.</i>	Je lis-ois,	<i>I did</i>	} <i>read.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Nous parl-ions,	<i>we</i>		Nous lis-ions,	<i>we did</i>	
<i>2d P.</i> Vous parl-iez,	<i>ye</i>		Vous lis-iez,	<i>ye did</i>	
<i>3d.</i> Ils parl-oient,	<i>they</i>		Ils lis-oient,	<i>they did</i>	

3d R. The plural of the preterite is formed from the first person singular (always ending in *ai* or *s*), by changing *ai* into *ames* for the first person, into *ates* for the second, and *èrent* (sounded only as the letter *r*) for the third : or by changing *s* into *mes* (mute) for the first person, into *tes* (mute) for the second, and *rent* (*ent* also mute) for the third : as from

Sing. Je parl-ai, <i>I spoke.</i>	}	Je lu-s, <i>I read.</i>	}
Plur. Nous parl-ames, <i>we spoke.</i>		Nous lu-mes, <i>we read.</i>	
2d. Vous parl-ates, <i>ye spoke.</i>		Vous lu-tes, <i>ye or you read.</i>	
3d. Ils parl-èrent, <i>they spoke.</i>	Ils lu-rent, <i>they read.</i>		
			4th

4th R. The plural of the future is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rai* into *rons* for the first person, into *rez* for the second, and into *ront* for the third: as from

Sing. Je	parle-rai,	I	} will speak.	Je	li-rai,	I will read.
Plur. Nous	parle-rons,	we		Nous	li-rons,	we will read.
2d. Vous	parle-rez,	ye		Vous	li-rez,	ye will read.
3d. Ils	parle-ront,	they		Ils	li-ront,	they will read.

5th R. The plural of the conditional is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rais* into *rions* for the first person, into *riez* for the second, and into *roient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third: as from

Sing. Je	parle-rais,	I would	} speak.	Je	li-rais,	I would read.
Plur. Nous	parle-rions,	we would		Nous	li-rions,	we would read.
2d. Vous	parle-riez,	you would		Vous	li-riez,	ye would read.
3d. Ils	parle-roient,	they would		Ils	li-roient,	they would read.

6th R. The plural of the present and preterite of the subjunctive is formed from the first person singular, by changing *e* mute into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third: as from

Sing. Que je	parl-e,	that I	} may speak.	Que je	parlass-e,	that I might	} speak.
Plur. Nous	parl-ions,	we		Nous	parlass-ions,	we might	
2d. Vous	parl-iez,	ye		Vous	parlass-iez,	ye might	
3d. Ils	parl-ent,	they		Ils	parlass-ent,	they might	

Except again, 1st, In verbs in *enir*, the plural number of the present, which is not formed from the first pers. sing. ending in *ienne*, but makes *enions*, *eniez*, *iennent*; *que je tienne* I may hold, *nous tenions* we may hold, *vous teniez* you may hold, *ils tiennent* they may hold,

2dly, In verbs in *avoir*, the plural of the present, which is not formed from the first person ending in *oive*, but makes *evions*, *eviez*, *oivent*; *que je reçoive* I may receive, *nous recevions* we may receive, *vous receviez* you may receive, *ils reçoivent* they may receive.

Observe moreover, 1st, that the verbs of the first conjugation, ending in *er*, have the three persons singular, and the third plu-

ral of the subjunctive, like to the same persons of the indicative : as

1 <sup>st</sup> Sing.	Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>	Que	{	je parle,	<i>I may speak.</i>
2 <sup>d</sup> .	tu parles,	<i>thou speak'st.</i>		}	tu parles,	<i>thou mayest speak.</i>
3 <sup>d</sup> .	il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>	Que	{	il parle,	<i>he may speak.</i>
3 <sup>d</sup> Pl.	ils parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>		}	ils parlent,	<i>they may speak.</i>

Verbs of the other conjugations have only the third plural alike.

2<sup>dly</sup>, The first and second persons plural of the subjunctive are in all verbs alike to the same persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative : as

*Ind. Imperfect.*

*Sub. Present.*

1 <sup>st</sup> .	Nous parlions,	<i>we did speak.</i>	Que	{	nous parlions,	<i>we may speak.</i>
2 <sup>d</sup> .	Vous parliez,	<i>ye did speak.</i>		}	vous parliez,	<i>ye may speak.</i>

Except again in *faire*, which, as it does not form regularly its subjunctive from its gerund *faisant*, but makes *fasse* in the first person sing. so consequently makes in the plural *fassions*, and *fassiez*. See the 6th Conjugation.

As for the Imperative mood, the second person sing. (for it has no first person) and the first and second plur. are the same as those of the present of the indicative, leaving out the pronouns : *tu fais* thou dost, *nous faisons* we do, *vous faites* ye do, and the third persons of both numbers the same as those of the subjunctive : *qu'il fasse* let him do, *qu'ils fassent* let them do.

But take notice, 1<sup>st</sup>, that the verbs of the first conjugation, and others too ending the first person of the indicative in *e* not founded, leave out in the second person of the imperative the final *s* of the same of the indicative, unless that second person be immediately followed by the relative pronouns *en* and *y*, in which only case it keeps *s* : as *cherches-en*, seek for some ; *vas-y*, go thither ; but say without *s*, *cherche un meilleur ami*, seek for a better friend ; *va en France*, go to France, *en* being here a preposition.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Verbs of the other conjugations keep in the second person of the imperative the final *s* of the indicative.

Tenses compound are always formed from the participle of the verb in question, joined to the tenses simple of the auxiliary *avoir* ; as in *parler* to speak.

The compound of the present tense is formed from the present of *avoir*, and the participle *parlé*, spoken : as

Sing.	{	J'	ai	}	parlé,	{	I	have	}	spoken.	
		tu	as					thou			hast
		il	a					he			has
		nous	avons					we			have
Plur.	{	vous	avez	}		{	ye	have	}		
		ils	ont					they			have

The Compound of the Imperfect is formed from the imperfect of the auxiliary, and the participle: as

Sing.	J'	avois	} parlé,	I	had	} spoken.
	tu	avois		thou	had'st	
	il	avoit		he	had	
Plur.	nous	avions	}	we	had	
	vous	aviez		ye	had	
	ils	avoient		they	had	

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the auxiliary and the participle: as

Sing.	J'	eus	} parlé,	I	had	} spoken.
	tu	eus		thou	had'st	
	il	eut		he	had	
Plur.	nous	eumes	}	we	had	
	vous	eutes		ye	had	
	ils	eurent		they	had	

The Compound of the Future is formed from the future of the auxiliary and the participle: as

Sing.	J'	aurai	} parlé,	I	shall have	} spoken.
	tu	auras		thou	shalt have	
	il	aura		he	shall have	
Plur.	nous	aurons	}	we	shall have	
	vous	aurez		ye	shall have	
	ils	auront		they	shall have	

The Compound of the Conditional is formed from the conditional of the auxiliary and the participle: as

Sing.	J'	aurois	} parlé,	I	would have	} spoken.
	tu	aurois		thou	would'st have	
	il	auroit		he	would have	
Plur.	nous	aurions	}	we	would have	
	vous	auriez		ye	would have	
	ils	auroient		they	would have	

Likewise in the Subjunctive, the Compound of the Present is formed from the present of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as

Sing.	J'	aie	} parlé,	I	may have	} spoken.
	tu	aies		thou	may'st have	
	il	ait		he	may have	
Que Plur.	nous	ayons	}	we	may have	
	vous	ayez		ye	may have	
	ils	aient		they	may have	

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as

<i>Sing.</i>	{ J' eusse tu eusses il eût }	parlé,	{ I had thou had'st he had we had ye had they had }	or might have spoken.
<i>Que.</i>	{ nous eussions vous eussiez ils eussent }			
<i>Plur.</i>				

In the infinitive mood the Present and Gerund have also each its compound: *to wit*, from the present of the infinitive, and the Gerund of the auxiliary, and the participle: as

Pres.	{ avoir ayant }	parlé,	{ to have having }	spoken.
Part.				

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in *er*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	_____	Parler	to speak.
Gerund	_____	Parlant	speaking.
Participle	_____	Parlé	spoken.
Compound of the Present	_____	Avoir parlé	to have spoken.
Compound of the Gerund	_____	Ayant parlé	having spoken.

### INDICATIVE.

#### Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je parle*, I speak,	tu parles, thou speak'st.	il parle, he speaks.
P. Nous parlons, we speak.	vous parlez, ye or you speak.	ils parlent, they speak.

#### Imperfect.

S. Je parlois †, I did speak.	tu parlois, thou did'st speak.	il parloit, he did speak.
P. Nous parlions, we did speak.	vous parliez, ye or you did speak.	ils parloient, they did speak.

\* or I do speak, or am speaking; thou dost speak, or thou art speaking, &c.  
† or I spoke; or I was speaking; thou wast speaking, &c.



# A T A

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE SIMPLE TENSES

Con- juga- tions.	Infinitive Mood.	Ge- rund.	Par- tici- ple.	Present Tense.			Imperfect.		Preterite.			Future.		Conditional.		
1. PARL—er.	-ant.	-é	--e, es, e, -ons, ez, ent.	-ois, ois, oit, -ions, iez, oient.	-ai, as, a, -ames, ates, èrent.	-e-rai, ras, ra, -e-rons, rez, ront.	-e-rois, rois, roit, -e-rions, riez, roient.	P								
2. AG—ir.	-issant.	-i	is, is, it, -issons, iſsez, iſſent,	-iff-ois, ois, oit. -iff-ions, iez, oient.	-is, is, it, -imes, ites, irent.	-i-rai, ras, ra, -i-rons, rez, ront.	-i-rois, rois, roit, -i-rions, riez, roient.	A								
3. SEN—tir.	-tant.	-ti	--ts, ts, t, -tons, tez, tent.	-t-ois, ois, oit, -t-ions, iez, oient.	-tis, is, it, -times, tites, tirent.	-ti-rai, ras, ra, -ti-rons, rez, ront.	-ti-rois, rois, roit, -ti-rions, riez, roient.	S								
4. T —enir.	-enant.	-enu	-iens, iens, ient, -enons, enez, iennent.	-en-ois, ois, oit, -en-ions, iez, oient.	-ins, ins, int, -inmes, intes, inrent.	-iend-rai, ras, ra, -iend-rons, rez, ront.	-iend-rois, rois, roit, -iend-rions, riez, roient.	T								
5. REÇ—evoir.	-evant.	-u	-ois, ois, oit, -evons, evez, oivent.	-ev-ois, ois, oit, -ev-ions, iez, oient.	-us, us, ut, -umes, tes, rent.	-ev-rai, ras, ra, -ev-rons, rez, ront.	-ev-rois, rois, roit, -ev-rions, riez, roient.	R								
6. FAI—re.	-fant.	-ait	-s, s, t, -fons, tes, font.	-f-ois, ois, oit, -f-ions, iez, oient.	-fis, fs, fit, -fimes, fites, firent.	-fe-rai, ras, ra, -fe-rons, rez, ront.	-fe-rois, rois, roit, -fe-rions, riez, roient.	F								
7. CRA—indre. Jo —	-ignant.	-int	-ins, ins, int, -ignons, ignez, ignent.	-ign-ois, ois, oit, -ign-ions, iez, oient.	-ignis, is, it, -ignimes, ites, irent.	-ind-rai, ras, ra, -ind-rons, rez, ront.	-ind-rois, rois, roit, -ind-rions, riez, roient.	C J								
8. CONN—ôtre.	-oissant.	-u	-ois, ois, oit, -oissions, oiffiez, oiffent.	-oiff-ois, ois, oit. -oiff-ions, iez, oient.	-us, us, ut, -umes, utes, urent.	-oît-rai, ras, ra, -oît-rons, ras, ront.	-oît-rois, rois, roit, -oît-rions, riez, roient.	C								
9. INSTR—uire.	-uisant.	-uit	-uis, uis, uit, -uifons, uifsez, uifent.	-uif-ois, ois, oit, -uif-ions, iez, oient.	-uifis, is, it, -uifimes, ites, irent.	-ui-rai, ras, ra, -ui-rons, rez, ront.	-ui-rois, rois, roit, -ui-rions, riez, roient.	I								
10. VEN---dre. RÉPON	-dant.	-du	-ds, ds, s, -dons, -dez -dent.	-d-ois, ois, oit, -d-ions, iez, oient.	-dis, is, it, -dimes, ites, irent.	-d-rai, ras, ra, -d-rons, rez, ront.	-d-rois, rois, roit, -d-rions, riez, roient.	V R								

This Table to be placed  
facing Page 145.

# A B L E

## TENSES OF THE FRENCH VERBS.

	Gerund.	Subjunctive Present Tense.	From the Second Person Preterite Tense Indicative is formed the Subjunctive Preterite.	English.	Num- ber of regu- lar Verbs.	Irregular Verbs excepted.	Irre- gular Pri- mi- tives.	Irre- gular De- riva- tives.
bit, oient.	PARL -- ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	PARLAS --- se, ses, ât, fions, fiez, sent.	to Speak.	2700.	aller, puer.	2.	
bit, oient.	AGISS -- ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	AGIS --- se, ses, ît. fions, fiez, sent.	to Act.	200.	acquérir, courir, cueillir, fuir, ouvrir, offrir, faillir, vêtir, (with their Derivatives).	15.	20.
bit, oient.	SENT -- ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	SENTIS --- se, ses, ît. fions, fiez, sent.	to Feel.	20.	bouillir, faillir, haïr, mou- rir, ouïr, souffrir.		
bit, oient.	T --- enant	-ienne, es, e, enions, iez, iennent.	TINS --- se, ses, înt, fions, fiez, sent.	to Hold.	24.			
bit, oient.	REÇ --- evant	-oive, es, e, evions, iez, oivent.	REÇ --- usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent.	to Receive.	6.	asseoir, choir, mouvoir, va- loir, voir, (with Deriv.) pou- voir, vouloir.	8.	12.
bit, oient.	F --- aiant	-aff-e, es, e, -aff-ions, iez, ent.	FIS --- se, ses, fît, fions, fiez, sent.	to Do.	7.	plaire, croire, (with Deriv.) traire, boire, braire.	5.	8.
bit, oient.	CRAIGN- ant	-e, es, e, -ions, iez, ent.	CRAIGN- -se, usses, ît, JOIGN -is fions, fiez, sent.	to Fear. to Join.	19.			
bit, oient.	CONNOISS-ant	-e, es, e, -ions, iez, ent.	CONN --- usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent.	to Know.	10.	naître, and paître, (with Derivatives.)	2.	2.
bit, oient.	INSTRUIS-ant	-e, es, e, -ions, iez, ent.	INSTRUIS -- isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent.	to Instruct.	19.	dire, écrire, lire, rire, vivre, suivre (with Deriv.) frire.	7.	22.
bit, oient.	VEND -ant	-e, es, e, -ions, iez, ent.	VEND -is -se, ses, ît, RÉPOND- fions, fiez, sent.	to Sell. to Answer.	23.	prendre, rompre, battre, mettre, conclure, vaincre, coudre, moudre, refoudre, éclorre, (with Deriv.)	10.	28.
					3028.		49.	92.
					141.		141.	
					3169			

# OF TH

Con- juga- tions.	Infinitive Mood.	Ge- rund.	Par- tici- ple.	Present Tense.	Verbs	Irre- gular Pri- mi- tives.	Irre- gular De- riva- tives.
1.	PARL-er.	-ant.	-é	--e, es, -ons, ez,	e	2.	
2.	AG—ir.	-issant.	-i	is, -issons, iſſez,	is, is, iſſez, cueillir, fuir, iſſez, cueillir, vêtir,	15.	20.

\* or I do speak, or am speaking; thou dost speak, or thou art speaking, &c.  
† or I spoke; or I was speaking; thou wast speaking, &c.

*Preterite*

Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je parlai, <i>I spoke.</i>	tu parlas, <i>thou spokest.</i>	il parla, <i>he spoke.</i>
P. Nous parlames, <i>we spoke.</i>	vous parlates, <i>ye or you spoke.</i>	ils parlèrent, <i>they spoke.</i>

Future.

S. Je parlerai, <i>I shall or will speak.</i>	tu parleras, <i>thou shalt or wilt speak.</i>	il parlera, <i>he shall or will speak.</i>
P. Nous parlerons, <i>we shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	vous parlerez, <i>ye or you shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	ils parleront, <i>they shall or will speak.</i>

Conditional.

S. Je parlerois, <i>I should, would, could, or might speak.</i>	tu parlerois, <i>thou would'st, could'st should'st, or, &amp;c.</i>	il parleroit, <i>he would, could, should, or, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous parlerions, <i>we would, could, &amp;c.</i>	vous parleriez, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c.</i>	ils parleroient, <i>they would, could, &amp;c.</i>

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} parlé, } } &c. }	I have *	} spoken, } } &c. }
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		I had	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		I had	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		I shall have	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		I would, &c. have	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. Je parle, <i>I may speak.</i>	tu parles, <i>thou may'st speak, &amp;c.</i>	il parle, <i>he may speak.</i>
P. Nous parlions, <i>we may, &amp;c.</i>	vous parliez, <i>ye or you may speak.</i>	ils parlent, <i>they may speak.</i>

Preterite.

S.	{	Je parlasse, <i>I spoke, or might speak.</i>	tu parlasses, <i>thou spokest, &amp;c.</i>	il parlât, <i>he spoke.</i>	
que					
P.	{	Nous parlâssions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous parlâssiez, <i>ye or you spoke.</i>	ils parlâssent, <i>they spoke.</i>	
Comp. of Pres.	{	J'aie	parlé,	<i>I have or may have</i>	{ spoken, } { &c. }
Comp. of Pret.		que	J'eusse	&c.	

\* or I spoke; or I did speak; or I have been speaking.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. Parle, <i>let us speak.</i>	Parle, <i>speak thou.</i>	il parle, <i>let him speak.</i>
P. Parlons, <i>let us speak.</i>	Parlez, <i>speak, or speak ye.</i>	ils parlent, <i>let them speak.</i>

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 verbs ending in *er*, most of which are inserted in the Vocabulary, there being but two irregular in the language.

\* *er* do thou speak, do ye speak.

## Second CONJUGATION;

*Of Verbs in ir in general; Gerund in issant.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. Agir, to act, Ger. Agissant, acting. Part. Agi, acted.*  
*G. Pres. Avoir agi, to have acted. C. Ger. Ayant agi, having acted.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. J'agis, <i>I act,</i>	tu agis, <i>thou actest.</i>	il agit, <i>he acts.</i>
P. Nous agissons, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous agissez, <i>ye, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils agissent, <i>they act.</i>

*Imperfect.*

S. J'agissois, <i>I did act.</i>	tu agissois, <i>thou, &amp;c.</i>	il agissoit, <i>he did act.</i>
P. Nous agissions, <i>we did act.</i>	vous agissiez, <i>ye or you did act.</i>	ils agissaient, <i>they did act.</i>

*Preterite.*

S. J'agis, <i>I acted.</i>	tu agis, <i>thou actedst.</i>	il agit, <i>he acted.</i>
P. Nous agimes, <i>&amp;c.</i>	vous agites, <i>ye, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils agirent, <i>they, &amp;c.</i>

*Future.*

S. J'agirai, <i>I shall or will act.</i>	tu agiras, <i>thou shalt or wilt act.</i>	il agira, <i>he shall or will act.</i>
P. Nous agirons, <i>we shall or will act.</i>	vous agirez, <i>ye or you shall, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils agiront, <i>they shall or will act.</i>

Conditional.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.	
S. J'agirois, <i>I would, could, should, &amp;c.</i>	tu agirois, <i>thou might'st act.</i>	il agiroit, <i>he would, could, should, &amp;c.</i>	
P. Nous agirions, <i>we would, could, &amp;c.</i>	vous agiriez, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c.</i>	ils agiroient, <i>they would, could, &amp;c.</i>	
Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} agi, } } &c. }	} acted, } } &c. }	
Comp. of Imp. J'avois			
Comp. of Pret. J'eus			
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai			
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois			

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. { J'agisse, <i>I may act.</i>	tu agisses, <i>thou may'st act.</i>	il agisse, <i>he may act.</i>
que { nous agissions	vous agissiez, <i>ye or you may act.</i>	ils agissent, <i>they may act.</i>
P. { we may act.		

Preterite.

S. { J'agisse, <i>I acted, or might act.</i>	tu agisses, <i>thou act-ed'st.</i>	il agit, <i>he acted.</i>
que { nous agissions	vous agissiez, <i>ye or you acted.</i>	ils agissent, <i>they acted.</i>
P. { we acted.		
Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie } agi, { I have or may have } acted,		
Comp. of Pret. que { J'eusse } &c. { I had or might have } &c.		

IMPERATIVE.

S. Agis, <i>act thou.</i>	il agisse, <i>let him act.</i>
P. Agissons, <i>let us act.</i>	qu'ils agissent, <i>let them act.</i>

About 200 verbs in *cir*, *dir*, *mir*, *nir*, *tir*, &c. are conjugated after this verb, and are set down in the Vocabulary.

Third CONJUGATION;

Of more particular Verbs in *ir*; Gerund in *ant*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sentir, *to smell.* Ger. Sentant, *smelling.* Part. Senti, *smelt.*  
C. Pres. Avoir senti, *to have smelt.* C. Ger. Ayant senti, *having smelt.*

## INDICATIVE.

## Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je sens, <i>I smell.</i>	tu sens, <i>thou smell'st.</i>	il sent, <i>he smells.</i>
P. Nous sentons, <i>we smell.</i>	vous sentez, <i>ye or you smell.</i>	ils sentent, <i>they smell.</i>

## Imperfect.

S. Je sentois, <i>I did smell.</i>	tu sentois, <i>thou didst smell.</i>	il sentoit, <i>he did smell.</i>
P. Nous sentions, <i>we did smell.</i>	vous sentiez, <i>ye or you did smell.</i>	ils sentoient, <i>they did smell.</i>

## Preterite.

S. Je sentis, <i>I smelt.</i>	tu sentis, <i>thou smelt'st.</i>	il sentit, <i>he smelt.</i>
P. Nous sentimes, <i>we smelt.</i>	vous sentites, <i>ye or you smelt.</i>	il sentirent, <i>they smelt.</i>

## Future.

S. Je sentirai, <i>I shall or will smell.</i>	tu sentiras, <i>thou shalt or wilt smell.</i>	il sentira, <i>he shall or will smell.</i>
P. Nous sentirons, <i>we shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	vous sentirez, <i>ye or you shall, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils sentiront, <i>they shall or will smell.</i>

## Conditional.

S. Je sentirois, <i>I would, could, should, or might smell.</i>	tu sentirois, <i>thou would'st, could'st, should'st, or, &amp;c.</i>	il sentiroit, <i>he would, could, should, or might smell.</i>
P. Nous sentirions, <i>we would, could, &amp;c.</i>	vous sentiriez, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c.</i>	ils sentiraient, <i>they would, could, &amp;c.</i>

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} senti, &c.	I have	} smelt, &c.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		I had	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		I had	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		I shall have	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		I should, &c. have	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

S. Je sente, <i>I may smell.</i>	tu sentes, <i>thou may'st smell.</i>	il sente, <i>he may smell.</i>
P. nous sentions, <i>we may smell.</i>	vous sentiez, <i>ye or you may smell.</i>	il sentent, <i>they may smell.</i>

## Prete-

*Præterite.*

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. Je sentisse, <i>I smelt,</i> or <i>might smell.</i>	tu sentisses, <i>thou</i> <i>smelt'st.</i>	il sentit, <i>he smelt.</i>
que P. Nous sentissions, <i>we smelt.</i>	vous sentissiez, <i>ye</i> <i>or you smelt.</i>	ils sentissent, <i>they</i> <i>smelt.</i>
Comp. of Pres. que J'aie	fenti, <i>I have or may have</i>	smelt,
Comp. of Præt. que J'eusse	&c. <i>I had or might have</i>	&c.

IMPERATIVE.

S. Sens, <i>smell thou.</i>	il sente, <i>let him, &amp;c.</i>
P. Sentons, <i>let us</i> <i>smell.</i>	sentez, <i>smell, &amp;c.</i> qu'ils sentent, <i>let them</i> <i>smell.</i>

Of this conjugation there are eighteen verbs both Primitive and Derivative, to wit:  
 mentir, to lie. servir, to serve. ressentir, to resent, or feel  
 démentir, to give a lie. se servir, to make use. again.  
 partir, to set out. desservir, to clear a table, dormir, to sleep.  
 repartir, to set out again or or do an ill office. redormir to sleep again.  
 to reply. sentir, to smell or feel. endormir, to lull asleep.  
 sortir, to go, or get out. consentir, to consent. s'endormir, to fall asleep.  
 ressortir, to get out again. pressentir, to have a fore- se rendormir, to fall asleep  
 se repentir, to repent. sight. again.  
 partir and repartir, sortir and ressortir, are conjugated with être.

Fourth CONJUGATION;

*Of Verbs in enir.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tenir, to hold. Ger. Tenant, holding. Part. Tenu, held.  
 C. Pres. Avoir tenu, to have held. C. Ger. Ayant tenu, having held.

INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

S. Je tiens, <i>I hold.</i>	tu tiens, <i>thou holdest.</i>	il tient, <i>he holds.</i>
P. Nous tenons, &c.	vous tenez, <i>ye, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils tiennent, <i>they hold.</i>

*Imperfect.*

S. Je tenois, <i>I did</i> <i>hold.</i>	tu tenois, <i>thou didst</i> <i>hold.</i>	il tenoit, <i>he did hold.</i>
P. Nous tenions, <i>we</i> <i>did hold.</i>	vous teniez, <i>ye or</i> <i>you did hold.</i>	ils tenoient, <i>they did</i> <i>hold.</i>

## Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je tins, <i>I held.</i>	tu tins, <i>thou held'st.</i>	il tint, <i>he held.</i>
P. Nous tinmes, <i>we held.</i>	vous tintes, <i>ye or you held.</i>	ils tinrent, <i>they held.</i>

## Future.

S. J'etiendrai, <i>I shall or will hold.</i>	tu tiendras, <i>thou shalt or wilt hold.</i>	il tiendra, <i>he shall or will hold.</i>
P. Nous tiendrons, <i>we shall or will hold.</i>	vous tiendrez, <i>ye or you shall, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils tiendront, <i>they shall or will hold.</i>

## Conditional.

S. Je tiendrois, <i>I should, would, could, or might hold.</i>	tu tiendrois, <i>thou would'st, could'st, should'st, &amp;c.</i>	il tiendrait, <i>he would, could, should, or might hold.</i>
P. Nous tiendrions, <i>we would, &amp;c.</i>	vous tiendriez, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c.</i>	ils tiendraient, <i>they would, could, &amp;c.</i>

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} tenu, {	I have	} held, &c.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		I had	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		I had	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		I shall have	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		I should, &c. have	

## S U B J U N C T I V E.

## Present.

S. Je tienne, <i>I may hold.</i>	tu tiennes, <i>thou may'st hold.</i>	il tienne, <i>he may hold.</i>
que P. Nous tenions, <i>we may hold.</i>	vous teniez, <i>ye or you may hold.</i>	ils tiennent, <i>they may hold.</i>

## Preterite.

S.	{	Je tinssse, <i>I held,</i>	tu tinssses, <i>thou held-</i>	il tint, <i>he held.</i>
que		<i>or might hold.</i>	<i>est.</i>	
P.	{	Nous tinssions,	vous tinssiez, <i>ye or</i>	ils tinssent, <i>they</i>
		<i>we held.</i>	<i>you held.</i>	<i>held.</i>
Comp. of Pres.	que {	J'aie	tenu, {	<i>I have or may have</i> } <i>held,</i>
Comp. of Pret.		J'eusse	&c. {	<i>I had or might have</i> } <i>&amp;c.</i>

I M P E.

## IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Tiens, hold, or, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Tiens, hold, or, &amp;c.</i>	<i>il tienne, let him, &amp;c.</i>
P. <i>Tenons, let us hold.</i>	<i>tenez, hold, or, hold ye.</i>	<i>ils tiennent, let them hold.</i>

The verbs of this conjugation, to the number of twenty-four, are

s'abstenir, to abstain.	venir, to come.	se souvenir, to remember.
appartenir, to belong.	intervenir, to intervene.	se ressouvenir, to recollect,
contenir, to contain.	devenir, to become.	to call to mind.
détenir, to detain.	convenir, to agree, or to be-	† avenir, to happen.
obtenir, to obtain.	come.	parvenir, to attain to.
retenir, to retain, to keep.	disconvenir, to disagree.	prévenir, to prevent.
soutenir, to maintain, to	provenir, to proceed, to come	revenir, to come again.
bold, to uphold.	from.	subvenir, to relieve.
entretenir, to keep up.	* con'revenir, to contravene,	survenir, to befa', to happen
maintenir, to maintain.	to infringe.	unexpectedly.

*venir, revenir, devenir, convenir, disconvenir, provenir, parvenir, and survenir, are conjugated with être.*

\* *contravvenir* is a law term, and used in few tenses too. Its compound tenses, when used, are formed from *avoir*, tho' its primitive *venir* has them of *être*.

† *avenir* is an obsolete verb impersonal. We now-a-days say *il arrive* it happens, *il arriva* it happened, instead of *il avient, il avint, &c.*

*bénir* to bless, is of the second conjugation, having the same inflections as *agir*.—The Part. of *bénir* is *béni*, and *bénie*, blessed; but we also say *bénit* and *bénite*, speaking of such church-ceremonies; as *du pain bénit* hallowed bread, *de l'eau bénite* holy water, &c.

## Fifth CONJUGATION;

*Of Verbs in evoir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pr. Recevoir, to receive. Ger. Recevant, receiving. Part. Reçu, &c.*

*G. Pr. Avoir reçu, to have received. C. Ger. Ayant reçu, having received.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

S. Je reçois, <i>I receive.</i>	tu reçois, <i>thou receivest.</i>	il reçoit, <i>he receives.</i>
P. Nous recevons, <i>we receive.</i>	vous recevez, <i>ye or you receive.</i>	ils reçoivent, <i>they receive.</i>

*Imperfect.*

S. Je recevois, <i>I did receive.</i>	tu recevois, <i>thou didst receive.</i>	il recevoit, <i>he did receive.</i>
P. Nous recevions, <i>we did receive.</i>	vous receviez, <i>ye or you did, &amp;c.</i>	ils recevoient, <i>they did receive.</i>

## Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je reçus, <i>I received.</i>	tu reçus, <i>thou received'st</i>	il reçut, <i>he received.</i>
P. Nous reçûmes, <i>we received.</i>	vous reçûtes, <i>ye or you received.</i>	ils reçurent, <i>they received.</i>

## Future.

S. Je recevrai, <i>I shall or will receive.</i>	tu recevras, <i>thou shalt or wilt, &amp;c.</i>	il recevra <i>he shall receive.</i>
P. Nous recevrons, <i>we shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	vous recevrez, <i>ye or you shall, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils recevront, <i>they shall receive.</i>

## Conditional.

S. Je recevrais, <i>I should, could, &amp;c.</i>	tu recevrais, <i>thou would'st, &amp;c.</i>	il recevrait, <i>he would, could, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous recevriions, <i>we would, &amp;c.</i>	vous recevriez, <i>ye or you would, &amp;c.</i>	ils recevraient, <i>they would, &amp;c.</i>

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} reçu, {	I have	} received, &c.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		I had	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		I had	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		I shall have	
Comp. of Cond. J'auais		I should, &c. have	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

S. {	Je reçoive, <i>I may receive.</i>	tu reçoives, <i>thou mayest receive.</i>	il reçoive, <i>he may receive.</i>
que			
P. {	Nous recevions, <i>we may receive.</i>	vous receviez, <i>ye or you, &amp;c.</i>	ils reçoivent, <i>they may receive.</i>

## Preterite.

S. {	Je reçusse, <i>I receive, or might received.</i>	tu reçusses, <i>thou received'st.</i>	il reçût, <i>he received.</i>
que			
P. {	Nous reçussions, <i>we receive.</i>	vous reçussiez, <i>ye received.</i>	ils reçussent, <i>they received.</i>

Comp. of Pres. que {	J'aie	} reçu, {	I have, or	} received,
Comp. of Pret. que {	J'eusse		might have,	
		} &c. {	I had, or	} &c.
			might have	

IMPE-

## IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Recevons, let us receive.</i>	Reçois, <i>receive, &amp;c.</i>	il reçoive, <i>let him, &amp;c.</i>
P. <i>Recevez, receive, or receive ye.</i>	qu'ils reçoivent, <i>let them receive.</i>	

The seven regular verbs of the fifth conjugation are,  
 appercevoir, *to perceive.* devoir, *to owe.* recevoir, *to receive.*  
 s'appercevoir, *to perceive.* redevoir, *to owe again.* percevoir, *(a law term for recevoir.)*  
 concevoir, *to conceive.* décevoir, *to deceive.*

*décevoir* is quite out of use; we now-a-days make use of *tromper*.

See in the Appendix another signification of *devoir*, as also its true use and conjugation.

## Sixth CONJUGATION;

*Of Verbs in aire.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Faire, *to do.* *Ger.* Faissant, *doing.* *Part.* Fait, *done.*  
*G. Pres.* Avoir fait, *to have done.* *G. Ger.* Ayant fait, *having done.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

S. Je fais, <i>I do.</i>	tu fais, <i>thou doest.</i>	il fait, <i>he does.</i>
P. Nous faisons, <i>we do.</i>	vous faites, <i>ye or you do.</i>	ils font, <i>they do.</i>

*Imperfect.*

S. Je faisois, <i>I did.</i>	tu faisois, <i>thou didst.</i>	il faisoit, <i>he did.</i>
P. Nous faisions, <i>we did.</i>	vous faisiez, <i>ye or you did.</i>	ils faisoient, <i>they did.</i>

*Preterite.*

S. Je fis, <i>I did.</i>	tu fis, <i>thou didst.</i>	il fit, <i>he did.</i>
P. Nous fîmes, <i>we did.</i>	vous fîtes, <i>ye, or</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>	ils firent, <i>they did.</i>

*Future.*

S. Je ferai, <i>I shall or will do.</i>	tu feras, <i>thou shalt or wilt do.</i>	il fera, <i>he shall or will do.</i>
P. Nous ferons, <i>we shall or will do.</i>	vous ferez, <i>ye or you shall or will do.</i>	ils feront, <i>they shall or will do.</i>

Con-

## ACCIDENCE.

## Conditional.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je ferois, <i>I should,</i> <i>could, would, &amp;c.</i>	tu ferois <i>thou</i> <i>would'st, &amp;c.</i>	il feroit, <i>he would.</i> <i>could, should, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous ferions, <i>we</i> <i>would, &amp;c.</i>	vous feriez, <i>ye or you</i> <i>would, could, &amp;c.</i>	ils feroient, <i>they</i> <i>would, could, &amp;c.</i>
Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} fait, &c.	I have
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		I had
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		I had
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		I shall have
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		I would, &c. have
		} done, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

S. Je fasse, <i>I may do.</i>	tu fasses, <i>thou, &amp;c.</i>	il fasse, <i>he may do.</i>
P. que Nous fassions, <i>we may do.</i>	vous fassiez, <i>ye or</i> <i>you may do.</i>	ils fassent, <i>they</i> <i>may do.</i>

## Præterite.

S. Je fisse, <i>I did,</i> <i>que or might do.</i>	tu fisses, <i>thou didst.</i>	il fit, <i>he did.</i>
P. Nous fissions, <i>&amp;c.</i>	vous fissiez, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils fissent, <i>they did.</i>
Comp. of Pres. que J'aie	} fait, {	I have or may have } done,
Comp. of Pret. que J'eusse		
	} &c. {	I had or might have } &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. Fais, <i>do, or do thou.</i>	il fasse, <i>let him do.</i>
P. Faisons, <i>let us do.</i>	qu'ils fassent, <i>let them do.</i>

The Derivatives of *faire*, which are six, and of a very extensive use, are the only regular verbs of the 6th conjugation.

contrefaire, *to counterfeit.* refaire, *to do again.* satisfaire, *to satisfy.*  
défaire, *to undo.* to make up again. surfaire, *to exact, to ask*

redéfaire, *to undo again.* too much.  
to which add *forfaire* to trespass or fail, tho' used only in the infinitive and comp. of the pres. as in this phrase, *une fille qui a forfait à son bonheur* a maid that has forfeited or lost her honour.

## Seventh CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in *aindre*, *eindre*, and *oindre*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Craindre, *to fear.* Ger. Craignant, *fearing.* Part. Craint, *feared.*  
C.P. Avoir craint, *to have feared.* C. Ger. Ayant craint, *having feared.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je crains, <i>I fear.</i>	tu crains, <i>thou, &amp;c.</i>	il craint, <i>he fears.</i>
P. Nous craignons, &c.	vous craignez, &c.	ils craignent, &c.

Imperfect.

S. Je craignois, <i>I, &amp;c.</i>	tu craignois, &c.	il craignoit, <i>he, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous craignions, &c.	vous craigniez, &c.	ils craignoient, &c.

Preterite.

S. Je craignis, <i>I feared.</i>	tu craignis, <i>thou, &amp;c.</i>	il craignit, <i>he feared.</i>
P. Nous craignîmes, &c.	vous craignîtes, &c.	ils craignirent, &c.

Futura.

S. Je craindrai, <i>I shall</i>	tu craindras, <i>thou</i>	il craindra, <i>he shall or</i>
<i>or will fear.</i>	<i>shalt or will fear.</i>	<i>will fear.</i>
P. Nous craindrons, &c.	vous craindrez, &c.	ils craindront, &c.

Conditional.

S. Je craindrois, <i>I</i>	tu craindrois, <i>thou</i>	il craindrait, <i>he should</i>
<i>should, could, &amp;c.</i>	<i>should'st, or, &amp;c.</i>	<i>fear.</i>
P. Nous craindriions	vous craindriez, &c.	ils craindroient, &c.

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	} craint, {	} <i>I have</i>	} feared,					
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois				} &c. {	} <i>I had</i>	} &c.		
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus							} <i>I had</i>	
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai								} <i>I shall have</i>
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois								

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. Je craigne, <i>I may</i>	tu craignes, <i>thou</i>	il craigne, <i>he may</i>
<i>que fear.</i>	<i>may'st fear.</i>	<i>fear.</i>
P. Nous craignons,	vous craigniez, <i>ye</i>	ils craignent, <i>they</i>
<i>we may fear.</i>	<i>may fear.</i>	<i>may fear.</i>

Preterite.

S. Je craignisse, <i>I</i>	tu craignisses, <i>thou</i>	il craignît, <i>he</i>
<i>que feared or might.</i>	<i>feared'st.</i>	<i>feared.</i>
P. Nous craignissions,	vous craignissiez, <i>ye</i>	ils craignissent, <i>they</i>
<i>we feared.</i>	<i>feared.</i>	<i>feared.</i>

Comp.

Comp. of Pres. que J'aie } craint, { *I have or may have* } feared,  
 Comp. of Pret. J'eusse, } &c. { *I had or might have* } &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. Crains, fear, or fear	il craigne,	let him
P. Craignons, let us	thou.	qu' fear.
fear.	craignez, fear ye.	ils craignent, let, &c.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Joindre, to join. Ger. Joignant, joining. Part. Joint, joined.  
 C. Pr. Avoir joint, to have joined. C. Ger. Ayant joint, having joined.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

S. Je joins, *I join.* tu joins, *thou join'st.* il joint, *he joins.*  
 P. Nous joignons, &c. vous joignez, ye, &c. ils joignent, *they join.*

*Imperfect.*

S. Je joignois, *I did, &c.* tu joignois, *thou, &c.* il joignoit, *he did join.*  
 P. Nous joignions, &c. vous joigniez, ye, &c. ils joignoient, &c.

*Preterite.*

S. Je joignis, *I joined.* tu joignis, *thou, &c.* il joignit, *he joined.*  
 P. Nous joignîmes, &c. vous joignîtes, ye, &c. ils joignirent, &c.

*Future.*

S. Je joindrai, *I, &c.* tu joindras, *thou, &c.* il joindra, *he will, &c.*  
 P. Nous joindrons, &c. vous joindrez, ye, &c. ils joindront, &c.

*Conditional.*

S. Je joindrois, *I, &c.* tu joindrois, *thou, &c.* il joindroit, *he, &c.*  
 P. Nous joindrions, &c. vous joindriez, ye, &c. ils joindraient, &c.

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	} joint, {	<i>I have</i>	} joined, &c.
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		<i>I had</i>	
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		<i>I had</i>	
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		<i>I shall have</i>	
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		<i>I should, &amp;c. have</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je joigne, I, &c.	tu joignes, thou, &c.	qu'il joigne, he, &c.
que Nous joignons,	vous joigniez, ye may	ils joignent, they
P. we may join.	join.	may join.

Preterite.

S. Je joignisse, I join-	tu joignisses, thou	il joignît, he joined.
que ed or might join.	joined'st.	
P. Nous joignissions,	vous joignissiez, ye	ils joignissent, they
we joined.	joined.	joined.
Comp. of Pres. que J'aie	joint, { I have or may have	joined,
Comp. of Pret. que J'eusse	{ &c. { I had or might have	{ &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S. Joins, join thou.	qu'il joigne, let him join.
P. Joignons, let us	joignez, join, or qu'ils joignent, let them
join.	join ye.

The verbs of the 7th conjugation, to the number of nineteen, are

astreindre, to oblige, to tie up.	encerindre, to inclose, to in-	joindre, to anoint.
atteindre, to reach, hit.	compass.	peindre, to paint, draw.
* aveindre, to take, reach,	† enfreindre, to infringe.	plaindre, to pity.
or fetch out,	enjoindre, to enjoin.	se plaindre, to complain.
ceindre, to gird.	êteindre, to extinguish, to	§ poindre, to peep, to dawn.
contraindre, to constrain, to	put out,	restreindre, to astringe, to
compel.	feindre, to feign, dissemble.	refrègre, limit.
craindre, to fear.	joindre, to join.	teindre, to dye, or to colour.

\* *aveindre* is confined to some common forms of speech, but quite banished from all style. Its imperfect, two preterites, and imperative, are never used.

† *enfreindre* is seldom used in common conversation, and is only of the sublime style.

‡ *joindre* is used only in speaking of sacred ceremonies (particularly in the church of Rome) wherein oil is used: otherwise we say *frotter* to rub. The only phrase wherein *joindre* is kept, is in this Proverbial saying (which also grows obsolete), *Oignez vilain, il vous poindra*, Save a thief from hanging, and he'll cut your throat.

§ *poindre* is another obsolete word, used only in the infinitive, and that too in poetry, after the verb *commencer*: as *Le jour commençoit à poindre*, The day began to peep: in which case it is neuter, and of quite another signification than in the just mentioned proverb, wherein it signifies to hurt.

Eighth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in oître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

P. Connoître, to know. Ger. Connoissant, knowing. Part. Connu, &c.  
C. Pres. Avoir connu, to have known. C. Ger. Ayant connu, having, &c.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.**First Persons.*S. Je connois, *I know.*P. Nous connoissons,  
*we know.**Second Persons.*tu connois, *thou, &c.*vous connoissez, *ye*  
*know.**Third Persons.*il connoit, *he knows.*ils connoissent, *they*  
*know.**Imperfect.*S. Je connoissois, *I*  
*did know.*P. Nous connoissions,  
*we did know.*tu connoissois, *thou*  
*did'st know.*vous connoissiez, *ye*  
*or you did know.*il connoissoit, *he did*  
*know.*ils connoissoient, *they*  
*did know.**Preterite.*S. Je connus, *I knew.*P. Nous connûmes,  
*we knew.*tu connus, *thou, &c.*vous connûtes, *ye*  
*or you knew.*il connut, *he knew.*ils connurent, *they*  
*knew.**Future.*S. Je connoîtrai, *I shall*  
*or will know.*P. Nous connoîtrons,  
*we, &c.*tu connoîtras, *thou*  
*shalt or wilt, &c.*vous connoîtrez, *ye*  
*shall or will know.*il connoîtra, *he shall*  
*or will know.*ils connoîtront, *they*  
*shall or will know.**Conditional.*S. Je connoîtrois, *I*  
*should, &c.*P. Nous connoîtrions,  
*we, &c.*tu connoîtrois, *thou*  
*would'st, &c.*vous connoîtriez, *ye*  
*would, &c.*il connoîtroit, *he*  
*would, &c.*ils connoîtroient,  
*they would, &c.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai  
 Comp. of Imp. J'avois  
 Comp. of Pret. J'eus  
 Comp. of Fut. J'aurai  
 Comp. of Cond. J'aurois

} connu, { I have  
 } &c. { I had  
 { I had  
 { I shall have  
 { I should, &c. have

} known,  
 } &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*S. Je connoisse, *I*  
*que may know.*P. Nous connoissi-  
*ons, we, &c.*tu connoisses, *thou*  
*may'st, &c.*vous connoissiez, *ye*  
*or you, &c.*il connoisse, *he may*  
*know.*ils connoissent, *they*  
*may know.**Pre-*

Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je connusse, <i>I knew,</i> que, or might know.	tu connusse, <i>thou</i> <i>knewest.</i>	il connût, <i>he</i> <i>knew.</i>
P. Nous connussons, <i>we knew.</i>	vous connussez, <i>ye</i> <i>knew.</i>	ils connusrent, <i>they knew.</i>
Comp. of Pres. J'aie } connu, { <i>I have or may have } known,</i>		
Comp. of Pret. que J'eusse } &c. { <i>I had or might have } &amp;c.</i>		

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Connois, <i>know thou.</i>	il connoisse, <i>let him</i> qu' <i>know.</i>
P. Connoissons, <i>let</i> <i>us know.</i>	connoissez, <i>know, or</i> <i>know ye.</i>	ils connoissent, <i>let</i> <i>them know.</i>

The eleven verbs of the eighth conjugation are

connoître, <i>to know.</i>	paroître, <i>to appear.</i>	croître, <i>to grow.</i>
méconnoître, <i>to forget, to</i> <i>know no more.</i>	disparoître, <i>to disappear.</i>	accroître, <i>to accrue.</i>
reconnoître, <i>to know again,</i> <i>to acknowledge.</i>	* apparôître, <i>to appear.</i>	décroître, <i>to decrease, to</i> <i>grow less.</i>
	* comparôître, <i>to appear,</i> <i>make one's appearance.</i>	rectoître, <i>to grow again.</i>

\* apparôître and comparôître are only used in law.

Ninth CONJUGATION.

Of Verbs in uire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Instruire, <i>to in-</i> <i>struct.</i>	Ger. Instruisant, <i>in-</i> <i>structing.</i>	Part. Instruit, <i>in-</i> <i>structed.</i>
C. Pres. Avoir instruit, <i>to have</i> <i>instructed.</i>	C. Ger. Ayant instruit, <i>having</i> <i>instructed.</i>	

INDICATIVE.

S. J'instruis, <i>I in-</i> <i>struct.</i>	tu instruis, <i>thou in-</i> <i>structest.</i>	il instruit, <i>he in-</i> <i>structs.</i>
P. Nous instruisons, <i>we instruct.</i>	vous instruisez, <i>ye in-</i> <i>struct.</i>	ils instruisent, <i>they</i> <i>instruct.</i>

Imperfect.

S. J'instruisois, <i>I did</i> <i>instruct.</i>	tu instruisois, <i>thou</i> <i>didst instruct.</i>	il instruisoit, <i>he</i> <i>did instruct.</i>
P. Nous instruisions, <i>we did, &amp;c.</i>	vous instruissiez, <i>ye</i> <i>did instruct.</i>	ils instruisoient, <i>they</i> <i>did instruct.</i>

Pre-

## Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. J'instruisis, <i>I instructed.</i>	tu instruisis, <i>thou instructed'st.</i>	il instruisit, <i>he instructed.</i>
P. Nous instruisîmes, <i>we instructed.</i>	vous instruisîtes, <i>ye instructed.</i>	ils instruisirent, <i>they instructed.</i>

## Future.

S. J'instruirai, <i>I shall or will instruct.</i>	tu instruiras, <i>thou shalt or wilt, &amp;c.</i>	il instruira, <i>he shall or will, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous instruirons, <i>we shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	vous instruirez, <i>ye shall or will, &amp;c.</i>	ils instruiront, <i>they shall or will, &amp;c.</i>

## Conditional.

S. J'instruirois, <i>I should, &amp;c.</i>	tu instruirois, <i>thou would'st, &amp;c.</i>	il instruiroit, <i>he would, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous instruirions, <i>we would, &amp;c.</i>	vous instruiriez, <i>ye would, &amp;c.</i>	ils instruiraient, <i>they would instruct.</i>

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	} instruit &c. }	{ I have I had I had I shall have I should, &c. have }	} instruct- ed.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois			
Comp. of Pret. J'eus			
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai			
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois			

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

S. J'instruise, <i>I may instruct.</i>	tu instruises, <i>thou may'st, &amp;c.</i>	il instruise, <i>he may instruct.</i>
P. <sup>que</sup> Nous instruissions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous instruisiez, <i>ye may, &amp;c.</i>	ils instruisent, <i>they may instruct.</i>

## Preterite.

S.	J'instruisisse, <i>I instructed, or might instruct.</i>	tu instruisisses, <i>thou &amp;c.</i>	il instruisît, <i>he instructed.</i>
P.	<sup>que</sup> Nous instruisissions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous instruisissiez, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils instruisissent, <i>they, &amp;c.</i>
Comp. of Pres.	que J'aie	{ instruit, }	{ I may have } { instructed, }
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse	{ &c. }	{ I might have } { &c. }

I M P E.

## IMPERATIVE.

## First Persons.

S. Instruïs, *instruct thou.*P. Instruïsons, *let us instruct.*

## Second Persons.

Instruïs, *instruct thou.* il instruise, *let him instruct.*instruïsez, *instruct you or ye, &c.* ils instruïsent, *let them instruct.*

## Third Persons.

The nineteen verbs of the ninth conjugation are

* bruïre, <i>to rustle.</i>	induire, <i>to induce.</i>	to build.
conduïre, <i>to conduct.</i>	introduïre, <i>to introduce.</i>	instruïre, <i>to instruct.</i>
reconduïre, <i>to reconduct.</i>	produïre, <i>to produce.</i>	détruire, <i>to destroy.</i>
† cuire, <i>to boil, to bake.</i>	réduïre, <i>to reduce, to bring to.</i>	† luïre, <i>to shine.</i>
recuire, <i>to boil again.</i>	séduïre, <i>to seduce.</i>	† reluire, <i>to shine.</i>
enduire, <i>to plaster, or to do over.</i>	traduire, <i>to translate.</i>	† nuïre, <i>to hurt.</i>
	construire, <i>to construct, or</i>	déduïre, <i>to deduct, to abate.</i>

\* bruïre is said of thunder, wind, and waves, and used only in the imperfect, and part. which is a mere adnoun. As the gerund bruyant is irregular, so is the imperfect bruyoir.

† cuire, besides boiling and baking, is also englished by to do: Cela n'est pas assez cuit, That is not done enough; Faites recuire cette viande, Get that meat done better.— cuire, used in the third persons only, signifies to smart.

† luïre, reluire, and nuïre, take no t at the end of the participle as the others do, and therefore make lui, relui, and lui.

## Tenth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in vendre, and vendre.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Vendre, *to sell.* Ger. Vendant, *selling.* Part. Vendu, *sold.*C. Pres. Avoir vendu, *to have sold.* C. Ger. Ayant vendu, *having sold.*

## INDICATIVE.

## Present Tense.

S. Je vends, *I sell.* tu vends, *thou, &c.* il vend, *he sells.*  
 P. Nous vendons, *we sell.* vous vendez, *ye or* ils vendent, *they sell.*

## Imperfect.

S. Je vendois, *I did sell.* tu vendois, *thou didst* il vendoit, *he did sell.*  
 P. Nous vendions, *we did sell.* vous vendiez, *ye or* ils vendoiënt, *they did sell.*

M

Prete-

## Preterite.

## First Persons.

S. Je vendis, *I sold.*P. Nous vendîmes, *we sold.*

## Second Persons.

tu vendis, *thou, &c.*vous vendîtes, *ye or you sold.*

## Third Persons.

il vendit, *he sold,*ils vendirent, *they sold.*

## Future.

S. Je vendrai, *I shall or will sell.*P. Nous vendrons, *we shall or will sell.*tu vendras, *thou shalt or wilt sell.*vous vendrez, *ye shall or will sell.*il vendra, *he shall or will sell.*ils vendront, *they shall or will sell.*

## Conditional.

S. Je vendrois, *I would, could, &c.*P. Nous vendrions, *we would, &c.*tu vendrois, *thou would'st, &c.*vous vendriez, *ye would, &c.*il vendroit, *he would, could, &c.*ils vendroient, *they would, &c. sell.*

Comp. of Pres.

Comp. of Imp.

Comp. of Pret.

Comp. of Fut.

Comp. of Cond.

J'ai

J'avois

J'eus

J'aurai

J'aurois

vendu,

&amp;c.

I have

I had

I had

I shall have

I should, &amp;c. have

sold,

&amp;c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

S. Je vende, *I may que sell.*P. Nous vendions, *we may sell.*tu vendes, *thou may'st sell.*vous vendiez, *ye may sell.*il vende, *he may sell.*ils vendent, *they may sell.*

## Preterite.

S. Je vendisse, *I que sold or might sell.*P. Nous vendissions, *we, &c.*tu vendisses, *thou, &c.*vous vendissiez, *ye sold.*il vendît, *he sold.*ils vendissent, *they sold.*

Comp. of Pres.

Comp. of Pret.

que J'aie

que J'eusse

vendu,

&amp;c.

I may have

I might have

sold.

## IMPERATIVE.

S.

Vends, *sell or sell thou.*P. Vendons, *let us sell.*il vende, *let him qu' sell.*ils vendent, *let them sell.*

The

The regular verbs of this termination are

attendre, to expect or to wait for.	entendre, to hear, to understand.	tendre, to tend, to bend.
condescendre, to condescend, to comply.	étendre, to stretch out, fendre, to cleave, split.	prétendre, to pretend, to claim.
descendre, to go, come, or get down.	pendre, to hang.	rendre, to give away, return, render.
	vendre, to sell.	répandre, to spill, to pour down.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Répondre to answer.	<i>Ger.</i> Répondant, answering.	<i>Part.</i> Répondu, answered.
<i>C. Pres.</i> Avoir répondu, to have answered.	<i>C. Ger.</i> Ayant répondu, having answered.	

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
<i>S.</i> Je réponds, I answer.	tu réponds, thou answer'st.	il répond, he answers.
<i>P.</i> Nous répondons, we answer.	vous répondez, ye answer.	ils répondent, they answer.

Imperfect.

<i>S.</i> Je répondois, I did answer.	tu répondois, thou didst answer.	il répondoit, he did answer.
<i>P.</i> Nous répondions, we did answer.	vous répondiez, ye did answer.	ils répondoient, they did answer.

Preterite.

<i>S.</i> Je répondis, I answered.	tu répondis, thou answered'st.	il répondit, he answered.
<i>P.</i> Nous répondîmes, we answered.	vous répondîtes, ye answered.	ils répondirent, they answered.

Future.

<i>S.</i> Je répondrai, I shall or will, &c.	tu répondras, thou shalt or wilt, &c.	il répondra, he shall or will answer.
<i>P.</i> Nous répondrons, we shall or will, &c.	vous répondrez, ye shall or will, &c.	ils répondront, they shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

<i>S.</i> Je répondrois, I would, could, &c.	tu répondrois, thou would'st, &c.	il répondroit, he would, &c.
<i>P.</i> Nous répondrions, we would, &c.	vous répondriez, ye would, &c.	ils répondroient, they would, &c.

<i>Comp. of Pres.</i> J'ai	} répondu, {	<i>I have</i>	} answered, &c.
<i>Comp. of Imp.</i> J'avois		<i>I had</i>	
<i>Comp. of Pret.</i> J'eus		<i>I had</i>	
<i>Comp. of Fut.</i> J'aurai		<i>I shall have</i>	
<i>Comp. of Cond.</i> J'aurois		<i>I would, &amp;c. have</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

<i>First Persons.</i>	<i>Second Persons.</i>	<i>Third Persons.</i>
S. Je réponde, <i>I que may answer.</i>	tu répondes, <i>thou may'st, &amp;c.</i>	il réponde, <i>he may answer.</i>
P. Nous répondions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous répondiez, <i>ye may, &amp;c.</i>	ils répondent, <i>they may answer.</i>

## Preterite.

S.	Je répondisse, <i>I</i>	tu répondisses, <i>thou</i>	il répondit, <i>he an-</i>
	que answered, or	&c.	swered.
	might answer.		
P.	Nous répondissions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous répondissiez, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils répondissent, <i>they answered.</i>
Comp. of Pres.	que J'aie	} répondu, {	<i>I may have</i>
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse		<i>I might have</i>
		&c.	&c.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. Réponds, <i>answer,</i>	il réponde, <i>let him</i>
<i>or answer thou.</i>	<i>qu' answer.</i>
P. Répondons, <i>let us</i>	répondez, <i>answer,</i>
<i>answer.</i>	<i>or answer ye.</i>
	ils répondent, <i>let</i>
	<i>them answer.</i>

The regular verbs of this termination are

confondre, <i>to confound.</i>	resondre, <i>to cast new mould.</i>	pondre, <i>to lay eggs.</i>
correspondre, <i>to correspond.</i>	morfondre, <i>to make catch cold.</i>	répondre, <i>to answer.</i>
fondre, <i>to melt.</i>		tondre, <i>to shear.</i>

perdre, <i>to lose.</i>	Ger. perdant, <i>loſing.</i>	Part. perdu, <i>loſt.</i>
mordre, <i>to bite.</i>	Ger. mordant, <i>biting.</i>	Part. mordu, <i>bit.</i>

follow also the tenth conjugation; to which one may add *tordre*, to twist, of which the participle is *tordu*; its old participle *tors* is now-a-days an adjective, used in these expressions; *de fil tors*, twisted thread; *une colonne torse*, a wreathed column; *bouche tort*, wry mouth.

I have said that Reflected verbs are so called, because they govern no other object but the subject they are governed by. They are therefore conjugated with a double pronoun before each person, one of which governs the verb as its subject, and the other

other is governed as its object; as *se blesser*, to hurt one's self; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; in which instance the English verb answers exactly to that which the French call *Reflected*. But we have a great many more that are rendered into English by mere neuter; as *se lever* to rise; which shall be set down here as an example of conjugating this sort of verbs, which don't form their compound tenses from *avoir*, as in English, but from the other auxiliary *être*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* *Se lever*, to rise. *Ger.* *Se levant*, rising. *Part.* *Levé*, risen.  
*C. Pres.* *S'être levé*, to have risen. *C. Ger.* *S'étant levé*, having risen.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
<i>S.</i> <i>Je me lève</i> , I rise.	<i>tu te lèves</i> , thou risest.	<i>il se lève</i> , he rises.
<i>P.</i> <i>Nous nous levons</i> , we rise.	<i>vous vous levez</i> , ye or you rise.	<i>ils se lèvent</i> , they rise.

Imperfect.

<i>S.</i> <i>Je me levois</i> , I did rise.	<i>tu te levois</i> , thou didst rise.	<i>il se levoit</i> , he did rise.
<i>P.</i> <i>Nous nous levions</i> , we did rise.	<i>vous vous leviez</i> , ye did rise.	<i>ils se levoient</i> , they did rise.

Preterite.

<i>S.</i> <i>Je me levai</i> , I rose.	<i>tu te levais</i> , thou, &c.	<i>il se leva</i> , he rose.
<i>P.</i> <i>Nous nous levâmes</i> , we rose.	<i>vous vous levâtes</i> , ye rose.	<i>ils se levèrent</i> , they rose.

Future.

<i>S.</i> <i>Je me leverai</i> , I shall or will rise.	<i>tu te leveras</i> , thou shalt or wilt rise.	<i>il se levera</i> , he shall or will rise.
<i>P.</i> <i>Nous nous leverons</i> , we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous leverez</i> , ye shall or will, &c.	<i>ils se leveront</i> , they shall or will rise.

Conditional.

<i>S.</i> <i>Je me leverois</i> , I would or should, &c.	<i>tu te leverois</i> , thou would'st, or, &c.	<i>il se leveroit</i> , he would or should, &c.
<i>P.</i> <i>Nous nous leverions</i> , we should, or &c.	<i>vous vous leveriez</i> , ye would, or, &c.	<i>ils se leveroient</i> , they would or should, &c.

## Compound of Present.

## First Persons.

S. Je me suis levé, *I have risen.*

P. Nous nous sommes levés, *we, &c.*

## Second Persons.

tu t'es levé, *thou hast risen.*

vous vous êtes levés, *ye have risen.*

## Third Persons.

il s'est levé, *he has risen.*

ils se sont levés, *they have risen.*

## Compound of Imperfect.

S. Je m'étois levé, *I had risen.*

P. Nous nous étions levés, *we had risen.*

tu t'étois levé, *thou had'st risen.*

vous vous étiez levés, *ye had risen.*

il s'étoit levé, *he had risen.*

ils s'étoient levés, *they had risen.*

## Compound of Preterite.

S. Je me fus levé, *I had risen.*

P. Nous nous fumes levés, *we had, &c.*

tu te fus levé, *thou had'st risen.*

vous vous futes levés, *ye, &c.*

il se fut levé, *he had risen.*

ils se furent levés, *they had risen.*

## Compound of Future.

S. Je me serai levé, *I shall have risen.*

P. Nous nous serons levés, *we shall, &c.*

tu te seras levé, *thou shalt have risen.*

vous vous ferez levés, *ye, &c.*

il se sera levé, *he shall have risen.*

ils se seront levés, *they shall, &c.*

## Compound of Conditional.

S. Je me serois levé, *I would have risen.*

P. Nous nous serions levés, *we, &c.*

tu te serois levé, *thou would'st have risen.*

vous vous seriez levés, *ye, &c.*

il se seroit levé, *he would have risen.*

ils se seroient levés, *they would, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present Tense.

S. Je me lève, *I may rise.*

P. Nous nous levions, *we, &c.*

tu te lèves, *thou may'st rise.*

vous vous leviez, *ye or you, &c.*

il se lève, *he may rise.*

ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

## Preterite.

S. Je me levais, *I rose or might rise.*

P. Nous nous levassions, *&c.*

tu te levassies, *thou, &c.*

vous vous levassiez, *ye or, &c.*

il se levât, *he rose.*

ils se levassent, *they rose.*

Com-

Compound of Present.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. Je me sois levé, I que may have risen.	tu te sois levé, thou hast risen.	il se soit levé, he has risen.
P. Nous nous soyons levés, we, &c.	vous vous soyez le- vés, ye, &c.	ils se soient levés, they have, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

S. Je me fusse levé, que I had or might have risen.	tu te fusses levé, thou hadst, &c.	il se fût levé, he had risen.
P. Nous nous fûssions levés, &c.	vous vous fussiez levés, ye, or, &c.	ils se fussent levés, they had, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S. Lève toi, rise, or rise thou.	qu'il se lève, let him rise.
P. Levons-nous, let us rise.	levez-vous, rise, or rise ye or you.
	qu'ils se lèvent, let them rise.

We shall treat elsew here of the use of the tenses, and then observe how the English commonly use the preterite instead of the three first compound tenses of the French: but it must be sufficient now to conjugate all the tenses Grammatically, for the best learning of the verbs. Observe only here, that *I am risen*, *I was risen*, &c. that are seen in some Grammars to answer the French of the compound tenses, and signify properly in French, *je suis levé*, *j'étois levé*, &c. imply quite another sense than that of those tentes of the reflected verb *se lever*.

The following verbs neuter, form likewise their compound from *être*:

accourir, to run to.	entrer, to enter, to come,	venir, to come.
aller, to go.	or get in.	revenir, to come again.
aborder, to land.	monter, to go up, to come,	devenir, to become.
arriver, to arrive.	or get up.	convenir, to agree.
cboir, to fall.	mourir, to die.	disconvenir, to disagree.
déchoir, to decay.	naître, to be born.	provenir, to come from.
décéder, to die.	partir, to go, to depart, to	parvenir, to attain.
descendre, to go, come, or	set out.	survenir, to befall.
get down.	sortir, to go out.	intervenir, to intervene.
rester, to stay.	tomber, to fall down.	
retourner, to return.		

Therefore you should say: *Je suis arrivé ce matin*, I arrived this morning; not *J'ai arrivé*, &c. *Elle est venue cette après-midi*, she came this afternoon, not *Elle a venu*, &c. Some of these verbs are also used actively, that is, attended by a noun as their object: then they form their compounds from *avoir*. Therefore, tho' we say when the verb is neuter, *Elle est montée*, she is got up; *Elle est descendue*, she has come, or got down; yet when the verb is attended by a noun, we say, *Elle a descendu l'escalier plus aisément qu'elle ne l'a montée*, she went, or got down the stairs more easily than she got up.

*croître* to grow, *sortir* to go out, *demeurer* to live, *rester* to stay, are equally well conjugated with *être* or *avoir*; as *il est*, or *il a fort cru*, he is very much grown; *j'ai sorti*, or *je suis sorti ce matin*, I went out this morning. We say equally well *J'ai accouru*,

and *Je suis accouru à son secours*, I ran to his assistance. But *avoir* and *être* construed with *sortir* and *demeurer*, imply two different things. *Il est sorti*, signifies that he is not at home, or within the place where one is, and is englished *huc, he is gone out or abroad*; and *il a sorti* signifies that he has been out on some business or other, but is come back again since: *il a sorti ce matin*, he went out this morning.

In the same manner *il a demeuré à Paris*, signifies that he has lived at *Paris* for a while, and is no more there: and *il est demeuré à Paris*, that he remained at *Paris*, to continue to live there; or at least that he is there still.

Again; *sortir* and *promener* are also used actively: as *sortez ce cheval de l'écurie, & le promenez*, get the horse out of the stable and walk him.

When the verb *passer* is attended by a noun and a preposition, it is conjugated with *avoir*, and with *être* when it is used absolutely without any retinue; as *j'ai passé par l'Allemagne*, I passed through Germany; *vous attendez le courier, il est passé*, you stay for the express, he is passed, or gone.

As to the verbs called *Irregular*, because they don't form all their tenses according to the afore said rules; observe that their irregularities fall only upon either of these tenses, present (of both moods), preterite, and future: and therefore I should only need to set down these irregularities, were this Grammar designed for Scholars only. But as it is calculated for learners of all sorts, and those of the meanest capacity can't have too much help in this matter, I shall take notice of those verbs in such a manner as will make the conjugation of them very easy to any learner, setting down (for abbreviation sake) the termination of each person only.

Observe further, that, in verbs irregular, the preterite is ordinarily like the participle, in adding: when it has none: as *Je mis* I put, from *mis* put; *Je conclus* I concluded, from *conclu* concluded.

### VERBS IRREGULAR.

There are but two \* verbs irregular in the first conjugation: *aller* to go, and *puer* to stink; which is irregular only in the spelling of the three persons sing. of the pres. of the indicative, *Je pus, tu pus, il put*, instead of *je pue, tu pues, il pue*, all the rest being regular. However, French politeness dislikes the very word *puer*, and instead of it, we, in conversation, make use of *sentir mauvais*.

*Aller* is very irregular throughout; and as it is of a very extensive use with the explicative particle *en* and a double pronoun, it shall be set down here at length; but children must first learn the plain verb *aller*, before they conjugate the reciprocal *s'en aller*,

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. S'en aller, to go    Ger. S'en allant, going away.    Part. Allé, gone away.

C. Pr. S'en être allé, to have gone away.    C. Ger. S'en étant allé, having gone away.

\* *J'enverrai* and *j'enverrois*, have prevailed instead of the regular future and conditional of *envoyer* (*J'envoyerais, J'envoyerois*.)

## INDICATIVE.

## Present Tense.

## First Persons.

S. Je m'en vais, *I go away.*

P. Nous nous en allons, *we go away.*

## Second Persons.

tu t'en vas, *thou goest away.*

vous vous en allez, *ye or you go away.*

## Third Persons.

il s'en va, *he goes away.*

ils s'en vont, *they go away.*

## Imperfect.

S. Je m'en allois, *I did go away.*

P. Nous nous en allions, *we did, &c.*

tu t'en allois, *thou did'st go away.*

vous vous en alliez, *ye or you did, &c.*

il s'en alloit, *he did go away.*

ils s'en alloient, *they did go away.*

## Preterite.

S. Je m'en allai, *I went away.*

P. Nous nous en allâmes, *we went, &c.*

tu t'en allas, *thou wentest away.*

vous vous en allâtes, *ye or you, &c.*

il s'en alla, *he went away.*

ils s'en allèrent, *they went away.*

## Future.

S. Je m'en irai, *I shall or will go away.*

P. Nous nous en irons, *we shall, &c.*

tu t'en iras, *thou shalt or wilt, &c.*

vous vous en irez, *ye or you shall, &c.*

il s'en ira, *he shall or will go away.*

ils s'en iront, *they shall, &c. go away.*

## Conditional.

S. Je m'en irois, *I should, &c. go away.*

P. Nous nous en irions, *we, &c.*

tu t'en irois, *thou would'st, &c.*

vous vous en iriez, *ye or you, &c.*

il s'en iroit, *he would, &c. go away.*

ils s'en iroient, *they would, &c. go away.*

## Compound of Present.

S. Je m'en suis allé, *I have gone away.*

P. Nous nous en sommes allés, *we, &c.*

tu t'en es allé, *thou hast gone away.*

vous vous en êtes allés, *ye have, &c.*

il s'en est allé, *he has gone away.*

ils s'en sont allés, *they have, &c.*

## Compound of Imperfect.

S. Je m'en étois allé, *I had gone away.*

P. Nous nous en étions allés, *we, &c.*

tu t'en étois allé, *thou had'st, &c.*

vous vous en étiez allés, *ye had, &c.*

il s'en étoit allé, *he had gone away.*

ils s'en étoient allés, *they had gone, &c.*

† or I have been gone away, or I am gone away.

† or I had been gone away, or I was gone away.

Com-

## Compound of the Preterite.

## First Persons.

## Second Persons.

## Third Persons.

S. Je m'en fus allé, * <i>I had gone away.</i>	tu t'en fus allé, <i>thou hadst gone away.</i>	il s'en fut allé, <i>he had gone away.</i>
P. Nous nous en fumes allés, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en futes allés, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en furent allés, <i>they had gone away.</i>

## Compound of the Future.

S. Je m'en serai allé, † <i>I shall have, &amp;c.</i>	tu t'en seras allé, <i>thou wilt have gone, &amp;c.</i>	il s'en sera allé, <i>he will have gone, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous nous en serons allés, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en serez allés, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en seront allés, <i>they will have, &amp;c.</i>

## Compound of Conditional.

S. Je m'en serois allé, <i>I should, &amp;c.</i>	tu t'en serois allé, <i>thou would'st, &amp;c.</i>	il s'en seroit allé, <i>he would have, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous nous en serions allés, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en seriez allés, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en seroient allés, <i>they would, &amp;c.</i>

## S U B J U N C T I V E.

## Present.

S. Je m'en aille, <i>I may go away.</i>	tu t'en ailles, <i>thou may'st go away.</i>	il s'en aille, <i>he may go away.</i>
P. Nous nous en allions, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en alliez, <i>ye or you, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en aillent, <i>they may go away.</i>

## Preterite.

S. Je m'en allasse, <i>I went or might go away.</i>	tu t'en allasses, <i>thou went'st away.</i>	il s'en allât, <i>he went away.</i>
P. Nous nous en allâmes, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en allâtes, <i>ye, or, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en allâssent, <i>they went, &amp;c.</i>

## Compound of Present.

S. Je m'en sois allé, <i>I have gone, &amp;c.</i>	tu t'en sois allé, <i>thou hast, &amp;c.</i>	il s'en soit allé, <i>he has, &amp;c.</i>
P. Nous nous en soyons allés, <i>we, &amp;c.</i>	vous vous en soyez allés, <i>ye, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en soient allés, <i>they, &amp;c.</i>

\* or *I had been gone away, or was gone away.*† or *I shall have been gone away, or I shall be gone away.*

Compound of Preterite.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S.	Je m'en fusse allé, <i>I had or might have gone.</i>	tu t'en fusses allé, <i>thou hadst, &amp;c.</i>	ils s'en fût allé, <i>he had gone away.</i>
P.	Nous nous en fus- sions allés, &c.	vous vous en fu- siez allés, ye, &c.	ils s'en fussent al- lés, <i>they, &amp;c.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Va-t-en, <i>go thou away†,</i>	qu'il s'en aille, <i>let, &amp;c.</i>
P.	Allons-nous-en, allez-vous en, <i>go away,</i> <i>let us go away†.</i>	qu'ils s'en aillent, <i>let them go away.</i>

Observe 1<sup>st</sup>, that all the compound tenses of *aller* are double, they being equally well formed with the verb substantive *être* and the participle *allé*; as *je suis allé, j'étois allé*, and with the auxiliary *avoir*, and the part. *été*; as *j'ai été, j'avois été, &c.*

2<sup>dly</sup>, One must very warily distinguish the proper compound tenses of *aller* (*j'ai été, j'avois été, &c.*) from the use that the participle of the same verb (*allé*) is put to with the verb *être* (*je suis allé, j'étois allé*), which imply quite another sense than that signified by the action of the verb. For *Il est allé à Paris* (for example), far from expressing the action signified by the compound of the present of *aller*, intimates that either *he is at Paris*, or at least *is still on his journey thither*, which is properly englished thus, *he is gone to Paris*. But *Il a été à Paris*, he has been at Paris (which is the proper compound of the present of *aller*), signifies that *he has travelled to Paris*, and is returned from thence. I have therefore set down the two ways in English (*I am gone away*, and *I have been gone away*, for *je m'en suis allé*), which may be both used conformably to this observation.

3<sup>dly</sup>, The preterite tenses of *aller* and *s'en aller* are also double, those of the verb *être* being equally well used. *J'allai* or *Je fus*; *J'allasse* or *Je fusse*, I went; *Je m'en allai*, or *Je m'en fus*; I went away. But we don't say with the double pronoun and the participle *en*, *Je m'en ai été*, as we say without them *J'ai été*, I have been, or have gone.

4<sup>thly</sup>, The difference between *aller* and *s'en aller* is this. The first is used to denote only the going from one place to another; whereas *s'en aller* denotes the very departure, the just going away directly; or at least shews the specified time of setting out from one mentioned or supposed place.

5<sup>thly</sup>, *s'en aller* is also said of liquors, to signify their running away from the vessel wherein they are kept: as *le vin s'en va, le tonneau ne vaut rien*, the wine runs away, the vessel is good for nothing.

6<sup>thly</sup>, *venir* to come, *revenir* to come back again, and *retourner* to return, are also conjugated with a double pronoun and the participle *en*: as *Je m'en reviens*, I am coming back again, *Il s'en retourne*, he is returning; and either way must be used according to the aforesaid difference between *aller* and *s'en aller*.

7<sup>thly</sup>, Though the Participle of *recouvrer* to recover, or to get again, is now a day *recouvré*, as usual to all verbs of the first conjugation, yet custom keeps still the old participle *recouvert* in law-style, as likewise in this proverb, *Pour un perdu deux recouverts*, for one lost two recovered, or found again.

† or *Get you gone,*

† or *Let us be gone away.*

VERBS

VERBS IRREGULAR of the 2d and 3d CONJUGATION,  
viz. in ir.

*Inf.* ACQUÉRIR, to acquire, to get, to purchase.

acquérir, to acquire. *Ger.* acquérant, acquiring. *Part.* acquis, acquired.

*Pres.* J'acqui-ers, iers, iert; Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent.

*Imp.* J'acquér-ois, ois, oit; Nous acquér-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* J'acqu -is, is, it; Nous acqui -mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* J'acquerrai, ras, ra; Nous acquerrons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* J'acquerrais, rois, roit; Nous acquerrions, riez, roient.

*S. P.* J'acqu -ière, ières, ière; Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent.

*Pr.* J'acqu -isse, isses, ît; Nous acqui ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Acquiers, qu'il acquière; acqué-rons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent.

The other verbs that follow the same conjugation are *conquérir* to conquer, and *requérir* to require, which last is only used in law: *conquérir* is used only in the infinitive, both preticite and compound tenses. As for *querir* to fetch, it has but the infinitive in use, and that too immediately after the verbs *aller* to go, *venir* to come, and *envoyer* to send: and *s'enquérir de* to inquire after, is become obsolete; instead of which we now a-days say *s'informer*.

## BOUILLIR.

*Inf.* bouillir, to boil. *Ger.* bouillant, boiling. *Part.* bouilli, boiled.

*Pres.* Je bous, bous, bout; Nous bouill -ons, ez, ent.

*Imp.* Je bouill ois, ois, oit; Nous bouill -ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je bouill is, is, it; Nous bouilli-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je bouillirai, ras, ra; Nous bouillirons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je bouillirais, rois, roit; Nous bouillirions, riez, roient.

*S. P.* Je bouill-e, es, e; Nous bouill-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je bouill-isse, isses, ît; Nous bouilli-ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Bous, qu'il bouille; bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent.

Its compound is *rebouillir*, to boil again — That verb is seldom used but in the infinitive and 3d persons of its tenses: and it is always neuter. Therefore don't say *bouillir de la viande*, as in English; to boil meat, but *faire bouillir de la viande*.

## COURIR.

*Inf.* courir, to run. *Ger.* courant, running. *Part.* couru, run.

*Pres.* Je cours, cours, court; Nous cour ons, ez, ent.

*Imp.* Je cour-ois, ois, oit; Nous cour-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je cour-us, us, ut; Nous couru-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je cour-rai, ras, ra; Nous cour-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je cour-rois, rois, roit; Nous cour-rions, riez, roient.

*S. P.* Je cour-e, es, e; Nous cour-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je cou-russe, russes, rût; Nous couru-ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Cours, qu'il coure; cour-ons, ez, qu'ils courent.

After

After the same manner are conjugated these seven verbs :

accourir, <i>to run to.</i>	discourir, <i>to discourse.</i>	secourir, <i>to succour, to relieve.</i>
concourir, <i>to concur, to con-</i>	parcourir, <i>to run over, to survey.</i>	
sp. re. <i>to incur, to fall under.</i>	recourir, <i>to have recourse to.</i>	

But the compound tenses of *accourir* are conjugated with *être*.

**CUEILLIR, to gather, to pick up.**

*Inf.* cueillir, *to gather.* *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering.*

*Part.* cueilli, *gathered.*

*Pres.* Je cueill e, es, e; Nous cueill -ons, ez, ent.  
*Imp.* Je cueill -ois, ois, oit; Nous cueill -ions, iez, oient.  
*Prët.* Je cueill -is, is, it; Nous cueilli -mes, tes, rent.  
*Fut.* Je cueille -rai, ras, ra; Nous cueille -rons, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je cueille -rois, rois, roit; Nous cueille -rions, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* Je cueill e, es, e; Nous cueill -ions, iez, ent.  
*Pr.* Je cueill -isse, isses, ît; Nous cueilli -ssions, siez, sient.  
*Imper.* Cueille, qu'il cueille; cueill -ons, ez, qu'ils cueillent.

*accueillir*, to make welcome, is very little used; in lieu thereof we say *faire accueil*, and *faire bon-accueil*. *Recueillir*, to collect, to gather together, is conjugated after the same manner.

**FUIR, and s'ENFUIR.**

*Fuir* is both active and neuter: when it is neuter, 'tis *to run away*; and *to shun, to avoid*, when active.

*Inf.* fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part.* fui, *shunned.*

*Pres.* Je suis, fuis, fuit; Nous fuy -ons, ez, fuient.  
*Imp.* Je fuy -ois, ois, ôit; Nous fuy -ions, iez, oient.  
*Prët.* Je suis, fuis, fuit; Nous fui -mes, tes, rent.

*This Preterite is seldom used; instead of je suis, and je m'enfuis, we say (when the verb is neuter) je pris la fuite, from prendre la fuite, to run away: and j'évitai, from éviter to avoid, to shun (when it is active).*

*Fut.* Je fui -rai, ras, ra; Nous fui -rons, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je fui -rois, rois, roit; Nous fui -rions, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* Je fuy -e, es, fuie; Nous fuy -ions, iez, fuient.  
*Pr.* Je fui -sle, sles, fût; Nous fui -ssions, siez, sient.

*The*

*The Pres. tense is very little used, and the Pret. tense still less: instead of them we say, Je prenne la fuite, je pris la fuite; j'évite, j'évitasse.*

*Imper. Fuite, qu'il fuite; fuy-ons, ez, qu'ils fuient.*

## H A Î R.

*Inf. haïr, to hate. Ger. haïssant, hating. Part. haï, hated.*

*Pres. Je haïs, aïs, it; Nous haïss-ons, ez, ent.*

*Imper. Haï, qu'il haïsse; haïssons, ez, qu'ils haïssent.*

*The irregularity of this verb falls only upon those tenses. All the other tenses are regular. (See the 2d conj.) Its Pret. tenses are never used; its compounds very little.*

## MOURIR, and se MOURIR, to be a dying.

*Inf. mourir, to die. Ger. mourant, dying. Part. mort, dead.*

*Pres. Je meurs, meurs, meurt; Nous mour-ons, ez, meurent.*

*Imp. Je mour-ois, ois, oit; Nous mour-ions, iez, oient.*

*Pret. Je mour-us, us, ut; Nous mouru-mes, tes, rent.*

*Fut. Je mour-rai, ras, ra; Nous mour-rons, rez, ront.*

*Cond. Je mour-rois, rois, roit; Nous mour-rions, riez, roient.*

*S. P. Je meur-e, es, e; Nous mour-ions, iez, meurent.*

*Pr. Je mou-russe, russes, rût; Nous mouru-ssions, ssez, ssent.*

*Imper. Meurs, qu'il meure; mour-ons, ez, qu'ils meurent.*

*The Compound tenses are formed from être.*

## O U V R I R.

*Inf. ouvrir, to open. Ger. ouvrant, opening. Part. ouvert, open.*

*Pres. J'ouvr-e, es, e; Nous ouvr-ons, ez, ent.*

*Imp. J'ouvr-ois, ois, oit; Nous ouvr-ions, iez, oient.*

*Pret. J'ouvr-is, is, it; Nous ouvri-mes, tes, rent.*

*Fut. J'ouvri-rai, ras, ra; Nous ouvri-rons, rez, ront.*

*Cond. J'ouvri-rois, rois, roit; Nous ouvri-rions, riez, roient.*

*S. P. J'ouvr-e, es, e; Nous ouvr-ions, iez, ent.*

*Pr. J'ouvr-isse, isses, ît; Nous ouvri-ssions, ssez, ssent.*

*Imper. Ouvre, qu'il ouvre; ouvr-ons, ez, qu'ils ouvrent.*

*Souffrir to suffer, or to bear, and offrir to offer, with its derivative ne offrir to underbid (very little used), couvrir to cover, découvrir to discover, and recouvrir, to cover again, are conjugated after ouvrir.*

## S A I L L I R,

**SAILLIR**, to gush out, is out of use; as also **ASSAILLIR**, to assault, except perhaps in the participle *assailli*, assaulted. And **TRESSAILLIR**, which is commonly attended by *de*, as *treffaillir de joie* to leap for joy, *treffaillir de peur* to start out of fear, is more used in the infinitive, the gerund, and the pres. imp. and pret. than in the other tenses.

*Inf.* tressaillir, to start. *Ger.* tressaillant, starting. *Part.* tressailli, started.

*Pres.* Je tressaill-e, es, e; Nous tressaill-ons, ez, ent.

*Imp.* Je tressaill-ois, ois, oit; Nous tressaill-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je tressaill-is, is, it; Nous tressailli-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je tressailli-rai, ras, ra; Nous tressailli-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je tressailli-rois, rois, roit; Nous tressailli-rions, riez, roient.

*S.P.* Je tressaill-e, es, e; Nous tressaill-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je tressaill-isse, isses, ît; Nous tressailli-ssions, siez, sient.

*No Imperative.*

*Saillir* may still be used in these persons, *les eaux saillissent*, the waters gush out; *le sang saillissoit*, the blood gush'd out; *mon sang a sailli fort loin*, my blood has gushed out a great way.

## REVÊTIR,

to invest with, to bestow; or to confer a dignity upon one; is always used in a figurative sense.

*Inf.* revêtir, to invest. *Ger.* revêtant, investing. *Part.* revêtu, invested.

*Pres.* Je rev-êts, êts, ét; Nous revêt-ons, ez, ent.

*Imp.* Je revêt-ois, ois, oit; Nous revêt-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je revêt-is, is, it; Nous revêti-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je revêti-rai, ras, ra; Nous revêti-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je revêti-rois, rois, roit; Nous revêti-rions, riez, roient.

*S.P.* Je revêt-e, es, e; Nous revêt-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je revêt-isse, isses, ît; Nous revêti-ssions, siez, sient.

*Imper.* Revêts, qu'il revête; revêt-ons, ez, qu'ils revêtent.

*Vêtir* to clothe, is used only in the infinitive, and part, *vêtu* clothed: as to the other tenses, we make use of *habiller*. — *se revêtir* to put on one's clothes, is sometimes used, though not throughout: but *travestir* to disguise, and *investir* to invest, are regular verbs of the 2d. conj. altho' they are seldom used but in the infinitive, the participle, future, conditional, and preterite.

*Faillir* to fail, and *défaillir* to faint away, are quite become obsolete. We have substituted to the former *manquer*, and to the latter *s'évanouir*, or *tomber en défaillance*.

*Oïr* to hear, is used only in the compound tenses, and that too with the verb *dire* after it; *J'ai ouï dire* I have heard, *J'avois ouï dire* I have heard, &c. In all other cases we make use of *entendre* or *apprendre*.

*Féir* an old obsolete verb. Its infinitive is kept in this phrase only, *sans coup féir* without striking one blow.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the 5th CONJUGATION, or in *oir*.

s'ASSISEOIR.

*Inf.* s'asseoir, to sit down. *Ger.* s'assessant, sitting down. *Part.* assis, sat down.

*Pr.* Je m'assieds, ieds, ied; Nous nous assiedons, eyons, eyez, eyent.

*Im.* Je m'assiedois, ois, oit; Nous nous assiedions, iez, oient.

*Pr.* Je m'assieds, is, it; Nous nous assiedons, mes, tes, rent.

*Fu.* Je m'assierai, m'assèrai, m'assierai, &c. Authors are

*Co.* Je m'assierois, or m'assèrois m'assierois, &c. divided about the spelling and pronouncing of these two tenses, but it is better to avoid using them.

*Sub.* Je m'assieds, eyez, eyez; Nous nous assiedons, iez, ent.

*Pr.* que Je m'assieds, isses, it; Nous nous assiedons, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Assied-toi, qu'il s'assiede; assiedons-nous, assiedez-vous, qu'ils s'assiedent.

Instead of using the three persons singular, and the third plural of the *Pres.* of both moods, it is better to take another turn, and use the persons of either of these verbs *se mettre sur*, *se reposer*, *se placer*, *prendre place*, according to the sense. But,

This following regular way of conjugating *s'asseoir* begins to prevail, which is doubtless occasioned by the difficulties attending the irregular way of conjugating it. However, I don't recommend it before it be entirely established by use. (This way is rather confined to the high style; the other suits the conversation best.)

*Inf.* s'asseoir, to sit down. *Ger.* s'assessant, sitting down. *Part.* assis, sat down.

*Pres.* Je m'assieds, ois, oit; Nous nous assiedons, ez, ent.

*Imp.* Je m'assiedois, ois, oit; Nous nous assiedions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je m'assieds, is, it; Nous nous assiedons, mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je m'assierai, ras, ra; Nous nous assierons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je m'assierois, rois, roit; Nous nous assierions, riez, roient.

*S. P.* Je m'assieds, es, ez; Nous nous assiedons, ez, ent.

*Pret.* que Je m'assieds, isses, it; Nous nous assiedons, ssez, ssent.

*asseoir*, is used also actively; as *asseyez*, or *asseyez cet enfant*, sit down the child.

*rasseoir*, besides its reduplicative signification of *sitting again*, is also used neutrally in the sense of *settling*; as *laisser rasseoir une liqueur*, or *ses esprits*, to let a liquor, or one's spirits settle, in which sense its use is confined to the infinitive.

*surseoir* to adjourn, is used only in law, in the infinitive, the participle *sursum*, and perhaps the future *surseoir*. On the contrary,

*seoir* to become, or fit well, is never used in the infinitive, but only in the third persons of both numbers of the subjunctive tenses; as,

*Cette couleur vous sied bien,*

That colour fits you well,

*Ces couleurs ne vous sient pas,*

Those colours don't fit you well; and never *sient* or *syent*.

It being not therefore conjugated like *asseoir*. I'll set down here the tenses wherein the verb is used. It has no preterite or compound tenses, and is said both with respect to manners, dress, colour, or any thing like relating to persons. Its gerund should be *seyant*; as,

*Cette couleur vous seyant bien, vous n'en devriez jamais changer.*

Since that colour fits you well, you should never change it.

But it is better to avoid using of it.—*Séant, fis, and sise*, thought by some the right participles of *seoir*, are only verbal adnouns and participles of another obsolete verb used only in some phrases like these :

*Le Roi séant en son lit de justice,  
Le Parlement séant à Windsor,  
Un héritage fis en tel endroit,*

*The King sitting upon his throne ;  
The parliament sitting at Windsor ;  
An estate lying in such a place.*

But the verbal adnoun *séant* is used in the sense of the verb before our consideration :

*Il n'est pas séant de siffler en compagnie.* It is not decent to whistle in company.

*Cette perruque courte n'est pas séante à un homme de son rang.* That short bob is not decent for one of his dignity.

<i>Pres.</i> Il sied,	<i>that fits.</i>	ils sièent,	<i>they sit.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> Il seyoit,	<i>that fitted.</i>	ils seyoient,	<i>they fitted.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Il siéra,	<i>that will fit.</i>	ils siéront,	<i>they will fit.</i>
<i>Cond.</i> Il siéroit,	<i>that would fit.</i>	ils siérolent,	<i>they would fit.</i>

This verb is also used impersonally : as,

*Il sied mal à un homme sage de, &c.* It ill becomes a wise man to, &c.

## POUVOIR.

*Inf.* pouvoir, *to be able.* *Ger.* pouvant, *being able.* *Part. pu,* *been able.*

*Pres.* Je puis, peux, peut ; Nous pouv-ons, ez, peuvent.

*Conversation and Poetry allow Je peux.*

*Imp.* Je pouv-ois, ois, oit ; Nous pouv-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je pus, pus, put ; Nous pu-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je pour-rai, ras, ra ; Nous pour-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je pour-rois, rois, roit ; Nous pour-rions, riez, roient :

*One r only is sounded in those two tenses.*

*S.P.* Je pui-ssé, ssés, ssé ; Nous pui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Pr.* Je pusse, pussés, pût ; Nous pu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*No Imperative.*

*See in the Appendix the right use and conjugation of that Verb.*

## S A V O I R, formerly sçavoir.

*Inf.* savoir, *to know.* *Ger.* sachant, *knowing.* *Part. su,* *known.*

*Pres.* Je sai, or je fais, fais, fait ; Nous sa-vons, vez, vent.

*Imp.* Je sa-vois, vois, voit ; Nous sa-vions, viez, voient.

*Pret.* Je sus, sus, fut ; Nous su-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je sau-rai, ras, ra ; Nous sau-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je sau-rois, rois, roit ; Nous sau-rions, riez, roient.

*S.P.* Je sach-e, es, e ; Nous sach-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je fusse, fussés, sût ; Nous su-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Imp.* Sache, qu'il sache ; sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

N

VOIR.

## VOIR.

*Inf.* voir, to see. *Ger.* voyant, seeing. *Part.* vu, seen.

*Pres.* Je vois, vois, voit ; Nous voy-ons, ez, voient.

*Imp.* Je voy-ois, ois, oit ; Nous voy-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je vis, vis, vit ; Nous vi-mes, tes, ren<sup>t</sup>.

*Fut.* Je ver-rai, ras, ra ; Nous ver-r-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je ver-rois, rois, roit ; Nous ver-r-ions, riez, roient.

*In those two tenses pronounce double r like a single one.*

*S.P.* Je voy-e, es, e ; Nous voy-ions, iez, ent.

*Pr.* Je visse, visses, vît ; Nous vissions, vissiez, vissent.

*Imp.* Vois, qu'il voye ; Voyons, -ez, qu'ils voyent.

After voir, are conjugated, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of ; *pourvoir*, to provide ; *prévoir*, to foresee ; and *revoir*, to see again ; but *pourvoir* and *prévoir* don't make their future and conditional in *errai* and *errois* as their primitive does ; but in *cirai* and *crois* (*je pourvoirai, tu prévoiras, il pourveroit, nous prévoirions, &c.*) ; *pourvoir* differs also from all others in its preterite tenses, which are not ended in *is* and *isse*, but in *us* and *usse*, (*je pourvus, je pourvusse*).

## VOULOIR.

*Inf.* vouloir, to be willing. *Ger.* voulant, being willing. *Part.* voulu, been willing.

*Pres.* Je veux, veux, veut ; Nous vou-lons, lez, veulent.

*Imp.* Je vou-lois, lois, loit ; Nous vou-lions, liez, loient.

*Pret.* Je vou-lus, lus, lut ; Nous vou-lumes, lutes, lurent.

*Fut.* Je vou-drai, dras, dra ; Nous vou-drons, drez, dront.

*Cond.* Je vou-drois, drois, droit ; Nous vou-drions, driez, droient.

*S.P.* Je veuill-e, es, e ; Nous vou-lions, liez, veuillent.

*Pr.* Je vou-lusse, lusses, lût ; Nous vou-lussions, lussiez, lussent.

*No Imperative.*

*See in the Appendix the true use and conjugation of that verb.*

## VALOIR.

*Inf.* valoir, to be worth. *Ger.* valant, being worth. *Part.* valu, been worth.

*Pres.* Je vaus, vaus, vaut ; Nous va-lons, lez, lent.

*Imp.* Je va-lois, lois, loit ; Nous va-lions, liez, loient.

*Pret.* Je va-lus, lus, lut ; Nous va-lumes, lutes, lurent.

*Fut.* Je vau-drai, ras, ra ; Nous vau-drons, drez, dront.

*Cond.* Je vau-drois, rois, roit ; Nous vau-drions, driez, droient.

*S.P.* Je vaill-e, es, e ; Nous va-lions, liez, vaillent.

*Pr.* Je va-lusse, lusses, lût ; Nous va-lussions, lussiez, lussent.

*Imper.* Vaux, qu'il vaille ; Va-lons, lez, qu'ils vaillent.

*Revaloir*, to be even with one ; and *prévaloir*, to prevail, follow the same conjugation, except that *prévaloir* makes in the present subj. *prévale*, and not *prévaill*.

## MOUVOIR.

*Inf.* mouvoir, to move. *Ger.* mouvant, moving. *Part. mu,* moved.

*Pres.* Jemeus, meus, meut; Nous mou-vons, vez, meuvent.

*Imp.* Je mou-vois, vois, voit; *Ec. Fut. & Cond. (if used)* mouvrai.  
and mouvrais, &c.

*Sub.* Je meu-ve, ves, ve; Nous mou-vions, viez, meuvent.

*The preterite tenses, which should be Je mus, Je mûsse, are very seldom used.*

*Imper.* Meus, qu'il meuve; Mou-vons, vez, qu'ils meuvent.

*Mouvoir* is a technical term, which also has few tenses in use. In common conversation we use *remuer*. Its derivatives are *émouvoir*, *démouvoir*, and *promouvoir*.

*démouvoir* is a law term used only in the infinitive in such phrases as these: *se démouvoir*, to desist; *démouvoir quelqu'un de ses prétentions*, to make one desist of his pretensions.

*aparoître*, v. n. another law term, used only in the infinitive, and third person sing. as *Comme il apert par un tel acte*. As it appears by such an act.

*promouvoir* has only the part. in use, and that too speaking of Church preferments and holy orders: as *promu à l'Épiscopat*, promoted to a Bishoprick.

*émouvoir* is used only in the infinitive, and in the sense of *working* with respect to purges: as *Il est difficile à émouvoir*, he is hard to be purged. *émouvoir* is used also for *exciter*, to excite; as *émouvoir les passions, une sédition*. Its part. as also compound tenses, are used in the last sense, to wit, that of *being concerned* (*ému*, concerned); *s'émouvoir* is sometimes also used in the third pers. of the pres. in the same sense: as *Il s'émue de rien*, The least thing concerns him; *Il ne s'émue de rien*, He is concerned at nothing.

As for *choir* and *déchoir*, they are quite out of use, except in the infinitive, and participles *échu* and *déchu*; and *tomber*, to fall, has taken their place:—Its derivative *échoir*, is only used in the part. *échu*, in the third person sing. of the pres. and fut. and perhaps the gerund (*échoissant*), as in such phrases like these;

*Si le cas y échoit*, (pron. sometimes *échet*) If the occasion occurs, if there be occasion.

*Le terme échoit le six du mois*, The rent expires the sixth of the month.

*Mon terme échoira demain*, My rent will be out to-morrow.

*Le terme est échu*, The rent or quarter is out, or expired.

*Cela lui est échu par le sort*, That fell to him by lot.

*avoir* to have, has also his derivatives; *ravoir*, to have again; and *se ravoir*, to recover one's strength; but they are used in the infinitive only: as,

*Il veut le ravoir*, He desires to have it again.

*Il a de la peine à se ravoir*, He recovers his strength but slowly.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the 6th CONJUGATION, or in *aire*.

## PLAIRE.

*Inf.* plaire, to please. *Ger.* plaissant, pleasing. *Part. plu,* pleased.

*Pres.* Je plais, plais, plaît; Nous plai-sons, sez, sent.

*Imp.* Je plai-sois, sois, soit; Nous plai-sions, siez, soient.

*Pres. Part.* Je plus, plus, plut; Nous plu-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je plai-rai, ras, ra; Nous plai-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je plai-rois, rois, roît; Nous plai-rions, riez, roient.

*S. P. 2.* Je plai-se, ses, se; Nous plai-sions, sez, sent.

*Pr. 3.* Je plu-ffe, ffez, plût; Nous plu-ffions, ffez, ffeient.

*Imper.* Plais, qu'il plaise; plai-sons, sez, qu'ils plaisent.

Its derivatives *déplaire*, to displease; *complaire*, to comply; and *taire*, to conceal; or *se taire*, to hold one's tongue, follow the same conjugation.

## T R A I R E.

*Inf.* traire, to milk. *Ger.* trayant, milking. *Part.* trait, milks.

*Pres.* Je trais, trais, trait; Nous tray-ons, ez, traient.

*Imp.* Je tray-ois, ois, oit; Nous tray-ions, iez, oient.

*Fut.* Je trai-rai, ras, ra; Nous trai-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je trai-rois, rois, roit; Nous trai-rions, riez, roient.

*Sub.* Je tray-e, es, e; Nous tray-ions, iez, ent.

*Imper.* Trais, qu'il traye; tray-ons, ez, qu'ils trayent.

*Traire* has no preterite in use. — Its derivatives, *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraire*, to divert from; *extraire* to extract; and *soustraire*, to subtract, or take from; have only the infinitive, *pres.* and *fut.* in use (and that too in the singular number), as also the *part.* *distrait*, *extraît*, *abstrait*, *soustrait*, and the compound tenses. Instead of the tenses and number out of use, we use a periphrase, saying, *nous faisons abstraction* — The *part.* of *traire* is used in these expressions, *de l'or ou de l'argent trait*, gold and silver wire. — *Rentraire*, to finedraw, is also conjugated like *traire*, without preterite tenses.

*Braire*, to bray, like an ass, is used in the infinitive, and third persons of the *pres.* only (*il brait*, *ils braient*).

## B O I R E.

*Inf.* boire, to drink. *Ger.* buvant, drinking. *Part.* bu, drank.

*Pres.* Je bois, bois, boit; Nous bu-vons, vez, boivent.

*Imp.* Je bu -vois, vois, voit; Nous bu -vions, viez, voient.

*Pret.* Je bus, bus, but; Nous bu -mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je boi -rai, ras, ra; Nous boi-rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je boi -rois, rois, roit; Nous boi-rions, riez, roient.

*S.P.* Je boi -ve, ves, ve; Nous bu -vions, viez, boivent.

*Pr.* Je busse, busse, bût; Nous bu -ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Bois, qu'il boive; Bu-vons, vez, qu'ils boivent.

## C R O I R E.

*Inf.* croire, to believe. *Ger.* croyant, believing. *Part.* cru, believed.

*Pres.* Je crois, crois, croit; Nous croy-ons, ez, croient.

*Imp.* Je croy -ois, ois, oit; Nous croy-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* Je crus, crus, crut; Nous cru -mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je croi -rai, ras, ra; Nous croi -rons, rez, ront.

*Cond.* Je croi -rois, rois, roit; Nous croi -rions, riez, roient.

*S.P.* Je croie, croies, croie; Nous croy-ions, iez, croient.

*Pr.* Je crusse, crusses, crût; Nous cru -ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Crois, qu'il croie; Croy-ons, ez, qu'ils croient.

Its derivative *accroire* is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it; as *faire accroire*, or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one; and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the 8th CONJUGATION, or in *être*.

## N A I T R E.

*Inf.* naître, to be born. *Ger.* naissant, being born. *Part.* né, born.  
*Pres.* Je nais, nais, nait; Nous naiss-*ons*, ez, ent.  
*Imp.* Je naiss-*ois*, ois, oit; Nous naiss-*ions*, iez, oient;  
*Pret.* Je na -*quis*, quis, quit; Nous na -*quimes*, quites, quirent.  
*Fut.* Je naî -*trai*, tras, tra; Nous naî -*trons*, trez, tront.  
*Cond.* Je naî -*trois*, trois, troit; Nous naî -*trions*, triez, troient.  
*S.P.* <sup>que</sup> Je naiss-*e*, es, e; Nous naiss-*ions*, iez, ent.  
*Pr.* <sup>que</sup> Je na -*quiss*e, quissés, quît; Nous na -*quissions*, quissiez, quissent.  
*Imper.* Nais, qu'il naisse; Naissions, ez, qu'ils naissent.

*Naître* forms its compound of *être*: its derivative is *renaître*, to be born again. — *paître*, to graze, follows the same conjugation, but it has no participle nor preterite tenses in use; tho' *se repaître* to feed upon (very little used), has *repu* for its participle, and *repus*, *repusse* for its preterites. *L'oiseau a pu*, the bird has fed, is a phrase of falconry.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the 9th CONJUGATION, or in *ire*.

## D I R E.

*Inf.* dire to say, or tell. *Ger.* disant, saying. *Part.* dit, said.  
*Pres.* Je dis, dis, dit; Nous disons, dites, disent.  
*Imp.* Je di -*fois*, fois, soit; Nous di -*sions*, siez, soient.  
*Pret.* Je dis, dis, dit; Nous dimes, dites, dirent.  
*Fut.* Je di -*rai*, ras, ra; Nous di -*rons*, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je dirois, rois, roit; Nous di -*rions*, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* <sup>que</sup> Je di -*se*, ses, se; Nous di -*sions*, siez, sent.  
*Pr.* <sup>que</sup> Je disse, disses, dît; Nous di -*ssions*, siez, dissent.  
*Imper.* Dis, qu'il dise; disons, dites, qu'ils disent.

contredire, to contradict. maudire, to curse. prédire, to foretell.  
 se dédire, to unsay, retract. interdire, to interdict, to redire, to tell again.  
 médire, to slander, speak ill. forbid, confire, to preserve fruit.  
 follow the same conjugation; with this exception, that, except *redire*, which is conjugated all throughout like its primitive, they form regularly the ad perf. plur. of the pres. and make *dissent* instead of *dites*; and *maudire* doubles *is* through the whole verb (*maudissant*, nous *maudissons*, je *maudissois*, &c.)

## L I R E.

*Inf.* lire, to read. *Ger.* lisant, reading. *Part.* lu, read.  
*Pres.* Je lis, lis, lit; Nous li -*sons*, sez, sent.  
*Imp.* Je li -*fois*, fois, soit; Nous li -*sions*, siez, soient.  
*Pret.* Je lus, lus, lut; Nous lu -*mes*, tes, rent.  
*Fut.* Je li -*rai*, ras, ra; Nous li -*rons*, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je li -*rois*, rois, roit; Nous li -*rions*, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* <sup>que</sup> Je li -*se*, ses, se; Nous li -*sions*, siez, sent.  
*Pr.* <sup>que</sup> Je lusse, lusses, lût; Nous lu -*ssions*, siez, sient.  
*Imper.* Lis, qu'il lise; li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent.

*élire*, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated after the same manner; to which you may add *circoncire*, to circumcise; and *suffire*, to suffice; which, however, differ in this: their participles are *circoncis* (with a final s) and *suffi* (without a final s), and they make in their pret. *Je circoncis, je circoncisse, I circumcised, Je suffis, je suffisse, I sufficed.*

## R I R E.

*Inf. rire, to laugh. Ger. riant laughing. Part. ri, laughed.*  
*Pres.* Je ris, ris, rit; Nous ri-ons, ez, ent.  
*Imp.* Je ri-ois, ois, oit; Nous ri-ions, iez, oient.  
*Pret.* Je ris, ris, rit; Nous ri-mes, tes, rent.  
*Fut.* Je ri-rai, ras, ra; Nous ri-rons, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je ri-rois, rois, roit; Nous ri-rions, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* Je ri-e, es, e; Nous ri-ions, iez, ent.  
*Pr.* Je risse, risses, rît; Nous ris-sions, sîez, sîent.  
*Imper.* Ris, qu'il rie; ri-ons, ez, qu'ils rient.

*sourire*, to smile, is conjugated like *rire*.

## E C R I R E.

*Inf. écrire, to write. Ger. écrivant, writing. Part. écrit, written.*  
*Pres.* J'é-cris, cris, crit; Nous écri-vons, vez, vent.  
*Imp.* J'écri-vois, vois, voit; Nous écri-vions, viez, voient.  
*Pret.* J'écri-vis, vis, vit; Nous écri-vimes, vites, virent.  
*Fut.* J'écri-rai, ras, ra; Nous écri-rons, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* J'écri-rois, rois, roit; Nous écri-rions, riez, roient.  
*S.P.* J'écri-ve, ves, ve; Nous écri-vions, viez, vent.  
*Pr.* J'écri-vissè, vissès, vît; Nous écrivissions, sîiez, sîent.  
*Imper.* écris, qu'il écrive; écri-vons, vez, qu'ils écrivent.

After the same manner are conjugated,

<i>décrire</i> , to describe.	<i>proscrire</i> , to proscribe, to	<i>souscrire</i> , to subscribe.
<i>inscrire</i> , to inscribe.	outlaw.	<i>transcrire</i> , to transcribe.
<i>prescrire</i> , to prescribe.	<i>récrire</i> , to write again.	<i>circonscrire</i> , to circumscribe.

## V I V R E.

*Inf. vivre, to live. Ger. vivant, living. Part. vécu, lived.*  
*Pres.* Je vis, vis, vit; Nous vi-vons, vez, vent.  
*Imp.* Je vi-vois, vois, voit; Nous vi-vions, viez, voient.  
*Pret.* Je vé-cus, cus, cut; Nous vé-cumes, cutes, curent.  
*Fut.* Je vi-vrai, vras, vra; Nous vi-vrons, vrez, vront.  
*Cond.* Je vi-vrois, vroit, vroit; Nous vi-vrions, vriez, vroient.  
*S.P.* Je vi-ve, ves, ve; Nous vi-vions, vez, vent.  
*Pr.* Je vé-cussè, cussès, cût; Nous vé-cussions, cussiez, cussent.  
*Imper.* Vis, qu'il vive; Vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent.

Its derivatives are *revivre*, to revive; and *survivre*, to survive, out-live.

## SUIVRE.

SUIVRE.

*Inf.* suivre, to follow. *Ger.* suivant, following. *Part.* suivi, followed.

*Pres.* Je suis, suis, suit; Nous sui-vons, vez, vent.

*Imp.* Je sui-vois, vois, voit; Nous sui-vions, viez, voient.

*Pret.* Je sui-vis, vis, vit; Nous sui-vimes, vites, virent.

*Fut.* Je sui-vrai, vras, vra; Nous sui-vrons, vrez, vront.

*Cond.* Je sui-vrois, vroit, vroit; Nous sui-vrions, vriez, vroient.

*S. P.* Je sui-ve, ves, ve; Nous sui-vions, viez, vent.

*Pr.* Je sui-viss, visses, vît; Nous sui-vissions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Suis, qu'il suive; sui-vons, vez, qu'ils suivent.

Its derivatives are *poursuivre*, to pursue, and *s'ensuivre*, which is used only in the third persons of both numbers. It is also used impersonally; as *Il s'ensuit de là que*, &c. from whence it follows that, &c.

*Frîre*, to fry, is used only in the infinitive, the participle *frit* with the compound tenses, in the sing. of the pres. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; and perhaps in the fut. *Je fritrai, ras, ra*, &c. In many other circumstances one must make use of a periphrase; as *faisant frîre*, frying, instead of his gerund; *Vous faites trop frîre ce poisson*, You fry that fish too much.

*Bruire*, to rustle, is used only in the infinitive, and the 3d persons of the imperfect, *Il bruioit*, it rustled; *Les flots bruioient*, altho' the gerund be *bruisant*; *bruyant*, ante, being a verbal adnoun.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the 10th CONJUGATION,  
or in *epdre*, *ompre*, *ettre*.

PRENDRE.

*Inf.* prendre, to take. *Ger.* prenant, taking. *Part.* pris, taken.

*Pres.* Je prends, prends, prend; Nous pre-nons, nez, nnent.

*Imp.* Je pre-nois, nois, noit; Nous pre-nions, niez, noient.

*Pret.* Je pris, pris, prit; Nous pri-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je pren-drai, dras, dra; Nous pren-drons, drez, dront.

*Cond.* Je pren-drois, drois, droit; Nous pren-drions, driez, droient.

*S. P.* Je pre-nne, nnes, nne; Nous pre-nions, niez, nnent.

*Pr.* Je prisse, prisses, prit; Nous pri-ssions, ssez, ssent.

*Imper.* Prends, qu'il prenne; pre-nons, nez, qu'ils prennent.

Its derivatives are *apprendre*, to learn; *déapprendre*, to unlearn; *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to be mistaken; *reprendre*, to rebuke, chide, also to take again; and *surprendre*, to surprise: all which are conjugated like their primitive.

ROMPRE.

*Inf.* rompre, to break. *Ger.* rompant, breaking. *Part.* rompu, broken.

*Pres.* Je romps, romps, rompt; Nous rom-pons, pez, pent.

*Imp.* Je rom-pois, pois, poit; Nous rom-pions, piez, poient.

*Pres.* Je rom-pis, pis, pit; Nous rom-pimes, pites, pirent.  
*Fut.* Je rom-prai, pras, pra; Nous rom-prons, prez, pront.  
*Cond.* Je rom-prois, prois, proit; Nous rom-prions, priez, proient.  
*S. P.* Je rom-pe, pes, pe; Nous rom-pions, piez, pent.  
*Pr.* Je rom-pisse, pisses, pît; Nous rom-pissions, pissiez, pissent.  
*Imper.* Romps, qu'il rompe; Rom-pons, pez, qu'ils rompent.

Its derivatives are *corrompre*, to corrupt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

## B A T T R E.

*Inf.* battre, to beat. *Ger.* battant, beating. *Part.* battu, beaten.

*Pres.* Je bats, bats, bat; Nous bat-tons, tez, tent.  
*Imp.* Je bat-tois, tois, toit; Nous bat-tions, tiez, toient.  
*Pres.* Je bat-tis, tis, tit; Nous bat-times, tites, tirent.  
*Fut.* Je bat-trai, tras, tra; Nous bat-trons, trez, tront.  
*Cond.* Je bat-trois, trois, troit; Nous bat-trions, triez, troient.  
*S. P.* Je bat-te, tes, te; Nous bat-tions, tiez, tent.  
*Pr.* Je bat-tisse, tisses, tît; Nous bat-tissions, tissiez, tissent.  
*Imper.* Bats, qu'il batte; Bat-tons, tez, qu'ils battent.

*Abattre*, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight; *se débattre*, to struggle; *s'ébattre*, to sport (an expression of the burlesque style); *rabattre*, to bate, abate; and *rebattre*, to beat again, are conjugated like *battre*.

## M E T T R E.

*Inf.* mettre, to put. *Ger.* mettant, putting. *Part.* mis, put.  
*Pres.* Je mets, mets, met; Nous met-tons, tez, tent.  
*Imp.* Je met-tois, tois, toit; Nous met-tions, tiez, toient.  
*Pres.* Je mis, mis, mit; Nous mi-mes, tes, rent.  
*Fut.* Je met-trai, tras, tra; Nous met-trons, trez, tront.  
*Cond.* Je met-trois, trois, troit; Nous met-trions, triez, troient.  
*S. P.* Je met-te, tes, te; Nous met-tions, tiez, tent.  
*Pr.* Je misse, mîsse, mît; Nous missions, missiez, missent.  
*Imper.* Mets, qu'il mette; Met-tons, tez, qu'ils mettent.

These following are conjugated after the same manner:

<i>admettre</i> ,	to admit.	<i>s'entremettre</i> ,	to inter-	<i>compromettre</i> ,	to compro-
<i>commettre</i> ,	to commit.		meddle.		mise.
<i>démettre</i> ,	to remove, turn	<i>permettre</i> ,	to permit.	<i>soumettre</i> ,	to submit.
	out.	<i>promettre</i> ,	to promise.	<i>transmettre</i> ,	to transmit,
<i>se démettre</i> ,	to resign.	<i>remettre</i> ,	to deliver, put		convey.
<i>omettre</i> ,	to omit.		again.		

## CONCLURE.

*Inf.* conclure, to conclude. *Ger.* concluant, concluding. *Part.* conclu, concluded.

*Pres.* Je con-clus, clus, clut; Nous conclu-ons, ez, ent.  
*Imp.* Je conclu-ois, ois, oit; Nous conclu-ions, lez, oient.

*Pres.*

*Pret.* Je con-clus, clus, clut; Nous conclu-mes, tes, rent.  
*Fut.* Je conclu-rai, ras, ra; Nous conclu-rons, rez, ront.  
*Cond.* Je conclu-rois, rois, roit; Nous conclu-rions, riez, roient.  
*S. P.* <sup>u</sup> Je con-clue, clues, clue; Nous conclu-ions, iez, ent.  
*Pr.* <sup>o</sup> Je conclu-ssé, ssés, conclût; Nous conclu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.  
*Imper.* Conclus, qu'il conclue; conclu-ons, ez, qu'ils concluent,

*exclure*, to exclude, is conjugated after the same, except that the part. is *exclus* with a final s, and the feminine is both *excluz*, and *excluse*: as *Il fut exclus de l'assemblée*, he was excluded from the assembly; *Elle en fut aussi exclue*, or *excluse*, she was also excluded from it.

## CONVAINCRE.

*Inf.* convaincre, to convince. *Ger.* convainquant, convincing.

*Part.* convaincu, convinced.

*Pres.* Je con-vains, vains, vainc; convain-quons, quez, quent.  
*Imp.* Je convain-quois, quois, quoit; convain-quions, quiez, quient.  
*Pret.* Je convain-quis, quis, quit; convain-quimes, quites, quirent.  
*Fut.* Je convain-crai, cras, cra; <sup>sons</sup> convain-crons, crez, cront.  
*Cond.* Je convain-crois, crois, croit; <sup>sons</sup> convain-crions, criez, croient.  
*S. P.* <sup>u</sup> Je convain-que, ques, que; convain-quions, quiez, quent.  
*Pr.* <sup>o</sup> Je convain-quisse, quisses, quît; convainqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.  
*Imper.* Convaincs, qu'il convainque; convain-quons, quez, qu'ils convainquent.

*vaincre*, to vanquish, or to overcome, is conjugated after the same manner; but it is not used in the pres. nor in some other tenses, instead of which we say *triompher*, or *être victorieux*. You may also spell *convaincant* and *convaincens* with a c instead of qu.

## COUDRE.

*Inf.* coudre, to sew. *Ger.* cousant, sewing. *Part.* cousu, sewed.

*Pres.* Je couds, couds, coud; Nous cou-sons, sez, sent.  
*Imp.* Je cou-sois, sois, soit; Nous cou-sions, siez, soient.  
*Pret.* Je cou-fis, fis, fit; Nous cou-fimes, fites, firent.  
*Fut.* Je cou-drai, dras, dra; Nous cou-drons, drez, dront.  
*Cond.* Je cou-drois, drois, droit; Nous cou-drions, driez, droient.  
*S. P.* <sup>u</sup> Je cou-se, ses, se; Nous cou-sions, siez, sent.  
*Pr.* <sup>o</sup> Je cou-fissés, fisses, sît; Nous coufi-ssions, ssiez, ssent.  
*Imper.* Couds, qu'il couse; Cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent.—*In the preter. tenses beware of saying Je cousus, je coususse, as some people do.*

The only compounds this verb has are *découdre*, to unsow, and *recoudre*, to sew again.

## MOUDRE.

*Inf.* moudre, to grind. *Ger.* moulant, grinding. *Part.* moulu, ground.

*Pres.* Je mouds, mouds, moud; Nous mou-lons, lez, lent.  
*Imp.* Je mou-lois, lois, loit; Nous mou-lions, liez, loient.

*Pret.*

*Pres.* Je mou-lus, lus, lut; Nous mou-lumes, lutes, lurent.

*Fut.* Je mou-drai, dras, dra; Nous mou-drons, drez, dront.

*Cond.* Je mou-drois, drois, droit; Nous mou-drions, driez, droient.

*S. P.* Je mou-le, les, le; Nous mou-liens, liez, lent,

*Pr.* Je mou-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous moulu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Imper.* Mouls, qu'il moule; Mou-lons, lez, qu'ils moulent.

Its derivatives are *énouder*, to whet, to set an edge; and *remoudre*, to grind again.

## R É S O U D R E.

*Inf.* résoudre, to resolve. *Ger.* résolvant, resolving. *Part.* résolu, resolved.

*Pres.* Je ré-souds, souds, soud; Nous résol-vons, vez, vent.

*Imp.* Je résol-vois, vois, voit; Nous résol-vions, viez, voient.

*Pres.* Je réso-lus, lus, lut; Nous résolu-mes, tes, rent.

*Fut.* Je résou-drai, dras, dra; Nous résou-drons, drez, dront.

*Cond.* Je résou-drois, drois, droit; Nous résou-drions, driez, droient.

*S. P.* Je résol-ve, ves, ve; Nous résol-vions, viez, vent.

*Pr.* Je réso-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous résolu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Imper.* Résous, qu'il résolve; résol-vons, vez, qu'ils résolvent.

*Soudre*, to solve, is used in the infinitive only. *Absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve or liquefy, follow the same conjugation; but they have no preterite in use, and their part. are *absous* and *dissous*; as likewise that of *répondre* is *récus*, when that verb signifies changing a thing into another. Example; *un brouillard résous en pluie*, a mist resolved into rain. *Absous* is not used in the feminine, but *dissous* makes *dissoute*. *Mais de quelle manière, & en quel temps a-t-elle été dissoute?* But in what manner, and when was it dissolved?

As for *clorre*, to close, or shut close; *déclorre*, to uncloze; *enclorre*, to enclose; and *éclore*, to be hatched, or to blow open; they are words defective, and very seldom used but in the inf. and part. with both *avoir* and *être*: as,

*J'ai enclos mon jardin d'un bon mur,* I have enclosed my garden with a good wall.

*Je n'ai pas clos l'œil de la nuit,* I did not shut my eyes last night.

*Les vers à soie sont éclos,* My silk worms are hatched.

*clorre* is used only in the infinitive, participle, the three pers. sing. of the pres. *Je clos, tu clos, il clor*; the fut. *Je clorrai*; and the cond. *Je clorrais*.

*éclore* may also be used in the fut. as (speaking of the same insects), *Ils n'écloreont jamais sans chaleur*, they will never be hatched without heat. In any other tense we make use of a periphrase with the verb *faire*, and the inf. of the verb: as *Mettez les au soleil pour les faire éclore*, instead of *pour qu'ils éclosent*, set them in the sun to make them hatch: tho' we also not improperly say in the present indic. *Mes vers à soie éclosent à merveille*, my silk-worms come out charmingly.

From three other obsolete verbs, there remain some tenses and persons consecrated by custom to certain sciences, and phrases, tho' their infinitive is now-a-days hardly known.

I. The third persons of the pres. and imperf. of *gésir* (*git, gissent, gissoit*), chiefly used in Epitaphs: as *Ci gît, here lies, &c.*

II. The participle of *issir* (*issu*), used in speaking of Lineage and Genealogy: as *Il se prétend issu des anciens Comtes de*, he pretends that he is descended from the ancient Counts of, &c. *Cousin issu de germain*, second cousin; as likewise the gerund of the same verb (*issant*), used in heraldry only: as *Il porte de sinople au lion issant de gueules*, he bears sinople a lion rising out of gules.

III. The part. of *tisser* (*tissu*), generally used in all compound tenses with both *avoir* and *être*: as *Ce drap là est bien tissu*, that cloth is well woven, or weaved.

*Verbs*

Verbs IMPERSONAL are conjugated thus:

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Il y a,	{ there is, there are.	Il faut,	{ one, or it must, or it is necessary.
Imp. Il y avoit,	{ there was, there were.	Il falloit,	{ it was requisite, needful.
Pret. Il y eut,	{ there was, there were.	Il fallut,	{ it was requisite, needful.
Fut. Il y aura,	there shall or will be.	Il faudra,	it will be necessary, &c.
Cond. Il y auroit,	there would, &c.	Il faudroit,	it would, &c. be, &c.

Subjunctive.

Pres. qu'il y ait,	there be, or may be.	qu'il faille,	it may be } necessary,
Pret. qu'il y eût,	there were, or might be.	qu'il fallût,	it were, } requisite, or might be. } &c.

Infinitive.

Pres. y avoir,	there to be.	See in the Syntax what concerns
Part. y ayant,	there being.	this impersonal.

Which impersonal verbs have also their compound tenses, formed by adding *eu* to each tense: as *il y a eu*, there has or have been, *il y avoit eu*, there had been, &c. The others form them from *avoir*, and their participle: as *il a fallu* it has been requisite, *il avoit fallu* it had been, &c.—*Il faut* has no infinitive in use; but the others have one, as also gerunds and participles, which shall be set down here.

Indicative.		Infinitive.	Ger.	Part.
Il pleut,	it rains;	from pleu-voir,	vant,	plu*.
Il bruïne,	it drizzles;	bruï-ner,	nant,	né.
Il gèle,	it freezes;	ge -ler,	lant,	lé.
Il grêle,	it hails;	grê -ler,	lant,	lé.
Il neige,	it snows;	nei -ger,	géant,	gé.
Il tonne,	it thunders;	ton -ner,	nant,	né.
Il éclaire,	it lightens;	éclair-er,	rant,	ré.
Il est,	{ it is;	{ il fait is used with adnouns and some nouns denoting the disposition of the weather: as il fait chaud, beau, crotté, it is hot, fine, dirty; il fait du vent, the wind blows, &c.		
C'est,				
Il fait,				

\* The future and conditional of *pleuvoir* are not *pleuvra* and *pleuvroït*, but *il pleuvra*, *il pleuvroït*.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Ger.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
Il arrive, <i>it happens</i> ;	from arri	-ver, vant,	vé.
Il convient, <i>it becomes</i> ;		conve-nir, nant,	nu.
Il est à propos, <i>convenable, &amp;c. it is fit, proper, meet, &amp;c.</i>		impor-ter, tant,	té.
Il importe, <i>it matters, it concerns</i> ;		fem -bler, blant,	blé.
Il semble, <i>it seems</i> ;		paroî-tre, flant,	paru.
Il paroît, <i>it appears</i> ;			
Il sied, <i>it is decent, or becoming.</i>			
Il s'ensuit que, <i>it follows that</i> ;	s'ensui-vre,	vant,	
Il s'agit de cela, <i>that is the matter in hand.</i>	ag	-ir, issant,	i.
Il vaut mieux que, <i>it is better that</i> ;	va	-loir, lant,	lu.
Il ne tient pas à lui que, <i>it is not his fault if</i> ;	te	-nir, nant,	nu.
Il m'ennuie de, <i>&amp;c. it tires me to, &amp;c.</i>	ennuy-er,	ant,	é.
Il plaît à Madame de, <i>my lady likes, or is pleased to, &amp;c.</i>	plai	-re, fant,	plu.
Il se peut que, <i>{ it may be,</i>	pou	-voir, vant,	pu.
Il se peut faire que, <i>{ that, &amp;c. }</i>	suffi	-re fant,	suffi.
Il suffit que, <i>&amp;c. it is enough that, &amp;c.</i>			
Il y va de la vie, <i>life is at stake</i> ;			
Il se tint hier un conseil, <i>a council was held yesterday</i> ;	te	-nir, nant,	nu.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of ADVERBS.

**T**HE ADVERB is a part of speech invariable, which neither governs nor is governed by any other, and serves to denote some circumstance of that which is signified by a Noun, an Adnoun, a Verb, or even an Adverb: as

*Véritablement ami*, truly friend. *très-souvent*, very often,  
*aimer bien*, to love well. *étroitement unis*, strictly united,  
*infiniment juste*, infinitely just. *toujours à contre-temps*, always unseasonable.

Adverbs are either simple, as *hier* yesterday, *beaucoup* much, *présentement* presently; or compound, as *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, *en quantité* in plenty, *à présent*, *tout-à-l'heure*, at present, instantly.

Adverbs may be considered with respect to Time, Place, Order, Quantity and Number, Quality and Manner, Affirmation, Negation

Negation and Doubt, Comparifon, Collection or Divifion, and Interrogation.

*Adverbs of Time.*

*I. Of the Present Time.*

A préfent, *at préfent.*  
 pour le préfent, *for the préfent.*  
 préfentement, *prefently.*  
 maintenant, *now.*  
 aujourd'hui, *to day, now-a-days.*  
 à cette heure, *{ at this hour, or time, prefently.*  
 tout-à-l'heure, *{ this minute, even now.*  
 fur le champ, *{ direfily, upon the spot.*  
 à l'inftant, *infantly.*  
 vite, *quick.*

*II. Of the Time past.*

hier, *yefterday.*  
 avant-hier, *{ the day before yefterday.*  
 le jour précédent, *the day before.*  
 autrefois, *formerly, once.*  
 jadis, (*s founds*) *in times of yore.*  
 anciennement, *anciently.*  
 dernièrement, *lately.*  
 depuis-peu, *of late.*  
 n'aguères, *not long fince, or ago.*  
 auparavant, *before.*  
 récemment, *recently.*  
 tout récemment, *{ newly.*  
 nouvellement, *{*  
 la dernière fois, *the laft time.*  
 l'autre jour, *the other day.*  
 hier matin, *{ yefterday morn-*  
 hier au matin, *ing.*  
 la femaine paffée, *the laft week.*  
 le mois dernier, *the laft month.*  
 l'année paffée, *{*  
 l'année dernière, *laft year.*

jufqu'ici, *hitherto.*  
 jufqu' à préfent, *till now.*  
 il y a huit jours, *a week ago.*  
 il y a quinze jours, *fortnight ago.*  
 il y a long-temps, *{ a great while ago.*  
 il n'y a pas long-temps, *{ not long ago.*  
 il y a quelque temps, *{ some time ago.*  
 il n'y a qu'un moment, *{ juft now.*  
 il y a trois jours, *three days ago.*  
 il y a un mois, *a month ago.*  
 il y a un an, *a year ago.*

*III. Of the Time to come.*

demain, *to-morrow.*  
 après demain, *{ the day after to-morrow.*  
 le lendemain, *the next day.*  
 le fur-lendemain, *two days after.*  
 le jour fuivant, *the following day.*  
 ce matin, *this morning.*  
 ce foir, *{ this, or to-night, this evening.*  
 cette après-midi, *{ this after-*  
 cette après-dînée, *noon.*  
 cette après-sou-  
 pée, *{ this after fup-*  
 per.  
 demain matin, *{ to-morrow-*  
 morning.  
 demain au foir, *{ to-morrow-*  
 night.  
 bientôt, *{ foon, very foon, in a*  
 fhort time.  
 dans peu, *foortly.*  
 dans

dans peu de temps,	{	<i>within a little while.</i>	ordinairement,	<i>ordinarily.</i>
tantôt,	{	<i>anon, by and by, now and then.</i>	communément,	<i>commonly.</i>
l'année qui vient,		<i>the next year.</i>	fréquemment,	<i>frequently.</i>
le mois prochain,		<i>the next month.</i>	presque tou-	<i>almost always,</i>
désormais,		<i>hereafter.</i>	jours.	<i>most commonly.</i>
dorénavant,		<i>henceforth.</i>	presque jamais,	<i>never hardly.</i>
à l'avenir,		<i>for the future.</i>	la plupart du temps,	<i>most times.</i>
dans deux ou trois	{	<i>two or three</i>	tôt,	<i>soon.</i>
jours d'ici,	{	<i>days hence.</i>	tard,	<i>late.</i>
dans six mois,		<i>six months hence,</i>	trop tôt,	<i>too soon.</i>
dans un an d'ici,		<i>a year hence.</i>	trop tard,	<i>too late.</i>
avant qu'il soit	{	<i>before it is</i>	de bonne heure,	<i>early, betimes.</i>
long-temps,	{	<i>long.</i>	de bon matin,	<i>{ very early,</i>
			de grand matin,	<i>{ early in the</i>
				<i>morning.</i>
			pas encore,	<i>not yet.</i>
			bien long-temps,	<i>mighty long.</i>
			alors,	<i>then.</i>
			pour lors,	<i>at that time.</i>
			dès lors,	<i>from that time.</i>
			depuis,	<i>since.</i>
			depuis ce temps-là,	<i>ever since.</i>
			encore,	<i>again.</i>
			derechef,	<i>{</i>
			de nouveau,	<i>a-new.</i>
			de plus belle,	<i>a-fresh.</i>
			à loisir,	<i>leisurely.</i>
			quand,	<i>when.</i>
			le matin,	<i>{ in the morn-</i>
			dans la matinée,	<i>ing.</i>
			dans l'après-dinée,	<i>{ in the af-</i>
				<i>ternoon.</i>
			le soir,	<i>in the evening.</i>
			sur le soir,	<i>{ towards night, or</i>
				<i>the evening.</i>
			en même temps,	<i>at the same time.</i>
			de jour,	<i>by day, in the day time.</i>
			de nuit,	<i>by night, in the night-time.</i>
			jour & nuit,	<i>night and day.</i>
			en plein jour,	<i>{ at noon day.</i>
			en plein midi,	<i>{</i>
			de deux jours l'un,	<i>every other</i>
			tous les deux jours,	<i>day.</i>

## IV. Of a Time unspecified.

d'abord,	<i>first, at first.</i>
souvent,	<i>often, oftentimes.</i>
quelquefois,	<i>sometimes.</i>
rarement,	<i>seldom.</i>
soudain,	<i>on a sudden.</i>
subitement,	<i>suddenly.</i>
au-plutôt,	<i>the soonest.</i>
au-plutard,	<i>the latest.</i>
au-plutôt,	<i>as soon as possible.</i>
au-plus vite,	<i>{ with all</i>
en toute diligence,	<i>speed.</i>
jamais,	<i>never, ever, at any time.</i>
à jamais,	<i>for ever.</i>
toujours,	<i>always.</i>
pour toujours,	<i>for ever and ever.</i>
à toute heure,	<i>every moment.</i>
à tout moment,	<i>every minute.</i>
à tout bout de	<i>{ ever and anon,</i>
champ,	<i>{ at every turn.</i>
continuellement,	<i>continually.</i>
sans cesse,	<i>{ without ceas-</i>
	<i>ing, for ever.</i>
cependant,	<i>in the mean while.</i>
d'ordinaire,	<i>mostly, most times.</i>
à l'ordinaire,	<i>usually, as usual.</i>

tout

tout d'un coup,	{ all at once, at one dash, all on a sudden.	par ici, this way, thro' this place.
tout-à-coup,	{ suddenly, all of a sudden.	là, there.
plus que jamais,	more than ever.	de là, thence.
à point nommé,	{ in the nick of time.	par là, that way, thro' that place.
à propos,	seasonably, apropos.	là haut, above.
fort à propos,	very seasonably.	en haut, up, up stairs.
dans l'occasion,	upon the occasion.	ici dessus, here above.
en moins de rien,	in a trice.	bas, à bas, down.
en un clin d'œil,	{ in the twinkling of an eye.	en bas, down on the ground.
tous les jours,	every day.	là bas, below there, yonder.
tout le jour,	all the day.	ici dessous, under here, here below.
tout le long du jour,	{ all the day long.	d'en haut, from above.
tant que le jour dure,	{ as long as it is day-light.	d'en bas, from below.
toute la nuit,	all the night.	par haut, } upward.
de jour en jour,	daily.	par en haut, }
au premier jour,	the next day.	par bas, }
à la première occasion,	{ with the first opportunity.	par en bas, } downward.
à temps,	in time, in good time.	de côté & d'autre, up and down.
avec le temps,	in time.	dedans, }
de temps en temps,	{ now and then, from time to time.	en dedans, } within.
en tout temps,	at all times.	là dedans, }
en temps & lieu,	{ in a proper time and place.	dehors, out, without doors.
où,	where, whither.	en dehors, without.
d'où,	whence.	jusqu'où, how far.
de quel endroit,	from what place.	jusqu'ici, { so far, down to here, as far as this place.
par où,	by which way, thro' where.	jusques là, { so far, down to there, as far as that place.
par quel endroit,	thro' what place.	à l'entour, }
ici,	here, hither, to this place.	tout autour, } round about.
d'ici,	hence, from here.	ici autour, hereabout.
		là autour, } thereabout.
		aux environs, }
		tous les lieux, } all places round about.
		d'alentour, }
		loin, far.
		bien-loin, very far.
		près, near.
		bien-près, very near.
		proche, by.
		tout

Adverbs of Place.

tout proche,	}	<i>hard by.</i>	d'un côté &	}	about and
tout auprès,			d'autre,		about.
tout contre,			au même en-		in the same
près d'ici,			droit,		place.
ici-près,	}	<i>just by.</i>	dans ce lieu-là,	}	in that
tout près d'ici,			dans cet endroit-là,		place.
la porte joi-			dans cet même		in that very
gnante,			endroit-là,		same place.
de près,	}	<i>near, by.</i>	par de-là,	}	further.
de plus près,			plus loin,		
vis-à-vis,			çà & là,		up and down.
à côté,			dans le voisi-		in the neighbour-
de côté,	}	<i>by.</i>	nage,	}	hood.
à terre,			céans,		here, within.
par terre,			à droite,		on the right,
devant,			sur la droite,		or on the
par devant,	}	<i>before.</i>	à main droite,	}	right hand.
sur le de-			à gauche,		on the left, or
vant,			sur la gauche,		on the left-
derrière,			à main gauche,		hand.
par derrière,	}	<i>behind.</i>	tout droit,	}	straight along.
sur le derrière,			tout du long,		all along.
dessus,			tout le long,		
dessous,			depuis le haut		from the top to
quelque part,	}	<i>somewhere, any</i>	jusqu'en bas,	}	the bottom.
nulle part,			au dedans & au de-		at home
en aucun endroit,			hors,		and a-
ailleurs,			dans le royaume &		broad.
autrepars,	}	<i>somewhere else.</i>	hors du royaume,	}	abroad.
par tout,			dans les pays étran-		
deçà,			gers,		
en deçà,					
de ce côté-ci,	}	<i>on this side.</i>		}	
de-là					
en de-là,					
de ce côté là,					
des deux côtés,	}	<i>on both</i>		}	
de part & d'autre,					
de tous côtés,					
de toutes parts,					

avant toutes choses,	{ above all things.	Adverbs of Quantity and Number.	
de suite,	one after another.	combien,	how much, how many.
tout de suite,	together.	peu,	little, few.
ensuite,	{ afterwards, next to that, or in the next place.	un peu,	a little, some.
tout de suite,	{ of a breath, at once, without any stop.	tant soit peu,	never so little.
ensemble,	together.	beaucoup,	much.
à la file,	one after another.	guères,	but little.
de front,	abreast.	pas beaucoup,	not much.
de rang,		assez,	enough.
tour à tour,	by turns.	suffisamment,	sufficiently.
à la ronde,	round about.	trop,	too much.
alternativement,	alternatively.	trop peu,	too little.
l'un après l'autre,	{ one after another.	peu-à-peu,	little by little.
à la fois,	at once.	à peu près,	{ near about, pretty near.
enfin,	{ at length, in short, in the end.	environ,	about.
à la fin,	in fine, finally, at last.	à peu de choses	{ within a small matter.
pour conclusion,	to conclude.	près,	
d'ordre,	{ orderly, in or with order.	tant,	so much.
par ordre,		autant,	as much.
en ordre,		plus,	more.
confusément,	confusedly.	davantage,	
pêle-mêle,	{ promiscuously, in a jumble.	moins,	less.
en foule,	in a crowd.	de plus,	{ moreover, over and above.
de fond en comble,	{ utterly, wholly.	tout au plus,	at most.
sens dessus des-	{ upside down, topsy-turvy.	par dessus	{ over, or into the bargain.
sous,		le marché,	
sens devant der-	{ preposterously.	au moins,	{ at least.
rière,		du moins,	
tout à rebours,	{ the wrong way, or side.	pour le moins,	
pareillement,	likewise.	en abondance,	in plenty.
semblablement,	{ in the like, or same manner.	abondamment,	plentifully.
de la même ma-		en grand nom-	{ in a great number.
nière,		bre,	
		en grande quan-	{ in a great quantity.
		tité,	
		à pleines mains,	plentifully.
		à foison,	largely.
		cher,	dear.
		trop cher,	too dear.
			chère-

chèrement,	dearly.	sagement,	wisely.
à bon marché,	cheap.	justement,	justly.
à grand marché,	very cheap.	joliment,	prettily.
à vil prix,	at a low price.	galamment,	cleverly.
entièrement,	entirely, wholly.	prudemment,	prudently.
à plate couture,	totally.	civilement,	civilly.
à demi, <i>half, by half, by halves.</i>		constamment,	constantly.
infiniment,	infinite y.	vivement,	briskly.
à l'infini,	vastly.	à l'aise, { <i>easily, at ease, comfort-</i>	
tout-à fait,	quite, altogether.	ab'y.	
étrangement,	strangely.	nonchalamment,	carelessly.
admirablement,	admirably.	négligemment,	negligently.
merveilleusement,	wonderfully.	au préalable,	previously.
presque, {	almost.	préalablement,	first of all.
quasi, }		de but en blanc, { <i>point blank,</i>	
absolument, { <i>absolutely, by all</i>		blunt'y.	
means.		à fond,	thoroughly.
passablement, { <i>tolerably, in-</i>		à plomb,	perpendicularly.
different.		à nu,	bare, naked.
médiocrement,	indifferently.	à plein,	fully.
combien de { <i>how many times,</i>		à plaisir,	for pleasure sake.
fois, }	<i>how often.</i>	à faux,	falsely.
une fois,	once.	à moitié chemin,	half way.
deux fois,	twice.	à peine,	hardly, scarce, scarcely.
trois fois,	thrice, or three times.	à regret, { <i>grudgingly, with</i>	
dix fois,	ten times.	reluctancy,	
vingt fois,	twenty times.	à contre-cœur,	against the grain.
cinquante fois,	fifty times.	à contre { <i>against one's will, or</i>	
cent fois,	a hundred times.	gré, }	<i>mind.</i>
mille fois,	a thousand times.	de bon cœur,	heartily.
<i>Adverbs of Quality and</i>		de bonne volonté,	very willingly.
<i>Manner.</i>		de gaité { <i>on purpose, for the</i>	
bien,	well, right.	de cœur, }	<i>sake of mischief.</i>
mal,	bad, wrong.	de guet-à-pens,	wilfully.
fort bien, { <i>very well, or very</i>		de gré,	willingly.
right.		de plein gré, }	<i>of one's own ac-</i>
fort mal, { <i>very bad, very ill,</i>		de bon gré, }	<i>cord.</i>
very wrong		à mon gré,	to my mind.
à merveilles, { <i>admirably well,</i>		à votre gré,	to your mind.
wonderfully		à son gré,	to his or her mind.
ni bien, { <i>neither well nor bad;</i>		à leur gré,	to their mind.
ni mal, }	<i>neither right nor</i>	de force, }	
wrong.		par force, }	<i>forcibly, by force.</i>
			à cou-

à couvert,	{	secure, under a cover, or shelter.	étourdimement,	giddily.
à découvert,		openly.	à l'étourdie,	heedlessly.
au naturel,		to the life.	sottement,	stupidly.
à reculons,	{	backwards.	témérairement,	rashly.
en arrière,			à la légère,	lightly.
à la renverse		upon one's back.	à la volée,	{ headlong, inconsiderately.
à tâtons,		groping.	à la hâte,	{ hastily, in a hurry, in a huddle.
à l'endroit,		on the right side.	précipitamment,	{ with precipitation.
du bon sens,		the right way.	brusquement,	bluntly.
à l'envers,	{	the wrong side outwards.	par inadvertence,	inadvertently.
du mauvais sens,	{	the wrong way, or the wrong side.	par mégarde,	by oversight.
de tout sens,	- {	every way.	par méprise,	through mistake.
de tous les sens,	{		au hazard,	at random.
à bon droit,	{	deservedly, justly, rightly.	par hazard,	{ by chance, accidentally.
à tort,		wrongfully.	à l'aventure,	at a venture.
avec raison,		with a cause.	à tout hazard,	{ let the worst come to the worst.
sans raison,		without a cause.	au pis aller,	
à l'envi,	{	in emulation of one another, with a contention who shall do best.	goute à goutte,	by drops.
à la rigueur,		strictly.	à l'étroit,	narrowly.
de sens rassis,	{	with a sound judgment.	d'accord,	agreed.
de sang froid,		in cool blood.	à genoux,	{ on one's knees, with my, his, her, their, bended knees.
exprès,	{	on purpose, for the purpose.	à mort,	mortally.
à dessein,		designedly, purposely.	à la mort,	{ at the point of death.
par malice,	{	maliciously, mischievously.	à l'article de la mort,	
de propos délibéré,	{	on set purpose.	au point de la mort,	
tout de bon,		in good earnest.	tout au long,	at large.
sérieusement,		seriously.	tout-à-fait,	quite.
pour rire,		in a joke.	à la bonne foi,	{ sincerely.
pour badiner,		in jest.	de bonne foi,	
en riant,	{	for fun.	de bon jeu,	{ fairly.
en badinant,			de bonne guerre,	
de son chef,	{	of his, her own head, mind, or accord.	de nécessité,	necessarily.
de sa tête,			à toute force,	by all means.
			de toutes les manières,	all ways.
			à tous égards,	{ to all intents and purposes.
			à l'improviste,	unawares.

au dépourvu,	<i>unthought on.</i>	certainement,	<i>certainly.</i>
sans y penser,	} <i>unexpected-</i>	en vérité,	<i>in truth.</i>
sans s'y attendre,		à la vérité,	<i>indeed.</i>
inopinément,	<i>napping.</i>	vraiment,	<i>verily.</i>
à l'amiable,	<i>amicably.</i>	véritablement,	<i>truly.</i>
en ami,	<i>friendly.</i>	sans doute,	<i>without doubt.</i>
à fleur d'eau,	} <i>between wind and</i>	volontiers,	<i>readily, willingly.</i>
		sans faute,	<i>without fail.</i>
à l'étuvée,	<i>steamed.</i>	immanquablement,	} <i>infalli-</i>
en paix,	<i>in peace.</i>	infailliblement,	
paisiblement,	<i>peaceably.</i>	indubitablement,	<i>undoubtedly.</i>
en repos,	<i>quietly.</i>		
à vide,	<i>empty.</i>		
à sec,	<i>dried up.</i>		
sans façon,	<i>without ceremony.</i>	non, ne, ni,	} <i>no, not.</i>
de travers,	<i>cross, across.</i>	point, pas, non pas,	
de biais,	<i>bias, cross, slopingly.</i>	point du tout,	<i>not at all.</i>
de guinguois,	<i>awry.</i>	nullement,	<i>by no means.</i>
de niveau,	<i>even with.</i>	en nulle ma-	} <i>in no wise, not in</i>
avec soin,	<i>carefully.</i>	nière.	
exactement,	<i>exactly, accurately.</i>		
grossièrement,	<i>rudely.</i>		
d'une manière	} <i>unmannerly.</i>	peut-être,	<i>perhaps.</i>
grossière,		probablement,	<i>probably.</i>
fort et ferme,	<i>stoutly.</i>	vraisemblablement,	<i>very likely.</i>
en diligence,	<i>in haste.</i>		
à pied,	<i>on foot.</i>		
à cheval,	<i>on horseback.</i>		
à califourchon,	<i>astraddle.</i>		
en carrosse,	<i>in a coach.</i>		
en bateau,	<i>in a boat.</i>		
à la mode,	<i>after the fashion.</i>		
à la Fran-	} <i>after the French way</i>		
çoise,			
	<i>or fashion.</i>		
à l'Angloise,	} <i>after the English</i>		
	<i>fashion.</i>		

## Adverbs of Affirmation.

oui,	<i>yes.</i>		
oui-dà,	<i>ay, ay marry.</i>		
oui vraiment,	} <i>yes indeed.</i>		
oui en vérité,			
certes,	} <i>sure, to be sure, as-</i>		
assurément,			

## Of Negation.

non, ne, ni,	} <i>no, not.</i>		
point, pas, non pas,			
point du tout,		<i>not at all.</i>	
nullement,		<i>by no means.</i>	
en nulle ma-	} <i>in no wise, not in</i>		
nière.		<i>the least.</i>	

## Of Doubt.

peut-être,	<i>perhaps.</i>
probablement,	<i>probably.</i>
vraisemblablement,	<i>very likely.</i>

## Adverbs of Comparison, &amp;c.

ainsi,	<i>thus.</i>
de même,	<i>so.</i>
comme cela,	<i>like this, or that.</i>
de cette	} <i>after, or in this</i>
manière,	
en partie,	<i>partly.</i>
tout autant,	<i>as much, exactly so.</i>
tout-à-la fois,	<i>altogether.</i>
séparément,	<i>separately.</i>
à part,	<i>apart, by one's self.</i>
à l'écart,	<i>out of the way.</i>
à quartier,	<i>aside.</i>
plus, <i>more.</i>	<i>moins, less.</i>
pis, <i>worse.</i>	<i>mieux, better.</i>
de pis en pis,	<i>worse and worse.</i>
de mieux en	} <i>better and better.</i>
mieux,	

ni plus ni } moins, }	neither more nor less.	principalement, sur-tout,	chiefly. above all.
dé part & d'autre,	on both sides.	après-tout, }	after all, upon the whole.
à plus forte } raison, }	much more, or much less.	au contraire,	on the contrary.
universellement,	universally.	Of Interrogation.	
généralement,	generally.	quand, when.	pourquoi, why.
doucement,	gently.	combien, how much, how many.	
autrement,	otherwise.	combien de }	how often, how many times.
particulièrement,	particularly.	fois, }	
en particulier, }	especially, in private.	comment,	how.

CHAP. VII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

**A** PREPOSITION is a part of speech indeclinable, which denotes the several relations of nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, and even propositions, and without which it has no complete sense: as

*Avec la permission du Roi*, with the King's leave; *pour moi*, for me; *après avoir diné*, after having dined; *jusqu'à présent*, till now; *jusqu'après minuit*, till past midnight.

Prepositions are either simple: as *devant* before, *sur* upon, *par* by, &c. or compound; as *au devant de*, *vis-à-vis*, over against, *par dessus* above, &c.

The following Prepositions are immediately followed by their regimen, or the noun which they govern.

<i>A</i>	Londres,	<i>At</i> London.
<i>De</i>	France,	<i>From</i> France.
<i>Dès</i>	ce temps-là,	<i>From</i> that time.
<i>Avant</i>	vous,	<i>Before</i> you.
<i>Devant</i>	lui,	<i>Before</i> him.
<i>Derrière</i>	elle,	<i>Behind</i> her.
<i>Avec</i>	moi,	<i>With</i> me.
<i>Attendu</i>	sa promesse,	<i>Considering</i> his promise.
<i>Vu</i>	son âge,	<i>Seeing</i> his age.
<i>Chez</i>	nous,	<i>At, or to</i> our house.
<i>Après</i>	les Fêtes,	<i>After</i> the Holydays.
<i>Depuis</i>	Nôël,	<i>Since</i> Christmas.
<i>Dans</i>	la ville,	<i>In</i> the city.

<i>En</i>	été,	<i>In summer.</i>
<i>Durant</i>	l'hiver,	<i>During the winter.</i>
<i>Pendant</i>	la cérémonie,	<i>During the ceremony.</i>
<i>Entre</i>	vous & moi,	<i>Between you and me.</i>
<i>Parmi</i>	eux,	<i>Among them.</i>
<i>Environ</i>	dix hommes,	<i>About ten men.</i>
<i>Vers</i>	la nuit,	<i>Towards night.</i>
<i>Envers</i>	ses amis,	<i>To, or towards his friends.</i>
<i>Selon</i>	son avis,	<i>According to his advice.</i>
<i>Suivant</i>	ce qu'il fera	<i>According to what he will do.</i>
<i>Comme</i>	sa mère,	<i>Like his, or her mother.</i>
<i>Contre</i>	la porte,	<i>By the door.</i>
<i>Touchant</i>	l'ouvrage,	<i>Concerning the work.</i>
<i>Concernant</i>	l'affaire,	<i>About the matter.</i>
<i>Sans</i>	raison,	<i>Without any reason.</i>
<i>Pour</i>	les frais,	<i>For the charges.</i>
<i>Myennant</i>	cela,	<i>By that means.</i>
<i>Nonobstant</i>	cela,	<i>Notwithstanding that.</i>
<i>Excepté</i>	} la science,	<i>Except</i>
<i>Hormis</i>		<i>But } learning.</i>
<i>Hors</i>		
<i>Malgré</i>	tout le monde,	<i>In spite of all the world.</i>
<i>Outre</i>	ce sujet,	<i>Besides that subject.</i>
<i>Par</i>	la fenêtre,	<i>By, or at the window.</i>
<i>Sur</i>	la table	<i>Upon the table.</i>
<i>Sous</i>	la chaise,	<i>Under the chair.</i>
<i>de Dessus</i>	son visage,	<i>From her face.</i>
<i>de Dessous</i>	le lit,	<i>From under the bed.</i>
<i>par Dessus</i>	la tête,	<i>Above the head.</i>
<i>par Dessous</i>	le carrosse,	<i>Under the coach.</i>
<i>par Deçà</i>	les monts,	<i>On this side the Alps.</i>
<i>par Delà</i>	la rivière,	<i>On that side the river.</i>
<i>à Travers</i>	le corps,	<i>Through the body.</i>
<i>sauf</i>	son recours,	<i>But with a remedy.</i>

*The following require the other Preposition de before the next noun, or are always attended by one of these particles, de, du, des.*

<i>Après</i>	<i>de moi</i>	<i>By me.</i>
<i>Près</i>	<i>du feu,</i>	<i>Near the fire.</i>
<i>Proche</i>	<i>du Palais,</i>	<i>Near the Palace.</i>
<i>Faute</i>	<i>de payement,</i>	<i>For want of payment.</i>
<i>Hors</i>	<i>de la ville,</i>	<i>Out of the city.</i>
<i>Loin</i>	<i>du bois,</i>	<i>At a distance from the wood.</i>
<i>Le long</i>	<i>de la prairie</i>	<i>Along the meadow.</i>

*Ensuite*

<i>Ensuite</i>	<i>de cela,</i>	<i>After that.</i>
<i>A cause</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>On her account.</i>
<i>A l'égard</i>	<i>de la fille,</i>	<i>As to the girl. [father,</i>
<i>A l'insçu</i>	<i>de son père,</i>	<i>Without the knowledge of his</i>
<i>A l'exception</i>	<i>de son mari,</i>	<i>Her husband excepted.</i>
<i>A moins</i>	<i>d'un écu,</i>	<i>Under a crown.</i>
<i>A la réserve</i>	<i>d'une pension,</i>	<i>Excepting a pension.</i>
<i>A couvert</i>	<i>de l'orage,</i>	<i>Sheltered from the storm.</i>
<i>A l'abri</i>	<i>des coups,</i>	<i>Secure from the blows.</i>
<i>Au deçà</i>	} <i>de la haie,</i>	<i>On the side of the hedge.</i>
<i>En deçà</i>		
<i>A delà</i>	<i>du Rhin,</i>	<i>On the other side the Rhine.</i>
<i>Au dessus</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>Above her.</i>
<i>Au dessous</i>	<i>de lui,</i>	<i>Below him.</i>
<i>Au devant</i>	<i>dequelqu'un (aller)</i>	<i>To go and meet one.</i>
<i>Au derrière</i>	<i>de la porte,</i>	<i>Behind the door.</i>
<i>Au tour</i>	} <i>du pot,</i>	<i>About the bush. (Prov.)</i>
<i>A l'entour</i>		
<i>Aux environs</i>	<i>de sa maison,</i>	<i>Round about his house.</i>
<i>A l'exclusion</i>	<i>de sa femme,</i>	<i>Excepting his wife.</i>
<i>A force</i>	<i>de bras,</i>	<i>By strength of arms.</i>
<i>A rebours</i>	<i>de poil,</i>	<i>Against the hair.</i>
<i>Au prix</i>	<i>de son honneur,</i>	<i>At the expense of his honour.</i>
<i>A raison</i>	<i>de cinq * pour cent,</i>	<i>At the rate of five per cent.</i>
<i>Vis-à-vis</i>	<i>de la Bourse,</i>	<i>Over-against the Exchange.</i>
<i>A l'opposite</i>	<i>de sa maison,</i>	<i>Opposite to his house.</i>
<i>Au travers</i>	<i>de la cuisse,</i>	<i>Through his thigh.</i>
<i>Au lieu</i>	<i>de cela,</i>	<i>Instead of that.</i>
<i>Au moyen</i>	<i>de quoi,</i>	<i>In virtue whereof.</i>
<i>Au péril</i>	} <i>de sa vie</i>	<i>At the peril of his life.</i>
<i>Au risque</i>		
<i>Au milieu</i>	<i>de la rue,</i>	<i>In the middle of the street.</i>
<i>A fleur</i>	<i>d'eau,</i>	<i>Near the edge of the water.</i>
<i>Au niveau</i>	<i>de la cour,</i>	<i>Even with the yard.</i>
<i>A rez de terre, ou</i>	<i>de chaussée,</i>	<i>Even or level with the ground.</i>
<i>A côté</i>	<i>de sa femme,</i>	<i>By his wife.</i>
<i>A la faveur</i>	<i>de la nuit,</i>	<i>By means of the night.</i>
<i>Au dépens</i>	<i>de la compagnie,</i>	<i>At the expense of the society.</i>
<i>En dépit</i>	<i>de son mari,</i>	<i>In spite of her husband.</i>
<i>A la mode</i>	<i>de France,</i>	<i>After the manner of the French.</i>
<i>Pour l'amour</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>For the sake of her. [body.</i>
<i>Au grand regret</i>	<i>de tout le monde,</i>	<i>To the great regret of every</i>

\* *q* is sounded.

*These four require the other Preposition à before their noun, or are always attended by one of these particles, à, au, aux.*

<i>Jusqu'</i>	<i>aux Indes,</i>	<i>As far as the Indies.</i>
<i>Par rapport</i>	<i>à lui,</i>	<i>With respect to him.</i>
<i>Quant</i>	<i>à moi,</i>	<i>As for my part.</i>
<i>Sauf</i>	<i>à la partie à se pourvoir,</i>	<i>But the plaintiff is at liberty to sue (a law phrase).</i>

## CH A P. VIII.

### Of CONJUNCTIONS.

**A** CONJUNCTION is a part of speech indeclinable, which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, shewing the dependency of relation, and coherency between the words and sentences.

Most of them are Adverbs or Prepositions attended by *que* or *de*: and therefore it is to be observed here, that many and the same words are Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, according to the divers respects with which they are used grammatically, that is, according to the divers relations which they have to the other parts of speech, which they are joined to.

Conjunctions are either simple or compound. They are divided into Comparative and Copulative, or of Collection; Disjunctive, Adversative, or of Opposition; Conditional, and Exceptive; Dubitative, Declarative, and Concessive; Causal, Concluding, or of Conclusion, and Transitive.

Conjunctions *Copulative* are those that join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as two Adnouns with one and the same Noun or Verb; or two Prepositions with the same affirmation or negation. And the *Comparative* are those that denote besides a respect of Comparison between things. Such are

<i>et, &amp;</i>	<i>and.</i>	<i>de même que,</i>	<i>as, just as.</i>
<i>comme,</i>	<i>as, whereas.</i>	<i>ainsi que,</i>	<i>as, as also, as like-</i>
<i>comme si,</i>	<i>as if, as tho'.</i>		<i>wise.</i>
<i>de sorte que,</i>	<i>so that, in such</i>	<i>tant que,</i>	<i>as much as, as ma-</i>
<i>de manière que,</i>	<i>a manner</i>		<i>ny as.</i>
<i>tellement que,</i>	<i>that, in so-</i>	<i>non plus,</i>	<i>neither.</i>
<i>si bien que,</i>	<i>much that.</i>	<i>non plus que,</i>	<i>no more than.</i>
<i>aussi (followed by que)</i>	<i>as.</i>	<i>en tant que,</i>	<i>as, as much as.</i>
<i>aussi bien que,</i>	<i>as well as.</i>	<i>non-seulement,</i>	<i>not only.</i>
			<i>mais</i>

mais encore,	{	<i>but also, or but even.</i>	savoir,	{	<i>to wit. whereas, for as much as.</i>
mais même,			d'au'ant		
mais aussi,			que,		
de plus,	{	<i>moreover, besides, further.</i>	ni plus ni moins	{	<i>just as, even as.</i>
outre cela,	{	<i>besides, besides that, add to that.</i>	and si, so, in the sense of aussi:	{	<i>as si savant que, so learned that, or as, &amp;c.</i>
outre que,			as si savant que,		
joint que,			that,		

The *Disjunctive* shew a respect of separation or division; as

ni,	<i>nor, neither.</i>	au lieu de,	<i>instead of.</i>
soit,	<i>whether.</i>	au lieu que,	<i>whereas.</i>
soit que,	<i>or.</i>	ou, or ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>

The *Adversative* denote restriction or contrariety:

mais,	<i>but.</i>	nonobstant	}	<i>notwithstanding that.</i>	
néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	que,			
pourtant,	<i>yet, however.</i>	bien loin de,	}	<i>far from, so far from.</i>	
toutefois,	<i>yet, for all that.</i>	tant s'en faut que,			
cependant,	{	<i>yet, however, in the</i>	}	<i>although, or</i>	
		<i>mean while.</i>			<i>though, or</i>
					<i>tho'.</i>

The *Conditional*, which suppose a condition, serve to restrain and limit what has been just said: as,

si,	<i>if, whether.</i>	en tout	{ <i>however, or whatever</i>		
sinon,	<i>if not, or else.</i>	cas,		{ <i>happens.</i>	
comme si,	<i>as if, as tho'.</i>	à moins que,	{ <i>unless.</i>		
pourvû que,	<i>provided that, so.</i>	à moins de,		{	
à condition que,	{ <i>upon condi-</i>	sans, sans que,	{ <i>without.</i>		
bien entendu que,		<i>tion, or with</i>		si ce n'est que,	{ <i>except that.</i>
supposez que,	<i>a proviso,</i>	excepté que,	{		
posez le cas que,	{ <i>that, sup-</i>	quand,	{ <i>tho', altho', fol-</i>		
au cas que,	<i>pose, put the</i>	quand même,		{ <i>lowed in French</i>	
en cas que,	<i>case, or in</i>	quand bien			{ <i>by the condi-</i>
en cas de,	<i>case that.</i>	même,			

The *Dubitative* shew some doubt or suspension of the mind: as, si, *whether*; savoir si, *whether or no, the question is whether.*

The *Declarative*, which serve to illustrate and explain a thing: as, pour lors, *then.* savoir, *to wit.* sur-tout, *especially.* c'est-à-dire, *that is to say,* comme par exemple, *as for instance, or example.*

The *Concessive*, which shew the assent we give to a thing, are,  
 à la vérité, } *indeed, to speak the truth.* d'accord, *done, agreed.*  
 en effet, *in effect, really.* soit, *well and good.*  
 non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, *not but.* tôte, *done, I consent to it.*

The *Causal* shew the reason of something : as

car, *for.* d'autant que, } *the more because,*  
 parce que, } *because.* d'autant plus } *so much the more*  
 à cause que, } *an account of.* que, } *as, that, because.*  
 à cause de, *considering that.* afin que, *that, to the end that.*  
 vû que, *seeing, or seeing* afin de, *in order to.*  
 attendû que, } *that.* puisque, *since.*  
 comme, *as, &c.*

The *Concluding* denote a consequence drawn from what is before : as

c'est pourquoi, *therefore.* c'est-à-dire que, } *that is to say*  
 par conséquent, *consequently.* } *that.*  
 pour cet effet, *to that end, or but.* il s'ensuit de là } *from thence it*  
 donc, *then, therefore.* que, } *follows that.*  
 si bien que, } *so that.* pour conclusion, *to conclude.*  
 de sorte que, } *so, and so, therefore.* c'est pour } *'tis therefore, or for*  
 ainsi, } *that reason that.* cela que, } *it being so, these*  
 aussi, } *things being* cela étant, } *so.*  
 enfin, *in fine, in short, at last.* ainsi, } *so.*  
 or est-il que, *now, but.*  
 d'autant que, *for as much as.*

The *Transitive*, which serve to pass from one sentence to another, and called also *Continuative*, because they denote continuation in the speech, are,

en effet, *in effect, indeed.* puis, then. et puis, *and besides.*  
 d'ailleurs, *besides.* même, *even.*  
 de plus, *moreover.* de même, *likewise.*  
 d'un autre } *on the other side, on* sans doute, *without doubt.*  
 côté, } *the other hand.* sans mentir, } *truly, to speak the*  
 outre cela, *besides that.* à dire vrai, } *truth.*  
 après cela, *after that.* là-dessus, *thereupon.*  
 après tout, } *after all, upon the* sur quoi, *whereupon.*  
 } *whole, in the main.* en un mot, *in one word.*  
 ensuite, *then, afterwards.* au reste, *as for the rest.*

Il est vrai que,	<i>it is true that.</i>	quoi qu'il	<i>however, however it</i>
J'en conviens,	<i>I allow it, I</i>	en soit,	<i>be, or let it be as</i>
	<i>grant it, I</i>		<i>it will.</i>
	<i>grant that.</i>	à propos,	<i>now I think on't, or</i>
sur ces entre-	<i>in the mean</i>		<i>now we are speak-</i>
faites,	<i>while, while</i>		<i>ing of that.</i>
	<i>these things</i>		
	<i>were doing.</i>		

To those Conjunctions add some others of *Interrogation* and *Time* : as,

pourquoi,	<i>why, wherefore ?</i>	avant que,	
par quelle	<i>what for, for what</i>	avant de,	<i>before.</i>
raison,	<i>reason ?</i>	avant que de,	
à quel propos,	<i>to what purpose ?</i>	après que,	<i>after.</i>
d'ou vient	<i>how comes it to pass,</i>	quand,	<i>when.</i>
que,	<i>how comes that about ?</i>	lorsque,	
dès que,		pendant que,	<i>whilst.</i>
si tôt que,	<i>as soon as.</i>	cependant,	<i>yet, nevertheless,</i>
aussi-tôt que,			<i>in the mean</i>
toutes les fois que,	<i>as often as.</i>		<i>while.</i>
en attendant que,	<i>till, until.</i>		<i>hardly, scarce, scarcely.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	<i>till.</i>	à peine,	<i>(followed by que in</i>
en attendant,	<i>in the mean time.</i>		<i>the second part of</i>
depuis,	<i>since.</i>		<i>the sentence).</i>
depuis que,	<i>since, or since that.</i>		

## CHAP. IX.

### Of PARTICLES.

**T**HE PARTICLE is a part of speech which serves less to represent a thought, than the state or situation of the mind in the exhibition of its thoughts. Particles are divided into *Discursive* and *Interjective*, making a particular species of words, which cannot be ranged in any of the other parts of speech, and have a specifical signification peculiar to them.

#### *Discursive Particles.*

ci,	cet homme-ci,	<i>this man:</i>
là,	cette femme-là,	<i>that woman.</i>
ça,	or ça, voyons,	<i>now, let's see.</i>

oui dâ, ay, ay.  
 eh bien, well.  
 adieu, farewell.  
 voici, here is, behold.  
 voilà, there is, or there are.

Besides the articles le, la, les;  
 and these invented to imitate  
 the sounds of dumb creatures,  
 and the noise which is occasion-  
 ed by the clashing of bodies a-  
 gainst one another, Bêê, Cric,  
 Crac, Tic, Tac, Pouf, Pa-  
 tattras.

### Interjective Particles.

ah! ba, ah! (for almost all the emotions of the mind, as  
 joy, fear, grief, &c. but differently uttered ac-  
 cording to the emotion which it expresses.)  
 hélas! alas! (for grief.)  
 ouf, ai, or aye, pho! (for pain.)  
 bon! well, right, (for both assenting and dissenting to  
 something, liking or disliking.)  
 ouais, edod, pshaw, (for discontent.)  
 fi, fye upon, (for dislike and aversion.)  
 oh! oh! oh! (for derision.)  
 que! quoi! how! what! (for exclamation.)  
 Eh!  
 bon Dieu! } lack-a-day,  
 Miséricorde! } bless me,  
 O dame! } Dear Sirs! } for surprise.  
 allons, } come on,  
 courage, } cheer up, } for encouraging those we speak to.  
 alerte, } courage,  
 bis, (s sounds) encore, again, (for repeating.)  
 holà, hold, } for repressing, checking, and stopping some  
 tout beau, softly, } emotion.  
 paix, chut, 't hift, hush, (for silencing.)  
 Garre, have a care, clear the way, (for making people go  
 out of the way.)  
 holà, ho, hem, o, ho, soho, (for calling )  
 Vive le Roi, }  
 Vive la joie, } Huzza! (for shouting.)  
 Vivat, }  
 Zest, fiddlestick, pshaw, (for derision and dislike.)

## PART III.

### Of SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION.

**SYNTAX** is the regular joining of the Parts of Speech together, conformably to the genius of a language.

In the construction of the French speech, two things are most accurately to be considered: Concord and Government.

**CONCORD** is the absolute agreement of,

I. The Article and Adnoun with the Noun.

II. The Verb with its Subject.

III. The Relative with the Antecedent.

**GOVERNMENT** is the influence which some parts of speech have over others: as,

I. A Verb, Adnoun, or Preposition over a Noun, in requiring it to be in such or such a state rather than in another.

II. A Conjunction, or Preposition over a Verb, which they govern in such or such a Mood.

III. A Noun over an Adnoun, by which sometimes it will be followed, and another time will give the Adnoun the precedency: as likewise Verbs over Adverbs, or Adverbs over themselves; some having the special privilege of coming before others, when they meet together in a sentence.

Herein consists the whole mystery of the French Tongue. Therefore, after having seen hitherto the form and nature of the words which it is composed of, we shall, in the same order, consider their Use and Construction.

#### CHAP. I.

##### Of NOUNS.

I. **WHEN** two or more nouns come together, without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the second state, and so on (that is, the first is always followed by the preposition *de*, either alone, or contracted with the article before the next noun); but that second state can never come in French before the noun that governs it, as in English, but after: as,

*Les Gardes du Roi*, The King's guards.  
*La porte de la maison*, the house's gate.  
*La Philosophie de Newton*, Newton's Philosophy.  
*Pour le service de la flotte du Roi*, for the service of the King's fleet.  
*Voici la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme*, here's my wife's brother's partner's house.

Sometimes *of* is left out in English, and the latter noun, instead of the preposition, is put former, and ends in *s*; as in the example, *my wife's brother's partner's house*, instead of *the house of the partner of the brother of my wife*.—Sometimes also the two nouns come together without *of* before the latter, or *'s* after the former, and like a compound word: as *the chamber door*: but the first of them is governed of the second, which must always come first in French with one of these particles, *de, du, des*, before the governed; as in the said instances.

II. The Article and Adnoun agree with the Noun in gender and number: as,

*Un beau Prince*, a handsome Prince.

*Un belle Princesse*, a handsome Princess.

*Le méchant homme*, the wicked man.

*La méchante femme*, the wicked woman.

*De méchantes gens*, wicked people.

Nevertheless we say still *Lettres royaux* (a law term), instead of *Lettres patentes* or *Patentes du Roi*, *Lettres patentes*, used on all other occasions.

III. When two or more nouns of different numbers and genders, or genders only, have an adnoun common to both, it agrees in number and gender with the last: as,

*Il avoit les yeux & la bouche ouverte,* } His eyes and mouth  
or *Il avoit la bouche & les yeux ouverts,* } were opened.

*Les étangs & les rivières glacées,* The ponds and rivers frozen.

But when there is one, or many words, between the last noun and the adnoun, that adnoun (common to all) agrees with the noun masculine, tho' the last noun be feminine: and if the nouns are singular, then the adnoun common shall be put in the plural number, and masculine gender:

*L'étang & la rivière étoient glacés,*  
The ponds and river were frozen.

*Les étangs & les rivières qu'il trouva glacés,*  
The ponds and rivers which he found frozen.

*Le travail, la conduite & la fortune joints ensemble,* and not *jointes*.  
Pains, conduct, and fortune joined together.

And

And when the adnoun (common to three or more nouns, whether of the same or of different genders) is preceded and governed by the verb *être*, it must have another noun plural, as *choses*, *biens*, or *avantages*, to agree with : as

*L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs, & les dignités, sont des choses incertaines & périssables, or sont des biens incertains & périssables.*

Gold, silver, fame, honours, and dignities, are uncertain and perishable.

*Chose*, a thing (a noun feminine), joined to *quelque* (*quelque chose*, something), is masculine, and therefore requires the next adnoun or pronoun relative to agree with that gender : as

*Je suis assis sur quelque chose, qui me paraît dur*, I sit upon something that feels hard ; *Quand j'ai perdu quelque chose, je le cherche*, when I have lost something, I look for it.

*Partie*, a part (a noun fem.), governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun, won't have the adnoun agree with it, which it relates to of course, but with that noun masc. which it governs in the second state : as

*Il a une partie du bras cassée*, and not *cassé*, a part of his arm is broken.

*Il trouva une partie de ses hommes morts*, and not *morte*, he found a part of his men dead.

It is the same with these words, *la plupart*, the most part ; *foule*, crowd ; *troupe*, multitude, multitude ; *nombre*, number ; *moitié*, half ; *espèce*, kind ; *sorte*, sort, governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun : as

*Quand il vit la plupart or la moitié de ses soldats étendus par terre or tués*, and not *étendue* and *tuee* when he saw the most part, or half of his soldiers lying down, or killed ; *une troupe de gens étourdis*, and not *étourdie*, a multitude of giddy people ; *une espèce de bois qui est fort dur*, and not *dure*, a kind of wood which is very hard ; *une sorte de vin qui est assez bon*, not *bonne*, a pretty good sort of wine. But the other collective nouns are not liable to that construction, and we say,

*Les tiers des vignes est gelé*, not *gelée* ; the third part of the vines are frozen ; *les trois quarts du château furent brûlés*, and not *fut brûlé*, three parts out of four of the castle were burnt.

And if the noun governed in the second state is feminine, the adnoun agrees likewise with its gender : as

*Quand il vit une partie de son armée défaite*, when he saw a part of his army defeated ; *une espèce de pierre qui est fort dure*, a kind of stone very hard ; *une sorte de liqueur assez bonne*, a tolerable good sort of liquor.

## CHAP. II.

### Of the ARTICLE.

**N**OUNS express things, 1°. in a general and universal sense, including the whole species of the thing signified by the word : as *Man* was born, or *Men* were born for society ; *L'homme est né*, or *les hommes sont nés pour la société*. *Man* and *Men* is said of human kind, and signifies every *man* and *woman*.

2°. In

2°. In a *particular* and *individual* sense, denoting a particular object, one individual only of the species: as *The earth* turns and not *the sun*, *la terre tourne*, & non *le soleil*; *The Man* whom I speak of is not sociable, *l'homme dont je parle n'est pas sociable*. *The earth*, *the sun* denote particular objects; and *the man* is taken in an individual sense, for I speak of one man only, and I shew who that man is who is not sociable, *to wit*, he that I speak of.

3°. In a *limited* sense, which denotes neither the totality or universality, nor any particular individual of the species, but only part of it: as *Bread* is enough for me, *Du pain me suffit*; Give me some *meat* and *beer*, *Donnez-moi de la viande & de la bière*; We daily see *men* that have less reason than *brutes*: *On voit tous les jours des hommes qui ont moins de raison que des bêtes*; *Bread*, *meat*, *beer*, *men*, and *brutes*, are not taken in the general sense, that includes the totality of the substance and species; for I do not speak of all the *bread*, *meat*, *beer* in the world, nor of all *men* and *brutes*, but only of part of those substances, and some of those species.—Neither do I speak of any particular part of those substances, nor of any individual man or brute. Therefore these words are taken in a limited sense.

4°. Nouns express things in an *indefinite* and *unspecified* sense, not so much serving to name any particular thing, as to qualify that which has been named before; as *Kings* are *men* as well as others; *Les Rois sont hommes comme les autres*; She is a *woman*, *Elle est femme*; *men* and *woman*, are not used, in these and other like sentences, in order to name the things which are the subject of the speech, but only to qualify this noun *Kings* and pronoun *she*, which are spoken of, in shewing what both are.

It appears by these observations, wherein the ways of using nouns are carefully analysed, that they require the article in all the senses, but one, in which they may be taken; that the article is the same in all relations and circumstances of the noun, being *le* for the masc. *la* for the fem. and *les* for the plur. masc. and fem. and that the limited sense, which excludes both the universality and individuality, is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, with which it is contracted, according to the genius of the language, when the noun is masculine, and begins with a consonant.

Nothing therefore is more plain, and easy to explain, than the construction of the article; and yet nothing has been more perplexed by our Grammarians, who are at a loss how to treat it, making it several fold, and all dividing it into *definite* and *indefinite*, and subdividing it besides, without being able to define what they

they mean, or to account for the construction of the article. The following are clear, exact, and easy rules concerning the whole matter.

1<sup>o</sup>. The article is used before the names of the things which are spoken of. Therefore nouns of Substances, Arts, Sciences, Metals, Virtues and Vices, nouns of Countries, Kingdoms and Provinces, Mountains, Rivers, and Winds, and others like, having no article before them in English, require the article in French: as

*L'or & l'argent ne sauroient faire le bonheur de l'homme,*  
Gold and silver cannot make the happiness of man.

*La vertu seule peut le rendre heureux, & il n'y a que le vice qui puisse le rendre malheureux.*

Virtue alone can make him happy, and nothing but vice can make him unhappy or miserable.

*La France est le plus beau pays de l'Europe,*

France is the finest country in Europe.

*Le sort de l'Espagne dépend de la Havanne,*

The fate of Spain depends upon the Havanna.

*C'est à l'Angleterre qu'on doit la découverte de la circulation du sang,*

It is to England the world is beholden for the discovery of the circulation of the blood.

From the nouns of Countries, Kingdoms and Provinces, except these, which take their names from their capital city, besides some republics.

Alger,	Algier.	Gènes,	Genoa.	Naples,	Naples.
Avignon,	Avignon.	Genève,	Geneva.	Orange,	Orange.
Babylone,	Babylon.	Florence,	Florence.	Rome,	Rome.
Candie,	Candia.	Lucques,	Lucca.	Roannez,	Roannez.
Cordoue,	Cordova.	Léon,	Leon.	Séville,	Sevil.
Corse,	Corfica.	Malte,	Malta.	Tolède,	Toledo.
Comminges,	Comminges.	Maroc,	Morocco.	Tunis,	Tunis.
Cornouailles,	Cornwall.	Murcie,	Murcia.	Tripoli,	Tripoli.
Cbipre,	Cyprus.	Madagascar,	Madagascar.	Valence,	Valentia.
Carthage,	Carthage.	Monaco,	Monaco.	Venise,	Venice.
Grenade,	Grenada.				

Except some few, taken notice of in my Exercises, those proper names of countries are commonly used with one of these before them, *république, principauté, état, pays, île*; as *l'île de Candie* or *de Malte* the *île* of Candia or Malta, *le pays d'Avignon* the country of Avignon, *la principauté d'Orange* the principality of Orange, *la république de Genève* the republic of Geneva, &c.

2<sup>o</sup>. When the words attending the names of Countries and Kingdoms (in Europe), respect them immediately as to *coming from, or going out*, the names of those countries are used without the article.

Therefore we say with the preposition *de* only, *Venir de France*, to come from France, *Sortir d'Angleterre*, to go out of England.

With words denoting the country one *lives in*, and whither one is *going or coming to*, we use the preposition *en* before the names of those countries without article: as

*Demeurer en France*, to live in France; *Aller en Italie*, to go to Italy; *Venir or Passer en Angleterre*, to come over or pass over to England.

And when the name of a Kingdom or Province expresses the country of the noun coming immediately before, it is used also without the article, and with the preposition *de* only: as

*Roi ou Royaume d'Angleterre*, King or Kingdom of England.

*Gouverneur ou Gouvernement d'Irlande*,

Lieutenant of Ireland, or his place.

*Vin de Bourgogne, ou de Champagne*, Burgundy or Champaign wine.

*L'Electeur de Bavière*, The Elector of Bavaria.

*Une mode de France*, A French Fashion, &c.

These following names of countries always keep the article:

<i>l'Inde</i> ,	India.	<i>le Zanguebar</i> ,	Zanguebar.	<i>le Pont Euxin</i> ,	the Black Sea.
<i>l'Indostan</i> ,	Indostan.	<i>le Mexique</i> ,	Mexico.	<i>le Péloponnèse</i> ,	Peloponnesus.
<i>le Malabar</i> ,	Malabar.	<i>le Paraguay</i> ,	Paraguay.	<i>les Philippines</i> ,	the Philip-
<i>les Indes</i> ,	the Indies.	<i>le Chili</i> ,	Chili.		pine Islands.
<i>la Chine</i> ,	China.	<i>le Pérou</i> ,	Peru.	<i>l'île Bourbon</i> ,	the isle of
<i>la Nigritie</i> ,	Nigritia.	<i>le Brésil</i> ,	Brazil.		Bourbon.
<i>la Guinée</i> ,	Guinea.	<i>le Canada</i> ,	Canada.	<i>les îles Moluques</i> ,	the Mo-
<i>la Malaguettes</i> ,	Malaguettes.	<i>le Louifiane</i> ,	Louisiana.		lucca Islands, &c.
<i>le Congo</i> ,	Congo.	<i>le Mississipi</i> ,	Mississipi.	<i>les Antilles</i> ,	the Antilla.
<i>le Cochinchine</i> ,	Cochinchina.	<i>l'Acadie</i> ,	Acadia.	<i>le Caire</i> ,	Cairo.
<i>le Pégu</i> ,	Pegu.	<i>la Cayenne</i> ,	Cayenne.	<i>le Levant</i> ,	the Levant.
<i>le Tonquin</i> ,	Tonquin.	<i>la Caroline</i> ,	Carolina.	<i>la Mecque</i> ,	Mecca.
<i>le Thibet</i> ,	Thibet.	<i>la Barbadoe</i> ,	Barbadoes.	<i>l'Abbruzzze</i> ,	Abbruzzo.
<i>le Japon</i> ,	Japan.	<i>la Jamaïque</i> ,	Jamaica.	<i>la Pouille</i> ,	Apulia.
<i>l'Abyssinie</i> ,	Abissinia.	<i>le Maryland</i> ,	Maryland.	<i>le Mantouan</i> ,	Mantuan
<i>le Mogol</i> ,	the Mogul's C.	<i>la Pensilvanie</i> ,	Pensylvania.		Dutchy.
<i>le Monomotapa</i> ,	Monomot.	<i>la Virginie</i> ,	Virginia.	<i>le Milanois</i> ,	the Milaneze.
<i>le Monémugi</i> ,	Monomugi.	<i>la Martinique</i> ,	Martinico.	<i>le Parmezan</i> ,	the Parmezan.
<i>la Cafrerie</i> ,	Coast of the	<i>la Guadeloupe</i> ,	Gaudaloupe.	<i>le Spitzberg</i> ,	Spitzberg.
<i>Cafres</i> .		<i>la Havanne</i> ,	the Havanna.	<i>le Groenland</i> ,	Greenland.

\* *l'Anjou*.

*l'Artois*.

\* *le Maine*.

\* *la Marche*.

\* *le Perche*.

\* *la Capelle*.

\* *le Catelet*.

*le Cateau Cambrésis*.

*le Père*.

*la Ferté*.

*la Charité*.

*le Havre de Grâce*.

*la Flèche*.

*la Guerche*.

*le Hogue*.

*le Mans*.

*le Plessis*.

*le Puy* (a word signifying

*le Quenoi*.

*la Rochelle*.

*la Haye*, the Hague.

[Mount].

\* These five are names of Counties and the others of Cities of France, except *la Haye*.

There-

Therefore instead of the prepositions *en* and *de*, used alone in the cases mentioned in the second paragraph, with respect to all other countries, when we speak of these last, we use both the preposition *à*, or *de*, and the article: as

*Voyager aux Indes*, to travel to the Indies. *Aller au Japon*, to go to Japan. *Demeurer à la Chine*, to live in China. *Partir du Mexique*, to set out from Mexico. *Revenir du Maine*, de l'*Artois*, de l'*Anjou*, to return from *le Maine*, &c.

Nevertheless we say *aller dans l'Anjou*, *dans l'Artois*, *dans le Perche*, to go into Anjou, &c. *le Duc d'Anjou*, the Duke of Anjou, and *le Duc du Maine*, the Duke of Maine. We say too *Empereur* or *Empire de la Chine*, and not *de Chine* (according to the observation of the 5th Paragraph), *Empereur* or *Empire of China*; *Porcelaines de la Chine*, China-ware; *Marchandises du Japon*, Japan goods.

3°. When a River's name is preceded by the word *rivière*, it takes the article, if it is of the masculine gender, and the preposition *de* only, if it is of the feminine: otherwise they all take the article: as

*La rivière du Rhône*, the river Rhone; *la rivière de Seine*, the river Seine: or *le Rhône*, *la Seine*, *la Tamise*, &c.

But it is to be noted, -1<sup>st</sup>, that some rivers cannot be construed with the word *rivière* before them, but they all take the article: as *le Rbin*, *le Rhône*, *la Seine*, *la Tamise*, &c. we don't say *la rivière du Rbin*, *la rivière de la Tamise*, as in English, *the river Thames*. 2<sup>dly</sup>; That the word *fleuve* (synonymous with *rivière*) can never be put before the proper name of a river: so that we don't say *le fleuve de Seine*, or *de la Seine*, *le fleuve du Rhône*, or *de Rhône*. 3<sup>dly</sup>, The French call *fleuve* a river that carries its waters to the sea: and *rivière* any river that discharges itself into another: tho' they use the word *rivière* before the names of such rivers as they call *fleuves*. One might perhaps say, without impropriety, *le fleuve Scamandre*, *le fleuve Simois* (two rivers in Troy); but it is still better, as being more sure, to say only *le Scamandre*, *le Simois*, *le Danube*, *la Moselle*, *l'Escaut*, and so of all other rivers, without putting the word *rivière* before, which, as we have observed, cannot be put before a great many rivers.

4°. When a Mount's, Mountain's, or Hill's name is preceded by the word *mont*, it has neither article nor preposition: as *le mont Vésuve*, Vesuvius; *le mont Apennin*, the Appenine; *les monts Pyrénées*, the Pyrenean mountains. After the word *montagne*, it takes the preposition *de* (which is contracted with the article, when the name of the hill has it), as *la montagne de Potosi*, mount Potosi; *la montagne de Sion*, mount Sion; *la montagne du Calvaire*, the mount of Calvary; *la montagne du Pic de Teyde*, the Pico. Otherwise they all take the article: as *le Vésuve*, *l'Apennin*, *les Pyrénées*, *le Calvaire*, *le Pic*, &c.

Some nouns of hills and mountains will always be preceded by either of these two words, *mont*, *montagne*, as *la montagne de Potosi*, *la montagne de Sion*, or *le mont Sion*; we don't say *le Potosi*, *le Sion*, *la Sion*: some others can never be construed with those words, as *les Alpes*, *les Cordellières*, the Cordilleras. We neither say *les montagnes des Alpes*, nor *les monts Alpes*, as we say *les monts Pyrénées*; altho' we denote *les Alpes* by *les monts* in this phrase, *un sel esprit de delà les monts*, or *un bel esprit ultramontain*, an ultramontane wit, or genius.

5°. The noun of the Measure, Weight, and Number of the things that have been bought, requires the article: as

*Le blé se vend un écu le boisseau*, wheat is sold for a crown a bushel;

*Le beurre vaut six sous la livre*, butter costs six pence a pound;

*Les œufs valent quatre sous la douzaine*, eggs cost a groat a dozen.

6°. These following prepositions (twenty in number) always will have the article before the next noun.

<i>avant</i> ,	before.	<i>envers</i> ,	towards.	<i>pendant</i> ,	for.
<i>après</i> ,	after.	<i>excepté</i> ,	except.	<i>selon</i> ,	according.
<i>chez</i> ,	at, to.	<i>hors</i> ,	out.	<i>sous</i>	under.
<i>dans</i> ,	in.	<i>hormis</i> ,	except.	<i>suivant</i> ,	according.
<i>depuis</i> ,	since.	<i>nonobstant</i> ,	notwith-	<i>sur</i> ,	upon.
<i>devant</i> ,	before.		standing.	<i>touchant</i> ,	concerning.
<i>derrière</i> ,	behind.	<i>parmi</i> ,	among.	<i>vers</i> ,	towards.

*As chez le Prince*, at the Prince's, *dans la chambre*, in the room, *sous la table*, under the table, &c.

*en*, will have no article before the next noun; as *en ville* in town, *en campagne* in the country, &c. and

These ten sometimes require the article before the next noun (when it is used as a *Denomination* or *Appellation*), and sometimes not (when it is used only as a *Modification* or *Qualification*):

<i>à</i> ,	at, to.	<i>entre</i> ,	between.	<i>malgré</i> ,	in spite of.
<i>de</i> ,	of, from.	<i>par</i> ,	by.	<i>outré</i> ,	besides.
<i>avec</i> ,	with.	<i>pour</i> ,	for.	<i>sans</i> ,	without.
<i>contre</i> ,	against.				

Examples will make this rule more plain to those who are not used to abstract observations.

*Sans les passions, où seroient la vertu & le vice?*

Without passions, where would virtue and vice be?

*Vivre sans passions c'est vivre sans plaisirs,*

Living without passions is living without pleasures.

*Passions*, *vertu*, and *vice*, in the first sentence, are used as denominations, or names of the things which are the subject of our speech. *Passions* and *plaisirs* are not used in the second, as denominations; for they are not the things of which something is said; *vivre* (living) is the thing spoken of: but they are used as modifications or qualifications, shewing what sort of living is spoken of.

7°. The article is used before all nouns of dignities, qualities, offices, and professions, even before names or abusing words, so they

they come after such names as *monseigneur*, *monseigneur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle*: as

*Monsieur le Dauphin*, the Dauphin; *Madame la Duchesse*, my Lady Dukes; *Mr. le Docteur*, Doctor; *Monseigneur l'Archevêque*, my Lord Archbishop; *Monsieur le Paresseux*, Mr. Lazybones, or Idle-back; *Madame la Coureuse*, Mrs. Gad-about; *Mademoiselle la Libertine*, Mrs. Romp; &c.

Except with nouns of trades and mechanical professions, which never take *monseigneur* or *madame* before them. Thus we don't say of, or to Merchants, Taylors, Shoemakers, &c. *Mr. le Marchand*, *Mr. le Tailleur*, *Mr. le Cordonnier*.

The article is used in speaking and calling to people, which relation of the noun answers to the Vocative of the Latin: as

*Ecoutez, la belle fille*, hark ye, pretty girl.

*Parlez, l'homme; parlez, la femme*,

Speak to me, man or woman.

We also say without the article, but with an adnoun before the noun, or without any noun at all, *Ecoutez, bon homme, ou bonne femme*, hark ye, good man or woman; *Etudiez, paresseux*, study, you idle fellow.—Calling to a coachman, we say without the article, *Cocher, êtes-vous loué?* Coachman, are you hired? tho' we call to a man that sells rabbits about the streets, or to an herb-woman, with the article, *l'homme aux lapins, la femme aux herbes*. This oddness of expression will be best learnt by practice. It is enough to have taken notice of it.

As for the particle interjective *ô* before nouns, it is used only with exclamation: as *O infortuné que je suis!* O unhappy me! *O femme, que ta vertu est grande!* How great is thy virtue, O woman!

8°. The article is used with nouns having an adnoun before them in sentences of admiration and exclamation; in which case, the noun is always repeated with *que* between, without any verb. These ways of speaking are rendered in English as follows:

*L'illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon;*

What an illustrious house the house of Bourbon is!

*Le sage Roi que le Roi de Prusse;*

What a wise and prudent King the King of Prussia is!

*L'indigne traitement que celui qu'elle m'a fait souffrir;*

How unworthy is the treatment I have received from her!

9°. When the noun is not taken in a general and universal sense, including the whole species; nor in the particular and individual sense, denoting a particular object, one particular individual of the species; but denotes only part of the substance or thing signified by the noun; that limited sense is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, or contracted with it, if the noun is masculine: and nouns taken in that sense imply the word *some*, sometimes expressed, sometimes not: as

*Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, de l'argent, des habits;*  
 Give me some bread, some meat, money, cloaths.  
*Cette liqueur ressemble à du vin, that liquor is like wine.*  
*J'ai affaire à des gens fort honnêtes,*  
 I have to do with very honest people.

But when the noun is preceded by an adnoun, it loses its article, and is contented with the article *de* : as

*Donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, de bons habits;*  
 Give me good bread, good meat, good cloaths.  
*J'ai affaire à de fort-honnêtes gens, I have to do with very, &c.*

Again, *On l'a dépouillé de belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been divested of fine places which he enjoy'd; *On l'a dépouillé des belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been stript of the fine places which he was possessed of. The word *charge* is restrained in the first sentence, by the limiting particle *de*, and signifies only *some of his places*; whereas in the other sentence, the article contracted with the preposition (*des* for *de les*) shews that the word is taken in the universal sense, and signifies *all his places*. From whence you may observe, that some expressions that seem to be alike in French, are very far from being so.

10°. In many cases either of these two particles, *du* or *un*, may be used; but with this difference:

When the noun is used without an adnoun, it requires *du*, and *un*, when with an adnoun: as

*Il y a du danger à aller sur mer*, there is danger in going to sea.  
*Ceux qui vont sur mer, courent un grand danger, or de grands dangers*, those who go to sea run a great danger, or great dangers.  
*J'entens du bruit* (and not *un bruit*), I hear a noise.  
*J'entens un grand bruit* (and not *du*), I hear a great noise.

The particle *un* (which is no more an article than *quelque*, *tout*, &c.) is used in speaking of things that can be told one by one; or are denoted by opposition to two or more; as *J'ai un pain*, I have a loaf; *Je ne veux qu'une pomme*, I will have but one apple.

11°. The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *ce*, *celui*, *qui*, *quel* (taken in the sense of *what*), *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c. used either with or without the prepositions *de*, *à*, &c. take no article: But *mien*, *tien*, *sien*, *même*, and *quel* (in the sense of *which*), always require it: as

<i>De qui parlez-vous?</i>	<i>De quel homme parlez-vous?</i>
Who are you speaking of?	Of what man are you speaking?
<i>Du quel? De la quelle?</i>	<i>De lui, D'elle, D'eux.</i>
Of which?	Of him, Of her, Of them.

12°. No article is used with proper names of Persons, Places, and Planets (except *la terre* the earth, *le soleil* the sun, *la lune* the

the moon), and before these nouns of honour which use has prefixed to proper names :

<i>Monsieur</i> , Sir, Master,	<i>Maître</i> , Master,	} a particular title of some persons of distinction and Saints.
<i>Madame</i> , Madam,	<i>Messire</i> ,	
<i>Mademoiselle</i> , Miss,	<i>Saint</i> ,	
<i>Monseigneur</i> , my Lord,	<i>Sainte</i> ,	

When these nouns are used without the pronoun of which they are composed, they take the article: as *le sieur*, *la dame*, *la demoiselle*, &c. We also say *les Messieurs qui sont ici*, the gentlemen who are here; but never *les Mesdames*, nor *les Messeigneurs*.

From proper names, except some of renowned Poets and Painters of Italy, which keep the article :

<i>Le Tasse</i> ,	<i>l'Arioste</i> ,	<i>le Titien</i> ,	<i>le Poussin</i> ,	<i>l'Arétin</i> ,
<i>du Tasse</i> ,	<i>de l'Arioste</i> ,	<i>du Titien</i> ,	<i>du Poussin</i> ,	<i>de l'Arétin</i> ,
<i>au Tasse</i> ,	<i>à l'Arioste</i> ,	<i>au Titien</i> ,	<i>au Poussin</i> ,	<i>à l'Arétin</i> .

Add to them *le Bourdon*, *le Brugle*, *le Caracbe*, *le Corrège*, *le Guile*, *le Guercbin*, *le Muetien*, *le Tintoret*, *l'Albane*, *le Bernardin*, *le Dominiquain*, *l'Espagnolet*, *le Pinturicchio*. But we don't say *le Michel-Ange*, *le Rapbael*, &c.

When any of these particles, *le*, *la*, *de*, *du*, *des*, make part of the proper name, it is never contracted with the prepositions:

<i>Du Pré</i> ,	<i>De Tourville</i> .
<i>de du Pré</i> ,	<i>de de Tourville</i> ,
<i>à du Pré</i> ,	<i>à de Tourville</i> , &c.
<i>Le Maître</i> ,	<i>La Place</i> ,
<i>de le Maître</i> ,	<i>de la Place</i> ,
<i>à le Maître</i> ,	<i>à la Place</i> .

And when we speak in a contemptuous manner of a woman (it is always the case when we speak of a woman of the town), we use the article, besides the particle of the proper name: as *Je ne veux plus voir la Du Pré*, I will see Du Pré's wife no more.

That contemptuous manner of expressing was formerly used also in speaking of an actress, but now it ceases to prevail, since talents are more regarded than the private life of the person; and we say, in speaking of a celebrated actress, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out before the word *saint*, for abbreviation sake: as *l'Eglise St. Paul*, St. Paul's Church; *le Cimetière St. Jean* (a famous place in Paris); *la foire St. Laurent*, St. Laurence's fair; *la porte St. Denis*, St. Denis's gate; *le Faubourg St. Germain* (one of the suburbs of Paris). We also say *le Quai Palleier* (a key at Paris), *le Cour de la Reine*, and *le Bourg la Reine* (proper names of places.)

13°. When proper names are used in a determinate sense, that is, when they are applied to particular objects, or qualified by an adnoun, then they take the article: as

*Le Dieu des Chrétiens*, the God of Christians; *le bon Dieu ne sauroit être cruel*, God Almighty cannot be cruel; *l'Archimède d'Angleterre*, the Archimedes of England; *l'Amphitruon de Molière*, the Amphitruon of Molière; *les Cicérons & les Démosthènes*, the Cicero's and the Demosthenes's; *Monsieur le Brun*, Master Brown.

We say without the article *Jean épousera Marie*, John will marry Mary; and with the article *le vieux Janot aime la jeune Babet*, old Jack loves young Betty.

I cannot help anticipating here the construction of the preposition *de*, and considering some of the relations which it denotes.

14°. The preposition *de* only, without the article, is used,

1<sup>st</sup>, Before nouns following one of these, *sorte, espèce, genre*, and any other noun of which they express the *Kind, Character, Cause, Matter, Quality, Nature, and Country*: which sort of nouns are usually englished by an adnoun, or even by the noun itself, placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a word compound: as

*Un mal de tête*, the head-ach; *une sorte de fruit*, a sort of fruit; *une étoffe de soie*, a silk stuff: *une montre d'or*, a gold watch; *de la laine d'Espagne*, Spanish wool; *une conduite de fou*, a foolish conduct, &c.

Sometimes the English adnoun may be rendered likewise by an adnoun in French; as in the last example, *une conduite folle*, a foolish conduct: but sometimes too the French have no adnoun of the same nature as the English adnoun, and therefore express the English adnoun by a noun of the same signification with *de* before the other noun: as

*Ma diâblesse de femme,*

My devilish wife.

*Mon vaurien de fils, & sa coquine de mère.*

My good-for-nothing son, and the jade his mother.

Sometimes the English express themselves after the same manner as the French, except that the French have no other particle before the second noun but *de*: as

*C'est un Diable d'homme,*

He is the Devil of a man.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Before the word of the measure of Magnitude or Increase: as *il croît tous-les-jours d'un pouce*, it grows an inch every day.

3<sup>dly</sup>, After pronouns indeterminate, *Personne, quelqu'un, &c. quoi, ce qui, ce que, tout ce qui, Je ne sais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a*: as

*Il n'y a personne de blessé*, there is nobody wounded.

*Y en avoit-il quelqu'un d'ivre?* Was any of them drunk?

*Il y a dans son style je ne sais quoi de dur*, his style has I don't know what harshness in it.

*Ce que je remarque de drôle*, What I observe comical, &c.

4<sup>thly</sup>, Before a participle, when a noun of number precedes: as *Il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés*, there are thirty ships finished; *il y eut cent hommes de tués*, there were an hundred men killed.

It may be sometimes left out, when the noun is expressed before the participle, as in the aforesaid sentences, *cent hommes tués, trente vaisseaux achevés*; but those sentences are more usually and elegantly construed with the particle *de*; whereas it cannot be omitted

ted after the noun of number, when the relative pronoun *en* stands in the sentence for the noun : as

*Il y en a trente d'achevés*, thirty of them are finished.

*Il y en eut cinquante de tués & cent de blessés*, there were fifty men killed and an hundred wounded.

5thly, The preposition *de* is used after these words of quantity :

<i>abondance</i> ,	<i>abondance de vivres</i> ,	<i>plenty of victuals.</i>
<i>assez</i> ,	<i>assez de provisions</i> ,	<i>provisions enough.</i>
<i>beaucoup</i> ,	<i>beaucoup d'esprit</i> ,	<i>much wit.</i>
<i>combien</i> ,	<i>combien de vaisseaux</i> ,	<i>how many ships.</i>
<i>disette</i> ,	<i>disette de savans</i> ,	<i>scarcity of learned men.</i>
<i>guères</i> ,	<i>guères d'argent</i> ,	<i>very little money.</i>
<i>peu</i> ,	<i>peu de gens croient</i> ,	<i>few people think.</i>
<i>plus &amp; moins</i> ,	<i>plus d'effets &amp; moins de paroles</i> ,	<i>more deeds and less words.</i>
<i>davantage</i> ,	<i>Je n'en ai pas davantage</i> ,	<i>I have no more of it.</i>
<i>quantité</i> ,	<i>quantité de fruit</i> ,	<i>a great deal of fruit.</i>
<i>grand nombre</i> ,	<i>grand nombre de Grammaires</i> ,	<i>a vast number of Grammars.</i>
<i>tant</i> ,	<i>tant d'écrivains le disent</i> ,	<i>so many writers say so.</i>
<i>autant</i> ,	<i>autant de femmes que d'hommes</i> ,	<i>as many women as men.</i>
<i>trop</i> ,	<i>trop de peine</i> ,	<i>too much trouble.</i>

*As likewise after*

<i>point &amp; pas</i> ,	<i>point de sens commun</i> ,	<i>no common sense.</i>
	<i>pas de monnoie</i> ,	<i>no change.</i>
<i>jamais</i> ,	<i>il n'a jamais d'argent</i> ,	<i>he never has any money.</i>
<i>que</i> ,	<i>que de peines &amp; de soins !</i>	<i>what care and trouble !</i>
<i>quoi</i> ,	<i>quoi de plus juste !</i>	<i>what can be fairer !</i>
<i>rien</i> ,	<i>rien de remarquable</i> ,	<i>nothing remarkable.</i>
<i>quelque chose</i> ,	<i>quelque chose de bon</i> ,	<i>something good.</i>

*Bien* is also used for *beaucoup*, with this difference, that *bien* requires after it the article ; as

<i>bien de la peine</i>	} or {	<i>beaucoup de peine</i> ,	<i>much pain.</i>
<i>bien du temps</i>		<i>beaucoup de temps</i> ,	<i>much time.</i>
<i>bien de l'argent</i>		<i>beaucoup d'argent.</i>	<i>much money.</i>

Observe, that *assez* is never put in French after the noun which it governs, as in English, but always before ; as *assez de temps*, time enough.

But if the noun that comes after those words is determined by what follows, it requires the article besides : as

*Donnez-moi un peu de vin*,

*Give me a little wine.*

*J'ai encore beaucoup d'argent*,

*I have a good deal of money still.*

*Un peu du vin qui est dans cette bouteille*,

*A little of the wine which is in that bottle.*

*Beaucoup de l'argent que j'ai apporté de France*,

*A good deal of the money which I brought from France.*

15°. Nouns are used without either article or preposition in these following cases. 1<sup>st</sup>, At the title of a performance, and in the middle of sentences, where they characterise in a particular manner the person or thing spoken of, in which cases the English use especially the particle *a*: as

*Discours sur les obligations de la Religion naturelle,*

A discourse concerning the obligations of natural religion.

*Première partie.—Préface.—Table des Matières.*

The first part.—The Preface.—The Contents.

*Le Comte de Clermont, Prince du sang, mourut le, &c.*

The Count of Clermont, a Prince of the blood, died the, &c.

*Le St. George, vaisseau de guerre de quatre vingt-dix pièces de canon.*

The St. George, a ninety-gun ship.

2<sup>dly</sup>, When they come after a pronoun interrogative, or exclamative; as also in sentences of exclamation; as

*Quel esprit elle a! Quelle beauté! Quelle Dame av. z-vous vûe?*

What a wit she has! What a beauty! What lady have you seen?

*Les plus belles fleurs sont de bien peu de durée. La moindre pluie les ternit, le vent les fane, le soleil les brûle, et achève de les sécher: sans parler d'une infinité d'insectes qui les gâtent & les incommodent: naturelle & véritable image de la beauté des Dames.*

The handsomest flowers last but a very short time. The least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the sun scorches them, and completes the drying of them: without mentioning an infinite number of insects that spoil and hurt them: a natural and true image of the Ladies beauty!

3<sup>dly</sup>, When they meet with a noun of number, whether it comes before or after them: which noun of number, when it is used as a surname to Kings and Sovereigns, always comes the last, and is the Cardinal number, and not the Ordinal (except in two cases), as in English: as

*Mille cavaliers contre cent fantassins, la partie n'est pas égale,*

A thousand horse against an hundred foot, it is not fair.

*Louis quinze, Lewis the fifteenth. Henry quatre, Henry the 4th.*

But if besides the number, the noun had a relation to something else, it would take the article: as

*Les cent fantassins qui se sont défendus contre les mille cavaliers qu'on avoit envoyés contre eux, &c.* The hundred foot who fought with the thousand horse that were sent against them, &c.

4<sup>thly</sup>,

4thly, After the verb *être*, having not *ce* for its subject (*c'est*); as likewise after *devenir* to become, *être estimé*, *être pris pour*, *passer pour*, to be reckoned, to be accounted, to pass for: because the noun serves then only to qualify something spoken of, and not to name: as *Mes paroles sont esprit & vie*, my words are spirit and life; *les Rois sont hommes*, Kings are men; *elle est femme*, or *c'est une femme*, she is a woman; *il passe pour matelot*, he passes for a sailor; *il deviendra Docteur avec le temps*, he will prove a Doctor in time.

But if the noun coming after *être*, or any of the said verbs, is attended by an adnoun, or any other apparence, it takes the particle *un*: as *Dieu est esprit*, God is a spirit; *Dieu est un esprit infini*, God is an infinite Spirit; *Dieu est un Etre qui a toutes les perfections possibles*, God is a being who has all possible perfections, &c.

5thly, When nouns are used in the indeterminate and unspecified sense; as likewise in a pathetic way of speaking: as,

*Le sage n'a ni amour ni haine*, the wise man has neither love nor hatred. *Il est plein de vin*, it is full of wine. *Intérêt, bonheur, conscience sont sacrifiés*, interest, honour, conscience are sacrificed.

16°. No article is put before an adnoun separated from its noun; as *Les hommes sont méchants*, men are wicked; unless, 1st, the adnoun is used substantively, or the noun is understood: as speaking of wine and colours,

*J'aime mieux le rouge que le blanc*, I love red better than white. *Le verd blesse moins la vue que le rouge*, green hurts the eyes less than red.

2dly, Unless it is to qualify a proper name, and distinguish between several persons who could go by the same name: as,

*Louis le bien-aimé*, Lewis the well-beloved: *Chilpéric le fainéant*, Chilperic the sluggish.

17°. When a noun has two adnouns joined together by a conjunction, the article is sometimes repeated before each adnoun, and sometimes not. If the adnouns are synonymous, or near a-kin in their signification, the article is put only before the first: as,

*La belle & savante harangue qu'il a faite*,  
The fine and learned speech which he made.

But if the adnouns are of a contrary signification, or have a quite different sense, the article must be repeated as,

*Le*

*Le savant & le pieux personnage*, the pious and learned man : because *pious* and *learned* signify two different things.

*Monsieur l'Abbé Girard*, one of our best Grammarians, words this rule thus :  
 " Whenever many adjectives qualify a noun in such a manner that they, between  
 " them, divide its totality, each of them denoting but part of the sense of the sub-  
 " stantive, then the article is repeated before each adjective : as,

" *Les vieux & les nouveaux régimens ont fait des merveilles.*

" Both the old and new regiments have done wonders.

" *Les belles & les laides femmes ont également envie de plaire.*

" Both the handsome and homely women want to please.

" But when the adjectives denote no division of the sense of the substantive, but  
 " barely make an addition of qualities, the article is not repeated : as,

" *Les grands & vastes projets, joints à la prompte & sage exécution, font le grand mini-  
 " stre*, Great and vast projects, together with a speedy and wise execution, make the  
 " great minister."

18°. Articles are repeated in French before as many nouns (requiring the article) as there are in the sentence : as,

*L'or, l'argent, la santé, les honneurs, & les plaisirs ne sauroient rendre l'homme heureux, sans la science & la vertu,*

Gold, silver, health, honours and pleasures cannot make a man happy, without wisdom and virtue.

There are a great number of nouns that take no article after some verbs, with which they form particular Ideas, and Idiomatical expressions. I will give a list of them in a more proper place.

Moreover observe, that we may sometimes indifferently use the noun with or without the article, when, with respect to what one intimates, it is indifferent to modify or restrain the signification of the noun, so that it exhibits any sense in which it may be taken. Thus on some occasions we may say,

*Les gens d'esprit,*  
 or *Des gens d'esprit,* } *font toujours plaisir.* Ingenious people are agree-  
 or even *Gens d'esprit,* } able at all times :

Because the subject implies only the Idea of the ingenious people.

The practice of these 18 or 20 observations on the article being pretty difficult to Foreigners, and even such as are daily unregarded, on most occasions, by the generality of the French, I have enlarged much upon them in my Exercises to these rules, wherein the learners will be made sensible by practice of what they may possibly find hard to understand in this treatise.

## C H A P. III.

### Of ADNOUNS.

§ I. **O**F Adnouns, some are put before the noun, and some after, and others may be put indifferently either before or after.

1°. Prono-

1°. Pronominal adnouns (*alias* pronouns possessive) *mon, ton, leur, &c.* pronouns indefinite, *quel, autre, chaque, plusieurs, quelque, &c.* except *quelconque*; and numbers, both cardinal, ordinal and proportional, come before the noun, as in English: as,

*Mon père* my father, *leur maison* their house, *deux personnes*, two people, *le premier homme* the first man, *la dernière place* the last place, *un double profit* a double profit, &c.

But when the number stands for a surname, or meets with a Proper or Christian name, it comes after the noun without article; as *George second*, George the second; *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth.

When a book or some part of a book, as chapter, article, page, &c. is quoted, the number may come either before or after the noun; but with this difference, that, if it comes after, the two words are construed without the article: as *livre premier, chapitre second, article troisième*, book i. chapter ii. article iii. if before, it takes the article. It may also come after the noun with the article before: as *le troisième chapitre*, or *le chapitre troisième*, the third chapter.

2°. These following adnouns come after the noun:

1<sup>st</sup>, Verbal adnouns: as *un homme divertissant* a comical or merry man, *la mode régnante* the fashion in vogue, *un pays habité* an inhabited country, *une femme estimée* a woman esteemed.

2<sup>dly</sup>, Adnouns of names of nations, as *un Mathématicien Anglois* an English Mathematician, *un Tailleur François* a French Taylor, *la Musique Italienne* Italian Music, &c.

3<sup>dly</sup>, Adnouns of colour: as *un habit noir* a black suit of clothes, *un manteau rouge* a red cloak, &c.

Except these three when joined to these nouns, with which they make but a compound noun: *un blanc-manger*, a sort of dainty dish; *un rouge bord*, a brimmer; *une rouge-trogne*, a red face; *un rouge-gorge*, a Robin-red-breast; *un rouge-queue*, a red-tail; *un verd-galant*, a brisk spark; and *les Blancs-Manteaux* (the name of a Friary).

4<sup>thly</sup>, Adnouns of figure: as *une table ronde* a round table, *une chambre carrée* a square room, &c.

5<sup>thly</sup>, Adnouns expressing some physical, or natural quality: such are *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *pur*, pure; *humide*, wet; *amer*; bitter; *bossu*, hunch-backed; and others respecting *taste, bearing, feeling, &c.* as *un temps froid ou chaud*, cold or warm weather; *du vin pur*, pure wine; *un arbre fruitier*, a fruit-tree, *du fruit amer*, bitter fruit; *des jambes crochues*, crooked legs; *de la chair vive*, quick flesh; *la religion naturelle*, natural religion, &c. Except *du vis-argent*, quicksilver (pronounce *vivargent*).

6<sup>thly</sup>, Adnouns ending in *esque, il, ile, and ule*: as *une figure grotesque*, an odd sort of figure; *un discours puéril*, a childish discourse; *un enfant docile*, a tractable child; *une femme crédule*, a credulous woman; &c.

7<sup>thly</sup>,

7thly, Adnouns ending in *ic, ique, and if* (tho' some may also come before the noun); as *le bien public*, the public good; *un esprit pacifique*, a pacific mind; *un enfant vif*, a quick child; &c. Except again *du vif-argent*.

8thly, Adnouns ending in *able* (mostly derived from verbs): for tho' some may also come before the noun, yet one can never speak improperly in placing them after; as *une terre labourable*, arable land; *un pays inhabitable*, an uninhabitable country; *une personne aimable*, or *une aimable personne*, a lovely person; &c.

3°. Of common adnouns these sixteen only come before the noun:

<i>beau,</i>	<i>fine,</i>	<i>gros,</i>	<i>big,</i>	<i>moindre,</i>	<i>less,</i>
<i>bon,</i>	<i>good,</i>	<i>jeune,</i>	<i>young,</i>	<i>petit,</i>	<i>little,</i>
<i>brave,</i>	<i>brave,</i>	<i>mauvais,</i>	<i>bad, ill,</i>	<i>saint,</i>	<i>holy,</i>
<i>cher,</i>	<i>dear,</i>	<i>méchant,</i>	<i>naughty,</i>	<i>vieux,</i>	<i>old,</i>
<i>chétif,</i>	<i>sorry,</i>	<i>meilleur,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>vrai,</i>	<i>true,</i>
<i>grand,</i>	<i>great,</i>				

As *un beau garçon*, a fine boy; *un gros ventre*, a big belly; *de bon pain*, good bread; *un petit visage*, a little face; *un brave officier*, a brave officer; *un chétif cheval*, a sorry horse; &c.

Most other adnouns are almost indifferently placed before or after the noun: at least it is only by reading good books, one can learn which are better put before, and which after. Thus one will have you say, *le haut style*, and *le style sublime*, the lofty style; *les campagnes voisines*, the neighbouring fields; *les bords lointains*, the remote shores; *un habit vieux*, an old coat; *du vin vieux*, o'd wine; and never *du vieux vin*, *le style haut*, *le sublime style*, &c.

*Nu* (naked) is one of the adnouns that come after the noun; yet it comes before, and is declinable, in one particular case, when jointly with its noun it makes a compound word. Thus tho' we say *la tête nue*, *les pieds nus* (with one's head or feet bare), we nevertheless say also *être nu-tête* (to be uncovered), *marcher nu-pieds* (to walk without shoes and stockings).

4°. When the noun is attended by two adnouns, it is sometimes indifferent to put them before or after it: as *un homme méchant, & ingénieux*, or *un ingénieux & méchant homme*, an ingenious and wicked man; but it is more sure to put them after, for we don't say *un méchant & ingénieux homme*.

If the noun has three or more adnouns belonging to it, they must absolutely be put after it with the Enclitic *et* before the last: which must likewise be observed, even when there be but two adnouns; for we don't say *un ingénieux méchant homme*, as the

the English do, *un* ingenious wicked man, nor *un désagréable ennuyeux ouvrage*, a disagreeable tedious work.

Some adnouns being construed with certain nouns will come first, and when construed with others will come last. Thus we say,

<i>homme juste</i> ,	a just man.	<i>juste prix</i> ,	reasonable rate.
<i>action juste</i> ,	a just action.	<i>juste défense</i> ,	a just defence.
<i>action basse</i> ,	a mean action.	<i>à bas prix</i> ,	at a low price.

We likewise say, *le bas Languedoc*, *la basse Normandie*, lower Languedoc or Normandy, *la haute, ou basse Saxe*, upper or lower Saxony; *la basse Autriche*, lower Austria; *le bas Rhin*, the lower Rhine; &c. and *les pays-bas*, not *les bas pays*, the low countries, not *le Rhin bas*, *le Rhin bas*, &c.

Some other adnouns, which will be put after the noun when they are taken in the proper sense, must be put before it when they are taken in the figurative; as

Proper Sense.

<i>un fruit mûr</i> ,	ripe fruit.
<i>un homme maigre</i> ,	a thin man.
<i>une femme vive</i> ,	a quick woman.
<i>un homme bon</i> ,	a good-natured man.
<i>un homme pauvre</i> ,	a poor man.

Figurative Sense.

<i>une mûre délibération</i> ,	a mature deliberation.
<i>une maigre chère</i> ,	poor fare.
<i>une vive douleur</i> ,	a smart or sharp pain.
<i>un bon homme</i> ,	one who means no harm.
<i>un pauvre homme</i> ,	a sorry fellow.

Many adnouns may be used substantively in French, which the genius of the English Tongue don't allow, I shall take notice of them in a more proper place.

§ II. Of adnouns some always require after them either a noun or a verb, which they govern: as *digne de louange*, praise-worthy; *digne d'être aimé*, worthy to be loved; *capable d'enseigner*, capable to teach; *propre à tout*, fit for any thing; *il n'est pas propre à commander en chef*, he is not fit to command in chief; &c.

Some will be used absolutely without being ever attended by any noun or verb: as *sage*, wise; *vertueux*, virtuous; *incurable*, incurable; *intrépide*, undaunted; &c.

Others may be construed both with and without a noun; as *C'est une femme insensible*, She is a woman without any sensibility. *Elle est insensible à l'amour*, She is insensible and a stranger to the passion of love. *Il vit content*, He lives content; *Il est content de sa condition*, He is contented with his condition.

1°. The following adnouns require the preposition *de* before the next noun. Observe that some of them require in English the preposition *at* or *with* before it.

<i>digne</i> ,	worthy.	<i>mécontent</i> ,	discontent-	<i>enragé</i> ,	enraged.
<i>indigne</i> ,	unworthy.		ed.	<i>avide</i> ,	greedy.
<i>capable</i> ,	capable.	<i>comblé</i> ,	loaded, heapt	<i>las</i> ,	tired.
<i>incapable</i> ,	incapable.		up.	<i>fatigué</i> ,	fatigued.
<i>aise</i> ,	glad.	<i>taxé</i> ,	taxed.	<i>ennuyé</i> ,	weary.
<i>ravi</i> ,	overjoyed.	<i>chargé</i> ,	loaded.	<i>libre</i> ,	free.
<i>joyeux</i> ,	joyful.	<i>accusé</i> ,	accused.	<i>qualifié</i> ,	one that has
<i>content</i> ,	contented.	<i>contrit</i> ,	sorrowful.		the character of, &c.

as likewise adnouns signifying *Fulness, Emptiness, Plenty or Want*: as *Il est digne de louange*, he is worthy of praise. *Indigne de l'estime que j'ai pour lui*, unworthy of the esteem which I have for him. *Capable or incapable de servir sa patrie*, capable or incapable to serve one's country. *Comblé d'honneurs*, loaded with honours. *Taxé d'avarice*, charged with avarice. *Chargé de dettes*, deep in debt. *Accusé de mensonge or d'avoir menti*, accused of lying. *Je suis aise or ravi de son succès*, I am glad, or overjoyed at his success. *Fatigué de courir*, fatigued with running. *Ennuyé de la vie or de vivre*, weary of life. *Il est qualifié d'ivrogne*, he has the character of a drunkard. *Avide de gloire*, greedy of glory, &c.

2°. The following adnouns require the preposition *à* before the next noun.

<i>adroit</i> ,	dexterous.	<i>ingénieux</i> ,	ingenious.	<i>propre</i> ,	fit.
<i>bon</i> ,	good.	<i>contraire</i> ,	contrary.	<i>ardent</i> ,	} eager.
<i>beau</i> ,	fine.	<i>opposé</i> ,	opposite.	<i>âpre</i> ,	
<i>laid</i> ,	ugly.	<i>conforme</i> ,	conform-	<i>occupé</i> ,	busy.
<i>agréable</i> ,	agreeable.		able.	<i>lent</i> ,	slow.
<i>désagréable</i> ,	disagree-	<i>semblable</i> ,	like.	<i>nuisible</i> ,	hurtful.
	able.	<i>pareil</i> ,	alike.	<i>prompt</i> ,	quick.
<i>comparable</i> ,	compa-	<i>enclin</i> ,	inclined.	<i>prêt</i> ,	ready.
	rable.	<i>adonné</i> ,	given, ad-	<i>sensible</i> ,	sensible.
<i>agile</i> .	nimble.		dicted.	<i>insensible</i> ,	insensible.
<i>alerte</i> ,	brisk, pert.	<i>porté</i> ,	apt, prone.	<i>souple</i> ,	pliant.
<i>habile</i> ,	skilful.	<i>sujet</i> ,	subject, liable.	<i>aise</i> ,	easy.

And all adnouns signifying *Inclination, Aptness, Fitness and Unfitness, Advantage and Disadvantage, Profit or Disprofit, Pleasure or Displeasure, Due, Submission, Resistance and Difficulty*: as

*Je suis sensible au froid*, I am sensible of cold. *Il est insensible aux affronts*, he is sensible of affronts. *Etre porté ou enclin à quelque chose*, to be apt, or inclined to something. *Lent au travail*, slow to work. *Prompt au jeu, ou à jouer*, quick to play. *Propre à tout*, fit for any thing. *Nuisible à la santé*, hurtful to health. *Souple au marteau*, malleable, &c.

3°. These adnouns signifying *Dimension, haut*, high, tall; *profond*, deep; *épais*, thick; *gros*, big; *large*, wide, broad, and *long*, long, which come after the words of the measure of magnitude in English, come before in French, and are attended by the preposition *de*: as,

*Une colonne haute de soixante pieds*. A column sixty feet high.

*Le fossé est profond de vingt pieds, & large de dix*,

The ditch is twenty feet deep, and ten broad.

Or

Or (which is much better, and more generally used) the adnoun of the dimension is turned into its noun in French, with the word of the measure before as in English, but so that both the word of the measure, and that of the dimension, are preceded by the preposition *de*: as

*Un homme de six pieds de hauteur*, A man six feet high.

*Un fossé de vingt pieds de profondeur*, A ditch twenty feet deep.

And the verb substantive *to be* is also turned into the verb *to have*, governing the noun of the measure, with the preposition before that of dimension: as

*Le fossé a vingt pieds de profondeur. Et dix de largeur*,

The ditch is twenty feet deep, and ten broad.

The words of measures are,

<i>une aune</i> ,	an ell.	<i>un arpent</i> ,	an acre.	<i>une brasse</i> ,	a fathom.
<i>une verge</i> ,	a yard.	<i>une perche</i> ,	a rod.	<i>une toise</i> ,	{ another measure contain- ing six feet in length.
<i>un pied</i> ,	a foot.	<i>un pas</i> ,	a pace.		
<i>un pouce</i> ,	an inch.	<i>une lieue</i> ,	a league.		
<i>une ligne</i> ,	a line.	<i>un mille</i> ,	a mile.		
<i>une coudée</i> ,	a cubit.	<i>un stade</i> ,	{ a stade or furlong.		
<i>un empan</i> ,	a span.				

§ III. 1°. We have seen that the highest or lowest degree of comparison is expressed in French by the particles *le*, *la*, *les*, put before the adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, followed by the adnoun. But as (according to the first observations of the 2d section of this chapter) some adnouns come before the noun, and others after, so whenever it is the case of the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree to come after the noun, it requires the article before *plus* or *moins*, tho' the noun that comes before has it already (with the preposition), or what is the same, tho' the foregoing noun is in the second or third relation: as

*C'est la coutume des peuples les plus barbares*,

It is the custom of the most barbarous nations.

*Il a obéi au commandement le plus injuste qu'on puisse faire*,

He has obeyed the most unjust command that can be made.

*C'est une des femmes les plus belles de Paris*, She is one of the most beautiful women in Paris; which is equal to *c'est une des plus belles femmes de Paris*.

2°. The noun that follows the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree is always preceded by the preposition *de* (or the particles *du, des*) generally rendered into English by *in*: as

*Le plus savant homme du monde,*

The most learned man *in* the world.

*La plus impertinente des femmes,*

The most impertinent of women.

3°. When the superlative is followed by a verb, if that verb is in English the present, or preterite tense, or their compounds, it must be put in French in the subjunctive, preceded by the relative *qui*: as

*L'homme le plus savant qui soit,*

The most learned man that *is*.

*La plus belle personne que j'aie jamais vue.*

The handsomest person *I've* ever seen.

And if the superlative is of an adverb and not of an adnoun, the verb must be preceded by *que*: as

*Le plus soigneusement qu'il se puisse, or qu'on puisse,*

The most careful that can be.

4°. The particle *than* that follows the comparative in English, is rendered in French by *que* before the next noun: as

*Il est plus habile que son frère,*

He is more ingenious *than* his brother.

*Il agit moins sincèrement que vous,*

He acts, or deals less sincerely *than* you.

5°. If *than* is followed by a verb, it must be made in French by the infinitive with the particle *de* after *que*, or by the imperfect of the indicative, or its compound, with the conjunction *si* after *que*: as

*Il aime mieux demeurer à rien faire que de travailler,*

He rather chuses to be idle *than* work.

*Il est plus heureux que s'il régnait,*

He is happier *than* to reign, or *than* if he reigned.

And if the verb that follows *than* in English is not in, nor can be rendered by the infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before it: as

*Il est plus habile que je ne croyois,*

He is more ingenious *than* I thought.

But

But if there comes before the verb a conjunction governing it, the negative must be left out: as

*Je le trouve à présent moins beau que quand je l'achetai,*

I now find it less handsome than when I bought it.

6°. The simple comparative *plus* and *moins* meeting with a number, are attended by the preposition *de*: as

*Il a plus de vingt ans, and never plus que.*

He is above twenty.

Therefore the preposition *above* before a noun of number must always be rendered into French by *plus de*.

7°. The preposition *by* and the adverb *than*, used to join a certain definite quantity to the adnoun or adverb of the comparison, are expressed in French by *de*: as

*Il est plus grand de toute la tête,*

He is taller by a whole head.

*Nous sommes plus d'à moitié persuadés,*

We are more than half convinced.

*Beaucoup* and *peu*, denoting comparison, have likewise the particle *de* before them: as

*Il est de beaucoup plus grand, He is taller by much.*

*Si vous êtes plus gros que lui, c'est de peu,*

If you are bigger than he, it is by little.

8°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by *que* after the adnoun, are Englished, *si* and *aussi* by *so*, before the adnoun, and *que*, by *that* or *as* after it, or by *as*, both before and after; but *aussi* gives more force to the comparison than *si*: as

*Je ne le croyois pas si brave, or aussi brave qu'il est,*

I did not think him *so* courageous *as* he is.

*Est-il si méchant qu'on le dit? Is he so wicked as they say?*

*Elle est aussi belle que sa sœur, She is as handsome as her sister.*

*Tant* and *autant*, followed likewise by *que* (as much, so much as), are construed with verbs and nouns, as *si* and *aussi* with adnouns: as

*Elle n'a pas tant d'esprit que sa sœur, mais elle a autant de vivacité, & elle est aussi aimable: She has not so much wit as her sister, but she has as much liveliness, and is as amiable as she.*

*Je l'estime autant que votre frère,*

I esteem him *as much as* your brother.

*L'un est aussi savant que l'autre, The one is as learned as the other.*

*Si* is used in negative propositions, and in affirmative, only when there is no comparison of equality made between two things: and *aussi*, in affirmative propositions with comparison: as *Il n'est rien de si doux que la liberté*: Nothing is so sweet as liberty.

*Elle aime si violemment qu'elle en perd la raison*: She loves so excessively, that she loses her reason, or grows distracted.

*Le plaisir de l'étude est un plaisir aussi tranquille que celui des autres passions est inquiet*: The pleasure of studying is as calm as that of the other passions is anxious.

9°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, *plus* and *le plus*, must be repeated before each adnoun or adverb governed, as likewise *tant* before each noun, and *autant* before each verb, when there are many in the sentence: as

*Il est si sage, si prudent, si éclairé & si discret, qu'on peut en sûreté lui confier un secret*: He is so wise, so prudent, knowing, and discreet, that one may safely entrust him with a secret.

*Un jeune homme aussi sage, aussi capable, & qui prend tant de peine, mérite qu'on le protège*: So sober a young man, so capable, and who takes so much pains, deserves to be protected.

*Son amant est plus beau, plus jeune, & plus riche qu'elle*,  
Her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer than she is.

Observe all along that the verb substantive *to be*, that ordinarily follows *than* and the comparative or superlative in English, is always left out in French, and that we are then contented with *que* and the pronoun, without a verb after it (*plus riche qu'elle*, and not *qu'elle est*, as in English, richer than she is).

10°. *As*, repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into French either by *aussi* and *que*, or *le plus* and *que* with the adverb between: as, Come as often as you can.

*Venez aussi souvent que vous pourrez, or le plus souvent que vous pourrez.*

Lastly, these comparative ways of speaking:

*The more an hydropick drinks, the more thirsty he is,*

*The more I see her, the more I hate her,*

*The richer men are, the happier they are, or*

*Men are so much the more happy, as they are more rich,*

*The poorer people are, the less care they have, &c.*

are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins* beginning each part of the sentence, and followed by the noun, or pronoun subject to the verb; then the verb, then the adnoun of the comparison, if there be any, or even the noun, if there is one governed by the verb: thus

*Plus*

- Plus un hydropique boit, plus il a soif,
- Plus je la vois, plus je la hais,
- Plus on est riche, plus on est heureux, or
- On est d'autant plus heureux qu'on est plus riche,
- Plus on est pauvre, moins on a d'embarras, &c.

CHAP. IV.

Of PRONOUNS, and first of Pronouns Personal.

§ 1. **O**F Pronouns personal, some are *Conjunctive*, that is, always come before the verb, whether they govern or are governed; the other *Disjunctive*, that is, governed of prepositions, and following the construction usual to nouns. But the chief thing to be observed, is, the order in which the conjunctives are placed, when several of them meet together before the verb, especially with the negatives *ne* and *pas*.

1°. The personal Conjunctives *je, nous; tu, vous; il, elle; ils, elles;* come before the verb as its subject, either immediately, as *Je dis* I say, or with one or more pronouns, or the negative *ne* between, as *Je vous dis* I tell you, *Je ne dis pas* I do not say; but they will not admit of any adverb, or other word, between themselves and the verb, as in English. Therefore we don't say *Je toujours vois* I always see, *Je dans ce temps-là,* or *J'alors lui dis* I at that time, or I then told him; but *Je vois toujours, Je lui dis dans ce temps-là,* or *alors.*

Only in certain forms, the word *souffigné* and the title and quality of the person that speaks, is put between the Conjunctive and the verb thus, *Je souffigné déclare* I underwritten declare.

*Je, Jean Smith, Docteur en Médecine, certifie, &c.*

I, John Smith, Doctor in Physic, do certify.

The same personal conjunctives come after their verbs in these following cases:

1<sup>st</sup>. After these six verbs, *dire* to say, *répondre* to answer, *répliquer* to reply, *continuer* to continue, *poursuivre* to pursue, and *s'écrier* to cry out, by Parenthesis, as is practised in English with *to say*, tho' not so generally as in French.

*Vous étudiez, dites-vous, or dit-il.* You study, say you, or you say, or says he.

*Vous voyez, disent-ils, or répondit-il, or s'écria-t-il, l'état où vous sommes réduits.*

You see, they say, or answered he, or cried he out, the condition we are reduced to.

2<sup>dly</sup>. With the Preterite subjunctive of *devoir*, and *pouvoir*; which way of speaking (with *devoir*) may be resolved by the conjunction *quand* with the Conditional; as

*Dussiez-vous me condamner, or Quand vous devriez me condamner,*

Tho' you should condemn me.

*Puissiez-vous and Puissiez-vous être heureux,*  
May you be happy.

3<sup>d</sup>l. After these Conjunctions *ainsi, aussi, peut-être, du moins, au moins, en vain,* and *à peine*: as

*Ainsi, or aussi mérite-t-il d'être avancé,*

Therefore he deserves to be preferred.

*Du moins deviez-vous m'en avertir,*

At least you should have told me of it.

*En vain cherche-t-il des excuses,*

In vain he seeks for an excuse.

*Peut-être s' imagine-t-il,*

Perhaps he thinks.

*À peine eut-il parlé,*

He had hardly spoken, &c.

But observe, that in this last case it is an elegance only, and not a law of Grammar, to put the conjunctives after their verbs, and that we say too, *aussi il mérite d'être avancé, du moins vous deviez m'en avertir, &c.* And *dussiez-vous me condamner* is said by ellipsis for *quand vous devriez me condamner*; and *puissiez-vous être content*, for *je souhaite que vous soyez content*, that tense of *pouvoir* being then used as and for what Grammarians call the Optative Mood of *souhaiter* to wish.

2<sup>o</sup>. When a noun and a pronoun, or many nouns and pronouns meet together with the verb as its subject, it must besides have for its immediate subject a conjunctive of the plural number, and the other pronouns must be disjunctive, and may come (as also the other nouns) either before or after the verb: as

*Lui & moi nous apprenons le François, or Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi*; He and I learn French, or We learn French, he and I.

*Mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi, nous allâmes hier à la comédie, or Nous allâmes hier à la comédie, mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi*: My brother, sister, cousin, and I, went yesterday to the play.

*Nous sommes contents lui & moi, } He and I are contented.*  
*Lui & moi nous sommes contents, }*

*Je suis content & lui aussi*: I am contented and he too.

To this rule there is an exception; for tho' the disjunctives of the first and second persons, *moi* and *toi*, can never be construed as subjects to a verb, without another conjunctive, yet when the disjunctives are put before the verb, and the last of them is a pronoun of the third person (*lui* or *eux*), the conjunctive is sometimes left out, and sometimes expressed before the following verb (and therefore the disjunctive *lui* and *eux* are then only subject to and coming before the verb), and sometimes also it is indifferent to express it or not. It is not possible to determine positively when after those disjunctives the conjunctive must be left out, and when not, nor when it is indifferent to express it or not. But these cases occurring very seldom, and being almost always confined to common conversation, it must suffice to take notice here of the following instances:

We don't say, *Mon frère & lui ils sont arrivés*, but we suppress the conjunctive and say, *Mon frère & lui sont arrivés*, My brother and he are arrived. On the contrary,

We don't say, *Je demeure & lui part*; we by all means repeat the conjunctive and say *Je demeure & lui il part*, I stay and he goes; and it is indifferent to say *Je demeurai & lui s'en alla*, or *Je demeurai & lui il s'en alla*, I stayed, and he went away.

But observe 1st, that it is only in common conversation that it is indifferent whether you repeat the conjunctive or not, and that except the first instance wherein the noun and pronoun may equally well come after the verb, as *Ils sont arrivés mon frère & lui* (which is the best way to avoid the difficulty), the conjunctive may be left out sometimes, as in the second instance; so it is always safe, and never improper, to begin the sentence with the conjunctive, even in common conversation, *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi*: He and I learn French.

2dly, That the disjunctives *lui* and *eux*, may in a regular speech be the subject of and come before the verb, without any conjunctive: But,

1°. Either the disjunctives must be attended by the adnoun *seul*: as *Plus je vis avec le Cacique & sa sœur, plus j'ai de peine à me persuader qu'ils soient de cette nation: eux seuls connoissent & respectent la vertu*. The more I live with the Cacick and his sister, the less I can believe that they are of that nation: *they alone* know and respect virtue.

2°. Or it must be separated from its verb, by another middle sentence joining to it, by the means of a relative or gerund: as, *Lui qui ne savoit pas qu'ils étoient réconciliés, fut fort surpris de les voir ensemble*: He, who did not know that they were reconciled, was much surprised to see them together.

*Eux, voyant que la pluralité des suffrages l'emporteroit, commencèrent par protester*: They, seeing that the majority of the votes would carry it, began with a protest.

3°. Or the sentences wherein they are used, relate the particulars of some fact declared in general in the former sentence: as

*Les deux frères & le cousin ont commis le meurtre; eux ont lié l'homme, & lui l'a assommé*. The two brothers and the cousin have done the murder; *they* have tied the man, and *he* has knocked him on the head.

3°. And if the pronouns are governed by the verb, either as its object, or end, the first must be a conjunctive, coming before the verb, and the other, or others, Disjunctive, and put after it: as

*On me parle aussi bien qu'à vous & à eux*: I am spoke to as well as he and they, or They speak to me, as well as to you and to them.

4°. Observe that the conjunctives of the third person of both genders, *il, ils, elle, elles*, are used with respect to irrational and inanimate creatures; which pronouns are Englished by *it* and *they* for the plural: as

speaking of	{	a tree,	<i>Il porte beaucoup de fruit,</i>	<i>It</i> bears much fruit,
		an apple,	<i>Elle n'est pas mûre,</i>	<i>It</i> is not ripe.
		a horse,	<i>Il boite,</i>	<i>He</i> is lame.
		a hen,	<i>Elle ne pond plus,</i>	<i>It</i> or <i>she</i> lays no more eggs.

Moreover *il* is used before verbs impersonal, or rather verbs are very often used impersonally with this pronoun, which is commonly rendered into English by *it* or *there*; as *il arriva*, it, or there happened: as likewise before verbs neuter, followed by another subject besides, which second subject is the only one in English; as

*Il est arrivé un accident,*  
An accident has happened, or  
There is an accident happened.  
*Il viendra tantôt quelqu'un,*  
Somebody will come by and by.

It is the same when questions are asked: as

*Est-il arrivé quelque accident?*

Did some accident happen?

*Vendra-t-il du monde, ou viendra-t-il quelqu'un tant?*

Will somebody come by and by?

But in this last case it most times comes the last, and the noun the first, as we shall see when we treat of Questions. But observe further, that in these impersonal ways of speaking, the noun that follows the verb requires before it the particle *de* or *un*, or some pronoun or adnoun indeterminate, such as *quelqu'un*, *divers*, *certain*, and never takes the article (except with the limiting particle), as in these instances:

*Il est arrivé un accident,* for

*Un accident est arrivé.*

*Il viendra quelqu'un, du monde, des gens, certaines ou diverses personnes,* instead of *Quelqu'un, du monde viendra; des gens, certaines personnes viendront,* Somebody, some people will come.

The disjunctives *moi*, *lui*, *eux*, as likewise *nous* and *vous*, which are both conjunctives and disjunctives may come both before and after a verb, but with another conjunctive, unless the verb is in the infinitive, or imperative: as

*Vous dites cela, & moi je l'ai vu.*

You say that, and I have seen it.

*Lui, il soutient cela, or Il soutient cela, lui?*

He maintains that, doth he?

*Moi, faire cela!*

Should, or could I do that!

*Me soupçonner de cela, moi!*

Should, or could I be suspected of that!

*Faites-moi, Faites-nous cela comme il faut,*

Do that as it should be.

Which pronouns, thus used as a redundancy, serve to give more weight to what one says, especially with the infinitive: for thus we intimate a sort of reproach to those we speak to, for their believing us guilty of what is mentioned: but observe that in the last instance *moi* and *nous* are the second disjunctives of the third relation, used only with the imperative; and that it is only in familiar conversation they may be thus used as a redundancy.

5° The second state of the pronouns personal (*de moi*, *de lui*, *de vous*, &c.) cannot be, strictly speaking, used after a noun in the second relation to which they are joined by the Enclitic &: but one must make use of a pronominal adnoun relative, or a pronoun relative. Therefore instead of saying

*C'est le sentiment de mon frère & de moi*, or *& de lui*, it is better to say, *C'est le sentiment de mon frère & le mien*, or *le sien*, or take this turn, *C'est mon sentiment & celui de mon frère*: That is the opinion of my brother, and mine too.

Except in the following expressions, wherein the pronominal adnoun cannot be used as in English, but in the second relation of the person, governed by a noun that comes first.

*Pour l'amour de moi,*

For my sake, the sake of me.

*A cause de moi,*

On my account.

*Pour l'amour de lui, d'elle, d'eux.*

For his, her, their sake.

*En dépit de moi,*

In spite of me.

Or when the pronoun personal is compound, viz. of *moi*, *lui*, *elle*, and *même*: as *Je ne veux pas être homicide de moi-même*, I won't be my own self's murderer. And tho' we say *pour l'amour de moi*, yet we don't say, *l'amour de soi* self-love; but *l'amour de soi-même*, or *l'amour propre*: but we say as the English do, *pour mon plaisir* for my pleasure, *pour son plaisir* for her or his pleasure.

§ II. 1°. When the verb governs the pronoun personal, it must come between the subject and the verb: as

*Je le vois*, I see him. *Vous lui parlez*, You speak to him, or to her. *Il leur est avantageux*, it is advantageous to them; and not *Je vois lui*, or *le*, *Je parle à lui*, or *à elle*, *Il est avantageux à eux*.

Except, 1st, When the verb is at the imperative, without a negation; for then the pronoun comes last: and if it is of the first or second person, and in the third state, the second disjunctives, *moi*, *toi*, are used, instead of the conjunctives *me* and *te*: as

*Portez-le*, carry him; *voyez-la*, see her; *parlez-lui*, speak to him; *dites-moi*, tell me: and not *dites me* nor *me dites*, nor *dites à moi*; though we say with the two pronouns, *donnez-m'en*, give me some; *vous me parlez*, you speak to me; *parlez-moi*, speak to me; and with a negation, *ne me parlez-pas*, do not speak to me. *Voyons-les*, let us see them; *ne les voyons pas*, don't let us see them.

But if two imperatives come together, with a conjunction copulative, the latter will have the pronoun come before it: as

*Voyez-la & la consolez*, and not *voyez-la & consolez-la*, see her and comfort her. At least the first construction is much better.

2dly, With the verbs *être* (signifying *belonging*), *avoir*, *penser*, *songer*, *viser* (respecting to a person and not a thing), *aller*, *venir*, *courir*, *accourir*, *boire*; as likewise with reciprocal verbs, the pronoun in the third state governed must be a disjunctive, and come after them: as

*Ce livre est à moi*, and not *m'est*,

That book is mine, or belongs to me.

*Vous en avez un à lui*, and not *vous lui en avez un*,

You have one of his.

In these instances, we don't use the pron. posses. *mien* as in English instead of the personal *moi*, because in the first instance *être* signifies *appartenir*, which governs the third state; and in the other, *un livre à lui* is said by Ellipsis for *un livre qui est à lui*; tho' with *appartenir* we say, *qui lui appartient*, not *qui appartient à lui* that belongs to him,

*Je songe*, or *Je pense à vous*, and not *Je vous songe*, &c.

I am thinking of you.

*Il vise à eux*, he aims at them.

*Elle boit à vous*, she drinks to you.

*Je vais à vous, I go to you. Ils viennent à moi, they come to me. Nous nous fions à vous; we trust you, and not nous nous vous fions. Cela s'adresse à moi, that is directed to me, and not cela se m'adresse.*

2<sup>dly</sup>, When the verb governs two pronouns in the third state, so that they are used as by opposition; as likewise, when it rather denotes the order in which a thing must be done, the pronouns must be disjunctive, and come after the verb: as

*Je parle à lui & non à vous, (or) C'est à lui que je parle & non pas à vous: I speak to him and not to you.*

*Buvez à elle, puis à la compagnie: drink to her, then to the company.*

*Donnez à lui d'abord, ensuite à elle, puis aux autres:*

*Give to him first, then to her, then to the others.*

2°. In all other cases, disjunctives must be used, as in answer to questions, and after prepositions: as

*Qui est-ce qui dit cela? lui & eux, or c'est lui, ce sont eux:*

*Who says that? He and they, or it is he, it is they.*

*Qui cherchez-vous? elle & sa fille?*

*Who do you seek for? her and her daughter?*

*C'est lui, it is he. C'est elle, it is she. Ce n'est pas moi, it is not I.*

*Pour moi, for me. Après lui, after him. Devant elle, before her.*

3°. *Ne* and *pas* or *point* are particles answering the English negative *not*. The French put *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound. — *Ne* must always come immediately after the word that expresses the subject, whether a noun or pronoun conjunctive: as

*Je ne parle pas, I do not speak. Vous ne dites point, you don't say.*

*L'homme n'est pas venu, the man is not come.*

Except, 1<sup>st</sup>, When the verb is at the second person of the imperative; in which case *ne*, that always comes before the verb, comes then besides before the pronoun; if the verb is reciprocal; but *pas* always follows the verb: as

*Ne vous fâchez pas, don't be angry. Ne faites pas cela, don't do that.*

2<sup>dly</sup>, In sentences of Interrogation: as

*Ne fais-je pas ce que vous me dites? Don't I do what you bid me?*

3<sup>dly</sup>, On such occasions when the Pronouns conjunctive governing the verb come after it: as

*Aussi ne prétend-il pas cela? Neither does he pretend to that.*

*See those cases, pag. 230.*

4°. When the verb is attended by two pronouns personal, viz. one in the fourth state, and the other in the third, the pronoun in the third state must come before that in the fourth: as

*Je vous le dis*, I tell it you. *On me la donne*, it is given me.

Except only when the pronoun in the third state is of the third person (*lui* or *leur*), or when the verb is at the imperative; for then the conjunctive of the fourth relation comes before that of the third: as

*Vous le lui dites*, you tell it him or her. *Il la leur refuse*, he refuses it to them. *Donnez-le-moi*, give it me. Whereas we say in the indic. *Il me le donne*, he gives it to me.

5°. *y* and *en* come after other pronouns, and immediately before the verb: as

*Je vous les y enverrai*, I will send them to you there.

*Je ne vous en parle pas*, I don't speak to you of it, or of them.

And when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* comes before *en*: as

*Je vous y en enverrai*, I will send you some there.

*Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir*,

I will remit you none there, (money, for instance.)

6°. The pronouns governed of the verb come after it in this following case (but in the same order as when they come before it).

When the verb is in the second persons, and first plur. of the imperative, without negative. Thus tho' we say in the third persons, *Qu'il le fasse*, let him do it. *Qu'ils lui en parlent*, let them mention it to him; or in the other persons, with a negative,

*Ne nous y fions pas*, let us not trust to that;

*Ne lui en donnez pas*, do not give him any: yet we say in the first person plur. and the second persons, without negative,

*Fions-nous-y*, let us trust to that, *Donnez-lui en*, give him some.

With the negative we say,

*Ne les y menez pas*, Don't carry them there.

*Ne l' y menez pas*, Don't carry him there,

*Ne nous y menez pas*, Don't carry us there.

*Ne m' y menez pas*, Don't carry me there.

*Ne m' y envoyez pas*, Don't send me there.

*Ne m' y portez pas*, Don't carry me there.

Without the negative we say,

*Menez-les y*, Carry them there.

*Menez-l' y*, Carry him there.

*Menez nous y*, Carry us there; but with a pronoun of the first person sing. instead of saying after the same manner.

*Menez*

*Menez -moi-y,* } we say, { *Menez -y-moi,* Take me there.  
*Envoyez-moi-y,* } { *Envoyez-y-moi,* Send me there.  
*Portez -moi-y,* } { *Portez -y-moi,* Carry me there,  
 and never *Menez moi-y,* nor *menez-m'y,* &c.

In sentences of Interrogation the conjunctive pronouns come also after the verb.

§ III. 1<sup>o</sup>. The several ways of asking questions in French are,  
 1<sup>st</sup>, With the Pronoun Interrogative *qui*, and *lequel*, as *Qui croit cela?* Who believes that? *Lequel des deux vous a plu?* Which of the two has pleased you?

2<sup>dly</sup>, With the adnoun or incomplete pronoun *quel*, and the noun of the subject of the question before the verb, as in the expositive form: as

*Quel homme seroit assez hardi pour,* &c.

What man should be so bold as to, &c.

3<sup>dly</sup>, If the subject of the question is a pronoun personal, or the primitive demonstrative *ce*, it comes after the verb, if the tense is simple; or between the auxiliary and participle, if it is compound: as

*Est-ce votre livre?* Is it your book?

*Avez-vous fait?* Have you done?

*Connoissez-vous monsieur?* Do you know the gentleman?

4<sup>thly</sup>, If the subject of the question is a noun, or a pronoun indeterminate, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun, then the verb, if the tense is simple, or the auxiliary if it is compound, and moreover the conjunctive *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, or *on*, agreeing in gender and number with the subject: as

*L'homme vient-il?* Does the man come?

*La femme est-elle venue?* Is the woman come?

*Les enfans peuvent-ils s'appliquer?* Can children apply themselves?

*Quelqu'un fait-il ce que vous faites,* or *Fait-on ce que vous faites?*

Does any body do what you do?

*Personne ne fait-il cela?* Does nobody do that?

5<sup>thly</sup>, If the verb of the question is reciprocal, it begins with one of the two pronouns, if the subject is expressed by a pronoun; or with a noun and a pronoun, if it is expressed by a noun; and the other pronoun comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle, according as the tense is either simple or compound: as

*Vous souvenez-vous de cela?* Do you remember that?

*Ma femme se repent-elle de sa faute?*

Does my wife repent of her fault?

*Les*

*Les matelots se sont-ils enrichis dans cette expédition ?*

Did the sailors grow rich in that expedition ?

And if the verb of the question ends with a vowel, *t* must be added to it between two hyphens (*-t-*), in order to avoid the hiatus. Therefore write and pronounce *Aime-t-il*, does he love ? *Va-t-elle*, does she go ? and never *aime il*, *va elle*.

2°. The pronouns attending the verb keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative, as *Le ferai-je ?* shall I do it ? *Le lui direz-vous ?* will you tell it him ? *Me le commandez-vous ?* do you command it me ? *Y en porterons-nous ?* shall we carry some thither ? *Ne vous l'a-t-il pas dit ?* did he not tell it you ?

It is to be noted, that it is usual in French, among polite well-bred people, and when we speak to one of a higher station, or to whom we shew respect, to speak to them with the pronoun of the third person, as if we were speaking of somebody else. Thus, to ask you how do you do, well-bred people say

*Comment se porte monsieur, or madame ?*

How does your honour do ?

How does your ladyship do ?

*Monsieur apprend-il le François ?*

Do you learn French ?

*Monsieur a-t-il voyagé en Italie ?*

instead of *avez-vous voyagé, &c.*

Have you travell'd to Italy ?

*Sa Majesté l'ordonne-t-elle ?*

Does your Majesty order it ?

(or) *Si sa Majesté l'ordonne,*

If your Majesty orders it.

We have said, that when the question is asked with a pronoun personal of the first person, that pronoun comes after the verb thus, *suis-je ?* am I ? *entends-je ?* do I hear ? But observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, that in verbs of the first conjugation, wherein the first person ends in *e* not founded, that *e* is changed into *é* acute, before the pronoun, which ends also in *e* not founded ; as

*Aime-je ?* do I love ?

*N'étudie-je pas ?* don't I study ?

2<sup>dly</sup>, That no question can be asked in this manner with some verbs, especially these five, *mentir* to lie, *perdre* to lose, *rompre* to break, *sentir* to feel, *dormir* to sleep : so that we don't say

*Mente-je,*

*Perde-je,*

*Rompé-je,*

*Senti-je,*

*Dormé-je,*

*mens-je,* do I lie ?

*perds-je,* do I lose ?

*romps-je,* do I break ?

*sens-je,* do I feel ?

*dors-je,* do I sleep ?

the former, because *é* acute can't be used in this manner but with verbs of the first conjugation ; and the latter (*mens-je*) because it sounds too harsh, and can besides occasion some ambiguity in speech. Therefore in the case of these verbs, the question must be asked after another manner : as *Est-ce que je mens ?* or *Croyez-vous que je mente ?* Do you think that I lie ? *Trouvez-vous que je rompe cela comme il faut ?* Do you think that I break that as it should be ? or speak without interrogation,

3<sup>dly</sup>, This way of asking a question (*Est-ce que*) is of great use in French : but it is less used in order to be informed merely of any thing, which is the chief purpose of interrogations, than to

to assure others that we need not be informed of it, or that the case is not as they think. As likewise when we don't expect a thing, or we fear lest it should happen, we shew our surprise or fear by *Est-ce que*. For instance, when I ask this question, *Pleut-il?* Does it rain? I only want to know whether it rains or no. But when I say *Est-ce qu'il pleut?* I besides shew my surprise at it, which is thus Englished: *It don't rain, does it?* Again, when I say *A-t-il du jugement?* Has he any judgment? I want to be informed whether the person spoken of has any judgment or no. But by this other question, *Est-ce qu'il a du jugement?* I intimate that I know very well that he has no judgment.

By this question, *Viendra-t-il?* Will he come? I want to know whether he will come or no: and by this other, *Est-ce qu'il viendra?* I shew my surprise at, or fear of his coming.

Again, by this question, *Est-ce aujourd'hui fête?* Is this day a holy-day? I desire to be informed whether or no this is a holy-day; but by this other, *Est-ce que c'est aujourd'hui fête?* I shew my surprise and wonder at this day being a holy-day.

Sometimes also this way of speaking is used to deter people from believing what is said; as *Est-ce que je joue!* which is as much as *Je ne joue point*, and cannot be (I think) properly Englished thus, *Do I game?* or *Am I a gamester?* but (if I am not very much mistaken) thus, *Who games? not I\*.*

4thly, The same way of asking a question with a negative (*n'est-ce pas que*) signifies always, that we take that for certain, which is the subject of the question, and want only to be confirmed in it, or to have it approved by others; and *n'est-ce pas* may equally well come at the beginning of the sentence with *que*, or at the end with a comma before: as

<i>N'est-ce pas qu'il pleut?</i>	} or {	<i>Il pleut, n'est-ce pas, It rains,</i>
		<i>don't it?</i>
<i>N'est-ce pas qu'il a du jugement?</i>	} or {	<i>Il a du jugement, n'est-ce pas?</i>
		<i>he has judgment, han't he?</i>

\* A modern Grammarian is totally mistaken, who reprehends Chambaud for having spent more than a whole page about this way of asking a question *Est-ce que*, which is hardly used with the first person singular of the present and preterite tenses in the indicative mood of some verbs wherein the simple way is too harsh, and never with the other *je* forms, unless we want to shew surprise or fear. Therefore never say in France, as a great many people do in England, speaking to a hofier for instance, *est-ce que vous vendez des bas de soie*, do you sell silk stockings? but only *vendez-vous des bas de soie?* for the hofier, instead of answering, yes, Sir; would laugh, and answer you, why not, Sir?

We never say in French *parlé-je*, do I speak? with a grave *é* as the above Grammarian pretends: but *parlé-je?* with an acute *é*.

*N'est-ce pas qu'il viendra ?* } *Il viendra, n'est-ce pas ?* He will  
*N'est-ce pas qu'il joue ?* } or *Il joue, n'est-ce pas ?* He games,  
*N'est-ce pas qu'il fait* } *Il fait froid, n'est-ce pas ?* It is  
*froid ?* } cold, i'n't it ?

Whereas by these questions,

*Ne pleut-il pas ?* Don't it rain ? } we only want  
*N'a-t-il pas de jugement ?* Has he no judgment ? } to be in-  
*Ne viendra-t-il pas ?* Won't he come ? } formed of  
*Ne joue-t-il pas ?* I'n't he a gamester ? } what we  
*Ne fait-il pas froid ?* I'n't it cold ? } ask.

It will not be amiss, when the scholar has learnt so far, to make him conjugate every day a regular verb with an Interrogation, then with a Negative, then both with an Interrogation and Negative together, and with the particles *en* and *y* : which will both make him more ready in the conjugations, and render the dependence of those particles upon the verb more familiar to him.

Examples :

<i>J. parle,</i>	I speak.	<i>J'en envoie,</i>	I send some.
<i>Parlé-je ?</i>	do I speak ?	<i>Je n'en envoie pas,</i>	I send none.
<i>Je ne parle pas,</i>	I don't speak.	<i>J'y en porte,</i>	I carry some thither.
<i>Ne parlé-je pas ?</i>	don't I speak ?	<i>Je n'y en porte pas,</i>	I carry none thither.
<i>J'en parle,</i>	I speak of it.	<i>J'en porté-je,</i>	do I carry any there ?
<i>En parlé-je ?</i>	do I speak of it ?	<i>N'y en porté-je pas, don't</i>	I carry some there ?
<i>Je n'en parle pas,</i>	I don't speak of it.	<i>Vous y en porteriez-je ?</i>	shall I carry ?
<i>N'en parlé-je pas ?</i>	don't I speak of it ?	<i>Ne vous y en porteriez-je pas ?</i>	shall I not carry ?

§ IV. The Pronouns Conjunctives, whether governing, or governed of the verb, that is, whether its subject or object, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

1<sup>st</sup>, These Conjunctives, *je, tu, nous, vous,* are repeated before each verb, when the verbs are in different tenses : as

*Je dis & je dirai toujours,* I say, and will always say.

*Nous avons parlé & nous parlerons encore pour lui,*

We have spoke for him, and will speak again.

When the tenses are the same, they need not be repeated : as

*Je pense & dis qu'il a bien fait,* or *Je pense & je dis qu'il, &c.*

I think and say that he has done very well.

*Nous l'avons vu & touché,* we have seen and touched it.

The Pronouns of the third person, *il, elle, ils, elles,* need not be repeated in common conversation, tho' the tenses vary : as

*Il n'a jamais rien valu, & ne vaudra jamais rien,*

He never was good for any thing, and will always be good for nothing.

*Elle est toujours fille & la sera toute sa vie,* or *elle la sera, &c.*

She is a maid still, and will be so as long as she lives.

2dly, All Conjunctions are repeated, when in the same sentence one passes from the affirmative to the negative, and so reciprocally: as likewise when the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions, *mais* but, *même* even, *cependant* yet, *néanmoins* nevertheless, *ainsi* so, *aussi* therefore, *ou* or, and *que* (standing for a conjunction): as

*Il l'aime, & il ne veut pas en convenir,*

He loves her, and won't own it.

*Il le dit, mais il ne le pense pas,*

He says so, but he don't think so.

*Elle n'en croit rien, & cependant elle ne veut pas l'épouser,*

She believes nothing on't, and yet she won't marry him.

*Il le fait & même il s'en vante, (or) aussi il en convient.*

He does it, and even boasts of it, or and therefore owns it.

*Nous le trouverons, ou nous ne le trouverons pas,*

We shall find him, or not.

*Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir, & que vous vous comporterez bien,*

When you will do your duty, and behave well.

3dly, All Conjunctions governed are repeated before their verbs: as

*Il me prie & me conjure,* He desires and entreats me.

*Je vous dis & vous déclare,* I say and declare to you.

Except when the second verb is of the same signification, and composed of the first, or denotes only repetition of its action: as

*Il ne fait que nous dire & redire la même chose,*

He does nothing but tell us the same thing over again.

*Elle le fait & défait, or refait quand bon lui semble,*

She does it and undoes, or does it again when she thinks fit.

*The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Indeterminate on.*

§ V. This pronoun is called Indeterminate, because it is used to speak in general, without specifying any thing particular, and is of a very extensive use.

1°. *on* is rendered into English several ways. Sometimes by *one*, as *on croiroit*, one would think; sometimes by the pronoun of the third pers. plur. *they*, or that of the first *we*; as *on dit*, they say, *on apprend* we hear; sometimes also by these indeterminate words, *people*, *men*, *a body*, &c. as *on s'imagine*, people or men think: but *on* is more generally and better Englished by converting the verb from the active voice into the passive; as *on croit*, it is thought.

2°. Now

2°. Now the Passive voice, both in French and English, is expressed by the verb substantive (*être* to be), through all its tenses, joined to the participle of a verb active. For instance, the participle of *to hold*, being *held*, if you put *to be* before it, you have the verb passive *to be held*, and all the tenses of the same, in this manner:

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
<i>Inf.</i> To hold,		<i>tenir.</i> To be held,	<i>être tenu.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> I hold,		<i>Je tiens.</i> I am held,	<i>Je suis tenu.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> I did hold,		<i>Je tenois.</i> I was held,	<i>J'étois tenu.</i>
<i>Pret.</i> I held,		<i>Je tins.</i> I was held,	<i>Je fus tenu.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> I shall or will hold,	<i>Je tiendrai.</i> I sh. &c. be held,		<i>Je serai tenu.</i>
<i>Cond.</i> I should, &c. hold,	<i>Je tiendrois.</i> I should, &c.		<i>Je serois tenu.</i>
<i>Comp.</i> I have held,	<i>J'ai tenu,</i> &c. I have, &c.		<i>J'ai été tenu,</i> &c.

3°. In order therefore to put into English a sentence with the particle *on*, if the French verb governs no noun, or is followed by *que*, you need only english *on* by *it*, and change the active state of the verb into the passive thus, *on croit* it is thought, *on avoit dit que*, &c. it had been reported that, &c.—Sometimes the English pronoun is left out: as *comme on a déjà dit*, as has been said already; in which sentence *it* is necessarily understood.

4°. If the French verb governed of *on* is a verb active, attended by a noun or pronoun as its object, that noun or pronoun must be made the subject of the verb in English, and the verb active changed into the passive state, and put in the same tense as in French: as

*On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall;*

Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall.

*un conseil* (a council) being the noun that expresses the object of the French verb, must be that of the subject in English: *tint* (held) being the preterite of the verb active, must be changed into the same tense of the passive state, *fut tenu* (was held). Again;

*On le tiendra au palais de St. James,* it will be held at St. James's.

*Le conseil qu'on tint hier,* the council that was held yesterday.

5°. If the verb governed of *on* is not immediately followed by a noun or pronoun, but by another verb in the infinitive, then it is the noun or pronoun, the object of the second verb, that must be made the subject in English, and the second verb active changed into the passive state: as

*On doit tenir aujourd'hui un conseil à Whitehall,*

This day a council is to be held at Whitehall.

*On doit le tenir à St. James,* it is to be held at St. James's.

*Le conseil qu'on doit tenir demain,*

The council that is to be held to-morrow.

In those instances *on* is the *subject* coming before the verbs *tint*, *tiendra*, and *doit*; and the pronouns *le* and *que*, governed of the same verbs as *object*, are made the subject in English.

6°. On the other hand, as the Passive voice is very seldom used in French, for the expressing of which we make use of the particle *on* with the active voice, in order to put into French such sentences as are expressed by the verb substantive *to be*, and the participle of another verb, one need only consider the noun that expresses the subject of the verb in English: If that subject is the particle *it* (not relating to any thing before), *it* must be rendered by *on*, and the verb changed from its passive state into the active, as *it is thought*, *on croit*.

7°. If the verb has a noun or pronoun relative for its subject, after changing the passive state into the active, one must give it *on* for its subject, and the English subject for its object: as

*Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall,*

*On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall.*

*It is to be held at St. James's,* *on doit le tenir à St. James.*

*The council that was held yesterday,* *le conseil qu'on tint hier.*

In which instances the verb passive *was held*, and *to be held*, is changed into TINT and TENIR governed of the subject ON, and the words *a council*, *it*, and *that*, expressing the subject in English, are made the object of the French verb.

*L'on* is the same pronoun as *on*; but make the following observations about their difference, for better sound's sake only.

1<sup>st</sup>, in the beginning of a speech or sentence, *on* must be used, and *l'on* never.

2<sup>dly</sup>, In the middle of a sentence after a word ending with a consonant, or *e* not sounded; as *Celui dont on parle*, he that is spoken of; *Quand il parle on écoute avec attention*, when he speaks every body listens attentively.

On the other hand *l'on* is used, 1<sup>st</sup>, after all words ending with a vowel, except *e* not sounded; as *En cette extrémité l'on ne sauroit faire autre chose*, in this necessity nothing else can be done.

Nevertheless it is better to say *si on le veut*, than *si l'on le veut*, if they will have it so: *si on le* offending less the ear than *si l'on le*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, After *Et*, *et*, and the particle *ou*, as likewise other words ending in *ou*: as *Voilà ce que je crois, & l'on ne me persuadera jamais le contraire*, that's what I think, and nobody shall ever persuade me to the contrary; *C'est un lieu où l'on vit à bon marché*, it is a place very cheap to live in.

3<sup>dly</sup>, When the pronoun comes after *que*, one must consider the other words that make up the sentence; for whenever the word coming before *que* ends also in *que*, or there are already, or upon the whole will be too many *que*'s in the sentence (this particle being also of great use in French), one must then make use of *qu'on*, and not *que on*, as

*Il remarque qu'on ne l'a jamais fait auparavant*, he observes that it has never been done before; *Il n'est que trop vrai que depuis le temps qu'on a commencé*, &c. and not *que l'on* because of the great number of *que's*. It is too true that ever since they begun, &c.

ably, For the same reason we make use of *que l'on*, and not *qu'on*, before verbs beginning with *con* or *con*: as *Que l'on commence*, let them begin; *Que l'on conduise Monsieur à*, &c. let them take the Gentleman to, &c. But we say, *Qu'on le conduise*, let them take him, &c. and not *que l'on le conduise*, because of the pronoun between *qu'on* and the verb, and *l'on* must never be used before a word beginning with *l*.

8°. *On* must always be repeated in the sentence before every verb of which it is the subject, and must continue the same without any variation, and notwithstanding the aforesaid observations concerning *on* and *l'on*: as

*On loue, on blâme, on menace; on emploie la douceur & la rigueur; & malgré tout cela on n'en sauroit venir à bout.*

We, or they commend, they blame and threaten; gentle and severe means are used, and for all that he cannot be reclaimed.

In this instance the first four *on's* are conformable to the rules, but after *tout cela* we should say *l'on*, if it was not for the first *on*, which determines the others throughout the sentence.

Observe, that it is usual with French Authors, when they mention themselves, to make use of *on* and *nous* instead of *je*, out of modesty, and not to name their own selves with the pronoun of the first pers. sing. or not to repeat it too often.

9°. *On* has for its relations *soi, de soi, à soi, se*.

*Soi* is used in sentences, the subject whereof is a noun, taken in an universal indefinite sense, or a pronoun indeterminate: as

*L'homme n'aime que soi*; Man loves himself only.

*Chacun agit pour soi*; Every body acts for himself.

*Qui n'est bon que pour soi; n'est pas digne de vivre*;

He who minds nobody but himself, don't deserve to live.

Especially with inanimate objects; for the pronoun *lui* is used with animate objects only, except in some few cases: as

*Le vice est odieux de soi*; Vice is hateful of itself.

*La terre est de soi fertile*; The earth is fruitful of itself.

Tho' we can as well use *elle* instead of *soi* with nouns feminine: as

*La terre renferme en soi, or en elle, toutes les semences*;

The earth contains in itself all seeds.

But if the noun is taken in a particular definite sense, *lui* is used instead of *soi*: as

*C'est un homme qui n'est bon que pour lui, & qui parle de lui sans cesse*;

'Tis a man who minds himself only, and is constantly speaking of himself.

Except in some sentences like this, wherein *soi* refers to something out of us:

*Il ne porte jamais d'argent sur soi; He never has money about him.*

*So*, one's self (the 4th state of *en*), is chiefly used with verbs *reflected*, as we have seen in the second part: but it is besides used with verbs *impersonal*, which shall be considered, when we treat of those verbs.

*Soi* is sometimes subject, but then it is only the repetition of another indefinite subject, and must come immediately after the verb, and be attended by the word *même*: as *Chacun peut soi-même faire son bonheur*; every body can make his own happiness.

*Soi-même* can never be used in the plural, tho' *soi* can with a preposition: as *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi*; These things are good of themselves. But we don't say *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi-même*; and if the pronoun relates to animate things, we say *eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes*.

10°. *Même* is a sort of pronoun, tho' not of itself, but when it is joined to pronouns personal disjunctives, adnominal pronouns relative, and other nouns indeterminate; in which last case *même* denotes, in a more special manner, the person or thing spoken of: as

<i>moi-même,</i>	myself,	<i>nous-mêmes,</i>	ourselves.
<i>toi-même,</i>	thyself,	<i>vous-mêmes,</i>	yourselfes.
<i>lui-même,</i>	himself,	<i>eux-mêmes,</i>	} themselves.
<i>elle-même,</i>	herself,	<i>elles-mêmes,</i>	
<i>l'homme même,</i>	man himself,	<i>la vertu même,</i>	virtue itself.

11°. *Même* is besides an adnoun signifying *the same*, with the article, thus: *le même, la même, les mêmes*, relating to some noun expressed or understood. *Même* is also an adverb, answering to either of these, *even, also, nay*: as *Je crois même qu'en lui a fait son procès*; I even think, or nay I think that he has been tried.

When *même* is adverb, it is sometimes spelt with an *s* at the end, authors having then regard to the style, to make it more fluent and less harsh: but the adverb *de même* (so, likewise, after the same manner) is always spelt without *s*.

### *The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Relative le.*

§ V. 1°. This pronoun stands not only for nouns, as it is common to all pronouns personal, but also for whole sentences.

*Le, en, y,* are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui, elle, eux*; which (as we shall see in the next section) cannot always be said of irrational creatures, and relates to the person, thing, or place spoken of. *Le* is rendered into English by *it* or *so*, or a whole sentence expressed or understood: *en* by *some, any*; *of him, of her, of it, of them*; *for him, for her, for it, for them*; *with him, with her, with it, with them*; *about him, about her, it, them*; *thence, from thence*; or a whole sentence: and *y*, by the same pronouns personal with other prepositions, as will appear in these following examples:

*Vous*

*Vous êtes le maître, & moi je ne le suis pas ;*  
*You are the master, and I am not, (or) I am not so.* } *le stands for*  
*Ils sont heureux, & nous ne le sommes pas ;* } *le maître*  
*They are happy, and we are not, (or) are not so.* } *and heu-*  
*Newton vous plaît, vous en parlez toujours ;* } *en stands for*  
*You like Newton, you always speak of him.* } *de Newton,*  
*Ce sont des orgueilleuses, ne m'en parlez point ;* } *and de ces or-*  
*They are proud creatures, don't tell me of them.* } *gueilleuses.*  
*Comma elle ne vouloit pas se taire, il prit un bâton & lui en donna un*  
*coup ;*

*As she would not hold her tongue, he took a stick, and gave her a blow with it.*

*Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus ;*  
*When a man is dead, he is no more thought of.* } *y stands for*  
*Ce sont des folies, ne vous y fiez pas ;* } *à cet homme,*  
*These are foolish things, don't trust to them.* } *and à ces*  
*folies.*

In which instances, *le, en, y* stand for nouns of both genders and numbers. *en* in the fifth instance stands besides for a preposition and a noun (*with a stick.*)

*On ne me trompe point, je ne puis le croire, or je n'en puis rien croire.* } *They don't deceive me, I cannot believe it, or, I can believe nothing of it.*

*Nous fumes maltraitées, & nous le sommes encore.* } *We were ill used, and are so still (women speak).*

*On a tout tenté pour faire passer le Bill, mais on n'y a pu réussir.* } *Every thing has been tried to make the Bill pass, but they could never succeed.*

*On le dit, mais je n'y ajoute pas foi.* } *They say so, but I give no credit to it.*

In which instances *le, en, y* stand for  
*Je ne puis croire qu'on veuille me tromper ;*  
*Nous sommes encore maltraitées ;*  
*On n'a pu réussir à faire-passer le Bill ;*  
*Je n'ajoute pas foi à ce qu'on dit.*

These pronouns express always the object or end of the verb. They are used both for things and persons, *en* and *y* are indeclinable : *le* is generally so too, except in these two cases.

*Le* is declinable, 1<sup>st</sup>, whenever it relates to a noun : as *Est-ce là votre pensée ? Pouvez-vous douter que ce ne la soit ?* Is that your thought ? Can you doubt that it is, or but it is, or 'tis it ? wherein *la* relates to, and stands for *votre pensée*.

*Etes-vous Madame une telle ? Oui, je la suis,*  
*Are you mistress such a one ? Yes, I am.*

*Sont-ce là vos chevaux, vos outils ? Ce les sont,*  
*Are le your horses, or tools ? Yes, it is, or 'tis they, or they are.*

If the question is about rational creatures, we answer with the pronoun personal : *at Sont-ce là vos gens, ces dames ? Oui, ce sont eux, (or) elles :* Are these your people, or the Ladies ? Yes, it is they. But with irrational, and inanimate objects, we always use the pronoun *les*.

2dly, *le* is declinable, but in the singular only, in these and such like instances spoken by women ; *Je suis malade & je la serai long temps,* I am sick and shall be so long ; *Je fus effrayée & je la suis encore,* I was affrighted, and am so still.

But those sentences must be spoken by women themselves, and therefore expressed with the pronoun of the first person ; for with any other pronoun, tho' women are spoken of, the pronoun relative is indeclinable. Therefore we don't say *Elle est malade & elle la sera long-temps,* but *elle le sera,* &c. she is sick, and will be so long.

In all other cases, that is, when the pronoun supplying relates to an adnoun, or many adnouns together, it is indeclinable : as

*Elle étoit jalouse de son autorité, & elle le devoit être,*

She was jealous of her authority, and ought to have been so.

*Nous avons été malades, & nous le sommes encore.*

We have been sick, and are so still (women speak.)

[The French Academy and the best Grammarians do not admit of that nice distinction for a woman who speaks of herself, and say that in any case *le* is indeclinable when it relates to an adjective, and declinable only when to a noun.]

2°. Although *en* is usually the second state of the pronoun relative *le*, yet it stands sometimes for the object governed of the verb ; to wit,

Whenever something is spoken of, that has been named in the first part of the sentence, or in the question which is answered to, instead of repeating that thing, we use the particle *en*, which supplies and stands for the name of that thing : as after speaking of virtue,

*C'en est une grande, for c'est une grande vertu ;*

It is a great virtue.

*Si vous voulez voir de beaux tableaux, il en a ;*

If you desire to see fine pictures, he has got fine ones.

And the noun of the first sentence, to which *en* has a reference, must be construed with the indefinite particles *de* or *un*.

*en* refers also to the place : as *En venez-vous ? Oui j'en viens ;* Do you come from thence ? (a place mentioned before.) Yes, I come from that place.

Moreover *en* is used through exaggeration, as in this phrase, *Je n'en puis plus,* I am quite spent ; and others like, which are inserted in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

3°. The particle *y* relates to Places, Persons, and Things, considered as a Condition, State, Disposition, Obligation or Necessity, under which one is ; the Subject or Matter which one applies one's self to ; and an End one aims at : in all which acceptations it is rendered into English, by *there, thither, or within* (when it has a reference to place), or by the pronouns *it* or *they*, with one of these prepositions, *at, by, for, in, of, to, with* : as

*C'est une belle charge, il y aspireroit depuis long-temps ;*

It is a fine place, he aimed at it a great while ago.

*Il l'a fait mais il n'y gagnera rien ;*

He has done it, but he will get nothing by it.

*Il n'aime pas sa profession, il n'y est pas propre ;*

He don't like his calling or business, he is not fit for it.

*L'affaire dont vous parlez mérite bien qu'on y songe ;*

The affair you are speaking of is well worth thinking of.

*Il aime son devoir, il s'y applique entièrement ;*

He loves his duty, he is entirely apply'd to it.

*Il s'est engagé dans une étrange affaire, il n'y réussira pas ;*

He is engaged in an odd sort of affair, he will not succeed in it.

I have said that when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* goes first : but *en* is then a pronoun : for when it is the preposition *en*, used before gerunds, it goes before *y* : as *En y allant*, by the way, or when I go by.

*y* is moreover used in some particular phrases, which it is difficult to reduce to rules, with respect to the Genius of the English tongue ; but which are inseried in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

*Particular Observations upon the Construction of the Pronouns Personal of the third Person il, lui, elle.*

§ VI. 1°. The pronouns *il, ils ; elle, elles ; le, la, les* ; either governing, or being governed of a verb, are indifferently used for all sorts of objects, rational and irrational, animate or inanimate. Therefore we say,

speaking of	{	a Rock, a Mountain, Trees, and Meadows.	}	<i>Il est escarpé ;</i> it is stiff.
				<i>Elle est haute ;</i> it is high.
				<i>Ils sont fleuris ;</i> they are in blossom.
				<i>Je la ferai couper ;</i> I will get it cut down.
				<i>Il faut les couper ;</i> they must be cut down.

But when the same pronouns attend the verb *to be*, the pronoun relative indeclinable *le* must be used, in speaking of irrational and inanimate things. Thus, in answer to this question,

*Est-ce-là la montagne dont vous parliez ?*

Is that the mountain that you were speaking of ?

We don't say *c'est elle*, it is it, (or) that's it, but *ce l'est*.

*Est-ce-là votre livre ? Oui ce l'est, and never c'est lui.*

Is that your book ? Yes it is.

2°. *Il, ils; elle, elles*, are used through all their states, when objects are personified, and one attributes to them what is attributed to persons: which the French frequently do in speaking of virtues and vices: as

*L'amour-propre est captieux: c'est lui qui nous séduit; de lui viennent la plupart de nos maux; Et ce n'est qu'à lui qu'il faut s'en prendre.*

*La vertu est précieuse: d'elle seule nous devons attendre de véritables biens: c'est à elle que nous devons notre vraie gloire; Et c'est pour elle qu'il faut sacrifier nos soins.*

Self-love is deceitful: *It* seduces us; from *it* most of our evils proceed; and upon *it* only we must lay the blame of them.

Virtue is precious: from *it* alone true blessings ought to be expected: to *it* we owe our true glory; and for *it* our cares must be sacrificed.

But,

3°. Usage, the only Master of the Rules in point of Languages, and the only rule of speaking properly, has, as it were, consecrated the other states of that pronoun (*lui, leur, de lui, à elle, &c.*) to such odd ways of construction, as are impossible to be reduced to rules, and can be learnt only by use. Thus speaking of inanimate things, we must sometimes use *lui* and *leur*, and sometimes we must not, tho' speaking of the same things. Thus we say of a sword, *Je lui dois la vie*; I owe my life to it: and we don't say

*Je lui ai fait mettre une nouvelle garde*, but *J'y ai fait mettre une nouvelle garde*; I have got a new hilt put to it.

Again, we say of mineral waters,

*Je leur suis redevable de ma santé*;

I am indebted to them for my health; and we don't say,

*On leur a fait de beaux réservoirs*, but *on y a fait*, &c.

Fine reservoirs have been built for them.

But the conjunctives *lui* and *leur* are generally said of animate things, as horses, birds, and other living creatures: as

speak- ) a bird, ing of ) chickens,	{ Coupez-lui les ailes, { Donnez-leur à manger,	cut his wings. give them to eat.
--	--	-------------------------------------

However, the Practice of these Constructions is so much the easier to learn, as they don't extend to a great many cases, which I have taken care to insert in my Exercises.

But *lui* and *leur*, governed by a preposition, can never be said at all of irrational and inanimate creatures. Therefore we don't say *D'abord on plaça le poteau (or la poutre) Et après lui (elle) une barre de fer*; but

*D'abord on plaça le poteau, or la poutre, & ensuite une barre de fer ;*  
They first placed the post, or beam, and then (after it) an iron bar.

From whence observe,

4°. That in those cases when *lui, elle, leur, &c.* relating to irrational and inanimate creatures, are governed by a preposition, to remove the difficulty, one must make use of an adverb, whose signification comprehends, and answers to that of both the preposition and pronoun, which is therefore left out. Thus instead of saying

*Prenez ce cheval & montez sur lui ;*

*Ouvrez ce cabinet & mettez-vous dans lui ;*

*On étoit autour de lui, or d'elle ;*

Say, *Prenez ce cheval & montez dessus ;*

Take that horse and mount or ride him:

*Ouvrez ce cabinet & mettez-vous dedans ;*

Open that closet and get in.

*On étoit à l'entour ;*

They were round it (speaking of a tree or mountain).

5°. These following, being both prepositions and adverbs according as they are or are not followed by a noun or pronoun, when any of them meets with such a pronoun, which can't be said of inanimate things, one need only suppress the pronoun, and the word which was a preposition, becomes thereby an adverb.

<i>à côté,</i>	aside, by.	<i>dessous,</i>	underneath.
<i>à couvert,</i>	sheltered.	<i>au-dessous,</i>	below.
<i>à l'abri,</i>	under shelter.	<i>par-dessous,</i>	under.
<i>en deçà,</i>	on this side.	<i>loin,</i>	far.
<i>au de-là,</i>	on that side, or beyond.	<i>prache, for près de,</i>	near.
<i>auprès,</i>	near, by.	<i>au travers, for à travers de,</i>	cross,
<i>avec,</i>	with.	<i>tout contre,</i>	hard by.
<i>dessus,</i>	upon.	<i>tout auprès,</i>	just by.
<i>au-dessus,</i>	above, over.	<i>vis-à-vis,</i>	over against.
<i>par-dessus,</i>	over and above.	<i>aux environs,</i>	round about.

Therefore, as speaking of a brute or a tree, we can't say *Mettez vous vis-à-vis de lui, or d'elle,* put yourself over-against it ; so we say very properly, *Mettez-vous vis-à-vis.*

*The Use and Construction of the Pronominal Adnoun.*

§ VII. We have seen that they are of two sorts, the Absolute and Relative,

1°. Pro-

1°. Pronominal adnouns absolute *mon, ton, son, &c.* do not agree in French in gender with the noun of the Possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed : as

*La mère aime son fils, & le père sa fille,*

The mother loves *her* son, and the father *his* daughter.

2°. When a noun feminine (which should therefore take before it the feminine of these adnouns, *ma, ta, sa,*) begins with a vowel, or *b* mute, it takes the masculine *mon, ton, son* : as

<i>mon âme,</i>	my soul.	<i>son élévation,</i>	his or her rise.
<i>son histoire,</i>	his or her story.	<i>sa haute élévation,</i>	his great pre- ferment.
<i>son habileté,</i>	his or her skill.	<i>sa honte,</i>	his or her shame.

3°. We always use these pronominal adnouns before nouns of relations and friends, when we call to them, which are left out in English : as

*Venez-ça, ma fille, or mon enfant,* Come hither, daughter, or child.

*Tout à l'heure, ma mère, mon père ; oui, ma tante, &c.*  
Presently, mother, father ; yes, aunt, &c.

4°. Pronominal adnouns absolute, coming after a verb with a noun, are resolved in French by a pronoun personal in the third state : as

He has cut off <i>his</i> head ;	<i>Il lui a coupé la tête,</i> and not <i>il a coupé sa tête ;</i>
You cut <i>my</i> finger ;	<i>Vous me coupez le doigt ;</i> and never <i>vous coupez mon doigt ;</i>
Twist <i>his</i> neck ;	<i>Tordez-lui le cou,</i> and never <i>tordez son cou, &amp;c.</i>

5°. These adnouns are left out before nouns, when there comes before a pronoun personal, which sufficiently denotes whose thing it is you speak of; the French being then contented with the article : as

*Je lui dois la vie ;* I owe *my* life to him ; or to it : and never *ma vie.*  
*Il grince les dents ;* he gnashes his teeth : and never *ses dents* : the pronouns *je* and *il*, specifying enough whose life and teeth are meant, and therefore making the pronominal adnouns useless.

For the same reason we don't say : *J'ai mal à ma tête ;* I have got a pain in my head, or I have the head-ach : *J'ai mal à mon ventre ;* my belly aches : but *J'ai mal à la tête ; J'ai mal au ventre, Elle a mal aux dents ;* she has the tooth-ach : *Il a le pied foulé ;* his foot is sprained, &c.

But

But we say : *Je vois que ma jambe s'enfle* ; I see that my leg swells ; because in saying only *Je vois que la jambe s'enfle*, the pronoun *je* cannot denote that I mean my own leg, since I can likewise see that another's leg swells.

Nevertheless, if the pain is become as habitual, we may say (in speaking to somebody who knows it) *Ma tête*, or *Ma jambe me fait mal* ; my head, or leg, pains me : *Ma migraine m'a fort tourmenté aujourd'hui* ; my megrim has tormented me much to-day : *Sa fièvre le consume* ; his fever consumes him : because the adnoun denotes the particular habit which one has contracted with the aching part of the body, or the disease itself.

It is for the same reason we say, *Il ne se tient pas ferme sur ses pieds* ; he don't stand firm upon his feet : *Tenez-vous ferme sur vos jambes* ; stand firm upon your legs ; because this ought to be habitual and natural.

We say in a proverbial way of speaking *se trouver sur ses pieds*, to signify that one cannot be the worse for undertaking some particular things ; and *retomber sur ses pieds*, to signify, that one always get off clear and safe, whatever he attempts.

Pronominal adnouns are also very properly used with the names of the members of the body, in some few sentences like these : *Il lui donna sa main à baiser* ; he gave him his hand to kiss : *Elle a donné bardiment son bras au Chirurgien* ; she boldly gave her arm to the Surgeon : *Il perd tout son sang* ; he loses all his blood, &c. But they must be learnt by practice, as well as when it is indifferent to use or not the adnoun : as *Elever la voix*, or *Elever sa voix* ; to raise one's voice, &c.

But observe here, 1<sup>st</sup>, that *son*, *sa*, *ses*, are not always Englished by *his*, *her*, *its*, nor the English pronoun *one's self* rendered into French by *soi*, or *soi-même* : but that one must consider the term of its relation : for if it relates to the pronoun indeterminate *on*, or some of its oblique relations, as in the instance *se trouver sur ses pieds* ; or in other words, if considered with its substantive, it relates to nothing specified, as in the other instance, *retomber sur ses pieds*, then *son*, *sa*, *ses* cannot be rendered in English by *his*, *her*, &c. which has a reference to something specified, but by the pronoun indeterminate *one's self*, or only *one's* followed by a noun : as, on the other hand, *one's self* must be rendered into French by *se*, as *se blesser*, to hurt one's self, and *one's* followed by a noun, by a pronominal-adnoun absolute agreeing with it, as in the said instances *se trouver sur ses pieds* (word for word), to be upon one's feet still ; *retomber sur ses pieds*, to light upon one's feet again.

2<sup>dly</sup>, As the pron. imperf. relative *il*, *elle*, *lui*, *leur*, &c. must not be used in particular cases, in speaking of irrational and inanimate things ; so in like cases we don't use the adnouns *son*, *sa*, *ses* ; *leurs*, *le sien*, &c. instead whereof we use the relative (*en*) : as

Instead of

*Cette maladie est fort cachée ; cependant je connois son origine & ses effets :*

We say

*Cette maladie est fort cachée ; cependant j'en connois l'origine & les effets ;*

This illness is much hid, yet I know its origin and effects, or I know both the original and effects of it : tho' we say, *Je connois cette maladie, son origine, ses symptômes, & ses effets*, I know this illness, its origin, symptoms, and effects.

Instead of

*Voilà de bonne eau ; je connois toutes ses qualités.*

We say

*Voilà de bonne eau ; j'en connois toutes les qualités ;*

That water is good ; I know all its qualities.

Instead

Instead of

*Voyez-vous cette maison ? la situation est belle ; ses pavillons sont grands ;*

We say

*Voyez-vous cette maison ? la situation en est belle, les pavillons en sont grands ;*

Do you see that house ? It is pleasantly situated : its pavilions are large : tho' we say *Cette maison a ses commodités & ses inconvénients*, That house has its conveniences and inconveniences. Likewise, we don't say of a tree, *ses fruits sont bons*, its fruit is good ; neither can we say, *les siens sont meilleurs que ceux d'un autre*, it is better than another's ; but, we say *les fruits en sont bons*, &c. *ils sont meilleurs que ceux d'un autre*, &c.

The adnominal pronouns are safely used when the term of their relation is expressed before in the same sentence by a noun or pronoun ; as

*Remettez ce livre à sa place ;*

Put this book in its place again.

*Mettez-le en sa place ;*

Put it in its place.

6°. The Pronominal adnouns absolute must always be repeated in French before every noun, when there are many in the sentence, with which they are grammatically construed : as

*Son père & sa mère*, his father and mother, not *son père & mère*.

*Nos amis & nos ennemis*, our friends and foes, not *nos amis & ennemis*.

*Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & ses plus vilains habits ;*

She shewed him her finest and ugliest clothes.

7°. The Pronominal adnouns relative, *le mien*, *le vôtre*, &c. are of the same use, and have the same construction as in English, being never put before a noun, but always relating to a foregoing one : as

*Est-ce là votre livre ?*

*Oui, c'est le mien,*

or *ce l'est*.

Is that your book ?

Yes, it is mine.

or Yes, it is.

But when this adnoun (referring to its antecedent expressed in the same sentence) comes after *to be*, signifying *to belong*, it must be resolved in French by a pronoun personal disjunctive, in the third relation : as

That book is *mine* ;

That house is *his*, or *yours* ;

*Ce livre est à moi.*

*Cette maison est à lui, or à vous.*

8°. The noun in the 2d state that comes after *to be*, used in the same signification, must likewise be put in the third state : as

This hat is *the Gentleman's* ;

This fan is *the Lady's* ;

*Ce chapeau est à Monsieur.*

*Cet éventail est à Madame.*

Moreover, we use the Pronominal adnoun absolute in the following case, when the English use the adnoun relative ;

A friend of *mine* ; *Un de mes amis*, not *un ami des miens*.

A book of *his* ; *Un de ses livres*, not *un livre des siens*, &c.

Of the Construction of the Pronouns Relative *qui*, *lequel*, &c.

§ VIII. 1°. The Relative *qui* always comes next to the antecedent: as, *Ces gens qui demeuroient chez moi sont partis*; Those people are gone *who* lodged at my house.

Except when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb: as, *Il la trouva qui pleuroit à chaudes larmes*; He found her weeping most bitterly.

2°. The relative *qui* is used only in the first and fourth states for both genders and numbers, with respect to all sorts of objects; but in the other states, that is, after a preposition, it is said of personal objects only, or considered as such. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, we use the other pronouns *lequel* and *quoi*. Thus we say

*L'homme, (or) la femme qui vous a parlé, (or) que vous dites*;

The man, (or) woman *who* spoke to you, (or) *whom* you are speaking of.

*Le Prince, (or) la Princesse de qui il a reçu tant de faveurs*; The Prince, (or) Princess *of whom* he has received so many favours.

*Le maître, (or) la maîtresse à qui il appartient*;

The master, (or) mistress *whom* he belongs to.

*Les choses qui lui plaisent le plus*.

The things *that* please him most.

*Le cheval que vous montez*; The horse *that* you ride upon.

*Les malheurs que vous appréhendez*;

The misfortunes *which* you fear.

But speaking of irrational and inanimate creatures, we don't say *Le cheval de qui je me sers*; The horse *that* I use (or) use to ride.

*L'opinion à qui je m'attache*; The opinion *which* I adhere to.

*La chose sur qui je fais fond*; The thing *which* I rely upon.

But we say with another pronoun relative

*Le cheval duquel, (or) dont je me sers*,

*L'opinion à laquelle (or) à quoi je m'attache*.

*La chose sur laquelle (or) sur quoi je fais fond*.

We say: *La Fortune de qui j'attends tout*;

Fortune *from which* I expect all.

*Le Ciel de qui j'espère*; Heaven *from which* I hope, &c. because *la Fortune* and *le Ciel* are personified.

3°. *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the second state of the three pronouns relative, *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*. It always comes before the conjunctives *je, nous; tu, vous; il, ils; elle, elles*; and is said of both persons and things: as

*C'est l'homme dont je parle*; He is the man *whom* I am speaking of.

*C'est*

*C'est une charge dont il ne se soucie pas ;*

It is a place *which* he don't care for.

*Vous voyez les femmes dont il parloit ;*

You see the women he spoke of.

Except when questions are asked, for they cannot begin with *dont* : as

*De qui (or) de quoi parlez vous ?*

Who (or) What are you speaking of?

*De qui* is used as well as *dont*, but with this difference, that it expresses the *Ablative* of the Latins, and is denoted by *from* in English : as

*L'homme de qui j'ai reçu une lettre ;*

The man from whom I have received a letter ;

whereas *of whom*, *of which*, *whose*, must always be rendered by *dont*, which expresses the *Genitive* of the Latins : as

*La personne dont la réputation vous étonne ;*

The person whose reputation you wonder at.

But *dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject, either noun or pronoun, and a verb, or by a verb impersonal followed by another verb : as

*Le Ciel dont le secours est nécessaire ;*

Heaven whose assistance is necessary.

*Le Ciel dont le secours ne manque jamais ;*

Heaven whose assistance never fails.

*Le Ciel dont il faut implorer le secours ;*

Heaven whose assistance must be called upon.

But don't say

*Le Ciel dont sans le secours, (or) sans dont le secours nous ne pouvons réussir ;* Heaven, without whose assistance we cannot prosper ; because tho' *dont* has immediately before it (in the first way of expressing the sentence) the noun which it relates to, yet it is not followed immediately by a noun and a verb ; and in the other way, *dont* does not come immediately after the term of its relation. Therefore that sentence must be expressed with the pronoun *de qui* or *duquel* thus :

*Le Ciel sans le secours duquel nous ne pouvons réussir.*

4°. *où* is likewise used for the third state of the three pronouns relative to *whom*, to *which*, to *what*, as also when they are governed by any of these prepositions *at*, *in*, *into*, *with*. It serves for both genders and numbers, and relates to things denoting Time, Place, Condition, Disposition, Design, End and Aim ; but never to persons : as

*Voilà*

*Voilà le but où il tend ;* That is the end *which* he aims at.

*Le siècle où nous vivons ;* The age *wherein* we live.

*Une affaire où je ne veux pas entrer ;*

A thing *in which* I won't be concerned.

*Les malheurs où il est plongé ;*

The misfortunes *in which* he is plunged.

*où* in the first instance stands for *auquel* ; in the second, for *dans lequel* ; in the third, for *dans laquelle* ; and in the fourth, for *dans lesquels*.

From *où* are formed the adverbs of place *d'où* from whence, and *par où* through where, through which place.

5°. *que* is likewise used instead of *de qui* and *à qui* ; so that *que*, besides its being the fourth state of *qui*, is also often used for the second and third, for both genders and numbers ; whenever there comes immediately before it the second or third state of a pronoun personal : as

*C'est de vous qu'on parle ;* instead of *de qui* or *dont on parle*,

It is you they are speaking of.

*C'est à vous qu'on s'adresse ;* instead of *à qui on s'adresse*,

It is you they make application to.

6°. *que*, among a great many other constructions, which shall be mentioned in the *Appendix*, has a particular one, which may be called *Conductive*, being a Conjunction then used to bring the sense of the sentence to its perfection. *que* so used is Englished by *that*, when expressed, for it is very often left out in English, even when it is relative, but it must be always expressed in French, where it always governs or is governed : as

*Je crois que vous parlez ;* I think you speak, or *that* you speak.

*L'homme que vous voyez ;* The man you see, or *that*, or *whom* you see.

In the first instance the verb *Je crois*, coming before *que*, requires another verb to make the whole sentence, the continuity of the sense whereof is performed by *que*. In the other, *que* is governed of *vous voyez*, and relates to *l'homme*.

That *que* *Conductive*, is used in a very emphatical manner before a noun terminating a sentence, or a verb, thus :

*C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu ;* Gaming is a dangerous passion.

*C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux ;* It is a sort of shame to be miserable.

But observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, that those sentences wherein *que* is thus used, always begin with the impersonal *c'est* it is, or at least the pronoun primitive *ce*, and end with the noun which begins the sentence in English, and before which *que* is put.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That *que* always requires *de* after it, when it comes before the infinitive.

Moreover, 1<sup>st</sup>, *que*, besides its being relative, is also interrogative and declarative, signifying *quelle personne ?* what person ? and then it takes *qui* and not *que* for its fourth state ; as *Qui a fait cela ?* or *Qui est-ce qui a fait cela ?* Who has done that ? *Je sais qui vous voulez dire ;* I know whom you mean. *Qui verrez vous tantôt ?* Whom are you to see this evening ?

2dly, Sometimes *qui*, in asking a question, signifies *quelle chose* (what thing): as *Qui fait l'oiseau ?* or *Qui est-ce qui fait l'oiseau ?* What makes the bird ?

3dly, Sometimes also *qui* between two verbs, and even in the beginning of a sentence, signifies *celui qui*, he who, or that, and *quiconque*, whosoever, any body, who: when it meets between two verbs, it is governed of the first, at the same time that it governs the second: as

*Qui répond paye ;* The security must pay.

*C'est l'excuse ordinaire de qui n'en a point de bonne ;*

It is the usual excuse of those who have not a good one.

*Il le dit à qui veut l'entendre ;*

He says it to any body who is willing to hear it.

4tly, The relative *qui* and *lequel* can never agree with a noun that has no article before it. Therefore these English sentences,

*He did that through avarice, which is capable of any thing ;*

*I know that by experience, which is a great master ;*

cannot be rendered into French thus :

*Il a fait cela par avarice qui (or) laquelle est capable de tout.*

*Je sais cela par expérience qui (or) laquelle est un grand maître.*

They must be expressed without the relative, as making two distinct sentences, one of which ends with the noun, and the other begins with *et* or *mais* with the noun repeated, instead of the relative, thus :

*Il a fait cela par avarice ; mais l'avarice est capable de tout.*

*Je sais cela par expérience ; Et l'expérience est un grand maître ;* or

*Et vous savez, or Et l'on sait bien que l'expérience est un grand maître.*

Except from this rule. 1st, Proper names, which are sufficiently determined and specified by themselves, without taking the article: as

*Je lis Cicéron, qui est aussi bon Philosophe qu'Orateur ;*

I read Cicero, who is as good a Philosopher as Orator.

*J'ai vu Paris, qui est une des plus belles villes du monde ;*

I have seen Paris, which is one of the finest cities in the world.

2dly, Such nouns as have *de* before them, on account of some previous word that requires it, and thereby sufficiently determines the next noun ; as the adverbs *capable, coupable, &c.* the nouns *sorte, espèce, &c.* the adverbs *assez, point, &c.* as

*Il est coupable de crimes qui méritent la mort ;* He is guilty of crimes which deserve death.

*Il n'y a point d'homme qui n'ait son foible ;* There is no man but has his weak side.

*Une sorte de liqueur qui est bonne à boire ;* A sort of liquor that is good to drink.

3dly, Such nouns of the things which are called to, and answer the vocative of the Latins, before which the particle exclamative *ô* may come: as

*Hommes, qui vivez en bêtes !* Men, who live like brutes !

*Avarice, qui cause tant de maux !* Oh Covetousness, that causeth so many mischiefs !

4tly, Such other nouns that have before them any number, as *un, deux, trois, vingt, &c.* any of these pronouns, *ce, quelque, plusieurs, tout, nul, aucun,* or the particle *en*, signifying *as or like*; as

*Il en vint un, or plusieurs qui n'étoient pas invités ;*

There came one, or many who were not invited.

*Il parle en Philosophe qui sait la raison des choses ;*

He speaks like a Philosopher, who knows the reason of things.

The reason both of this rule and exception is, that the Genius of the French language don't allow the relative *qui* to be used after a noun, unless it is specified by the article, or by some other specifying word, or by its own signification.

7°. The pronoun *lequel, laquelle*, is used for the sake of avoiding the too frequent repetitions of *qui*, and of removing the ambiguities that may arise from that pronoun, which is of both genders and numbers, and said of things and persons, as in these sentences.

Alexandre

*Alexandre fils de Philippe qui régna le premier en Asie,*

Alexander, Philip's son, who reigned the first in Asia.

One cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who reigned: whereas *lequel* used instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander; because when two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative *lequel* refers to the former, and therefore removes the ambiguity that may be occasioned by *qui*.

That ambiguity is sometimes removed by putting the incident member between two commas, thus:

*Alexandre, fils de Philippe, qui régna le premier en Asie.*

*C'est la cause de cet effet dont je vais traiter,* (or) *que je vais examiner,* It is the cause of that effect which I am going to treat of, (or) to examine.

One cannot see whether *dont* or *que*, which are used for both genders, relate to *effet* or *cause*; therefore *lequel*, or *laquelle*, must be used according to the gender of the antecedent.

However, it is much better to repeat *qui*, tho' ever so often, when it causes no ambiguity in the speech, than to use *lequel*, which is quite appropriated to the style of proclamations, edicts, treaties, contracts, and other acts of that nature, wherein less regard is to be had to the purity, than to the perspicuity of the language.

8°. *qui* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject: as

*C'est un homme qui est savant, qui danse bien, qui joue de plusieurs instrumens, &c. qui se fait aimer de tout le monde;* He is, or it is a learned man, who dances well, plays upon several instruments, and makes himself beloved by every body.

9°. The pronoun *quoi* is also used for both genders and numbers. It is said of things only, and never of persons, and is very conveniently used instead of *lequel*: as *Le plus grand vice à quoi il soit sujet,* instead of *auquel il soit sujet,* The greatest vice which he is addicted to.

*Ce sont des choses à quoi il faut penser,* instead of *auxquelles il faut,* &c. These are things which one must think of.

The second state of that pronoun (*de quoi*) is sometimes used without any foregoing term to which it may relate. Then it implies its antecedent, being used substantively, and expressing the object of the verb, and is commonly rendered into English by *wherewith*: as *Je n'ai pas de quoi vivre,* I have nothing wherewith to live, (or) to live upon.

*As qui* signifies sometimes *quelle personne* (what person); so *quoi* sometimes signifies *quelle chose* (what thing); then it makes *que* in its oblique relations, tho' *de quoi* and *à quoi* may be used too:

as *Qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? and never *Quoi est ce que c'est?* *Que dites-vous?* What d'you say? *Que sert d'avoir du bien,* or *de quoi sert d'avoir du bien, si l'on n'en fait pas jouir?* What avail riches, if one knows not how to enjoy them?

If somebody said, *Il m'est arrivé une étrange affaire,* An odd sort of affair has befallen me, one should ask *quoi?* what? or *quelle affaire?* what affair? But *quid* is never used before a verb; and it is for that reason we don't say *Quoi vous est-il arrivé?* What has happened to you? *Quoi est-ce?* *Quoi dites-vous?* but *Que dites-vous?* *Que vous est-il arrivé?* *Qu'est-ce,* &c.

1°. The same pronouns are used to ask questions, to which add *quel*: as, *Qui est cet homme-là,* or *Quel est cet homme-là?* Who is that man, or what is that man? *De qui ne médit-on pas?* Who is not traduced? *A qui se fier?* Who can one trust to? (an ellipsis for *A qui peut-on se fier?*) *Quelle est cette femme-là?* Who is that woman? *Duquel, de laquelle, desquels parlez-vous?* Which do you speak of?

But *qui* is said of persons, and *quel* of things. Therefore to this proposition *Voilà des gens,* (or) *des femmes qui vous demandent,* There are people or women who ask for you, we answer *Qui sont-ils?* or *Qui sont-elles?* Who are they? But to these others, *Il court d'étranges bruits,* Strange reports are spread, we ask *Quels sont-ils?* What are they? and not *Qui sont-ils?* *J'ai appris de grandes nouvelles,* I have heard great news. *Quelles sont-elles?* What are they? *Quelles sont ces nouvelles?*

The pronoun interrogative *quel* (without the article) answers to the *what* of the English; and *lequel* to their *which*; it being followed by the second state, when it comes before a noun: as *Quel homme voulez-vous dire?* What man d'you mean? *Lequel choisirez-vous?* Which d'you choose?

*Laquelle des deux souhaitez-vous?*

Which of the two will you have?

Moreover observe a very remarkable Pleonasm most commonly, and sometimes necessarily, used in asking questions with the pronouns *qui* and *quoi*—The most natural (and the best) French for these questions and other like:

Who's there?

Who has done that?

What d'you say?

What d'you ask?

} is

*Qui est-là?*

*Qui a fait cela?*

*Que dites-vous?*

*Que demandez-vous?*

Yet the common idiom of the language is to express them thus:

Who is there?

Who has done that?

What do you say?

What d'you ask?

*Qui est-ce qui est là?*

*Qui est-ce qui a fait cela?*

*Qu'est-ce que vous dites?*

*Qu'est-ce que vous demandez?*

Nay we say

*Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous dites?*

*Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous demandez?*

And to this Proposition *J'ai quelque chose à vous dire* I have something to say to you, the most natural and common answer is *Qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? And not *Qu'est-ce,* nor *Quoi est-ce,* nor *Quoi* what? which last would rather intimate that we did not hear what was said to us.

Of the Use and Construction of the Pron. Demonstrative, *ce, celui, ceci, cela, &c.*

§ IX. 1°. The particles demonstrative, *ce, cet, cette, ces*, are mere adnouns: *celui-ci, celle-ci; celui-là, celle-là, ceux-ci, celles-ci, ceux-là, celles-là*, are used absolutely without any noun; and *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, always require after them a noun in the second state, or the relative *qui*: as

*Ce tableau* this or that picture, *cet ouvrage* that work, *cet homme* that man, *cette femme* that woman, *ces gens* those people, *ces filles* those girls.

*Celui-ci est meilleur que celui-là*, This is better than that.

*Celles-là ne sont pas si belles que celles-ci*,

Those are not so good as these.

*Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui du Maquignon*,

Your horse is as fine as that of the Jockey.

*Celui qui aime la vertu*, He that loves virtue.

*ci* and *là* are sometimes added to the noun that comes after the demonstrative *ce, cet, cette*, in order to specify and particularise it still more; as *cet homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman; *ci* denoting a near or present object, and *là* a distant and absent one; and *ce* thus followed by a noun attended by *ci* or *là*, answers to *this* or *that* before a noun.

*This* and *that*, are sometimes well rendered into French by *ce* or *cet* only; but one cannot in some cases leave out *ci* or *là*, and those cases must be determined by judgment only. Thus, if being at London I write a letter, and after mentioning Paris or Vienna, I add something that has happened there, I must necessarily say, *en cette ville là*, *là* added to *ville* specifying the distant city which I have been mentioning. For should I say only *en cette ville*, these words would intimate that it was at London, where the thing that I am speaking of happened.

2°. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux*, which relate both to persons and things, being followed by the relative *qui*, are englished by *he who*, or *he that*, *she who* or *that*, *they who* or *that*, and *celui* is the subject of one verb, and *qui* that of another: as *Celui qui aime la vertu est heureux*, *He who* loves virtue is happy.

*Celle qui refuse un mari n'est pas toujours sûre d'en retrouver un autre*,

*She who* refuses a husband is not always sure to get another again.

*Ceux qui méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix*,

*They who* despise learning know not the value of it.

Observe, therefore, 1st, that *he who*, *he that*, *she who*, *she that*, &c. are never rendered into French by *il qui, elle qui, ils* or *eux qui*, but by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui*, &c.

2dly, That tho' these two words may be separated in English, and come before their respective verb, yet they must always come together in French before the first verb, unless *là* is added to the first: as

*They know not the value of learning who despise it;*

*Ceux-là ne connoissent pas le prix de la science qui la méprisent,*  
(or) *Ceux qui méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix.*

3dly, *He who* or *he that*, *they who* or *they that* (separated in English) are also elegantly rendered into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with the infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive: as

*They know not the value of learning who despise it;*

*C'est ne pas connoître le prix de la science que de la mépriser.*

*C'est se tromper que de croire;* *He is mistaken who thinks, or they, or those are mistaken who think, &c.*

4thly, The pronominal adnouns absolute, *his*, *her*, *their*, construed in English with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *they* before a verb, is made into French by the second state of *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, followed by *qui*, and the possessive is left out: as

*All men blame his manners, who often says that which himself does not think;*

*Tout le monde blâme les mœurs de celui qui dit souvent ce qu'il ne pense pas.*

*Providence does not prosper their labours that slight their best friends;*

*La Providence ne bénit point les travaux de ceux qui méprisent leurs meilleurs amis.*

5thly, The pronoun indeterminate *such*, followed by *as* or *that* (but not governed of the verb substantive *to be*), is also rendered into French by *ceux qui*, or *celui qui*: as

*Such as don't love virtue don't know it,*

*Ceux qui n'aiment pas la vertu ne la connoissent pas.*

6thly, These two words, *the former*, *the latter*, referring to nouns mentioned in the foregoing speech, are made by *l'un* and *l'autre*, or *celui-ci* and *celui-là*, agreeing in gender with the noun; and *celui-ci* relates to the noun last mentioned, and *celui-là* to the first mentioned; but *l'un* and *l'autre* may relate to either you please, according to its gender; as

*Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things: Vice is the in-*

*La vertu, n'est autre chose qu'une entière conformité à la règle éternelle des choses. Le vice est l'infraction de cette règle. Ce-*

*lui-ci*

causes the misery of men. *That* lui-ci fait le malheur des hommes.  
makes them happy. Therefore Celle-là les rend heureux. Al-  
let us love the former, and abo- mon donc l'une, & ayons l'autre  
minate the latter. en horreur.

3°. The Primitive *ce* coming before *qui* or *que* is englished by *that which*, or *what*; these two words making a sort of pronoun that points and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after: as

*Il dit ce qu'il sait,*

He says *what* he knows.

*C'est ce qui ne sera jamais,*

It is *what* will never be.

4°. When *ce qui* or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts, is, jointly with the verb, the subject coming before the verb *est* in the second part of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before *est*, and *est* followed by *de*, if it comes before an infinitive, or by *que* if it is another mood: as

*Ce que je crains, c'est d'être surpris,* and not *est d'être surpris*,  
What I fear, is to be surprised.

*Ce qui l'afflige, c'est qu'on le croit coupable,*

What concerns him, is that he is thought guilty.

But *ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when there comes next an adnoun: as *Ce que vous dites est vrai*, what you say is true; and when it is a noun, it is indifferent to repeat it or to leave it out: as *Ce que je dis est la vérité*, or *c'est la vérité*, what I say is the truth.

Except when the verb substantive is in the plural; for then *ce* must be repeated: as *Ce que je ne puis souffrir, ce sont les insolences & les trahisons*, what I cannot bear are insolences and treacheries.

The pron. primit. *ce* is besides of a very extensive use with *être*, as we shall see when we treat of the Verbs Impersonal.

### Of Pronouns Indeterminate.

Quelqu'un, chacun, quiconque, personne, nul, pas un, aucun, l'un l'autre, l'un & l'autre, plusieurs, tout, &c.

§ X. 1°. *Quelqu'un* and *chacun* are said both of persons and things, but *chacun* has no plural. They require the particle *de* after them, when there follows a noun or pronoun: as *chacun de vous*, each of you; *quelques unes d'entre elles*, some of them (speaking of women). *Quelqu'un* is sometimes used absolutely: as *si je vois quelqu'un*, if I see somebody; but most times relatively to a

## S Y N T A X.

noun that comes after with *de*, or one that comes before, and is mentioned again by the pronoun *en*, and then *quelqu'un* is Englished by *some*: as

*J'apperçois quelques uns de vos nouveaux livres;*

I perceive some of your new books.

*Vous avez de beaux livres, prêtez m'en quelqu'un, or quelques uns;*

You have got fine books, lend me some.

*Chacun de ces tableaux-là est d'un grand prix;*

Each of those pictures is very valuable.

*Ces choses là ont chacune leur mérite;*

Each of those things has its worth.

*Otez ces livres, & les mettez chacun à sa place;*

Take these books away, and put each of them in its place.

2°. *Quiconque* signifies and is said of *any body whatever*, and is only of the singular number: as

*Quiconque méprise les belles-lettres se rend lui-même méprisable;*

Whoever despises polite learning makes himself despicable.

*Quiconque de vous sera assez hardie pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir,*

If any of you is so bold as to slander me, I'll make her (or them) repent it.

Sometimes *quiconque*, as well as *qui*, is the object of one verb, at the same time that it is the subject of another: as

*Il a ordre d'arrêter quiconque passera par-là;*

He has orders to arrest any body that shall go by.

*En dépit de quiconque y trouvera à redire;*

In spite of any body that will find it amiss.

But we don't say *en dépit de quiconque*, to signify in spite of *any body whatever*, it being necessary for that pronoun both to be governed and to govern at the same time. Therefore the last English should be rendered thus, *en dépit de tout le monde*, or *de qui que ce soit*.

3°. *Personne* (nobody) is directly opposite to *quiconque*, and is never used but with verbs attended by a negative, or in exclusive propositions, or wherein the adverb *trop* is used: as

*Ne faire tort à personne,* To wrong nobody.

*Vivre sans faire tort à personne,* To live without wronging any body.

*Il est trop hardi pour craindre personne,* He is too bold to fear any body.

*Personne* is used without a negative in sentences of interrogation, or rather of admiration, wonder, and doubt; wherein it don't signify *no body*, but *any body*: as

*Y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi ?*

Is there any body in the world that esteems you more than I do?

*Personne a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale ?*

Could ever any body find the Philosopher's stone?

In which instances one does not only inquire after the thing in question, but it also shows one's doubt and wonder at it: whereas in this following, one only inquires after the thing in question:

*Personne n'a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale ?*

Could never any body find the Philosopher's stone?

The *personne* is said of both genders, yet it requires the ad-noun or pronoun which refers to it, in the masculine, even in speaking of a woman: as

*Personne n'est venu, and not venue; no body is come.*

*Il n'y a personne assez hardi pour oser;*

There is nobody so bold as to dare.

*Personne n'est si malheureux qu'elle;*

No body is so unhappy as she is.

Nevertheless if the pronoun *personne* is applied to a woman, or to women, in such a manner that it ceases to be indefinite, and becomes specified, then it requires the ad-noun in the feminine, as speaking to women.

*Il n'y a personne de vous assez hardie pour, &c.*

There is none among you so bold as to, &c.

4<sup>o</sup>. *Nul, pas un, aucun*, are also pronouns negative, requiring another negative before the verb, except in sentences of interrogation, or doubt: as

*Nul n'ose en approcher;*

No man or woman dares come near him, or her.

*Pas un ne le croit;* No one believes it.

*Pas un l'a-t-il dit ?* Has any body told it?

*Y a-t-il aucun de vous qui le souffrir ?*

Is there any of you that would bear it?

*Aucun* is hardly used but in sentences of interrogation, and is followed by the second state, as in the last instance.

*Any body*, signifies *tout le monde*, and never *aucune personne*: which (if it was a French expression) would require a negative, and imply quite the contrary, to wit, *nobody*. Therefore do not say as the French refugees do,

*Demandez à la Bourse où il demeure, aucune personne vous le dira;*

Ask upon Change where he lives, *any body* will tell it you:

but *Demandez à la Bourse où il demeure, tout le monde vous le dira*, or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne vous le dise.*

5<sup>o</sup>. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* will have the verb in the singular, if it

comes after it; and in the plural, if it comes before: but *l'un & l'autre* will always have it in the plural:

<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu,</i>	} Neither of them is come.
or <i>Ils ne sont venus ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	
<i>L'un &amp; l'autre ont raison,</i>	} Both are in the right, or
or <i>Ils ont raison l'un &amp; l'autre,</i>	

6°. The verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it is the verb *être*: as *Il se font des grimaces l'un à l'autre*, they make faces to one another.

*Some*, repeated in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns* in the first part of the sense, and *les autres* in the other: as

*Les uns aiment une chose, & les autres une autre*, or *& les autres en aiment une autre*, some like one thing and some another.

*Plusieurs* is of both genders, and of the plural number only: as *plusieurs hommes* many men, *plusieurs femmes* many women;—*many a man*, is rendered into French by *plusieurs hommes*, or *plus d'un homme*.

7°. *Tout* is construed several ways. 1<sup>st</sup>, It is an adnoun signifying *all* and *whole*, and always coming before the article of its noun, besides the preposition *de* and *à*, which it requires before itself: as *tout le monde*, all the world, or the whole world; *de tout le monde*, of the whole world; *à tout le monde*, to the whole world.

It is to be observed, that when this adnoun is construed with the name of a city or town of the feminine, it does not agree with it in gender, and besides causes the other adnoun (if there is any) to be masculine: as *Tout Rome le sait*, not *toute Rome*, as you should say *toute la ville le sait*, all Rome, all the city knows it; *tout la Haye en est alarmé*, not *toute alarmée*, all the Hague is frightened at it.

2<sup>dly</sup>, It signifies *any* or *every*, and its noun has no article: as

*Toute vérité n'est pas toujours bonne à dire*,

All truth (i. e. any truth) is not to be told at all times.

*Tout homme est mortel*, Every man is mortal.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *Tout* construed with some verbs, especially with *être*, is taken substantively, and signifies most times *every thing*: as *tout est vanité en ce monde*, every thing is vanity in this world. Sometimes it signifies *the whole*: as *le tout est plus grand que sa partie*, the whole is bigger than its part. It signifies also *every* in these words, *tous les jours* every day, *toutes les semaines* every week, *tous les mois* every month, *tous les ans* every year, *à toute heure* every hour, *à tout moment* every moment; but we don't say *à tout instant*, or *à toute minute*, but *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*.

*Tout*,

*Tout*, being adnoun, must be repeated before each noun of which it can be said, especially if they are of different genders: as

*Je suis avec toute l'ardeur, & tout le respect possible, &c.*

I am, with all possible zeal and respect, &c.

*Tout*, besides its construction of noun, adnoun, and pronoun, has three others, 1<sup>st</sup>, It is used before an adnoun followed by *que*, and is rendered by *alibo*, or *however*, or by *et*, repeated with an adnoun between, or only coming after an adnoun. In this signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the adnoun feminine, before which it comes, begins with a consonant; for then it is used in the feminine gender and plural number: but when the adnoun, tho' feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, *tout* remains indeclinable: as

*Tout Philosophe qu'il est, il juge souvent de travers;*

Tho' he is a Philosopher, he often judges very wrong.

*Tout ignorant qu'il est, il a beaucoup de jugement;*

As ignorant as he is, he has much judgment.

*Toutes laides qu'elles sont, elles sont bien fières;*

As ugly as they are, (or) for all they are ugly, they are very proud creatures.

*Toute petite qu'est son armée, il leur donnera bataille;*

Small as his army is, he will give them battle.

*Tout étonnantes que sont ces aventures, on les a vu arriver;*

However surprising those adventures are, they have been seen to happen.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *Tout* is also used before an adnoun, without being followed by *que*: but it is liable to the same rules and constructions as when it is, and is Englished by the adverb *quite*, entirely, &c. as

*Il est tout autre,*

He is quite another man.

*Elle est tout abattue de sa disgrâce,*

She is entirely cast down by her disgrace.

*Ils sont tout transportés de joie,*

*Elles sont toutes transportées de joie,*

They are quite overjoyed, or transported with joy.

*Elles sont tout épouvées,*

They are quite affrighted.

*Ce sont des nouvelles toutes fraîches,*

These news are quite fresh.

But if the adnoun has *aussi* before it, *tout* is indeclinable: as

*Elles sont tout aussi fraîches que si on ne faisoit que de les cueillir,*

They are quite as fresh as if they had been pick'd just now.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *Tout* is besides used before these two adverbs, *bas* and *doucement*: as

*Parlez tout bas, speak quite low: Marchez tout doucement, walk softly.*

To these pronouns is added *autrui*, which has neither gender nor number. It is used in the second and third state in these and such-like expressions:

*Désirer, or convoiter le bien d'autrui,* To covet another man's property.

*s'Affliger du mal d'autrui,*

To be sorry for another's trouble or misfortune.

*Dépendre d'autrui,*

To depend upon others.

*Nuire à autrui,*

To wrong, hurt, or prejudice others.

*Faire à autrui comme nous voudrions qu'on nous fit;*

To do by others as we would be done by.

As to *quelconque*, *quelque*, and *chaque*, they are mere adnouns, inseparable from a noun. — *Quelconque* signifies any whatever, and always follows its noun, being used only in some law-phrases like this, *Nonobstant opposition, or appellation quelconque*, notwithstanding any opposition or appeal whatever: and such sentences like this,

*Il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse le convaincre,*

There is no reason whatever can convince him.

8°. *Quelque* signifies either a Number indeterminate, or a Quality, or Quantity indeterminate. In the first signification it answers to the word *some*: as

*Quelques hommes* some men, *quelque femmes* some women.

In

In the other signification it answers to these expressions, *what-ever, whatsoever, tho' with ever so, or never so much*: as

*Quelque mérite qu'on ait, on ne réussit guères dans le monde sans protecteur;*

Whatever merit a man has, or tho' a man has ever so much merit, or though a man is ever so deserving, he very seldom meets with success in the world without a patron.

*Quelque*, signifying *some*, is always an adnoun: but when it signifies *whatever*, &c. it is sometimes an adverb, and therefore indeclinable, and sometimes a pronoun incomplete adjective, which agrees in gender and number with the following noun or adnoun.

*Quelque* is only an adverb, when it comes before an adnoun, and a noun governed of *être*; or only when it comes before an adnoun, which can never happen but with *être*, and it then signifies *however*: as

*Quelque riches qu'ils soient;*

*However rich they be; tho' they are ever so rich.*

*Quelque belles que soient ses actions;*

*However fine his actions may be.*

*Quelque grandes que soient les actions qu'il a faites;*

*How great soever may be the actions that he has done.*

But when *quelque* comes before a noun attended by an adnoun, or before a noun only, but with any other verb than *être*, it is an adnoun following the same rule as others: as

*Quelques richesses qu'il possède;* whatever riches he is possessed of.

*Quelques grandes actions qu'il ait faites;*

*Whatever great actions he has done.*

Note, 1<sup>st</sup>, that *quelque* signifying *whatever*, followed immediately by a noun or adnoun, always requires, if it is indeclinable, the particle *que*, and if declinable, the relative *qui*, before the next verb, which it governs in the subjunctive, and of which it is governed, as to its state. In the aforesaid sentences, and most of the same kind, the relative is in the fourth state (*que*), which has made our Grammarians lay it down as a rule, that *quelque* is always followed by *que*: but these following instances prove that it is by the relative *qui* that *quelque* is always followed, when it is declinable: as

*Quelque chose qui arrive,*

*Whatever happens.*

*Quelques évènements qui puissent arriver,*

*Whatever events may happen.*

2<sup>dly</sup>, That in those sorts of sentences, *quelque* with its noun and adnoun, or with either, makes a sort of *nominative absolute*, i. e. a subject which goes for nothing in the grammatical order of the sentence, and that the verb must besides have another noun come before it for its subject, and another for its object, unless it is neuter. Which again evinces that it is not *que* (as it should be, were the rule of our Grammarians true), but *qui* that follows *quelque*, and is the subject coming before the verbs neuter in the last instances.

3<sup>dly</sup>, That as *whatsoever* is a pronoun compound, which is sometimes separated in two parts by a word between; as in *what condition soever I be* (*en quelque état que je me trouve*), so is likewise *quelque* separated in two words, viz. *quel* and *que*, but without any word between as in English: and *quel* must be immediately followed by a verb, or a pronoun personal in the first state; then *quel* must agree in gender and number with the

the following noun or pronoun, that comes before the verb (*N. B.* If the word that expresses the subject is a noun, it comes after the verb; and the verb requires no other state of the relative *qui* before it, tho' it is still governed in the subjunctive by *que*): as

*Quels que puissent être vos desseins,*  
which is the same as *Quelques desseins que vous puissiez avoir,*  
Whatever your designs may be, or whatever designs you may have.

*Quel que je sois,* Whatever I am.  
*Quels que nous soyons,* Whatever we are.  
*Quelles qu'elles puissent être,* Whatever they may be (speaking of women.)

*Asbly,* *Whatever* and *whatsoever* cannot always be rendered by *quelque*. We have seen before that they express sometimes *quelconque*. They are moreover rendered by *quoi que*, *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*: as

*Whatever it may be,* *Quoi que ce soit.*  
*Whatever happens,* *Quoi qu'il arrive.*  
*Whatever pleases,* *Tout ce qui plaît.*  
*Whatever you will,* *Tout ce que vous voudrez.*

*Note,* That *quoi que* in the two first instances, is very different from the conjunction *quoi-que*, *alib*, the former being a pronoun composed of *quoi* and *que*, signifying whatever.

Some repeated in the speech, is made in French by *les uns* before one sentence, and *les autres* before another: as

*Some* love one thing, *some* another;  
*Les uns aiment une chose, les autres en aiment une autre.*

From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other pronouns indeterminate;

*qui que ce soit,* *qui que ce fût;*  
*quoi que ce soit,* *quoi que ce fût;*

the two first are said of persons, the two others of things; *qui que ce soit* answers to any body, *whatsoever*; and when its verb is attended by a negative, it signifies no man in the world, no man living, no body at all: as

*Qui que ce soit qui vous parle, pensez à ce qu'on vous dit;*  
Whosoever speaks to you, mind what is said to you.  
*Qui que ce soit ne m'en a parlé;* Nobody at all spoke to me of it.  
*Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit;* I have seen nobody in the world.

*Qui que ce fût*, is the same pronoun used with the other tense of the subjunctive, according as the construction requires it: as

*Qui que ce fût qui lui parlât, il ne répondoit rien;*  
Whosoever spoke to him, he answered nothing.  
*Il ne se défioit de qui que ce fût;* He mistrusted nobody at all.

These two pronouns, used without a negative, make a sort of *nominative absolute*, which must be followed by the pron. personal *il*: and when the sentence has two parts, *qui que ce soit*, *qui que ce fût* must be immediately followed by the relative *qui*, before the verb of the first part, and *il* must come besides before that of the second: as

*Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera découvert;*  
Whosoever cheats me shall be found out.  
*Qui que ce soit, il s'en repentira;*  
Whoever he be, or let him be who he will, he shall repent it.

*Quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, without a negative, signifies any thing *whatsoever*; and with a negative, *nothing in the world*: as

*Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le moi savoir;* Whatever happens, let me know it.  
*Quoi que ce soit n'est arrivé;* Nothing in the world has happened.

Those pronouns are used in their three states with *de* and *à*.

*Tel* such, and *rien* nothing, may also pass for pronouns indeterminate, in sentences like these;

*Tel sème qui ne recueille pas,* Such sow as don't reap.  
*Il ne dit rien,* He says nothing.

Otherwise *tel* is an adnoun signifying *such*, and the *que* after it as: as

*Il est tel qu'on le dit,* He is such as they say.

But

But what must be particularly observed is, that *tel*, or rather its noun, takes no particle, when it is construed with a verb in the imperative, tho' it does with any other mood; as

*Imposez-moi telle peine qu'il vous plaira;*

Inflict upon me such a punishment as you please.

But we say: *Je ne puis souffrir une telle peine, un tel affront;*

I cannot bear such a punishment, such an affront.

## CHAP. V.

### Observations upon Nouns of Number.

1°. **C**ARDINAL numbers are indeclinable, except *cent* and *million*, which take an *s* in the plural, as also *vingt*, but only when it comes after *quatre* and *six* before a noun: as *deux quatre, trois cinq, deux-cens louis, trois millions, quatre-vingts livres, six vingts hommes*: but we say *quatre-vingt-dix hommes, quatre-vingt un*. These numbers always come immediately before the things numbered, and cannot be preceded by any noun or adnoun, except the adnouns possessive *mon, ma, mes*, &c. as *ses deux amis* his two friends, *mes trois frères* my three brothers, *leurs six chevaux* their six horses. The first number is the only one liable to gender, making *une* in the feminine.

2°. The conjunction *Et* (*and*) is put before the unity only, as *vingt Et un, trente Et un, quarante Et un*, and *le vingt Et unième, le cinquante Et unième*, &c. but it is not put before the other combined numbers, except those that follow *soixante*: we say *vingt-deux, vingt-trois, trente-quatre, quarante-cinq, cinquante-six*, &c. but it is put after all the numbers that follow *soixante*; as *soixante Et un, soixante Et deux, soixante Et dix, soixante Et quinze*, till you come to *quatre-vingt*. But after *quatre-vingt* there is no *Et* put even before the unity *quatre-vingt-un, quatre-vingt-deux, quatre-vingt-dix, cent-un, cent-deux, cent-unième, cent-deuxième*, &c. However, some good writers and speakers never use the conjunction copulative in the aforesaid cases, except before the unity, and they say *vingt Et un, trente Et un, soixante Et un, soixante-deux, soixante-dix*, &c. We don't say *six-vingt-un*, but *cent vingt Et un*. We don't say, *sept-vingt, huit-vingt*, &c. as the English do *seven-score, eight-score*, &c. but *cent-quarante, cent-soixante*. We say *mille*, and never *dix-cens*, nor *vingt cens*: but we say *onze-cens* eleven hundred, *douze-cens* twelve hundred, and so on to *deux-mille, deux-mille-cent, deux-mille-deux-cens*, &c. *un million*, and never *dix-cens-mille*.

3°. We don't say *septante* for *soixante & dix*, seventy: *huitante* for *quatre-vingt*, eighty or fore-score; and *nonante* for *quatre-vingt-dix*, ninety; as Gascons, and others of the south of France say. Except in Geometry, where *nonante* is preserved. — We mean by *les Septante*, the seventy-two translators of the Bible.

4°. When we speak of Time, we say *huit jours*, a week, and not *une semaine*; *quinze jours*, a fortnight, and not *quatorze nuits*; *trois semaines*, three weeks; *quatre, cinq semaines, un mois*, a month; *six semaines*, six weeks; *deux mois, deux mois & demi*, and not *neuf* or *dix semaines*; *trois mois, six mois*, and never *un quartier, un demi-an*; *sept, huit, neuf mois*, and not *trois quarts d'an*, nor *trois quartiers*: *un an, un an & demi, deux ans*; but we don't say *un an & un mois, un an & deux mois, &c.* but *treize mois, quatorze mois, &c.*

5°. When we speak of an indeterminate number of which we are not sure, we say *un ou deux, deux ou trois*, down to *sept ou huit*, seven or eight; then we say *huit ou dix, dix ou douze, douze ou quinze, quinze ou vingt, vingt ou trente, trente ou quarante*, as far as sixty; then *soixante ou quatre-vingt, quatre-vingt ou cent*; but we say *environ cent-vingt, environ cent-trente, &c.* and not *cent ou cent-vingt, cent-trente ou cent-quarante*. When we know the number very near, we say *dix ou onze, onze ou douze, douze ou treize, &c.*

6°. We say *trente & un jours*, thirty-one days; *vingt & un ans*, one-and-twenty years; *vingt & un écus*, twenty-one crowns; *vingt & un chevaux*, one-and-twenty horses, &c. but never *vingt & un chevaux, vingt & un an, &c.*; and when the noun is attended by an adnoun, that adnoun is plural likewise: *Il a vingt & un ans accomplis*, He is full one-and-twenty years old; *Il y a quarante & un jours passés*, It is about one-and-forty days; *Trente & un écus bien comptés*, One-and-thirty crowns well told; *Vingt & un Guinées bien comptées*, One-and-twenty guineas well told.

7°. The Cardinal numbers take not the article, except in a particular case mentioned already (Synt. Chap. II. No. 5.); the other numbers always do. The Collective are commonly preceded by *un* or *une*, and must besides be followed by the preposition *de* before the next noun: as *J'ai douze noix, ou une douzaine de noix, & vous en avez trente*, I have twelve walnuts, or a dozen of walnuts, and you have got thirty; *Donnez-m'en la moitié,*

ou le tiers, Give me half, or the third part of them: *Prenez-en une douzaine*, Take a dozen.

8°. From the Cardinal numbers the Ordinal are formed, in adding *ième* to the last consonant of the Cardinal, and cutting off therefore the final *e* in those that have it: as from *deux*, *deuxième*; *dix*, *dixième*; *quatre*, *quatrième*. Except *premier* & *second* that are formed from the Cardinal numbers. In *neuf*, the *f* is changed into *v* in *neuvième*, the ninth. Tho' we say *le premier* & *le second*, yet we don't say *le vingt* & *premier*, *le vingt second*, but *le vingt* & *unième*, *le vingt-deuxième*. To the ordinal numbers belong these three, *le dernier* the last, *le pénultième*, or *l'avant-dernier* before the last, the last but one, and *l'antépénultième* the last but two.

9°. Ordinal numbers form also each an adverb, with the addition of *ment*, or *ement*, as *premierement* firstly, *secondement*, or *deuxièmement*, secondly, *troisièmement* thirdly, and so on to twenty. We also say, *en premier lieu*, *en second lieu*, *en troisième lieu*, in the first place, &c.

10°. We use the Cardinal number, not the Ordinal, in dating and speaking of the years of the world, and we do not write *mille* nor *cent*, but *mil* and *cent*, as *l'an mil sept cent quatre vingt-neuf de l'Ère Chrétienne*, the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine of the Christian Æra: but we say *la seconde*, *la quatrième année de la centième*, ou *de la dixième Olympiade*, the 2d or 4th year of the 100, or 10th Olympiad. We also use the Cardinal number, when we name the days of the month: as *le deux* the second, *le trois* the third, *le six* the sixth, *le onze* the eleventh, *le quinze* the fifteenth, *le vingt* the twentieth, *le vingt* & *un* the twenty-first, &c. and not *le deuxième*, *le vingtième du mois*, &c. but we do not say, *l'un du mois*, but *le premier*, the first day of the month. Observe besides, that we put no particle before *cent* and *mille*, as in English, except it is to denote unity in opposition to many: as *un cent de plumes*, a hundred pens; *J'en ai cent*, *J'en ai mille*, I have got a hundred, a thousand. We say *le onze*, *du onze*, *au onze*; and likewise *vers les onze heures*, about eleven o'clock, *sur les une heure*, about one o'clock; as if the first syllable of *onze* & *une* was aspirated, &c.

11°. When two Ordinal numbers come together, we make the first Cardinal, and say *le dix* ou *douzième*, the tenth or twelfth; *le sept* ou *huitième*, the seventh or eighth, instead of *dixième* ou *douzième*, &c.

12°. Speaking of Kings and Sovereigns, we use the Cardinal number without the article, instead of the Ordinal with the article, as in English: as *Henri trois*, *Henri quatre*, Henry the third, the fourth; *Alexandre sept*, Alexander the seventh; *Charles neuf*, Charles the ninth; *Benoit treize*, Benedict the thirteenth; *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth. But we say *Henri premier*, *Henri second*, *François premier*, *George second*, George the second, and not *François un*, *Henri deux*, *George deux*. We say *Charles-quint*, Charles the fifth (Emperor of Germany), to distinguish him from the Kings of the same name. We also say *Sixte-quint*, *Sixtus* the fifth (a Pope).

13°. *Huitaine* and *neuvaine* are said of the interval of eight or nine days. *Octave* is said both of the interval of eight days during which a Church festival is kept, and of eight musical notes together. *Tercet*, *quatrain*, *sixain*, *huitain*, and *dizain*, are terms of Poetry, said of staves of three, four, six, eight, and ten verses. *Quinzain* and *trentain* are Tennis terms, signifying fifteen or thirty all; as *quinte*, *tierce*, and *quarte*, are Card terms, to denote a sequence of three, four, or five cards. *Tierce* and *quarte* are also said of a periodical fit of an ague returning every third or fourth day, *la fièvre tierce ou quarte*, the tertian or quartan ague. *Tricon*, another card term, signifies a *prial* or *pair royal*.

14°. Besides the distributive numbers *le tiers*, *le quart*, we also say *la troisième* & *la quatrième partie*, the third and fourth part; then we say *un cinquième* a fifth, *un ou deux sixièmes*, a sixth or two, *un dixième*, a tenth, &c. *la dixme*, the tithe, is said only of the tenth part of the fruits of the earth.

15°. *Demi* half, is a sort of adnoun indeclinable, when it comes before its noun, making together a compound word, as *une demi-heure*, half an hour, *Demi-Dieux*, Semi-Gods: but when the noun comes first, it agrees with it in gender, to which it is joined with the conjunction &, as *un muid & demi*, a hogthead and a half, *une livre & demie*, a pound and a half. *Demi* is said of things sold by the hundred, as *un demi-cent de plumes*, half an hundred of quills.

16°. *Mi*, another distributive word, used only with the following nouns, of which it makes compound words, signifies also *moitié*, half, or rather *milieu*, middle: but (what is worth observing) it requires the article feminine, though the noun before which it comes be masculine; and is never construed without the article feminine;

feminine; as *la mi-Août*, *la mi-May*, the middle of August or May, *la mi-Carême*, the middle of Lent: except in some adverbial expressions used without the article; as *à mi-jambe*, to the middle of the leg; *à mi-chemin*, in the middle of the way.

17°. *Quartier*, the fourth part of a thing, is said of those that are cut into parts, and *quarteron* of those that are sold by the hundred or the pound; as *un quartier d'orange*, the fourth part of an orange, *un quarteron de thé*, a quarter of a pound of tea, *trois quarterons d'huîtres*, three quarters of a hundred of oysters.—*Quintal* is an hundred weight, *un quintal de poudre*, *deux quintaux*, one or two hundred weight of powder; and *millier* is said of things sold by the hundred, as *un millier d'épingles*, ten hundred of pins. We also say *un quartier*, *deux ou trois quartiers de loyer*, instead of *trois mois*, *six ou neuf mois de loyer*, a quarter, two or three quarters rent. We also say *quartier* and *semestre* of three or six months waiting at a prince's; as *être en quartier*, to be in waiting, *sortir de semestre*, to go or be out of waiting.

18°. We say *couple* and *paire* for two, but not promiscuously: *couple* is said of two natural things of the same kind that can be parted, as *une couple d'œufs*, a couple of eggs, *une couple de poulets*, a couple of chickens, *une couple de guinées*, a couple of guineas; but we don't say *une couple de gens*, *une couple de personnes*, a couple of people: and *paire* is said of two artificial things that always go together, being fellows, and are in that respect inseparable, as *une paire de gants*, *de bas*, *de souliers*, a pair of gloves, stockings, shoes, *une paire de ciseaux*, *une paire de manches*, a pair of scissors, sleeves, &c. We don't say *une paire de culottes*, as the English do of a pair of breeches, but only *une culotte*.

19°. *Les Vingt-quatre* is said of the four-and-twenty violins belonging to the chapel of the King of France; *les Quarante*, of the forty members of the French Academy; *les Septante*, the seventy-two translators of the Bible; and *les Quinze-vingt*, the three hundred blind people belonging to an hospital of that name founded by St. Louis at Paris.

20°. Moreover, we say *centenaire*, *millénaire*, and *millésime*; as also *sexagénaire*, *septuagénaire*, *octogénaire*, and *nonagénaire*.

*Centenaire* is always an adnoun, as *le nombre centenaire*, the centenary number, *prescription centenaire ou de cent ans*, a hundred years prescription.—*Millénaire* is sometimes an adnoun, as *le nombre millénaire*, the millenary number, and sometimes a noun, as *le premier*, *le second millénaire* (the ten first centuries, or the ten next.)

next). *Milléfime*, said only of the date set on medals, is always a noun; as *le millésime de la médaille est effacé*, the date, or year of the medal is erased. *Sexagénnaire*, *septuagénnaire*, and the two others, are used both as nouns and adnouns; as *un bon vieillard nonagénnaire*, a good old man of ninety; *On voit peu d'octogénaires*: *les nonagénaires sent encore plus rares*, We see few people eighty years old: those of ninety are scarcer still.

## C H A P. VI.

## Of VERBS.

§ I. 1°. **T**HE verb always has a noun or pronoun before it, for its subject, with which it agrees in person and number: as

*Je vois*, I see; *Il croit*, he thinks; *Ils disent*, they say.

*Le maître enseigne*, & *l'écuyer apprend*;

The master teaches, and the scholar learns.

And when the subject is a relative, it is of the same person with the pronoun personal, or noun which it refers to: as

*C'est moi qui ai fait cela*;

*C'est lui qui a vu cela*;

It is I who have done that.

It is he who has seen that.

*C'est nous qui ne le croyons pas*;

*Je vois un homme qui boit*;

It is we who do not believe it.

I see a man who is drinking.

2°. Many nouns singular will have the verb in the plural: as

*Son esprit, sa douceur, & sa patience l'abandonnèrent*;

His understanding, good nature, and patience forsook him.

*Ni la douceur ni la force ne l'y feront consentir*;

Neither gentle nor forcible means will make him consent to it.

Except when the two nouns singular are joined by the conjunction disjunctive *ou*; for then the last noun is supposed to govern the verb: as

*Ou la douceur ou la force le fera*, and not *la feront*;

Either gentle or forcible means will do it.

If one of the nouns is in the plural, the verb must agree with it; as

*Le Prince autant que les peuples souhaitent la paix*;

The Prince as much as the people wish for peace.

But if the last noun is preceded by *mais*, the verb must agree with it, tho' it is singular, and there may be many plural before: as *Non-seulement ses honneurs & ses richesses, mais sa vertu même*

T

s'éva-

*s'évanouit*; Not only his honours and riches, but also his very virtue vanished away.

Some pretend that when the last noun is preceded by *tout*, the verb must agree with it too:

*Set biens, ses avantages, & tout son repos fut sacrifié;*

His riches, advantages, and all his quiet were sacrificed. But the ear must then be consulted, it being as properly said,

*Ses bonheurs, ses richesses, & toute sa vertu s'évanouirent,*

His honours, riches, and all his virtue vanished away.

3°. When the verb has many pronouns of different persons for its subject, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as

*Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord;* You and I agree.

*Vous vous ferez des affaires vous & lui;*

You and he will bring yourselves into trouble.

Note, that in French the person who speaks, always names himself last: as *Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord*, and never *moi & vous nous sommes d'accord*.

These three nouns, *une infinité*, *un grand nombre*, or *un nombre infini*, and *la plupart*, coming before another noun plural, require their verb in the plural: as

*Une infinité de gens pensent, &c.* An infinite number of people think, &c.

*Un grand nombre de sçavans soutiennent cette opinion;*

A great number of learned men maintain that opinion.

*La plupart de ses amis l'abandonnèrent;* Most of his friends forsook him.

It is the same when those nouns singular come immediately before a verb, without being followed by another noun plural, because it is always understood: as

*Une infinité s'imaginent;* A vast number of people fancy.

*La plupart coururent aux armes, les autres prirent la fuite;*

Most part ran to arms, the others took to their heels.

But when they come before a noun singular, the verb is put, as usual, in the singular: as, *Une infinité de monde y accouroit de toutes parts;*

A vast number of people resorted thither from all parts.

*La plupart du monde fait cela;* Most people, or the generality of men do that.

Which shews that it is not the noun of collection or multitude, that governs the verbs of the first instances in the plural, but the second noun of that number; so that it is the noun that comes after the collective, with which the verb must agree in number, but only with the aforesaid three nouns, and not with the other nouns collective, which follow the general rule. Therefore say

*La moitié des ennemis déserta,* and not *désertèrent*; Half of the enemies deserted.

*Le tiers des vignes fut brûlé,* and not *furent*; The third part of the vines was burnt.

4°. The noun expressing the subject comes after the verb (or between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is a pronoun) in a short sentence, used by parenthesis, and as an accessory member to the chief sentence: as

*Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau;* All men are mad, says Boileau.

*Enfin, disoit ce bon Roi, je ne me croirai heureux qu'autant que je ferai le bonheur de mes peuples;*

In short, said that good King, I will think myself happy only as much as I shall make the happiness of my people.

The

The subject is likewise better put after the verb in the narrative discourse, when the verb has no object, or when the object is expressed by one of these conjunctive pronouns, *se, que, le, lui*, or the adjective *tel* comes before the verb: as

*Sur cela parut le Prince*; Thereupon the Prince appeared.

*L'argent que m'envoya mon père*; The money which my father sent me.

*A notre arrivée se présenta un Ecuyer pour nous conduire*;

When we arrived, a Gentleman Usher came to us to be our guide.

*La prison où furent mis les malfaiteurs*;

The prison in which the malefactors were put.

*Tel parut à ses yeux l'éclat de sa beauté*;

Such appeared in his eyes the brightness of her beauty.

### *The Use and Construction of the Tenses.*

§ II. 1°. The *Present* tense of the indicative is used to denote the thing that is, or a-doing, in the present period of time wherein we speak: as *Je vois*, I see; *Je pense*, I think; that is, I, at this present time of speaking, do see, or think.

2°. The *Imperfect*, so called, because it partakes something both of the present and præterite, is used, 1<sup>st</sup>, to denote that the thing which we are speaking of was present in a time past specified: as *J'écrivois quand il arriva*; I was writing when he arrived: that is, at the time when he arrived, which is a time past specified, my action of writing, which was also past, was then present.

2<sup>dly</sup>, To denote a thing that was, without any respect to the time; and therefore it is used to express in a narration, the inclinations and qualifications a person had: as *Tite étoit les délices du genre humain*; Titus was the delight of mankind. *Mon père étoit bel homme*; My father was a handsome man.

But if we speak of people that are living still (for the last instances are said of dead people), we use the compound of the present: as *Mon père a été bel homme*; or if we use the imperfect, we must mention a particular time: as

*Ma sœur étoit belle*; My sister was handsome (supposing she is dead).

*Ma sœur a été belle*; My sister has been handsome (supposing she lives still).

*Ma sœur étoit belle dans sa jeunesse*, or *avant d'avoir eu la petite vérole*; My sister was handsome in her youth, (or) before she had the small pox (whether she is dead or no).

3<sup>dly</sup>. The Imperfect is used to denote a thing uncertain, and doubtful, and even one that has something of the future, but with uncertainty; in which respect that tense is always attended, either before or after, by a conditional, and that thing, or action, is sometimes expressed in English by *should*: as *S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouserait*; If he loved her, or should he love her, he would marry her. *S'il venoit, vous lui diriez que j'ai été obligé de sortir pour affaire*; If he should happen to come, you'd tell him that I have been obliged to go out on account of business.

3<sup>o</sup>. The *Preterite* is used to denote a thing past in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it was a-doing, and therefore is chiefly used in historical relations: as *J'allai l'année passée en France*; I went to France last year. *J'appris la semaine dernière que, &c.* I heard last week that, &c. *Je fus hier à la Comédie*; I went to the Play last night. *Quand César vit*; When Cæsar saw.

4<sup>o</sup>. The *Future* denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come: as *Nous aurons la paix*; We shall have peace. We have not peace yet, but it is to come.

5<sup>o</sup>. The *Conditional* or uncertain tense is used to denote a thing that would, should, or could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, because it depends upon another uncertain and conditional thing. It denotes the time to come, but conditionally: as *S'il demandoit cette place, on la lui donneroit*; If he asked for that place, they would give it him. The action of giving would be in an uncertain time, because it depends on one's asking, which is also uncertain, at least conditional.

The *Conditional* is also used in a sense that denotes the present, especially in sentences of *Wish*: as *Je voudrais (or) Je souhaiterois qu'il fit beau Dimanche*; I wish it would be fine weather on Sunday. *Voudriez-vous me faire un plaisir?* Would you do me a kindness? *Pourriez-vous me prêter vingt Guinées?* Could you (or) Can you lend me twenty Guineas?

6<sup>o</sup>. The *Compound of the Present* denotes indeed, as the *preterite*, a thing that is past, but so that there is still actually remaining some part to slide away of the time wherein we declare the thing has been done: whereas the *preterite* denotes the thing or action past in such a manner that nothing remains of that time wherein it was done: as *J'ai lu cette semaine la déclaration de la guerre*; I have read this week the declaration of war. *J'ai appris ce matin de grandes nouvelles*; I have heard great news this morning. *I have read and heard* denote a thing past; but it is *this week* and

and *to-day*, and still there remains a part of this week, and day, wherein I speak.

The English have, as the French, three tenses, to denote an action that is over, *I did write, I wrote, I have written*: but they use them promiscuously to signify the same idea, without having any regard to the principal time when: whereas those three tenses, and even all compound tenses, which are really so many preterite tenses, and as well compound in the sense implied, as in the words expressed, denote in French so many circumstances of an action that is over, and must not be confounded.

In order therefore to give a perfect notion of the use and construction especially of these three preterites, which so much puzzle Foreigners, and to omit as little as possible on that point of the language, I will try further to illustrate what I have said thereon, in giving it another turn.

1°. The *Imperfect*, which, when used in the first of the three respects wherein it is construed, denotes an action past, but that was present in a specified time past (as *J'écrivois quand il arriva*, I was writing when he arrived), is properly englished by the imperfect of the verb substantive *to be*, and the gerund of the verb in question, as I have translated it. At least, whenever the tense *to be* denoted may be thus englished, it is infallibly by the imperfect it must be expressed in French: for then one denotes an action that was present, in a time that is past.

The second respect considered in the construction of the imperfect admits of no difficulty. And as to the third, when the tense denotes uncertainty, doubt, or even futurity, one need only consider the tense that comes after it in English: for if it has *should, would, or could* for its sign, the first verb must be expressed in French by the imperfect: as

If he *loved* her, he *would* marry her; *S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouserait.*

2°. When the thing spoken of happened in the *day, week, month, year, and age* wherein we live, we use the *compound of the present* to denote it: as

*J'ai appris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles;*

I have heard great news to-day.

*J'ai vu le Roi cette semaine;* I have seen the King this week.

*J'ai été à la Comédie ce mois-ci;* I have been to the Play this month.

*Les François ont battu les Alliés cette année;*

The French have beat the Allies this year.

*Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes ;*

Our age has produced great men. And never

*J'appris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles ; Je vis le Roi cette semaine ; J'allai à la Comédie ce mois-ci ; Les François battirent les Alliés cette année ; Notre siècle produisit de grands hommes ;* because all those actions denote the day, week, month, year, age, in short, the time we live in, and there remains still some part of that time, viz. of this year, month, day, &c. to slide away. Whereas we say,

3°. *J'appris hier de grandes nouvelles ;* I heard great news yesterday. *Je vis le Roi la semaine passée ;* I saw the King last week.

*Je fus or J'allai à la Comédie le mois dernier ;*  
I went to the Play last month.

*Les François battirent les Alliés en 1746 ;*

The French did beat the Allies in 1746.

*Les Espagnols conquièrent l'Amérique dans le 16 siècle ;*

The Spaniards conquered America in the 16th century.

And we do not express those actions with the compound of the present, because we are no longer in the day, week, month, year, age, which is spoken of, and the time of the action is quite over.

Again, The Imperfect may be said of yesterday, so it denotes an action or passion being then present on that day that is past : as *Quand avez vous perdu votre bourse ? Je l'ai perdue ce matin ; Je l'avois hier au soir, Je l'admire encore en m'allant coucher.* When did you lose your purse ? I have lost it this morning : I had it last night, I admired it still in going to bed.

The Compound of the Present is likewise used to denote a thing that has been done, and is entirely over, without mentioning any particular time : as *Avez vous vu l'Opéra de Cadmus ? Oui, j'ai vu ; Je le vis l'année passée ;* Have you seen the Opera of Cadmus ? Yes, I have ; I did last year. As also when there is in the sentence some word or other showing distinctly something present ; as *J'ai fait cela il n'y a qu'un moment ;* I did that but just now. *Il y a plus de quinze jours que je ne suis sorti ;* It is above a fortnight since I have been out.

We may on some occasions indifferently use either of these three tenses, when we only want to denote in general an action that is over : as *Alexandre étoit, (or) fut, (or) eût un grand Capitaine ;* Alexander was a great Captain. In which instance it is indifferent to denote in what particular time Alexander was a great Captain, so his courage and abilities only are denoted. But if there is in the sentence some word or other that should specify a particular circumstance of the time when he shewed his courage, then regard must be had to the aforesaid Rules.

7°. The Compound of the Imperfect (called in Latin *Plusquam perfectum*, because it denotes the preterite in a double manner) is used to denote, that in a certain specified time past the thing spoken of was also past : as *J'avois écrit ma lettre quand il entra ;* I had written my letter when he came in. My action of writing is here denoted not only as past in itself, but also with respect to another thing (his coming in) which is also past.

8°. The *Compound of the Preterite* is used in the same sense as the preterite; that is, it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to slide away: but it intimates something later, and besides most commonly expresses a thing past before another, and is almost always construed with these conjunctions, *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, après que, &c.* as *Quand j'eus fini ma lettre, or Après que j'eus fini ma lettre, elle me pria de lui en écrire une;* When, or after I had finished my letter, she desired me to write one for her.

But if the action past before another was done in a time wherein we are still, and which is not quite over, then the super-compound tenses must be used: as *Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui; J'étois à écrire quand elle est entrée; Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui en écrire une;* She is come to see me to-day; I was writing when she came in; When I had finished my letter, she has desired me to write one for her.

9°. The *Compound of the Future* is used to denote a thing that is yet to be, with respect to itself, but that shall be over with respect to another future thing, which is to follow it: as *J'aurai soupé quand il viendra;* I shall have supped when he will come, or *Quand j'aurai soupé il entrera;* When I have supped, he will come in. My supping, which is not yet come, but is to be, will be over, at the time of his coming, which is to be after my supping. The English very seldom expresses the sign of this future after *when*.

10°. The *Compound of the Conditional* is used to denote a thing that could, or would, or should have happened in an uncertain time, had it not been for some other conditional thing: as *Le Ministre lui auroit donné cette place, s'il l'avoit demandée;* The Minister would have given him that place, had he ask'd for it. (Observe this conditional way of speaking which the French express by the conjunction conditional *si*, and the compound of the imperfect or preterite.)

Moreover the Indicative has three other tenses compound in a double manner: as

*Il a eu bien ôté fait;* He has had soon done.

*J'ai eu diné en un instant;* I have had dined in a minute.

*Quand j'eus eu fini ce que je faisais;* When I had finished what I was about.

*Elle n'auroit pas eu si ôté fait sans lui;* She would not have done so soon without him,

*J'aurois eu diné plutôt, si j'eusse su qu'il devoit venir à cette heure-là;*

I would have had dined sooner, if I had known that he was to have come at that time.

These double compound or super-compound tenses are liable to the same rules of construction as the other compounds; that is *Il a eu fait, J'ai eu diné, &c.* are said as well as *J'ai eu, J'ai fait, J'ai diné,* only of that period of time wherein we are still; and *J'eus eu fini,* as well as *J'eus eu, J'eus fait, J'eus diné, &c.* of a time entirely past, so that there

remains no part of it. They besides express the action past in a more emphatical manner.

As the *Subjunctive* represents the action or event in an indirect manner, and always subsequent to another event, the tenses of this mood are determined by that anterior event. Its practice shall be established by sure rules in the following section.

The *Gerund* and *Participle* are comprehended in the infinitive mood, for method's sake only: as these words represent the event under three different states or situations, and therefore constitute each its own mood.

The *Infinitive* represents it in its simple production, without any circumstances, that is, without being adapted to any subject or time: as *Il sait boire*; He can drink.

The *Gerund* represents the event as a circumstance connected with another event: as *Il se fâche en parlant*; He is angry when he speaks.

The *Participle* represents it as complete and quite over, as *Cela dit, il s'en alla*; Having said this, he went away. It is on that account it serves to form the compound tenses of the verb.

The auxiliary and participle are not always immediately joined together in compound tenses, but are sometimes separated by one or more words: as

*Nous avons par la Grâce de Dieu, vaincu nos ennemis*;

We have, by the Grace of God, overcome our enemies.

### Of M O O D S.

§ III. The tenses of the *Subjunctive Mood*, whether simple or compound, have always before them the conjunction *que*, or the relative *qui*, except in some few sentences of *Wishing*, wherein the present is used without *que*; as *Puissiez-vous vivre heureux avec elle*; May you be happy with her. *Fasse le Ciel que cela arrive*; Grant God that the thing may fall out. *Dieu m'en préserve, nous en préserve*, or *l'en préserve*; Which God avert from me, from us, from him, or her.

The tenses of the subjunctive are used, 1<sup>o</sup>. after the conjunctions *afin que*, *avant que*, and others, that shall be taken notice of in the chapter of the Conjunctions; as likewise in some few sentences of *Reluctancy*, *Astonishment*, and *Imprecation*, expressed in English by *should*, *shall*, or *let*: as

*Que j'aille le voir après cet affront*;

Should or shall I go and see him after that affront!

*Que je meure si cela n'est pas vrai*; Let me die if that is not true,

2<sup>o</sup>. Verbs *Willing*, *Wishing*, *Commanding*, *Permitting*, *Prohibiting*, and *Hindering*; *Asking*, *Desiring*, *Beseeching*, and *Entreating*; *Fearing*, *Doubting*, *Suspecting*; *Admiring*, *Wondering*; *Being glad* and *Rejoicing*, *Sorry* and *Grudging*; Verbs *Denying*, and denoting *Ignorance*, *Doubt*, *Fear*, *Wish*, *Intention*; and, generally speaking, all verbs expressing some *Desire*, *Affection*, *Passion*, *Sentiment*, or *Motion* of the *Mind*, govern the subjunctive with the particle *que*: as

*Je souhaite qu'il réussisse* ; I wish he may succeed or prosper.  
*Je veux que vous étudiez* ; I will have you study.  
*Je doute qu'il le fasse* ; I question whether he will do it.  
*Je suis surpris que vous osiez le faire* ; I wonder that you dare do it.  
*J'ignore qu'il soit arrivé* ; I don't know that he is arrived.  
*Plût à Dieu que cela fût* ; Would to God that it were so.  
*Il nie qu'il l'ait pris* ; He denies that he has taken it.  
*Agissez de manière, or en sorte que vous réussissiez* ; Do in such a manner as you succeed.

In this last instance, *agissez*, do, denotes the inclination and desire which I have that you may succeed, which is a passion of my soul : but when no such desire, passion or inclination is expressed by the verb, we use the indicative : as *Vous agissez de manière que vous réussissiez* ; You do in such a manner that you succeed.

But when those verbs are attended by a noun, or pronoun, expressing either their object, or end, then they require the next verb in the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as does likewise *se repentir*, to repent ; as

*Je vous ordonne de faire cela*, and not *que vous fassiez cela* ;  
 I order you to do that.

*Il vous demande seulement d'y aller*, and not *qu'il y aille* ;  
 He only asks you to go there.

*Le Ministre se repentit d'avoir proposé ce Bill*, and not *qu'il eût proposé* ;

The Minister repented having moved for that Bill.

We also say *Je veux apprendre le François* ; I am willing or desirous to learn French ; for the verb *vouloir* cannot be construed with the subjunctive, when it is one and the same subject, expressed by the pronoun, and governs both verbs,

3°. Verbs denoting *Belief* or *Certainty* of something, as *Affurer*, to assure : *Etre sûr*, to be sure ; *Affirmer*, to affirm ; *Croire*, *Penser*, to think ; *Gager*, *Parier*, to lay a wager ; *Mettre en fait*, to take for granted ; *Soutenir*, to maintain ; *Prétendre*, in the sense of to maintain (for in the sense of *being willing*, it governs the subjunctive) ; *Jurer*, to swear ; *Montrer, faire voir*, to show ; *Prouver*, to prove ; *Démontrer*, to demonstrate : or Verbs signifying only *Telling, Foretelling, Saying, Seeing, Foreseeing, Conjecturing, Presaging, Declaring, Certifying, Notifying, Signifying, Intimating, Setting forth, Supposing* (but not *Proposing* and *Voting*), *Presuming, Being sensible, Perceiving, Hearing, Apprehending* (in the sense of *Conceiving*, for in that of *Fearing* it governs the subjunctive), *Knowing, Understanding, Hoping* (tho' it signifies an affection of the soul), *Reckoning, Agreeing, Confessing, Owning, Reputing, Publishing, Remembering, Forgetting, Promising, Concluding, Fancying,*

*ing, Imagining, Judging*; all which (as well as any other like, if there is any forgot) expressing the faculties of the *Understanding*, and not those of the mind or soul, govern the *Indicative* with *que*: as

*Je sais qu'il est venu*; I know that he is come.

*J'ai appris qu'il est guéri*; I have heard that he is cured.

*Je vous assure que cela est, (or) n'est pas ainsi*;

I assure you that it is, or is not so.

But when the same verbs are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or with the particle *si*, there is a distinction to be made. If they signify merely *Knowing, Saying, Hearing*, in short, express only their natural import (especially the verbs *Saying, Telling, Declaring, and Affirming*), the next verb is put in the *indicative*: but they most commonly imply *Doubt or Ignorance* in those constructions, and therefore it is better to construe them with the *subjunctive*, if however the next verb is the present, preterite, future, or their compounds; for in any other tense it must be left in the *indicative* (save the exceptions comprehended in the next observation): as

*Croyez-vous que le Roi fasse la Campagne?*

Do you think that the King will make the Campaign?

*Je n'apprends pas qu'il soit guéri*; I don't hear that he is cured.

*Si j'entends dire qu'il soit arrivé*; If I hear that he is arrived.

But we say,

(*qu'il aille?*)

*Avez-vous entendu dire, (or) Savez-vous qu'il va voyager*, not

Have you heard, (or) Do you know that he goes a travelling?

*Croyez-vous qu'il iroit voyager, si—and not qu'il allât?*

Do you think that he would go a travelling, if?

Some of the aforesaid verbs may sometimes be not improperly construed with the *indicative*; as *Je n'apprends pas qu'il est guéri, Croyez-vous que le Roi fera la Campagne?* but sometimes also they cannot be construed but with the *subjunctive*; as *Croyez-vous qu'il vienne*, and not *qu'il viendra?* Therefore in this uncertainty it is better, and more safe, to construe them with the *subjunctive*.

Moreover it is to be observed, 1<sup>st</sup>, that after those verbs used *interrogatively*, the next verb is put in the *indicative*, when the person that asks the question, makes no doubt of the thing which is the object of the question. As if knowing that peace is made, I want to know if the people, whom I converse with, know of it too, I will express myself thus, *Savez-vous que la paix est faite?* Do you know that peace is made? But if I have it only by report, and doubt of it, and want to be informed of it, I must ask the question thus, *Savez-vous que la paix soit faite?* and by no means *Savez-vous que la paix est faite?*—Likewise when the second verb is in the future in English, it must be put in the present of the *subjunctive* in French: as

*Croyez-vous que la paix se fasse cet hiver?*

Do you think that peace will be made this winter? or with a negative.

*Je ne crois pas que nous ayons la paix sitôt;*

I do not think that we shall have a peace so soon.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *Dire, écrire, présenter, entendre*, and perhaps some other verbs, whose most natural and common signification is that of *saying, writing, declaring*, are also used some-  
times

times in the sense of *Advising*, *Commanding*, and *Willing*, and therefore govern the Subjunctive: as

*Dites qu'on vienne de bonne heure;*

Bid them come in time.

*J'écris qu'on m'envoie de l'argent;*

I write to them to send me money.

*Je prétends qu'on m'obéisse;*

I pretend to be obeyed.

3dly, These verbs *Ignorer* not to know, *Nier* to deny, *Disconvenir* to disown, implying of themselves a negative sense, govern the subjunctive, tho' they don't meet with a particular negative: as *J'ignore qu'il ait fait cela*, *Je nie qu'il ait fait cela*, *Je disconviens qu'il ait fait cela*; I don't know, or I deny, or I don't agree that he has done that.

4thly, After *Douter* the particle *si* may be used in some cases, tho' very few, with the future: as *Je doute s'il viendra*; I question whether he will come: But it is better to use the subjunctive with *que*, as *Je doute qu'il vienne*; I question whether he will come; and when *douter* is attended by a negative it must, by all means, be construed with *que*, and the subjunctive preceded also by another negative: as *Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne*; I don't doubt but he will come.

4°. These following verbs Impersonal govern the Subjunctive with *que*:

<i>Il faut</i> , must,	<i>il est décent</i> , it is decent,	<i>fâcheux</i> , sorrowful,
<i>il convient</i> , it becomes,	<i>il est de la décence</i> , it is comely,	<i>glorieux</i> , glorious,
<i>il importe</i> , it concerns,	<i>il est indécent</i> , it is unseemly,	<i>gracieux</i> , graceful,
<i>il est important</i> , <i>il est de conséquence</i> , it is of moment, or consequence,	<i>il est convenable</i> , it is expedient, suitable,	<i>agréable</i> , agreeable,
<i>il n'y a pas moyen</i> , there is no possibility, <i>il y a de l'honneur</i> , or <i>du déshonneur</i> , there is honour, credit, or disgrace, <i>il y a de la gloire</i> , or <i>il y a de la honte</i> , there is glory or shame, &c.	<i>il est</i> , with these other adverbs,	<i>heureux</i> , happy,
<i>il est à propos</i> , it is fit,	<i>agréable</i> , agreeable,	<i>lucky</i> ,
<i>il est expédient</i> , it is proper, meet,	<i>plaisant</i> , pleasant,	<i>honteux</i> , shameful,
<i>il est nécessaire</i> , it is needful,	<i>aise</i> , easy,	<i>impossible</i> , impossible,
<i>d'une nécessité absolue</i> , of an absolute necessity,	<i>affligeant</i> , afflicting,	<i>indifférent</i> , indifferent,
<i>il est bienfaisant</i> , it is fitting,	<i>beau</i> , fine,	<i>malheureux</i> , unlucky,
<i>de la bienfaisance</i> , seemly,	<i>chagrinant</i> , vexatious,	<i>ky</i> ,
	<i>cruel</i> , cruel,	<i>mal-aise</i> , difficult,
	<i>dangereux</i> , dangerous,	<i>mortifiant</i> , mortifying,
	<i>difficile</i> , difficult,	<i>possible</i> , possible,
	<i>divertissant</i> , diverting,	<i>plaisant</i> , odd, droll,
	<i>doux</i> , sweet, pleasant,	<i>sensible</i> , sensible,
	<i>douloureux</i> , grievous,	<i>surprenant</i> , surprising,
	<i>dur</i> , hard,	<i>ling</i> ,
	<i>disgracieux</i> , unpleasant,	<i>triste</i> , sad,
	<i>ennuyeux</i> , tedious,	<i>vilain</i> , ugly,
	<i>étonnant</i> , astonishing,	<i>juste</i> , just, fair,
	<i>facile</i> , easy,	<i>injuste</i> , unjust, unfair.

Examples. *Il faut qu'il vienne*; He must come.

*Il importe qu'elle y soit*; It is of moment that she should be there.

*Il est juste qu'il sache;* It is just, or right for him to know it.  
*Il est à propos, expédient, bienséant, nécessaire, &c. qu'il la voie,*  
 It is fit, proper, meet, decent, necessary, &c. for him to see her, &c.

Observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, that *il est*, with these adnouns, may be turned into *c'est une chose*: as

*C'est une chose fâcheuse, triste, mortifiante, &c. qu'il soit arrivé si tard;*  
 It is sad, grievous, &c. that he should have come so late.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That the same verbs impersonal, except *il y a*, govern the infinitive with *de*, when they don't the subjunctive with *que*: which usually happens, when they are attended by a pronoun: as

*Il est indifférent qu'il soit en Angleterre ou en Irlande;*

It is indifferent whether he is in England or Ireland.

*Il lui est indifférent de vivre en Angleterre ou en Irlande;*

It is indifferent for him to live in England or Ireland.

5°. The following verbs impersonal govern the indicative with *que*:

<i>Il semble</i> , it seems,	<i>il est</i> , it is; with these	<i>manifeste</i> , manifest,
<i>il paroît</i> , it appears,	adnouns,	<i>notoire</i> , notorious,
<i>il y a apparence</i> , it is likely,	<i>avéré</i> , averred, or	<i>palpable</i> , palpable,
	evidenced,	<i>sensib'le</i> , plain, sensible,
<i>on dit</i> , they say,	<i>clair</i> , clear,	<i>sûr</i> , sure,
<i>on croit</i> , it is thought,	<i>certain</i> , certain,	<i>vrai</i> , true,
<i>on croiroit</i> , one would think,	<i>évident</i> , evident,	<i>visible</i> , obvious.
(and all impersonals formed with <i>on</i> )	<i>constant</i> , constant,	As likewise all verbs impersonal, denoting a positive certainty of something:
	<i>indubitable</i> , unquestionable,	

*Il est certain (or) il est vrai que le Roi va à Hanovre;*

It is certain, or true, that the King goes to Hanover.

*Il est clair (or) il est évident que cela ne sauroit arriver;*

It is clear or evident that that cannot happen.

*Il paroît (or) il y a apparence qu'il dit vrai;*

It appears, or it is likely that he says true.

But when the same impersonals cease to denote a positive certainty of the thing (which happens when they are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or the particle conditional *si*, if, whether), they then govern the subjunctive: as

*Est-il certain (or) est-il vrai que le Roi aille à Hanovre?*

Is it certain (or) is it true that the King goes to Hanover?

*Il n'est pas certain (or) il n'est pas vrai que le Roi aille à Hanovre;*

It is not certain (or) it is not true that the King goes to Hanover.

*S'il*

*S'il est certain (or) s'il est vrai que le Roi aille à Hanovre ;*  
If it is true that the King goes to Hanover.

I have said, that it is sometimes but an elegance, not a necessity, to use the subjunctive after verbs denoting *Belief*, or *Certainty*, and others mentioned in the third paragraph, when they are used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, or with *si*: but the impersonals which are the object of the last observation, when used with these three respects, require, by all means, the subjunctive after them.

Again, When the impersonal *il semble* meets with a noun, or a pronoun governed either as object or end, the following verb must not be in the subjunctive, but in the indicative with *que*, or the infinitive, without any particle at all: as

*Il me semble que vous avez peur ;* It seems to me that you are afraid.

*Il me semble la voir (or) que je la vois ;* Methinks I see her.

*Il semble à un Mahométan que les Chrétiens sont dans l'erreur ;*

It seems to a Mahometan that Christians are in error.

Whereas without a pronoun before the impersonal, or a noun after it, the subjunctive mood must be used: as

*Il semble que vous ayez peur ;* It seems that you are afraid.

*Il semble que les Turcs soient dans l'erreur ;*

The Turks seem to be in error.

Observe besides, that *semble* has two significations in French: when it signifies *plain*, *evident*, *obvious*, it governs the indicative; and when used in the sense of *grievous*, *painful*, it governs the subjunctive:

6°. The subjunctive is used after *quelque*, *quels-que*, and *quoi-que* taken in the sense of *whatever* and *whatsoever*: as

*Quelques amis que j'aie,* Whatever friends I have.

*Quels-que soient les hommes,* Whatever men be.

*Quoi-que je fasse,* Whatever I do.

7°. After *que*, used instead of repeating *si* (as we shall see more particularly in the chapter of Conjunctions), as also after *que* following the comparative *si*: as

*Si vous y consentez, & que vous preniez des mesures pour, &c.*

If you consent to it, and take measures to, &c.

*Il n'est pas si fou qu'il ne sache bien ce qu'il fait ;*

He is not so foolish but he knows well what he does.

8°. After the relative *qui*, when it comes after a *superlative* or *negative*: and generally after any relation of that relative, be-

tween

tween two verbs, so it denotes some *desire, wish, want, or necessity*: as

*Le meilleur ouvrage qui soit*; The best work extant, or that is.

*Je ne connois personne qui fasse plus de cas des habiles gens*;

I know nobody that has more value for learned men.

*Choisissez une femme que vous aimiez, & qui soit prudente*;

Chuse a wife whom you love, and one that is prudent.

But when the relative *qui* denotes no *desire, wish, &c.* the next verb must be put in the indicative: as

*Je plains un homme qui a une méchante femme*;

I pity a man who has a bad wife.

9°. The Present Subjunctive of *savoir* is elegantly used, when it is attended by a negative, instead of the indicative, tho' without being governed by any thing before: as

*Je ne sache rien de plus fâcheux que*, &c.

I know nothing more grievous than, &c.

But this subjunctive, thus used, is confined only to the first person singular; for we don't say in the other persons, *Vous ne sachiez rien*, or *Il ne sache rien de plus fâcheux*, for *vous ne savez rien*, *il ne fait rien*, &c. *Pas* or *non pas que je sache*; Not that I know of. (Such phrases are only used in conversation.)

10°. The Present tense of the subjunctive mood is used, when the first verb governing the other, according to the aforesaid rules, is in the present, or future of the indicative: for when it is in any other tense, either simple or compound, it is the preterite of the subjunctive it requires, unless there comes a third verb in the imperfect. As in the present and future we say

*Je souhaite qu'il vienne*; I wish he comes, or he would come.

*Il souhaitera que nous ne venions pas*;

He will wish that we mayn't come.

So with the imperfect, conditional, and other tenses, we say

*Je souhaitois qu'il vînt*; I wished that he had come.

*Je voudrois qu'il se dépêchât*; I would have him make haste.

*J'aurois crain que vous ne l'eussiez frappé*;

I would have feared that you would have struck him.

But if the tense that comes after the present, is followed by an imperfect, or preterite in English, which is an imperfect in French, it (the second verb) must be put in the preterite. As when the first verb is in the present, we put the second in the present too, thus;

*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, si on l'en prie*;

I don't doubt but he will come if he is asked;

fo, if it is the imperfect, we put the second in the preterite, thus,

*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vint si on l'en prioit ;*

I don't doubt he would come, if he was asked.

Notwithstanding what has been said of the construction of the tenses, some are nevertheless confounded sometimes, and used for others; and it is common to all languages, to use the present for the future; as

*Avez-vous bientôt fait ?* Have you almost done ?

*Dinez-vous aujourd'hui chez vous ?* Do you dine at home to-day ?

*J'irai demain s'il fait beau ?* I will go to-morrow if it is fine weather.

We use especially the present subjunctive for the future, as in these sentences, and others like,

*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne ;* I don't doubt but *he will* come.

*Croyez-vous que le Roi aille à Hanovre ?*

Do you think that the King will go to Honover ?

Therefore avoid carefully those faults which Foreigners are so apt to make, in considering rather the tense which they want to turn into French, than the mood, which the genius of the language requires: and do not say, *Je ne crois pas qu'il viendra ;* I do not believe that he will come: *Je doute s'il le fera, or qu'il le fera ;* I doubt that, or whether he will do it: because the tense is a future in English; but mind that *que* coming after a negative, and after *douter*, requires the subjunctive, thus,

*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, Je doute qu'il le fasse.*

As likewise that the conjunction *si* is hardly ever construed with the future, except with the verb *savoir* and *dire*: as

*Je ne sais s'il viendra ;* I do not know whether he will come.

*Dites moi si vous viendrez ou non :* Tell me whether you will come or no.

The present is also used for the preterite in narrations: as

*L'Amour rassemble les Nymphes, & leur dit, Télémaque est encore en vos mains ; hâtez-vous de brûler ce vaisseau que le ténéraire Mentor a fait pour s'enfuir. Aussi-tôt elles allument des flambeaux, elles accourent sur le rivage, elles frémissent, elles pousent des hurlemens, elles secouent leurs cheveux épars comme des Bacchantes. Dès qu'elles voient, elle dévore le vaisseau, qui est d'un bois sec et enduit de résine; des tourbillons de fumée & de flammes s'élèvent dans les nues.*

Cupid gathers the Nymphs together and tells them, *Télémachus is still in your hands; haste, and let devouring flames consume the ship which the rash Mentor has built to favour his escape. Immediately, they light torches, run towards the sea-shore, they quake, fill the air with dreadful howlings, and toss about their dishevell'd hair, like frantic Bacchantes. And now the greedy flames devour the ship, which burns the more fiercely, as she is made of dry wood, daub'd over with resin; and rolling clouds of smok, streak'd with flames, ascend the skies.*

Moreover the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive is often used for, and in the

the same sense as the compound of the conditional; as *J'eusse été bien fâché de ne vous pas voir*; I should have been very sorry not to have seen you: which is the same as, but more elegant than, *J'aurois été bien fâché de ne vous pas voir*: as likewise for the compound of the imperfect after *si*; as

*Si j'eusse fait cela*, better than *si j'avois fait cela*; if I had done that,

The present of the infinitive has in many cases a sense merely passive: as

*Il n'y a rien à voir*;

There is nothing to see, or to be seen.

*Cela n'est bon qu'à jeter*;

That is good only to throw away.

An infinitive may, as well as a substantive, be the subject coming before a verb: in which case it has no preposition, takes sometimes the article, and is properly Englished by the gerund: as

*Manger & dormir sont les plus grandes nécessités de la vie.*

Eating and sleeping are the greatest necessities of life.

Part of a sentence, nay a whole sentence, may also serve as a subject to a verb; then the adnoun referring to it (when an adnoun follows) is of the masculine gender.

### Of the Government of Verbs.

§ IV. 1°. Verbs *active* are always attended by a noun, or pronoun, and sometimes by two. When they are attended by two, the one is the *Object* of the verb, and the other its *End*. The word expressing the end is always preceded by the preposition *à*: as

*Donner quelque chose à quelqu'un*;

To give something to somebody.

*quelque chose* is the *Object* of the verb, *à quelqu'un* is the *End*.

2°. Verbs *passive*, or taken passively, require the preposition *de*, or *par*, before the next noun, used on the same occasions as the English prepositions *by*, *of*, *from*: as

*La vertu est estimée de tous*; Virtue is esteemed *by* all.

*Il a été tué par ses domestiques*; He has been killed *by* his servants. *par* is used only with a verb that denotes action. Therefore we don't say

*Je suis environné par des gens ennuyeux*, but *de gens*, &c.

I am surrounded *by* tedious people.

However when the verb passive is followed in English by any other prepositions than *of*, *by*, and *from* (as *with*, &c.), it must be expressed in French by *de*.

3°. The following verbs active require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive. Such of them as are marked with an Asterisk, require moreover the subjunctive with *que*, according to the observation of the fourth Paragraph of the third Section.

*Achever*,

<i>Achever</i> , to make an end, finish,	<i>édifier</i> , { to edify, give good example,
<i>affecter</i> , to affect,	<i>effrayer</i> , to frighten,
<i>affliger</i> , to afflict,	<i>embarrasser</i> , to puzzle,
<i>approuver</i> , to approve of,	* <i>empêcher</i> , to hinder,
* <i>appréhender</i> , to apprehend,	<i>enjoindre</i> , to enjoin,
<i>arrêter</i> , to decree,	<i>entreprendre</i> , to undertake,
<i>arrêter</i> , to stop,	<i>épouvanter</i> , to terrify,
<i>attendrir</i> , { to soften, move to pity,	<i>essayer</i> , to try,
<i>attrister</i> , to grieve,	<i>excuser</i> , to excuse,
<i>avertir</i> , to warn, to tell,	<i>exempter</i> , to exempt,
<i>blâmer</i> , to blame,	* <i>exiger</i> , to require,
<i>cenfurer</i> , to censure, check,	<i>feindre</i> , to feign, dissemble,
<i>ceffer</i> , { to cease, leave off, forbear,	<i>finir</i> , to finish,
<i>chagriner</i> , to vex,	<i>gêner</i> , to make uneasy,
<i>charger</i> , to charge,	<i>gronder</i> , to scold, to chide,
<i>choisir</i> , to chuse,	<i>hâir</i> , to hate,
* <i>commander</i> , to command,	<i>inspirer</i> , to inspire,
* <i>conjurér</i> , to conjure, intreat,	<i>jurer</i> , to swear, take an oath,
<i>conseiller</i> , to advise,	<i>justifier</i> , to justify, vindicate,
<i>contraindre</i> , to constrain,	<i>louer</i> , to praise, commend,
<i>convaincre</i> , to convince,	<i>méditer</i> , to meditate, think of,
<i>conclure</i> , to conclude,	<i>mériter</i> , to merit, to deserve,
* <i>craindre</i> , to fear,	<i>négliger</i> , to neglect,
<i>désoler</i> , to make one mad,	<i>notifier</i> , to notify, let one know,
<i>detourner</i> , to deter from,	<i>offrir</i> , to offer,
* <i>défendre</i> , to prohibit, forbid,	<i>omettre</i> , to omit,
<i>décharger</i> , to discharge,	* <i>ordonner</i> , to order,
<i>décourager</i> , to discourage,	<i>oublier</i> , to forget,
<i>délibérer</i> , to deliberate,	<i>pardonner</i> , to pardon, forgive,
* <i>demander en grâce</i> , { to beg it as a favour,	* <i>permettre</i> , to permit, allow,
<i>déterminer</i> , { to determine, purpose,	<i>persuader</i> , to persuade,
<i>désespérer</i> , to despair,	<i>plaindre</i> , to pity,
<i>dégouter</i> , { to disgust, put out of conceit,	<i>presser</i> , to press, to urge,
<i>différer</i> , to differ, delay, put off,	<i>prescrire</i> , to prescribe,
<i>dire</i> , to say, to tell,	<i>présumer</i> , to presume,
<i>dispenser</i> , to dispense, excuse,	* <i>prier</i> , to pray, desire, beg,
<i>divertir</i> , to divert,	<i>professer</i> , to profess,
<i>écrire</i> , { to write,	<i>promettre</i> , to promise,
<i>mander</i> , { to write word,	<i>proposer</i> , to propose, move for,
	<i>recommander</i> , to recommend,
	<i>redouter</i> , to dread,
	<i>refuser</i> , to refuse,
	<i>réjouir</i> , to make glad,
	<i>remercier</i> ,

<i>remercier,</i>	to thank,	<i>soupçonner,</i>	to suspect,
<i>reprendre,</i>	to rebuke, reprove,	<i>suffire,</i>	to suffice,
<i>reprimander,</i>	to reprimand,	<i>suggérer</i>	to suggest,
<i>reprocher,</i>	to reproach, upbraid,	<i>* supplier,</i>	to beg, beseech,
<i>résoudre,</i>	to resolve upon,	<i>surprendre,</i>	to surprise,
<i>retenir,</i>	to keep from,	<i>susciter,</i>	to put in mind of,
<i>scandaliser,</i>	{ to scandalise, give	<i>tromper,</i>	to deceive,
	an offence,	<i>troubler,</i>	to trouble, disturb.
<i>summer,</i>	to summon,		

*Prier* requires *de* before the next infinitive: as *Prier quelqu'un de faire quelque chose*, to desire, or beg one to do a thing. Except before these four verbs, *manger*, *déjeuner*, *dîner*, and *souper*, with which it requires *à*, with this exception.

We say both *Prier quelqu'un à dîner*, and *Prier quelqu'un de dîner*. To invite one to dine; with this difference, that *prier à dîner* is said of, and properly implies, a formal, express invitation: and *prier de dîner*, a sudden and accidental one: as

*Il l'a envoyé prier à dîner*; He sent to his house to invite him to dinner.

*Je me suis trouvé chez lui comme il alloit se mettre à table, & il m'a prié de dîner avec lui*; I was at his house as he was going to dine, and he has invited me, or offered me to take a dinner with him.

4°. The following verbs (for the most part neuter) require the preposition *de* before the next noun or infinitive.

<i>abuser,</i>	to abuse,	<i>se charger (de),</i>	{ to take upon
<i>s'abstenir de,</i>	to abstain from,		one's self the
<i>s'accommoder</i>	to make shift,		care of a thing,
<i>de quelque</i>	{ or bold with	<i>être consterné,</i>	to be dismayed,
<i>chose,</i>	a thing,	<i>convenir,</i>	to agree to,
<i>s'affliger,</i>	{ to grieve, vex one's	<i>se désier or méfier</i>	{ to mistrust or
	self,	<i>de quelqu'un,</i>	distrust one,
<i>s'apercevoir,</i>	to perceive,	<i>se déshabituer,</i>	{ to leave off
<i>s'approcher d'un</i>	{ to come, draw	<i>se désaccoutumer,</i>	doing a thing,
<i>endroit,</i>	near a place,	<i>se dépêcher,</i>	to make haste,
<i>s'acquitter de</i>	{ to perform, dis-	<i>se désister,</i>	to desist,
<i>son devoir,</i>	charge one's duty,	<i>se démettre d'une</i>	{ to resign a
<i>s'attrister,</i>	to be sorrowful,	<i>place,</i>	place,
<i>s'aviser,</i>	to think,	<i>disconvenir,</i>	to disagree,
<i>se chagriner,</i>	to grieve one's self,	<i>s'empêcher,</i>	to forbear,
<i>se consoler,</i>	to comfort one's self,	<i>s'empreser,</i>	to hasten,
			<i>s'amouracher</i>

<i>s'amouracher</i>	{ to fall in love	<i>menacer de,</i>	to threaten with,
<i>d'une fille,</i>	{ with a girl,	<i>se mêler de,</i>	to meddle with,
<i>s'emparer,</i>	{ to take hold,	<i>se moquer de,</i>	to mock, laugh at,
<i>s'émanciper,</i>	{ to take too	<i>parler,</i>	to speak,
	{ much liberty,	<i>profiter,</i>	to improve,
<i>s'ennuyer,</i>	{ to grow weary,	<i>se précipiter,</i>	{ to over-hasten
<i>s'enorgueillir,</i>	{ to grow proud,		one's self,
	{ be puffed up,	<i>avoir pitié de,</i>	to have pity on,
<i>s'étonner,</i>	{ to wonder, to be	<i>se plaindre,</i>	to complain,
<i>être surpris,</i>	{ amazed, or sur-	<i>se piquer (d'une</i>	{ to pretend, to
	{ prised,	<i>chose), (or) se</i>	
<i>enrager, pester,</i>	{ to be mad at,	<i>piquer (de faire</i>	
<i>se flatter,</i>	{ to flatter one's self,	<i>une chose,</i>	set up for a
			thing,
<i>se garder de,</i>	{ to take care, or	<i>se rire and rire de,</i>	to laugh at,
	{ heed of,	<i>se réjouir de,</i>	to rejoice at,
<i>hésiter,</i>	{ to hesitate,	<i>se repentir de,</i>	to repent,
<i>se hâter,</i>	{ to hasten, hurry	<i>se ressouvenir,</i>	to remember,
	{ one's self,	<i>se rétracter,</i>	to recant,
<i>s'informer de,</i>	{ to enquire about,	<i>se rebuter,</i>	{ to despond, be dis-
	{ or after,		heartened,
<i>juger à propos,</i>	to think proper,	<i>se retenir de,</i>	{ to keep one's
<i>s'inquiéter,</i>	{ to fret, make one's		self from,
	{ self uneasy,	<i>se soucier de,</i>	to care for,
<i>jouir,</i>	to enjoy,	<i>se saisir de,</i>	to seize upon,
<i>s'impacienter,</i>	{ to lose one's	<i>se scandaliser (de</i>	{ to take an of-
	{ patience,	<i>quelque chose),</i>	
<i>s'ingérer,</i>	to take upon one's self,		
<i>s'indigner,</i>	{ to be provoked, in-	<i>tâcher and s'effor-</i>	{ to endea-
	{ censed, exasperated	<i>cer,</i>	
<i>se lasser,</i>	{ to grow tired,		
<i>manquer de quelque</i>	{ to want	<i>se vanter,</i>	to boast,
<i>chose,</i>	{ something,	<i>user and se ser-</i>	{ to use or make
<i>médire,</i>	to traduce, slander,	<i>vir d'une chose,</i>	
			use of a thing.

Observe that most of those verbs (if not all) which require the preposition *de* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a gerund, either absolutely, or with any of these prepositions *of, from, with, &c.* as

*Il m'empêche de le faire;* He hinders me *from* doing it.

*J'ai du moins le plaisir de la voir;* I have at least the pleasure *of* seeing her.

*Vous me reprochez de vous aimer;* You upbraid me *with* loving you.

*J'ai l'honneur de le connoître*; I have the honour *to be, or of being acquainted with him, &c.*

5°. The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive.

<i>admettre (quel- qu'un) à se jus- tifier,</i>	{ to give one a fair hearing, and suffer him to justi- fy himself,	<i>disposer, donner, dresser, éclairer, employer (quel- qu'un à),</i>	{ to dispose, to give, to train up, to light, to employ, set one to,
<i>avoir, to have, and être, to be,</i>		<i>encourager,</i>	to encourage,
<i>apprendre (à),</i>	to learn to,	<i>engager,</i>	to engage,
<i>apprêter (à</i>	{ to afford matter	<i>enhardir,</i>	to embolden,
<i>rire),</i>	{ of laughing,	<i>enseigner,</i>	to teach,
<i>assigner (à com- paraître),</i>	{ to summon, or cite, to appear,	<i>exciter,</i>	to excite,
<i>autoriser,</i>	to empower,	<i>exercer,</i>	to exercise,
<i>chercher (à),</i>	{ to seek to, to want to,	<i>exhorter,</i>	to exhort,
<i>condamner,</i>	to condemn,	<i>habituier, to use,</i>	accustom one,
<i>consister (à),</i>	to consist in,	<i>inciter,</i>	to incite,
<i>contribuer,</i>	to contribute,	<i>incliner,</i>	to incline,
<i>convier and inviter,</i>	to invite,	<i>montrer,</i>	to show,
<i>dépenser (à),</i>	to spend in,	<i>perdre,</i>	to lose,
<i>demeurer (à),</i>	{ to stay, tarry,	<i>porter and pousser</i>	{ to induce,
<i>tarder (à),</i>	{ delay to,	<i>quelqu'un à</i>	{ excite, spur
<i>destiner (à),</i>	to design for,	<i>agir,</i>	one to do,
		<i>présenter,</i>	to present.

6°. The following verbs neuter require the preposition *à* before the next noun or infinitive.

<i>s'abandon- ner,</i>	{ to indulge, aban- don one's self,	<i>applaudir, (à</i>	{ to applaud some- body,
<i>aboutir (à),</i>	to come to, touch,	<i>quelqu'un),</i>	{
<i>s'accoutumer,</i>	{ to accustom, or	<i>s'arrêter, s'amu- ser (à des baga- telles),</i>	{ to stand upon trifles, to mind them,
<i>s'habituer (à),</i>	{ use one's self to,	<i>s'attacher, se</i>	{ to give, apply,
<i>s'adonner,</i>	to give one's self,	<i>livrer à une</i>	{ addict one's self
<i>adhérer,</i>	to adhere,	<i>chose,</i>	{ to a thing,
<i>*aider,</i>	to help,	<i>s'attendre (à</i>	{ to expect to
<i>s'appliquer,</i>	to apply one's self,	<i>voir),</i>	{ see,
<i>s'apprêter</i>	{ (à faire { to prepare	<i>compâir,</i>	to compassionate,
<i>se préparer</i>	{ quelque { one's self	<i>condescendre,</i>	{ to condescend,
<i>se disposer</i>	{ chose), { for doing		{ to comply with,
	{ a thing,		<i>contrevenir</i>

<i>contrevénir</i> (aux } ordres),	to act contra- ry to orders,	<i>persister</i> (à faire quelque chose),	to persist in doing some- thing,
<i>déplaire,</i>	to displease,	* <i>plaire</i> (à quel- qu'un),	to please one,
<i>désobéir,</i>	to disobey,	<i>se plaire</i> or <i>pren- dre plaisir</i> (à faire quelque chose),	to delight in a thing, to take a pleasure in doing it,
<i>se déterminer,</i> }	to resolve upon,	* <i>pouvoir</i> (au salut de l'Etat),	to provide for the safety of the state,
<i>se résoudre</i> (à), }		<i>prétendre</i> (à } une chose), }	to aim at, to lay claim to a thing,
<i>s'endurcir</i> (à } la fatigue), }	to inure one's self to hardships,	<i>procéder</i> (à élire, } or à l'élection), }	to proceed to the election,
<i>s'engager,</i> }	to take upon one's self to,	<i>renoncer,</i>	to give over,
<i>s'exposer,</i>	to expose one's self,	<i>ressembler,</i>	to resemble, be like,
<i>se fier</i> (à quelqu'un),	to trust one,	<i>résister,</i>	to resist, withstand,
<i>insulter</i> (aux } miserables), }	to insult the un- fortunate,	<i>rester</i> (à rien faire), }	to stand idle,
<i>jouer</i> (à tout } perdre), }	to venture all, to stake all at once,	<i>se mettre</i> (à faire quelque chose), }	to go, fall, set about one thing,
<i>nuire</i> (à autrui),	to hurt others,	<i>subvenir</i> (aux } nécessiteux), }	to relieve the needy,
<i>obéir</i> (à quelqu'un),	to obey one,	* <i>suffire,</i>	to suffice, be enough,
<i>obvier</i> (à des in- convéniens), }	to obviate dif- ficulties,	<i>survivre</i> (à } quelqu'un), }	to outlive one, to survive him,
<i>s'obstiner,</i> <i>s'opi- niâtrer</i> (à faire quelque chose), }	to be obsti- nately bent, or resolved to do a thing,	<i>tendre, viser</i> }	to aim at an end,
<i>s'occuper</i> (à), }	to be taken with,	(à un but), }	
<i>passer</i> (son } temps (à), }	spend one's time in,	<i>travailler,</i>	to work.
<i>s'opposer,</i>	to oppose,		
* <i>pardonner,</i>	to forgive,		
<i>parvenir,</i>	to arrive to, to get,		
<i>penfer</i> and <i>songer,</i> }	to think of		
(à faire une chose), }	doing a thing,		

Observe that most of those verbs which require the preposition à before them, are commonly, and can always be rendered into English by a gerund, with the preposition *in*, or *for*: as

*Aidez moi à faire cela*; Help me *to* do that, or *in* doing that.

*Elle prend plaisir à le faire endéver*;

She takes a pleasure *in* teasing him.

But \* *aider* and *pouvoir* take indifferently the 3d and 4th state of pronouns: as

*Aidez-lui*, Help him; *Aidez le à faire cela*, Help him *to* do that.

\* *Plaire*, \* *pardonner*, and \* *suffire*, require the preposition *de* and not *à*, before the infinitive: as

*Il me plaît de faire cela*; I like or chuse to do that, &c.

*Satisfaire* (to satisfy) governs the 1st state of a person, and the 3d of a thing: as

*Il n'a pas encore satisfait ses créanciers*;

He has not as yet satisfied his creditors.

*Satisfaire à ses passions, à son ambition, &c.*

To gratify one's passions, ambition, &c.

7°. These eight verbs take indifferently *de* or *à* before the next infinitive. One must however, in some cases, have regard to the best sound.

*commencer*,

to begin, *essayer*,

to try,

*contraindre*,

to constrain, *forcer*,

to force, compel,

*continuer*, to continue, go on, *couter*,

to cost,

*discontinuer*,

to discontinue, *manquer*,

to fail.

*Contraindre* (to constrain, force, oblige), when used actively, indifferently takes *à*, or *de*, before the next infinitive: but when it is used in the passive voice, it always requires *de*: as

*Contraignez-le à faire cela*; Constrain him to do that.

*Je l'ai contraint de garder la maison*; I have obliged him to stay at home.

*Il fut contraint de se retirer*; He was obliged to withdraw.

*Cette fière nation est à la fin contrainte de se soumettre*;

That proud nation is at last obliged to submit,

*Obliger*, signifying to force, requires *à*, and sometimes *de*, before the next infinitive in the active state: but in the passive state it requires *de*: as

*Vous m'obligerez à vous abandonner*; You will force me to abandon you.

*Je suis obligé de vous abandonner*; I am forced to abandon you.

When it signifies to do a kindness, it is followed by no preposition, neither *à* nor *de*.

*Voulez-vous bien m'excuser auprès d'elle, vous m'obligerez*;

Be pleased to excuse me to her, you will oblige me.

*Manquer* requires *de* before an infinitive, when it signifies to fail, and *à* when it signifies to forget, as

*Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre*;

The miserable never fail to complain.

*J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avois promis*;

I have forget to do what I had promised you.

8°. These following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive.

<i>affirmer,</i>	to affirm, assert,	<i>il faut, il falloit, il faudra, &amp;c.</i>
<i>* aimer mieux,</i>	{ to have rather, must,	
	{ to chuse rather,	<i>s'imaginer,</i> to imagine, fancy,
<i>aller,</i>	to go,	<i>laisser,</i> to let, to leave,
<i>appercevoir,</i>	to perceive,	<i>nier,</i> to deny,
<i>assurer,</i>	to assure,	<i>observer,</i> to observe,
<i>avouer,</i>	to own,	<i>oser,</i> to dare,
<i>compter,</i>	to expect, rely upon,	<i>paraître,</i> to appear, look,
<i>confesser,</i>	to confess,	<i>penser,</i> to be like, or near,
<i>considérer,</i>	to consider, behold,	<i>prétendre,</i> to pretend,
<i>croire,</i>	to think, believe,	<i>pouvoir,</i> to be able,
<i>daigner,</i>	to deign, be pleased,	<i>publier,</i> to publish, give out,
<i>déclarer,</i>	to tell,	<i>rapporter,</i> to report,
<i>déposer,</i>	to depose, say, tell,	<i>reconnoître,</i> to acknowledge,
<i>† désirer,</i>	to desire, be desirous,	<i>regarder,</i> to look at, to behold,
<i>devoir,</i>	to owe, to be in debt,	<i>savoir,</i> to know,
<i>† dire,</i>	to say, tell,	<i>sembler,</i> to seem,
<i>écouter,</i>	{ to hear,	<i>scutenir,</i> to maintain,
<i>entendre,</i>		<i>† souhaiter,</i> to wish,
<i>ouïr,</i>		<i>valoir mieux,</i> to be better,
<i>envoyer,</i>	to send,	<i>† venir,</i> to come,
<i>épier,</i>	to spy,	<i>voir,</i> to see,
<i>espérer,</i>	to hope,	<i>vouloir,</i> to be willing.
<i>faire,</i>	to make, to cause,	

\* *Aimer mieux* will have no preposition before the next infinitive : but when it is followed by *que*, it requires *de*, after *que*, before the verb.

† *dire*, *désirer*, and *souhaiter*, take sometimes *de* before the next infinitive ; and *venir* sometimes takes *à*, especially when it is used impersonally : as

*Quand il vint à ouvrir la bouche* ; When he came to open his mouth.

*S'il vient à pleuvoir* ; If it happens to rain.

*Venez boire*, Come to drink. *Il vient danser*, He comes to dance.

*Allez lui dire de venir* ; Go and bid him come.

*Avec deux mots qu'il daigna dire* ;

With two words he was pleased to speak.

*Il croyoit pouvoir le faire* : He thought he could have done it.

*Il a pensé mourir* ; He has been like to die.

*J'aimerois mieux travailler que de rester à rien faire* ;

I had rather work than be idle.

*Il faut mourir tôt ou tard* ; We must die sooner or later.

9°. The following Adnouns, commonly construed with *être*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, as likewise all nouns, and adnouns, signifying *Inclination, Aptness, Fitness, and Unfitness*; all which will have *à* (or *au* and *aux*) before a noun.

<i>Être</i> to be	<i>admirable,</i>	admirable,	<i>à faire quelque chose,</i> to do something.
	<i>adroit,</i>	dextrous, skilful,	
	<i>affreux,</i>	frightful,	
	<i>agile,</i>	agile, nimble,	
	<i>agréable,</i>	agreeable,	
	<i>aise, facile,</i>	easy,	
	<i>ardent,</i>	eager,	
	<i>assidu,</i>	assiduous,	
	<i>beau,</i>	handsome, fine,	
	<i>bon,</i>	good,	
	<i>charmant,</i>	charming,	
	<i>civil,</i>	civil,	
	<i>le dernier,</i>	the last of all Numbers,	
	<i>diligent,</i>	diligent,	
	<i>doux,</i>	sweet,	
	<i>effroyable,</i>	dreadful,	
	<i>enclin,</i>	inclined, bent,	
	<i>exact,</i>	exact,	
	<i>habile,</i>	able, skilful,	
	<i>hardi,</i>	bold,	
	<i>hideux,</i>	hideous,	
	<i>bonnête,</i>	honest,	
	<i>horrible,</i>	horrible,	
	<i>incivil,</i>	uncivil, rude,	
	<i>lent,</i>	slow,	
	<i>malbonnête,</i>	dishonest,	
	<i>disposé,</i>	prone,	
	<i>porté,</i>	apt, addicted,	
	<i>le premier,</i>	the first,	
	<i>prêt,</i>	ready,	
	<i>prompt,</i>	quick,	
	<i>propre,</i>	fit, qualified for,	
	<i>le second,</i>	the second,	
	<i>sujet,</i>	subject, liable,	
	<i>terrible,</i>	terrible,	

10°. The following Adnouns, construed also with *être*, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive and noun.

*Être*

Etre to be	<i>aise</i> , glad,	<i>bien-aise</i> , very glad,	de faire quelque chose, to do something.
	<i>assuré</i> ,	assured,	
	<i>avide</i> ,	greedy, covetous,	
	<i>capable</i> ,	capable,	
	<i>content</i> ,	contented, pleased,	
	<i>curieux</i> ,	curious, inquisitive,	
	<i>digne</i> ,	worthy,	
	<i>ennuyé</i> ,	weary,	
	<i>en état</i> ,	in a state, condition,	
	<i>fâché</i> ,	sorry,	
	<i>incapable</i> ,	incapable,	
	<i>incertain</i> ,	uncertain,	
	<i>indigne</i> ,	unworthy,	
	<i>joyeux</i> ,	joyful,	
	<i>las</i> , tired,	<i>fatigué</i> , fatigued,	
	<i>mécontent</i> , discontented,	dissatisfied,	
	<i>ravi</i> ,	overjoyed,	
	<i>satisfait</i> ,	satisfied,	
	<i>sûr</i> , certain,	certain,	
	<i>à la veille</i> ,	upon the brink,	
	<i>sur le point</i> ,	or very near to,	

110. The following nouns, chiefly construed with *avoir*, without the article, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive.

Avoir to have	<i>affaire</i> ,	occasion, stand in	de faire quelque chose, to do something.
		need of,	
	<i>besoin</i> ,	occasion for, be in	
		need of,	
	<i>congé</i> ,	leave,	
	<i>coutume</i> , or	to use, or to	
	<i>être accoutumé</i> ,	be used,	
	<i>desssein</i> ,	a design to intend,	
	<i>droit</i> ,	a right,	
	<i>envie</i> ,	a mind,	
	<i>lieu</i> ,	reason, room,	
	<i>occasion</i> ,	an opportunity,	
	<i>permission</i> ,	permission,	
	<i>raison</i> ,	reason to be in the right,	
	<i>soin</i> ,	care, to take care,	
	<i>sujet</i> ,	subject, occasion,	
	<i>tort</i> ,	to be in the wrong,	

As likewise all nouns construed with other verbs, either with or without an article, so that they do not signify or imply Inclination, Reluctancy, Aptness, Fitness, or Unfitness: as

*Il m'a donné la peine de la faire*; He gave me the trouble of doing it.  
*J'ai eu beaucoup de peine à le faire*; I have had much trouble to do it.  
 In which last instance the noun implies *Aptness* and *Reluctancy*, and therefore governs à.

This list of nouns, requiring *de* before the infinitive, will not be amiss for the young learners.

<i>ambition,</i>	ambition.	<i>durété,</i>	ill-nature.	<i>maître,</i>	master.
<i>art,</i>	art.	<i>eff-terie,</i>	sauciness.	<i>mal-adresse,</i>	awkwardness.
<i>avantage,</i>	advantage.	<i>embarras,</i>	trouble.	<i>malheur,</i>	misfortune.
<i>attention,</i>	attention.	<i>envie,</i>	mind.	<i>malice,</i>	malice.
<i>audace,</i>	audaciousness.	<i>espérance,</i>	expectation.	<i>manière,</i>	manner, way.
<i>avis,</i>	advice.	<i>espoir,</i>	hope.	<i>mortification,</i>	grief.
<i>ardeur,</i>	eagerness.	<i>esprit,</i>	wit, genius.	<i>motif,</i>	motive.
<i>avidité,</i>	greediness.	<i>facilité,</i>	facility.	<i>moyen,</i>	means.
<i>amitié,</i>	friendship.	<i>faveur,</i>	favour.	<i>nature,</i>	nature.
<i>amour,</i>	love.	<i>façon,</i>	way.	<i>nécessité,</i>	necessity.
<i>attente,</i>	expectation.	<i>fermeté,</i>	firmness.	<i>obligation,</i>	obligation.
<i>arrogance,</i>	arrogance.	<i>fierté,</i>	haughtiness.	<i>ordre,</i>	order.
<i>astuce,</i>	art.	<i>force,</i>	strength.	<i>orgueil,</i>	pride.
<i>adresse,</i>	skill.	<i>fureur,</i>	fury.	<i>passion,</i>	passion.
<i>action,</i>	action.	<i>front,</i>	face, assurance.	<i>patience,</i>	patience.
<i>autorité,</i>	authority.	<i>grâce,</i>	grace, favour.	<i>peine,</i>	pains, concern.
<i>assurance,</i>	assurance.	<i>gloire,</i>	glory.	<i>plaisir,</i>	pleasure.
<i>bonté,</i>	goodness.	<i>habitude,</i>	custom.	<i>pouvoir,</i>	power.
<i>bonheur,</i>	good luck.	<i>hardiesse,</i>	boldness.	<i>précaution,</i>	precaution.
<i>conseil,</i>	council.	<i>bazard,</i>	chance.	<i>présomption,</i>	presumption.
<i>choix,</i>	choice.	<i>bonne,</i>	shame.	<i>puissance,</i>	might.
<i>cœur,</i>	heart.	<i>bonneté,</i>	kindness.	<i>rage,</i>	rage.
<i>courage,</i>	courage.	<i>imprudence,</i>	imprudence.	<i>risque,</i>	risk.
<i>commodité,</i>	convenience.	<i>impudence,</i>	impudence.	<i>ruse,</i>	cunning, craft.
<i>contrainte,</i>	constraint.	<i>impuissance,</i>	impotence.	<i>sagesse,</i>	wisdom.
<i>confusion,</i>	confusion.	{	inability.	<i>satisfaction,</i>	satisfaction.
<i>constance,</i>	constancy.		inconvenience.	<i>scandale,</i>	scandal.
<i>curiosité,</i>	curiosity.	{	insolence.	<i>sens,</i>	sense.
<i>chagrin,</i>	grief.		intention.	<i>souci,</i>	care.
<i>désespoir,</i>	despair.	{	uneasiness.	<i>témerité,</i>	rashness.
<i>dépit,</i>	spite.		judgment.	<i>vanité,</i>	vanity.
<i>désir,</i>	desire.	<i>jugement,</i>	justice.	<i>volonté,</i>	will.
<i>danger,</i>	danger.	<i>justice,</i>	liberty.		
<i>déplaisir,</i>	displeasure.	<i>liberté,</i>			

Moreover observe, that any noun or adnoun, derived from verbs, requires the same preposition before the next infinitive or noun, as the verb which it is derived from. Thus *étonné* amazed, *résolu* resolved, &c. govern, the former the second state of nouns, and the latter the third, and both the preposition *de* before the infinitive, because their verbs *étonner* or *s'étonner* to wonder at, to be amazed, and *résoudre* to resolve, do so. It is the same with *force*, *obligation*, *présomption*, &c. derived from *forcer*, *obliger*, *présumer*, &c.

12°. The impersonals, *il vous appartient*, *il convient*, *il sied bien* (it becomes or behoves you, it is becoming). *Il est*, followed by

by an adnoun, and *c'est*, by a noun, require the preposition *de* before the infinitive: as

*Il est dangereux dans Londres de se retirer de nuit;*

It is dangerous in London to walk home by night.

*Il ne lui convient point de prendre des airs;*

It does not become him, or her, to take airs.

*C'est le propre de la vertu de nous charmer;*

It is the property of virtue to charm us.

When *c'est* comes before a noun, followed by an infinitive, it requires *que* besides *de*, before the infinitive.— And when *c'est* comes before an infinitive, followed by a noun, and another infinitive, it will have no preposition before the first infinitive, and *que de* before the second: as

*C'est sagesse que d'avouer sa faute;* it is wisdom to own one's fault.

*C'est être fou que de croire ce qui n'est pas concevable;*

They, or these, are mad, who believe what is not conceivable.

13°. The impersonals, *il y a*, and *c'est à vous*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: as

*Il y a du plaisir à chasser, or à la chasse;*

There is a pleasure in hunting.

*C'est à vous à lui en parler;*

It is your business to speak to him, or her, of it.

*Ce n'est pas à vous à me commander;* You are not to command me.

14°. These terms of comparison require *que de* before the next infinitive.

<i>plus,</i>	more.	<i>mieux,</i>	better.	<i>si peu,</i>	so little.
<i>moins,</i>	less.	<i>plutôt,</i>	rather.	<i>tant,</i>	so much.
<i>à moins,</i>	unless.	<i>si,</i>	so.	<i>tel,</i>	such like: as

*Etudiez plutôt que de perdre votre tems;*

Study rather than lose your time.

*Rien ne lui plaît tant que d'apprendre le malheur des autres, &c.*

Nothing pleases him so much as to hear of others misfortunes.

*Avertir* to warn, to give notice, and *charger* to charge with, being attended by two nouns, govern the first relation of the person, and the second of the thing, and require the infinitive with *de*: as

*Avertir quelqu'un de quelque chose, or de faire son devoir;*

To give one notice of something, to forewarn him to do his duty.

*Défendre* to forbid, *permettre* to permit, to allow, and *refuser* to deny to refuse, govern the first relation of the thing, and the third of the person; and require the infinitive with *de*: as

*Je vous permets or défends de le faire;*

I permit, or forbid you to do it.

*Refuser quelque chose à quelqu'un;*

To deny somebody something.

*Défendre* is also construed with *que* and the subjunctive.

*Demander* requires the infinitive with *à* when it signifies only asking, or demanding: but in the sense of desiring, begging, &c. it requires *de*.—It is also better to use *prier*, in

in this sense, instead of *demander* : as *Il demande à manger*, or *à aller se promener* ; He asks to eat, or to go a walking. *Il m'a demandé or prié de lui rendre ce service-là* ; He desired me, begged of me to do him that piece of service.

Again. *Prier* governs the first relation of the person, and the second of the thing : as *Prier quelqu'un d'une chose* ; To beg a thing of one.

*Insulter* governs the first relation when it is a person, or a pronoun personal, and the third when it is a thing : as *insulter quelqu'un* ; to insult, abuse, affront one. *Insulter à la misère d'autrui* ; to insult others misfortune. — We likewise elegantly say, *insulter aux misérables* ; to insult the unfortunate.

*Mériter*, to deserve, requires either the infinitive with *de*, or the subjunctive with *que*. — It is the same with the adnouns *digne* and *indigne* : as

*Il mérite d'être préféré*, or *qu'on le préfère* ; He deserves to be preferred.

*Il est indigne*, or *Il ne mérite pas qu'on lui rende service* ;

He does not deserve that one should do him any service.

*Prendre garde*, to take care, which requires the second state in English, requires the third in French, and the infinitive with *de*, or the subjunctive with *que* : as

*Prenez garde à cela* ; Take care of that.

*Prenez garde de tomber* ; Take care you don't fall, or not to fall.

*Prenez garde qu'il ne fasse cela* ; Take care lest he should do that.

But note, that the French use no negative after *prendre garde*, when the next verb is of the infinitive, and don't say as the English do, *Prenez garde de ne pas tomber*, but *Prenez-garde de tomber*.

*Persuader*, to persuade, attended by one noun only, governs it in the first state : as *persuader quelqu'un*, to persuade one. *Persuader quelque chose*, to persuade one thing. When it is attended by two nouns, it governs the first state of the thing, and the third of the person ; as *persuader une chose à quelqu'un* ; to persuade one to something. And when it is followed by a verb, it requires it in the infinitive with *de* : as *al o* does *dissuader*, to dissuade, and *détourner*, to deter ; but these two always govern the first state of the person, and the second of the thing : as *dissuader quelqu'un de quelque chose* ; to dissuade one from a thing ; *le détourner de la faire* ; to deter him from doing it.

*Instruire*, to instruct, governs the first state of the person, and the second of the thing : as *instruire quelqu'un d'une chose*, to instruct one ; but *enseigner*, *apprendre*, *montrer* (to teach, learn, shew) govern the third state of the person : as *enseigner la Grammaire à quelqu'un*, to teach one Grammar.

Lastly, Verbs and Adnouns, governing the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* in Latin, commonly govern the second and third state of the noun in French : as *Mémorise alicujus rei*, to remember a thing ; *se souvenir d'une chose*. *Résistez alicui*, to resist one ; *résister à quelqu'un*. *Vesci pane & aqua*, to live upon bread and water, *vivre de pain & d'eau*.

15°. The Prepositions *de* and *à*, construed with the infinitive, answer to the English preposition *to*, used also before verbs ; and it ought to have been observed, that it is the foregoing verb, or noun that determines which of the two must be used. But there remains another preposition (*pour*) likewise answering *to* and of the same use, before verbs, and which denotes the *Design* or *End* of, or *Reason* for doing something. Therefore

Whenever the particle *to* coming before an infinitive, can as well be rendered by *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, with the infinitive, or *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the indicative, or subjunctive, or *for* with the gerund, it must be rendered into French by *pour* : as likewise the French for these expressions, *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, *to the end that*, and *for* with a gerund,

gerund, is *pour*, or *afin de* with the infinitive, or *afin que* with the subj. as

*Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine*; He did it to make me uneasy.  
*Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin*;  
 He was hanged for robbing upon the highway.

16°. The verb coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*, always requires the preposition *pour* before it: as

*Il est trop sensé pour faire cela*; He has too much sense to do that.

*Elle n'est pas assez riche pour épouser un Duc*;

She is not rich enough to marry a Duke.

*Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir*; Merit is not enough to thrive.

Mind then well the relations which the English particles *of*, *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *for*, and *to*, have to these three French ones, *de*, *à*, *pour*.

The gerund (*ing*) with the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with* (or the infinitive, that can be resolved by any of these prepositions, and the gerund) is rendered by the infinitive with *de*.—The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *to* (or the infinitive, that can be resolved after that manner) is rendered by the infinitive with *à*.—And the preposition *for* with the gerund (or the infinitive so resolved) by the infinitive with *pour*. See the examples above.—The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *by*, is also rendered in French by the gerund, with the preposition *en*: as, by doing that, or in doing that, *en faisant cela*.

Moreover observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, that *pour* is never used in French with a gerund as in English, but always with the infinitive.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That English gerunds, construed with *for*, are rendered in French by the compound of the present of the infinitive, or by a noun: as *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé*, ou *pour vol*; he has been hanged for robbing: the noun denoting the action itself, and the compound tense the time of the action, which is past.

3<sup>dly</sup>, That these three prepositions, *de*, *à*, *pour*, are not always put so immediately before verbs, as in English, but some word, or words, may be put between, as pronouns and some adverbs, which must come immediately before the verb.

4<sup>thly</sup>, That they are also sometimes used before the infinitive, without any previous noun, or verb, that determines them, to wit, in the beginning of a sentence; as

*De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne puis*;

To tell you how that did happen, that I cannot, or it is what I cannot.

In which construction, *de* prepares the mind to a greater attention to what one is going to say.

*à* not only comes in the beginning of a sentence, but is also construed with verbs that require *de*: but then *à* falls under some of the relations of disposition or inclination, which (as we shall see in the chapter of the prepositions) are denoted by that particle: and *à* thus used, can be resolved in English by *by*, or *with*, and a gerund, or *if*, and the indicative: as

*À en juger par les apparences*; If we may judge by appearances or probabilities.

*À vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin*; If he lives at that rate, he won't live long.

*À l'entendre, on dirait que*, or *On dirait, à l'entendre, que*, &c.

To hear him speak, or by hearing him speak, one would say that, &c.

As for *pour*, before an infinitive, in the beginning of a sentence, it always keeps its property of denoting the *Design*, *End*, or *Cause* of doing something: as

*Pour avoir pris tant de peines, il n'en est pas mieux récompensé*;

For taking so much pains, he is not the better rewarded for it.

The infinitive can also begin the sentence, without any preposition at all before it, which happens, when one speaks sententiously, or is laying down general maxims: as

*Pouvoir*

*Pouvoir vivre avec soi-même, & savoir vivre avec les autres, c'est la grande science de la vie.* To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, is the great science of life.

Lastly, Whenever in a sentence two verbs come together, joined by the enclitick, & great care must be taken (especially if they govern different relations, and particles) to give to each of them the respective relation or particle which it requires: as in placing a noun after the first verb, and before the second a pronoun in that state which it requires; or in repeating the pronoun before each verb. Therefore we don't say in French, *Cela plut & charma le Prince*, as in English, *That pleased and charmed the Prince*, because *plaire* governs the third state, and *charmer* the first, but

*Cela plut au Prince, & le charma, or Cela lui plut & le charma.*

Again these constructions are false:

*Je veux, & promets d'accomplir ma promesse;*

I will, and bind myself to fulfil my promise.

*Il fit des caresses, & donna la bénédiction à son fils;*

He made much of his son, and gave him his blessing.

*Je suis plus belle que mon frère;* I am handsomer than my brother. (A girl speaks.)

*Je suis plus savant que ma sœur;* I am more learned than my sister. (A boy speaks.)

Because in the first instance *would* requires a different construction from *promettre*; in the second, tho' *faire des caresses, & donner sa bénédiction*, require both the third state, as follows: *à son fils*, yet the first verb must be attended by its relation, as well as the second: and in the third, *belle* and *savant* used in one gender only, cannot agree with the two genders mentioned in the sentence. So regular, and exact, the French language is in its Concord, and so nice in its construction.

It is the same with two prepositions: as, *The one sat above, and the other below me*, the state governed of the preposition must come after the former thus, *L'un s'assit au dessus de moi, & l'autre au dessous*,

17°. The Gerund is always indeclinable: therefore we say in both genders and numbers,

*Un homme craignant Dieu;* a man fearing God.

*Une femme craignant Dieu;* a woman fearing God.

*Des gens craignant Dieu;* people fearing God.

Except only in some expressions of the Law-style, as *la rendante compte* (a woman giving an account at law of the money which she was accountable for). *Nos gens tenants nos Cours de Parlement* (style of Proclamation, to say only *Our Parliaments*).

It is a great *Quære* among French Grammarians, whether the expressions of these sentences are gerunds, or only verbal adnouns.

*Une requête tendante à ce que, &c.*

A petition tending to what, &c.

*Une fille majeure usante & jouissante de ses droits;*

A young woman of age enjoying her rights,

*Ces étoffes ne sont pas approchantes de celles que je vis hier;*

These stuffs are not like those I saw yesterday.

*Son humeur est tellement répugnante à la mienne, que, &c.*

His or her temper is so repugnant to mine, that, &c.

*La campagne est pleine de troupeaux qui paissent errans à leur gré, & bondissant sur l'herbe;* The country is full of grazing cattle, wandering up and down, and skipping in the grass.

It is very indifferent what appellation to give to these derivatives (and others from verbs neuter) so they are known, and the learner is informed, that use will have them govern the same relation as the verbs which they are derived from, and besides agree,

in

in gender and number, with the term which they refer to. I will insert a list of them in the Appendix; but the means to know whether they are gerunds, or adnouns, is to see if they can be construed with the verb *subst. to be*: in which case they are adnouns otherwise they are gerunds.

Likewise there are in French a great many words, which are both nouns and gerunds; as *appelant, assiégeant, conquérant, étudiant, savant, ignorant, habitant, négociant, suppliant, &c.* but their construction has no difficulty; they are used like nouns, and they govern no state, as they do when used as gerunds.

A great many participles are also used substantively, as *allié, blessé, convoié, damné, &c.* You will find complete lists of them in the Appendix.

We often express with a conjunction and a tense of the indicative what is expressed with a gerund in other languages, in order to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from the gerund being indeclinable. Thus instead of saying, *Je les ai rencontrés courant la poste*, I met them riding post, we say

*Je les ai rencontrés qui couroient la poste*, because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les*. *Il a été chez elles, & il les a trouvées qui buvoient & mangeoient*, instead of *buvant & mangeant*; He has been to their house, and found them eating and drinking.

The gerund sometimes takes the preposition *en* before it, as in English *in* and *by*, and can be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, and *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as

*Je l'ai vu en passant*; I saw him by the way, or as I passed by.

When the pronoun *en* meets with a gerund, it is put after it, and not before, as it should, if the gerund was resolved by a tense of the indicative, in order to avoid the equivocation, that may be occasioned by *en* pronoun, and *en* preposition: as

*Il le pria d'instruire son fils, voulant en faire un savant, or comme il en vouloit faire un savant*; He desired him to instruct his son, as he would make a learned man of him.

The English gerund (*ing*) so much used with the particles *a*, *an*, *the*, or nothing before it, or with *of* after, is rendered into French by a noun, or by a pronoun and a verb, or an infinitive when it comes after a verb with *a* or *an*: as

The *impoverishing* of the body is the *enriching* of the soul;

*L'appauvrissement du corps est ce qui enrichit l'âme.*

He is gone *a walking*; *Il est allé se promener,*

A virtuous man don't leave off *doing* good, but when he gives over *living*;

*L'homme vertueux ne cesse de faire du bien qu'en cessant de vivre.*

His perfect knowledge of the French Tongue is the reason of his *being chosen* for that embassy;

*La connoissance parfaite qu'il a de la langue Françoisse est la raison pourquoi on l'a choisi pour cette ambassade,*

Observe

Observe besides, that the gerund with the verb substantive *to be*, is rendered into French by the verb of the gerund, in the tense of the verb substantive: as—

*He is dancing, Il danse; I was reading, Je lisois, &c.*

18°. Participles are mere adnouns, sometimes construed with a subject, to make short accidental sentences, as *Cela dit, il s'en alla*. After saying this, he went away; but most times serving to form the compound tenses of verbs. When they meet with nouns, they always agree with them in number and gender: as

<i>un homme estimé,</i>	{ a man es-	<i>une femme estimée,</i>	{ a woman
	teemed,		esteemed.
<i>des gens estimés,</i>	{ people es-	<i>des nations estimées,</i>	{ nations
	teemed,		esteemed.

When they are part of a tense compound, they are sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable, according to the following observations.

1<sup>st</sup>, The participle is declinable, when it comes after the verb *être*, considered only as a verb substantive, or (what is the same) when the participle is an adnoun affirmed of the subject: as

*Il est perdu, Elle est perdue; He or She, or It is lost.*  
*Ils sont perdus, Elles sont perdues; They are lost. (dance.*  
*Il est ravi, Elle est ravie de danser; He, or She is overjoy'd to*

2<sup>dly</sup>. When the tense compound, either of *avoir* or *être*, is preceded by a pronoun relative in the fourth state, governed as an object, such as *que, le, la, les, me, te, se, nous, vous*, or by a noun with a pronoun interrogative: as

*Les peines que mes amis ont prises;*  
 The trouble which my friends have taken.

*Les peines qu'ils se sont données;*  
 The trouble which they gave themselves.

*Quelles peines a-t-il prises (or) s'est il données?*

What trouble did he take, or give himself?

*Ses sœurs ont bien du mérite, je les ai toujours estimées;*

His sisters are very deserving, I have always esteemed them.

*Nous nous sommes trompés;* We were mistaken (Men speak).

*Elles s'étoient trompées;* They were mistaken (said of Women).

The participle is indeclinable, 1<sup>st</sup>, when the pronoun is governed of a verb coming after the tense compound, and not of the tense compound: as

*Les montres qu'il a fait faire, il ne les a pas voulu payer;*

The watches which he ordered to be made, he would not pay for them.

*Fait* and *voulu* don't agree with the pronouns *que* and *les*, relating to *les montres*, because these pronouns are not governed of the compound tenses *il a fait*, *il a voulu*, but by the following verbs *faire* and *payer*.

2dly, When it is governed in the third state, expressing the end of the verb, and not in the fourth, expressing its object, we say,

*Elle s'est tuée*; She has killed herself;

making the participle agree with the pronoun *se*, governed of the tense compound, as its object. But we say

*Elle s'est donné la mort*, not *s'est donnée*; She put herself to death; because the tense compound don't govern *se* as its object, but *la mort*; and *se* is only the end, in the third state (*sibi*).

The pronoun is not governed of the tense compound in these four cases, 1st. When the verb *faire*, serving to form the compound tense, signifies *to cause*, *to bespeak*, *to order*, as in the aforesaid example:

*Les montres qu'il a fait faire*;

The watches which he ordered to be made.

2dly, With verbs impersonal: as

*Les tumultes qu'il a fallu apaiser*;

The riots which it was necessary to quell;

wherein *que* is governed of *apaiser*, not of *il a fallu*.

3dly, With the participle *pu* from *pouvoir*, *du* from *devoir*, *voulu* from *vouloir*, and perhaps some others, after which there is an infinitive understood: as

*Il a dit toutes les raisons qu'il a voulu*; He has said all the reasons that he would; *dire* being understood after *voulu*.

4thly, When the compound tense is followed by the relative *qui* or *que*: as

*Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois*;

The reasons which he thought I approved of.

*Les personnes que j'ai vu qui étoient prévenues*;

Such of those I saw who were prepossessed.

*Ménage*, *Cornéille*, and *l'Abbé Desmarais* (the Grammar of the French Academy) make three more exceptions to the general rule; pretending, that when the subject of the verb comes after it, or when the pronoun *cela* is the subject, whether it comes before or after the verb, or when the compound tense is followed by either a noun or ad-noun, which it governs, together with the pronoun, the participle is indeclinable, and therefore will have writers say

*Les peines qu'ont pris mes amis*, or *que se sont donné mes amis*.

*Les peines que m'a donné cette affaire*, or *que cela m'a causé*.

*Le commerce l'a rendu puissante*;

Trade made it powerful.

*Les Anglois se sont rendu maîtres de la mer*;

The English have made themselves masters of the sea.

But good writers now-a-days keep to the general rule, of making the participle agree with the foregoing pronoun, except only when it is not governed of the compound tense, or is in the third state.

Therefore we should say:

*Les peines qu'ont prises*

*des peines que m'a données*

*l'a rendu puissant.*

*se sont rendus maîtres de la mer.*

## C H A P. VI

Of V E R B S *Impersonal.*§ I. *Of the Impersonals C'est and Il est, it is, or 'tis*

**T**HESE two Impersonals are of very extensive use in French: and as the pronoun *ce* and *il*, of which they are composed, cannot be indifferently used for one another, in order to know when *it is*, or *'tis*, must be rendered into French by *c'est*, and when it must be rendered by *il est*, make the following observations:

1°. The pronoun primitive *ce*, used impersonally with *être*, denotes either a person or a thing, as appears by the term of its relation, which sometimes comes after the verb, and sometimes has been mentioned before the sentence beginning with *c'est*: as  
*C'est un modèle de vertu*; He, or She is a pattern of virtue.

In this instance *ce* denotes a man or woman who is spoken of; but in these others,

*C'est un ouvrage accompli*; It is an accomplished piece of work;

*C'est ce que je pensois*; It is, or It was what I thought;

*ce* denotes, and refers to, something that has been mentioned before, or is to come after, in the same sentence.

2°. When that which follows *it is*, or which *it* refers to, is a thing, as the word *chose* is feminine, the pronoun *il* cannot then be construed with *est*, and we say *c'est*, and not *il est*: as in the last instance *c'est un ouvrage accompli*, &c. and when the pronoun coming before *is*, is *he* or *she*, it is indifferent to express it in French by *ce*, or the pronouns *il*, *elle*, as in the first instance.

3°. The impersonal *c'est* is always used (and never *il est*) with the word *chose*, whether it be attended by an adnoun or no: as  
*C'est de cette chose-là que je parle*; It is of that thing I am speaking.  
*C'est une chose bien fâcheuse que d'être malade & de n'avoir point d'argent*;

It is a very sad thing to be sick, and to have no money.

On the other hand, when the word *thing* is not expressed in the speech, but grammatically understood, the adnoun must be construed with *il est*: as

*Il est bien fâcheux d'être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent.*

*Il est bon de se tenir sur ses gardes*;

It is good to stand upon one's guard.

And

And in the doubt which impersonal to use, you can never speak improperly with *c'est*, if you express the noun *chose* in the sentence, and construe it with the adnoun, as appears by the last instances.

*Il est bon de se tenir sur ses gardes*, or *C'est une bonne chose de se tenir sur ses gardes*.

*Il est bien fâcheux d'être malade*, or *C'est une chose bien fâcheuse que d'être malade*, &c.

4°. When the word that comes after any tense of the verb *to be*, is an adnoun, without a noun, and affirmed of the pronouns personal, *he, she, it, they*, which it refers to, the pronoun must be rendered by the personal *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, and never by *ce*: as if in speaking of somebody, you say *he is learned, she is sick*; or of wine, apples, &c. *is is good, they are sour*; the pronouns must likewise be the personal in French, thus, *Il est savant, Elle est malade*, &c. *Il est bon, Elles sont sûres*, &c.

5°. The impersonal *il est*, and not *c'est*, is used before nouns denoting time, or a part of it: as *Quelle heure est-il?* What's o'clock? *Il est deux heures*; It is two o'clock: *Il est tard*; It is late: *Il est temps de partir*; It is time to go, or to set out.

But if the question is asked with the pronoun *ce*, as *Quelle heure est-ce qui sonne?* What is the clock striking? answer with the same pronoun, *C'est une heure*, It strikes one; *C'est midi*, It is twelve. Nevertheless we say *C'est aujourd'hui Dimanche*, To day is Sunday; *C'est demain Lundi*, To-morrow is Monday; *C'est Mardi fête*, Tuesday is a holy day, &c.

6°. Again, *il est* is used with adnouns affirmed of the pronouns *il, elle*, or with nouns without the article: and *c'est*, with an adnoun, with which it makes a complete sense, or with nouns, construed with the particles *un, du, des*: as

*Il est sage, Il est malade, Il est temps, Il est Evêque, Marchand*,  
He is wise, He is sick, It is time, He is a Bishop, a Merchant.

*C'est bon, juste, raisonnable, &c. C'est un malade, C'est un Evêque*,  
It is good, just, reasonable, It is a patient, It is a Bishop.

*C'est un Marchand, C'est un Peintre, C'est du pain, &c.*  
It is, or He is a Merchant, It is a Painter, It is bread, &c.

7°. Except the aforesaid cases, wherein *il est* is used, *c'est* must be used on all other occasions, as before nouns, adnouns, and pronouns, as

*C'est la loi qui l'ordonne*; It is the law that prescribes it.

*C'est le laquais, ou la servante, qui a dit cela*;

It is the footman, or maid, who said that.

*C'est elle qui le croit ;* It is she who believes it.

But note, that the pronoun that comes after *c'est* must be a disjunctive.

8°. The pronoun *ce* used impersonally with *être* (*c'est*), is not only construed with all pronouns personal of the singular number, followed by a relative, and a verb that agrees with the pron. personal : as

*C'est moi qui ai fait cela ;* It is I who have done that ;  
*C'était vous qui aviez fait cela ;* It was you who had done that ;  
*Ce fut lui qui fit cela ;* It was he who did that ;

but also with the pronouns personal of the plural, followed by a verb after the same manner : as

*C'est nous qui avons fait cela ;* It is we who have done that.  
*C'est vous qui avez fait cela ;* It is you who have done that.  
*C'est eux qui ont fait cela ;* It is they who have done it.  
*C'étoient les Dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ;*

It was the Dragoons who would not obey.

But what is more remarkable, this pronoun *ce* is construed with the third person plural of the verb substantive, thus,

*Ce sont eux qui l'ont fait ;* It is they who have done it.

*C'étoient les Dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ;*

*Ce furent les Dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir ;*

*Ce seront les Dragons qui feront cette attaque ;*

The Dragoons are to make that attack.

Therefore observe, that *it is, it was*, followed by a pronoun of the 3d pers. plur. is rendered in French after two ways. But when a question is asked, it is always with the 3d person singular, thus,

*Est-ce eux qui ont fait cela ?* Is it they who have done it ?

*Etoit-ce les Dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ?*

*Fut-ce les Dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir ?*

*Sera-ce les Dragons qui feront cette attaque ?*

Are the Dragoons to make that attack ?

Moreover note 1<sup>st</sup>, that in the practice of this impersonal, we don't make use of the imperfect, or preterite, whenever the second verb is in the preterite, as the English do (*it was I who did it*), which is rendered thus by the French, *C'est moi qui le fis*, and not *c'étoit moi*. But we use the impersonal in the imperfect, only when the second verb is a tense compound of the imperfect : as

*C'étoit moi qui avois fait cela ;* It was I who had done it.

2<sup>dly</sup>, When *c'est* or *c'étoit* is immediately followed by *que*, that *que* stands for *parce que*, because : as *C'est que je ne savois pas qu'il fut arrivé*, It was, or It is because I did not know that he was arrived ; and when a word comes between the impersonal and *que*, *c'est que*, *c'étoit que*, is a redundancy : as

*C'est alors que je prends mes mesures ;* It is then I take my measures.

*C'étoit alors que je vis ;* It was then I saw, or only, Then I saw.

9°. *It is*, followed by *with*, is expressed in French by *il en est*, with the second state of the noun : as

*It is with Poetry as with Painting ;*

*Il en est de la Poësie comme de la Peinture.*

*It is with women as with children ;*

*Il en est des femmes comme des enfans.*

§ II. *Of the Impersonal Il y a, there is, there are.*

1°. Most ways of speaking, beginning with *some* and the verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the impersonal *il y a* : as

*Some friends are false ; Il y a de faux amis.*

*Some pains are wholesome ; Il y a des douleurs salutaires.*

Sometimes also the adnoun is joined to its noun, with the pronoun *qui* and the verb *être* : as

*Il y a des douleurs qui sont salutaires.*

*Il y a des Chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom ;*

*Some Christians are unworthy of that name.*

Observe, that *il y a* comes before a noun even of the plural number.

2°. The impersonal *il y a* is besides used to denote a quantity of Time, Space, and Number.

To denote the quantity of time past since an event, the English begin the sentence with a preterite, simple or compound, followed by the noun of time, attended by a pronoun demonstrative before it, or the proposition *ago* after : as

*He has been dead these thirty years, or He died thirty years ago.*

The French begin with the impersonal *il y a* : then comes the noun of time, without a pronoun demonstrative, but followed by *que* ; then a noun, or pronoun, expressing the subject, with its verb in the present, unless the sense requires another tense : as

*Il y a trente ans qu'il est mort ;* but in transposing the impersonal, we leave out *que*, and we say : *Il est mort il y a trente ans.*

3°. Neither, in asking such questions, do we begin with *comment*, or *comment long*, or *comment long-temps* but *Combien y a-t-il que*, then the noun, or pronoun of the subject, with its verb in the present, thus,

*Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort ?* How long has he been dead ?

*Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez à Londres ?*

How long have you lived at London ? How long is it since you lived at London ?

The answer must likewise be made with the impersonal, and the noun of time, thus,

*Il y a dix ans, or only dix ans ;* these ten years.

*Il y a dix ans qu'il est mort, ou qu'il demeure à Londres;*  
He has been dead. or He has lived at London these ten years.

*Il y a vingt ans qu'il a fait la même chose;*  
He has done the same thing these twenty years.

*Il y a vingt ans qu'il a fait, or qu'il fit la même chose;*  
He has done, or He did the same thing twenty years ago.

These two last instances, very different in the sense which each of them implies, make me think, that tho' the English always begin these sorts of sentences with a preterite, yet they denote an action past, in a far remote time, by the preposition *ago* after the noun of time, without a pronoun demonstrative (which the French express only by a preterite, simple or compound). Whereas they express the same action, by the pronoun demonstrative before the noun of time, sometimes also preceded by the preposition *for*, when the same action continues still (which the French express by a present tense): as again,

*Il y a vingt ans qu'il voyage par toute l'Europe;*

He has been travelling *for* these twenty years all over Europe,

*Il y a vingt ans qu'il a voyagé par toute l'Europe;*

He has travelled all over Europe twenty years ago.

#### Examples of Number, and Space.

*Il y a trente millions d'âmes en France, il n'y en a que neuf ou dix millions en Angleterre;*

There are thirty millions of souls in France, there are but nine or ten in England. [Paris;

*Il y a cent-vingt lieues, ou trois cens soixante milles de Londres à Paris* is 120 leagues, or 360 miles distant from London, or

There are 120 leagues or 360 miles from London to Paris.

The Question of Space is asked thus,

*Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris?* How far is Paris from London? naming first the place where one is, or is supposed to come from, which is quite the reverse in English.

The impersonal *il est* is elegantly used instead of, and in the same sense as *il y a*: as  
*Il est des amitiés véritables, or Il y a des amitiés véritables;* There are true friendships.

*Il est à craindre, or Il y a à craindre que;* It is to be feared that, &c.

Observe, that the noun coming after *il y a*, and *il est*, must have one of these particles *un, du, de, des*, before it, and be followed by the relative *qui*, if the sentence is compound.

#### § III. Of the Impersonal *il fait, it is.*

1°. The impersonal *il fait* is used with adverbs, and some few nouns, denoting the disposition of the air and weather, and is englished by *it is*: as

<p><i>Il fait</i> { <i>beau, or beau temps,</i> <i>chaud,</i> <i>froid,</i> <i>vilain,</i> <i>crotié,</i> <i>jour,</i> <i>nuit,</i> <i>obscur, sombre,</i> <i>du vent,</i> <i>soleil,</i> <i>clair de lune,</i></p>		<p><i>It is</i> { <i>fair, or fine weather,</i> <i>hot weather,</i> <i>cold,</i> <i>ugly,</i> <i>dirty,</i> <i>day-light,</i> <i>night,</i> <i>dark,</i> <i>windy, the wind blows,</i> <i>the sun-shine,</i> <i>the moon-shine.</i></p>
---	--	---

2°. The impersonal *it is*, construed with an adnoun, and a gerund, or with one of these adnouns, *good, bad, better, dangerous*, followed by a noun of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an adnoun, with a verb in the infinitive: as

It is dear living at London; *Il fait cher vivre à Londres.*

Sometimes the verb is left out in French:

*Il fait bon ici*, It is good being here.

#### § IV. Of the Impersonal *il faut*.

1°. The impersonal *il faut*, always requires after it either the subjunctive with *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is englished by *must*, for the present tenses *il faut*, and *qu'il faille*, the imperfect *il falloit*, and the preterite *il fallut*; by *shall* for the future, and *should* for the conditional: and sometimes by the verb *to be*, thro' all its tenses, with one of these words, *necessary, requisite, needful*.

In order therefore to put into French any English, expressed by *must, shall, or should*, or by *it is, or it was necessary, requisite, needful*, one must begin the sentence with a tense of the impersonal *il faut que*; then the pronoun or noun coming before *must, or should*, must become the subject of the French verb that comes after *il faut que*, and is governed in the subjunctive:

The officers *must* do their duty;

*Il faut que les officiers fassent leur devoir.*

They *must* be courageous; *Il faut qu'ils soient courageux.*

Children *should* learn every day something by heart;

*Il faudroit que les enfans apprissent tous les jours quelque chose par cœur.*

2°. *Il faut* before an infinitive denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying *who must*: then the subject coming before *must*, may be either *I* or *we*, *he* or *she*, or *any body*, according to the sense of the speech: as

*Il faut faire cela*; One, or *we*, or *you*, *he*, somebody, must do that.  
*Il faut y aller*; *I*, or *you*, or *we*, or somebody must go there, or thither.

3°. Sometimes also the verb coming after the impersonal is englished by the passive voice, and (as in sentences expressed with the particle *on*) the noun that follows the verb in French, comes before the particle *must* in English; and the French infinitive active is made by the passive: as

*Il faut instruire les enfans*; Children must be instructed.

All which sentences may equally well be expressed with the subjunctive: as

*Il faut que les enfans soient instruits*, *Il faut que cela se fasse*; or  
*Il faut qu'il*, or *qu'elle*, or *qu'on fasse cela*, or *que nous fassions cela*.

4°. Again. The necessity of having something is also denoted by *il faut*, before the noun of the thing only, without any verb; and *il faut* thus construed, is englished by *one must have*, or *something must be had*: as

*Il faut de l'argent pour plaider*; One must have money to go to law.

*Pour se pousser dans le monde, il faut des amis*;

To push one's fortune in the world, one must have friends:

And *il faut*, thus construed, as also with a pronoun personal between *il* and *faut*, denotes one's present want, that must be supplied, and the pronoun personal becomes the subject of *must* in English: as

*Il me faut de l'argent*, I must have, or I want money.

*Il me faut un chapeau*, I must buy a hat.

*Il vous faut des livres*, You must have, or buy, or get books.

*Il lui faut un mari*, She wants a husband, she must have one.

5°. The impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the pronoun *ce qui*, or the conjunction *comme* before it; in which case it denotes *Duty* and *Decency*, and is englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do*, and *should be*: as

*Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut*; He don't behave as he should.

*Faites cela comme il faut*; Do that as it should be.

*Cela n'est pas comme il faut*; That is not as it should be.

*Il fait ce qu'il faut*; He does what he must, or what is requisite.

There

There is an impersonal, which may be called *Reflected*, composed of the double pronoun *il se*, with the third person of any verb active, followed by a noun, with one of the particles *de, du, des*, before. This impersonal is Englished by *there is*, before a noun, followed by a participle: as

*Il se boit de bon vin en France;*

There is good wine drunk in France.

*Il se mange de bonne viande en Angleterre;*

There is good meat eat in England.

The impersonal *Reflected* is also construed with the pronoun demonstrative *cet, celle*, as

*Cela ne se fait pas ainsi;*

That is not done so, or in this manner.

*Cela se fait par tout le monde;*

That is done all over the world.

But observe, that these ways of speaking may as well be rendered by the particle *on*, as *On boit de bon vin en France, On fait cela par tout le monde, &c.*

I have sufficiently spoken of the other Impersonals in the second part.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the FRENCH NEGATIVES.

§ I. I Have already said something of the negatives *ne* and *pas*, in treating of pronouns, but have considered them only with respect to the right placing of them with the pronouns conjunctive. I shall in this place consider their construction, as also that of several other negatives used in the French language.

1°. *Ne* comes (as has been said) after the subject, and immediately before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb, if the sense is simple: as *Je ne sais pas*, I know not; and between the auxiliary and the participle, if the sense is compound: as *Je n'ai point su cela*, I have not known that.

2°. When the verb is at the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come together before it, after the preposition: as

*Je vous dis de ne pas vous mêler de cela;*

I bid you not to meddle with that.

*Pour ne point répéter ce que nous avons déjà dit;*

Not to repeat what we have already said.

3°. *No* is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in answer to questions; and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que*, with the subjunctive: as

*Croyez-vous cela? Non.* Do you believe that? No.

*Je ne crois point cette nouvelle-là; non pas que la chose soit impossible, mais parce qu'elle ne me paroît pas vraisemblable;* I don't believe that piece of news; not that the thing is impossible, but because it don't appear probable to me.

4°. Al-

4°. Although *pas* or *point* may be sometimes indifferently used, yet *point* has a more negative force, it implies *not at all*. But note,

1<sup>st</sup>, That *point* always requires the particle *de* before nouns: as *Il n'y a point de raison pour cela*; There is no reason for that: *Il n'en a point de soin*; He has no care of it: and *pas* sometimes takes an article before the noun that comes after it: as *Il n'en a pas le soin qu'il faut*: He don't take care of it as he should;—and sometimes not: as *Il n'en a pas soin*; He has no care of it:—and never *Il n'en a point soin* or *pas de soin*, or *point le soin qu'il faut*.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That *pas* is always used before these words,  
*beaucoup*, much, *moins*, less, *tant*, so much,  
*peu*, little, *souvent*, often, *autant*, as much,  
*mieux*, better, *toujours*, always, *trop*, too much,  
*plus*, more, *si*, so, *fort*, très, very,  
*extrêmement*, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely; and all adverbs: as

*Il n'y a pas beaucoup de monde aujourd'hui au Parc*;

There is not much company to-day in the Park.

*Il n'est pas peu difficile de lui plaire*;

It is not a little difficult to please him.

*Il ne la voit pas souvent*; He don't see her often, &c.

3<sup>dly</sup>, That when a question is asked, *pas* intimates that one supposes the thing, concerning which the question is asked; whereas *point* intimates a mere doubt, and ignorance of the same thing. For instance, by this question,

*N'est-il point Membre de la Société Royale?*

Is he not a Fellow of the Royal Society?

I want to be informed, whether he is a fellow of the Royal Society or no, being quite ignorant of it: but by this other,

*N'est-il pas Membre de la Société Royale?*

I intimate that I think that he is a Fellow of that Society, and wonder that the others don't think so too.

5°. Besides these negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, *néither*, and *nor*) the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the particle *ne* before their verb, which is then alone, without *pas* or *point*.

1 <sup>st</sup> personne,	no body.	nullement,	no means.	mot,	word, and	gouté :
pas un,	not one.	guères,	but little.	but	these two last re-	
aucun,	not any.	jamais,	never.	quire	a negative only	
nul,	none.	rien,	nothing.	with	dire and voir :	

as *Je ne vois personne*; I see no body. *Vous ne dites rien*; You say nothing. *Elle n'a aucun amant*; She has no sweetheart. *Il*

*ne*

*ne dit mot*; He does not say a word. *On ne voit goutte*; One cannot see at all, &c.

Observe, that *rien* signifies also sometimes *something* or *any thing*; and in that sense, it is construed without a negative, and in sentences of interrogation and doubt, only; as

*Avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau?* Have you ever seen any thing so fine?

*Jamais* signifies also *ever*, and is construed without a negative; as

*Si jamais j'y retourne*, &c. If ever I go there again, &c.

2dly, The conjunction *à moins que*, unless; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest, or for fear that (but not *de peur de*, *de crainte de*, which govern the infinitive), will have after them *ne*, before the next verb: as likewise these four verbs, *empêcher*, to hinder, to prevent; *craindre*, to fear; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; when they are not used in the infinitives: as *À moins que vous ne le vouliez ainsi*; Unless you will have it so.

*J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise*; I will hinder him to hurt you, &c.

But it is to be observed, with respect to the verbs of *fearing* and *apprehending*, that it is only when one speaks of an effect that is not wished for, that the second negative *pas*, or *point*, is left out after the next verb; for if one wishes that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre* and *appréhender*, must be attended with the two negatives: as

*Il craint que sa femme ne meure*; He fears that or lest his wife should die.

*Il craint que sa femme ne meure pas*; He fears lest his wife should not die.

The first instance is of an effect not wished for, the last of one wished for, denoted in English by the negative *not*, whereas the other way of speaking is without negative.

Observe also, that *empêcher* takes no negative, when the next verb is in the infinitive: as

*Je l'empêcherai de vous nuire*; I will hinder him to hurt you.

*Nier*, to deny, requires also elegantly *ne*, before the next verb in negative sentences: as

*Je ne nie pas que je n'aie dit cela*; I don't deny that I have said that.

3dly, We use the negative *ne* before the verb that comes after these five words, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *autre*, and *autrement*: as

*Il est plus sincère qu'il ne faudroit*; He is more sincere than he should.

*Elle est moins âgée que je ne croyois*; She is less old than I thought.

*Il*, or *Elle est tout autre que je ne pensois*;

He, or She is quite another than I thought.

4thly, After *que* and *si*, signifying *before* or *unless*, or *but* in the middle of a compound sentence, the former part whereof is a negative sentence: as

*Je ne la reverrai point que sa mère ne m'envoie querir ;*  
I will not see her again before her mother sends for me.

*Je n'y irai pas s'il ne m'en prie, or qu'il ne m'en prie ;*  
I will not go thither if he don't desire, (or) unless he desires me.

*Il ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche qu'il ne dise quelque impertinence ;*  
He cannot open his mouth but he says some foolish thing or other.

5thly. Before the verb that comes before *ni*, repeated in the sentence ; which answers to *neither* and *nor* : as

*Je n'aime ni à boire ni à fumer ;* I love neither drinking nor smoking.

And if no verb comes before *neither*, this English particle is *ne* only, and *nor* is *ni ne* : as

*Je ne bois ni ne fume ;* I neither drink nor smoke.

When two adnouns meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the particle *ni*, if they are synonymous, or express both the same thing in different words ; but only when they signify two different things, or quite contrary. When they are synonymous only, they are joined by the enclitick *et* : as

*Je ne me ressouvrens point d'hiver plus rude & plus froid que celui de 1740 ;* I do not remember a more severe and colder winter than that of 1740. *Rude* and *froid*, being synonymous, are coupled with *&* ; but in this other, the two adnouns express very different things, and therefore are coupled by *ni*.

*Jamais on ne vit de saison plus pluvieuse ni plus froide ;*  
One never saw a more rainy, or colder season.

§ II. On the other hand, the French use the particle *ne* only, in some particular cases, when the analogy of speech requires a negative in all languages, and wherein therefore it seems that they should not leave out *pas*.

1st. With these five verbs used negatively ; *oser* to dare, *cesser* to cease, *pouvoir* to be able, *savoir* to know, and *prendre garde* to take care : as

*Il n'ose me contredire ;* He dares not contradict me.

*Elle ne cesse de babiller ;* She does not discontinue prattling.

*Il ne peut, or ne sauroit marcher ;* He cannot walk.

But note, 1st, that it is an elegance only to use but one negative with *pouvoir*, it being not improper to say, *Il ne peut pas marcher* : and that when a question is asked, regard must be had to the ear, to express, or leave out the second negative, according as it reads, and sounds best, tho' it is then most commonly expressed ; *Ne peut-il pas faire cela ?* which is better than *Ne peut-il faire cela ?* Can't he do that ?

2dly, When *savoir* is used for *pouvoir*, it requires only one negative, and can never be used with two : as *Il ne sauroit marcher ;* He cannot walk. *Ne sauroit-il faire cela ?* Can't he do that ? and never *Il ne sauroit pas marcher ?* *Ne sauroit-il pas faire cela ?*—When it is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, there is another distinction to be made ; for if it implies only an uncertainty of the mind, it requires but one negative ;

*Il ne sait ce qu'il doit espérer de son procès ;* He does not know what he ought to expect of his lawsuit ; that is, He is uncertain what the Judge, or Judges, will determine or resolve. But if it implies a full and entire ignorance of the thing, it will have two negatives ; as

*Il ne sait pas que le Juge, or les Juges l'ont condamné ;*

He does not know that the Judge, or Judges, have cast him.

Again,

Again, *savoir* requires but one negative, when it meets with any of these particles *où, comment, combien, quand, quel, quoi, si*: as

*Il est je ne fais où ;*

He, or it is I don't know where.

*Cela s'est fait je ne fais comment ;*

That was done I don't know how.

*En-deffus est entré je ne fais quel homme ;*

Thereupon entered I don't know what man.

*Je ne fais s'il dit vrai ;*

I don't know whether he says true, &c.

3dly, *Prendre garde* signifies either *to take care*, or *to take notice, to mind, consider*; and it is in the first signification only, it requires but one negative before the next verb; for in the other signification, it requires the two: as

*Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe ;*

Take care that they don't cheat you.

*Il prit garde qu'on ne le recevoit pas si bien que de coutume ;*

He took notice that he was not so welcome as usual.

As for the first signification, viz. *to take care*, see above pag. 300.

2dly. The French use the negative *ne* only, after the impersonal *il y a* followed by a compound of the present tense: as

*Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu ;* I have not seen him these ten years.

But if it is any other tense comes after the impersonal, they use the two negatives:

*Il y a un mois que je ne lui parle point ;* I ha'n't spoke to him this month.

*Il y avoit un an que je ne la voyois point ;* I had not seen her for a year.

3dly. When the verb meets with the particle *de*, denoting a space of time: as

*Je ne lui parlerai de ma vie ;* I won't speak to him as long as I live.

4thly. When a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*: as *Que ne faites-vous cela ?* Why don't you do that?

5thly. With the adverb *plus* used absolutely: as

*Je ne veux plus le voir ;* I will see him no more.

But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is, before an adnoun with, or without *que*, the two negatives are requisite before *plus*: as

*Je ne le veux pas plus grand que l'autre ;*

I won't have it larger than the other.

6thly. After *si* and *que*, in the sense of *unless*, or *but*: as

*Je ne saurois boire si je ne mange ;* I cannot drink if I don't eat.

*Je n'y irai pas qu'elle ne m'y invite ;* I will not go thither unless she invites me.

It is indifferent in some few cases to use the two negatives, or one only, but they must be learnt by practice. Thus we say,

*S'il ne me fait ce plaisir-là, or S'il ne me fait pas ce plaisir-là, je ne me mêlerai plus de ses affaires ;* If he don't do me that kindness, I will not meddle with his affairs any more.

*S'il ne me paye cette semaine, or S'il ne me paye pas cette semaine, je le ferai arrêter ;* If he don't pay me this week, I will arrest him. The ear must be the judge in those cases, whether it is better to express *pas* or no.

7thly. *Ne*, followed in the same sentence by *que*, but separated by one or more words, expresses, and is englished by *but* or *nothing but*, also in the middle of the sentence, or by *only*: as

*Je ne ferai que ce qu'il vous plaira;* I will only do what you please.  
*Il ne fait que jouer;* He does nothing but play.

*Je ne fais qu'un repas par jour;* I eat but one meal a-day.

8thly, *But*, likewise in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into French by *que* and *ne*, or the relative *qui* and *ne*, but without *pas* or *point*, and the second verb is in the subjunctive (conformable to our former rules): as

*Je ne doute point qu'il ne vienne;* I don't doubt but he will come.  
*Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne le sache?* Is there any body but knows it?

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of the Construction of ADVERBS.

§ I. 1°. **G**ENERALLY speaking, one can make as many adverbs of *Quality* and *Manner*, as there are adnouns in the French language, in adding only *ment* to the adnoun; but with this difference, that with the adnouns that end in *é* acute, or in *i* or *u*, it is to the masculine of the same adnouns that the termination *ment* is added, and to the feminine of those ending in *e* mute, or in a consonant. Thus

<i>aisément,</i>	easily,	are formed from the adn. masc.	<i>aisé,</i>	easy.
<i>assurément,</i>	assuredly,		<i>assuré,</i>	assured.
<i>sensément,</i>	sensibly,		<i>sensé,</i>	sensible.
<i>poliment,</i>	politely,		<i>poli,</i>	polite.
<i>hardiment,</i>	boldly,		<i>hardi,</i>	bold.
<i>absolument,</i>	absolutely, &c.		<i>absolu,</i>	absolute, &c.
<i>And sagement,</i>	wisely,	from	<i>sage,</i>	wise.
<i>certainement,</i>	certainly,		<i>certaine,</i>	certain.
<i>seulement,</i>	only,		<i>seule,</i>	only.
<i>doucement,</i>	sweetly,		<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
<i>vivement,</i>	quickly, &c.		<i>vive,</i>	quick, &c.

Observe, that those adnouns ending in *é* acute, keep it in the adverbs that are derived from them; and the adverbs formed from the adnouns feminine, have *e* before *ment* mute, except these seven; *aveuglement* blindly, from *aveugle* blind; *commodément* commodiously, from *commode* commodious; *incommodément* inconveniently, from *incommodé* inconvenient; *conformément* conformably, from *conforme* conform; *énormément* hugely, from *énorme* huge; *uniformément*, uniformly, from *uniforme*, uniform; and *impunément* with impunity, tho' it comes from *impuni* unpunished.

2°. These following thirteen adverbs, derived from adnouns ending with a consonant, or in *u*, are also spelt, the first eight with an accent *acute*, and the last five with a *circumflex* over the penultima, which therefore is drawn out a little in the pronunciation.

4

*expressément,*

<i>expressement,</i>	<i>expressedly,</i>	<i>exprès,</i>	<i>expres.</i>
<i>confusément,</i>	<i>confusedly,</i>	<i>confus,</i>	<i>confused.</i>
<i>précisément,</i>	<i>precisely,</i>	<i>précis,</i>	<i>precise.</i>
<i>communément,</i>	<i>commonly,</i>	<i>commun,</i>	<i>common.</i>
<i>importunément,</i>	<i>importunately,</i>	<i>importun,</i>	<i>importunate.</i>
<i>obscurément,</i>	<i>obscurely,</i>	<i>obscur,</i>	<i>obscure.</i>
<i>profondément,</i>	<i>deeply,</i>	<i>profond,</i>	<i>deep.</i>
<i>profusément,</i>	<i>profusely,</i>	<i>profus,</i>	<i>profuse.</i>
<i>gentiment,</i>	<i>genteelly,</i>	<i>gentil,</i>	<i>genteel.</i>
<i>éperdument,</i>	<i>desperately,</i>	<i>éperdu,</i>	<i>desperate.</i>
<i>ingénument,</i>	<i>ingenuously,</i>	<i>ingénu,</i>	<i>ingenuous.</i>
<i>dûment,</i>	<i>duly,</i>	<i>dû,</i>	<i>due.</i>
<i>assidument,</i>	<i>assiduouly,</i>	<i>assidu,</i>	<i>assiduous.</i>

3°. From adnouns ending in *ant* and *ent* adverbs are formed, in changing that termination into *amment* and *emment* (pronounced alike). Thus from *constant* constant, is formed *constamment* constantly; from *evident* evident, *évidemment* evidently, &c.

Eight adverbs in *ment* are excepted; *lentement* slowly, from *lent* slow: *présentement* presently, from *présent* present; *diablement* devilishly, from the noun *Diable* devil; *comment* how, from the conjunction *comme*; as *incessamment* incessantly, from a noun that was very likely in the language formerly, but is now lost; *notamment* notably, from *noter* to note; *nuitamment* by night, from *nuit* night; and *sçiemment* wittingly, from *savoir* to know.

4°. These following adnouns are also used adverbially with some verbs.

<i>haut,</i>	<i>parler haut,</i>	to speak aloud.
<i>bas,</i>	<i>parler bas,</i>	to speak low.
<i>clair,</i>	<i>voir clair,</i>	to see plain, be clear-sighted.
<i>double,</i>	<i>voir double,</i>	to see double (not clear and plain).
<i>trouble,</i>	<i>voir trouble,</i>	to be dim-sighted.
<i>franc, net,</i>	<i>dire franc &amp; net,</i>	to say or speak freely and plainly.
<i>juste,</i>	<i>penser, parler, chanter juste,</i>	to think, sing, &c. right.
<i>fort,</i>	<i>frapper fort,</i>	to strike hard.
<i>dur,</i>	<i>entendre dur,</i>	to be thick, or dull of hearing.
<i>doux,</i>	<i>dire doux,</i>	to give fair words, to be submissive.
<i>sec,</i>	<i>répondre sec,</i>	to make a sharp rough answer.
<i>bon,</i>	<i>sentir bon, ou mauvais,</i>	to have a good or bad smell.
<i>mauvais,</i>	<i>trouver bon, ou mauvais,</i>	to like or dislike.
<i>ferme,</i>	<i>tenir ferme,</i>	to hold fast.
<i>droit,</i>	<i>marcher droit,</i>	to keep to the behaviour.
<i>frais,</i>	<i>boire frais,</i>	to drink cold.

*chaud,*

<i>chaud,</i>	<i>boire chaud,</i>	to drink warm.
<i>gras,</i>	<i>parler gras,</i>	to lisp.
<i>gros,</i>	<i>écrire gras, ou menu,</i>	to write a large or small hand.
<i>menu,</i>		
<i>cher,</i>	<i>vendre cher,</i>	to sell dear.
<i>vite,</i>	<i>aller vite,</i>	to go fast.
<i>belle,</i>	<i>l'échapper belle,</i>	to escape narrowly.
<i>fin,</i>	<i>couper fin,</i>	to cut small.

As likewise *nouveau* and *nouvelle* new, *fraîche* (the feminine of *frais* fresh), and even the noun *gouté*: as  
*un enfant nouveau né,* a new-born child.  
*un nouvel arrivé* } one newly arrived. } for *nouvellement*.  
*une nouvelle arrivée,*  
*des herbes toutes fraîches cueillies;* herbs fresh, or just gathered.  
*ne voir,* or *n'entendre gouté;* to see, or hear nothing at all.

Moreover observe, that from the prepositions *à, de, en, dans, du, avec,* &c. joined with nouns and adnouns, are formed as many adverbs compound, almost, as there are nouns and adnouns in the language. See the list of adverbs in the second part of this work.

## § II. Of the Construction of Adverbs.

1°. When adverbs meet with a verb, they are commonly put after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound: as

<i>Elle parle beaucoup,</i>	She speaks much.
<i>Je suis fort porté à le faire,</i>	I am very much inclined to do it.
<i>Il n'a pas encore appris sa leçon,</i>	He has not learnt his lesson yet.

2°. Monosyllables *bien, mal, mieux, pis,* &c. may indifferently come either before or after an infinitive: as

<i>Bien chanter,</i>	} or {	<i>chanter bien,</i>	to sing well.
<i>Se mieux porter,</i>		<i>se porter mieux,</i>	to be better.
<i>Se mal conduire,</i>		<i>se conduire mal,</i>	to behave ill.

3°. When adverbs meet with an adnoun, they must be placed first: as *bien fait* well made, *extrêmement heureux,* mighty happy.

4°. The adverbs *jamais, toujours, souvent,* meeting with another, are also placed first: as

<i>Nous sommes souvent ensemble;</i>	We are often together.
<i>J'ai toujours mûrement considéré;</i>	I've always considered maturely.
<i>Je ne bois jamais trop;</i>	I never drink too much.

5°. Ad-

5°. Adverbs compound always come after the verbs or nouns :

as

*Il tomba à la renverse ;* He fell backwards.

*Un homme à la mode ;* A fashionable man.

*Méchant de gaieté de cœur ;* Wilfully wicked.

6°. *rien* and *tout* meeting with a verb, are construed like adverbs, even after all the pronouns conjunctive : as

*J'ai tout vu ;* I have seen all.

*Il ne m'a rien dit ;* He has told me nothing.

*Je ne veux rien manger ;* I will eat nothing.

7°. These three adverbs of place, *céans* within, *alentour* about, *deçà* on this side, come after nouns, with the preposition *de* : as

*Le maître de céans ;* The master of this place.

*Les échos d'alentour ;* The neighbouring echoes.

*La partie de deçà ;* The part on this side.

8°. These seven become true nouns, being used with the article, and requiring the preposition *de* (or the particles *du, des*) before the next nouns.

le dehors,	the outside.	} as <i>Le devant est tout usé ;</i> The fore part is quite worn out. <i>Cela tient au dedans de la boîte ;</i> That sticks to the inside of the box. <i>Les environs d'une place ;</i> The adjacent places of a town.
le dedans,	the inside.	
le dessus,	the upper part.	
le dessous,	the under part.	
le devant,	the fore part.	
le derrière,	the hinder part.	
les environs,	the adjacent places.	

Observe that adverbs derived from verbs, or adnouns, govern nouns in the same states as the verb, or adnoun, which they are derived from, governs : as *différemment de ce que je vous montre* ; differently from what I show you : *indépendamment des loix* ; without any dependence upon the laws : *relativement à l'acte du Parlement* ; relatively to the act : *préféramment à toute autre chose* ; preferably, before any thing, &c.

## CHAP. IX.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

**P**REPOSITIONS are words invented to express the relations which things bear to one another. It was not possible for men to make themselves fully understood, without denoting those relations : therefore such words must needs have been invented in all languages. But (as the author of the *Grammaire raisonnée* observes)

observes) men in no language have had any regard, concerning prepositions, to what reason would have desired; to wit, that one relation had been denoted by one preposition, and one preposition should have denoted one relation only: whereas in all languages, one and the same relation is signified by many prepositions, and one and the same preposition denotes several relations, as we shall see in this chapter. It is in that, nevertheless, chiefly consist the different idioms of languages; and it is absolutely impossible ever to attain to the knowledge of any language whatever, without thoroughly understanding the divers relations denoted by the prepositions, with their respective regimens and constructions, or the several states of nouns which they govern: both which relations and states being arbitrary, vary and differ much in all languages. This only instance will evince it. The English say, *to think of a thing*; the French, *to think to a thing*; the Germans and Dutch, *to think on, or upon a thing*; the Spaniards, *to think in a thing*, &c. Now it will avail an Englishman but little to know, that *of* is expressed in French by *de*, if he don't know which relations of things the prepositions *à* and *de* denote in that language: since the French say, *to think to a thing*, and not *of a thing*. Therefore we shall minutely consider here all the French prepositions, except only such as are of the same signification, and denote the same relation of things, and require the same construction as in English.

## A, AU, AUX.

*à* denotes, — 1<sup>st</sup>, (whether alone or in composition) the end of the action of the verb, what person or thing it tends to (which relation answers to the dative case of the Latins), as likewise the end one aims at, and is englished by *to*: as *Donner une chose à quelqu'un*; To give a thing to somebody: *A qui est ce livre?* Whose book is this? *Il est à moi*; It is mine, It belongs to me: *Parvenir à son but*; To obtain one's end,

2<sup>dly</sup>, *à* denotes the place where one is, and that whither one is going (in English *at, to, into, on, within*, &c.), as *Demeurer à Londres*; To live at London: *Aller à Paris*; To go to Paris: *Vivre à la campagne*; To live in the country: *Aller à la campagne*; To go into the country: *Il demeure à vingt milles d'ici*; He lives twenty miles off: *Détournez à droite*; Turn on the right hand; *C'est à deux doigts de terre*; It is within two inches of the ground.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *à* denotes time, and succession of time and action, in English *at, in, by*, &c. as *Se lever à six heures*, & *déjeuner à neuf*;

*neuf*; To rise *at* six o'clock, and breakfast *at* nine: *Arriver à temps*; To arrive *in* time: *A demain*; *Against* to-morrow: *Parler à son tour*; To speak *in* one's turn: *Se remettre peu à peu*; To recover *by* degrees: *Arracher brin à brin*; To pluck out slip *by* slip.

4thly, *à* denotes the part of the body that is affected, and is englished by *in*: as *Avoir mal à l'épaule*; To have a pain *in* one's shoulder: *Etre blessé au bras*; To be wounded *in* the arm.

5thly, *à* denotes the way of being or of doing of people, as also their posture, and gesture, or action; in English *at*, *after*, *with*, &c. as *Etre à son aise*; To be *at* one's ease: *Vivre à sa fantaisie*; To live *as* one likes; *Faire tout à sa tête*; To do every thing *of* one's own head: *S'habiller à la Française*; To dress *after* the French way: *Aller à pied ou à cheval*; To go *on* foot or *on* horseback: *Se mettre à genoux*; To kneel down *on* one's knees: *Recevoir à bras ouverts*; To receive *with* open arms.

6thly, *à* denotes the quality, price, weight, and measure of things; in English *at*, *by*, *with*, &c. as *Des bas à trois fils*; Stockings *with* three threads: *De l'or à vingt-quatre carats*; Gold *at* four-and-twenty carats: *Du drap à dix-huit schellings la verge*; Eighteen shillings cloth: *Vendre de la viande à la livre*; To sell meat *by* the pound: *Mesurer au compas ou au cordeau*; To measure *with* the compass or the line.

7thly, *à* denotes the matter, instrument, and tools used in working; in English *in*, *with*, *at*: as *Travailler à de la dentelle*; To work *in* lace: *Bâtir à chaux & à ciment*; To build *with* lime and cement: *Peindre à l'huile*; To paint *in* oil; *Aller à voiles & à rames*; To go *with* sails and oars: *Elle travaille à l'aiguille*; She works *at* her needle.

8thly, *à* denotes the things which one applies one's self to, and the games one plays at; in English *to*, *at*: as *S'appliquer à l'étude, aux Mathématiques*; To apply one's self *to* study, or *to* the Mathematics; *Jouer aux cartes*, To play *at* cards; *Jouer au piquet, à la bête, à la paume, au volant, aux échecs, &c.* To play *at* piquet, *at* loo, *at* tennis, *at* shuttle cock, *at* chess, &c.

9thly, *à* is used in reckoning games; in English *to*, &c. as *Deux à trois*, Two *to* three; *Trois à quatre*, Three *to* four; *Quatre à quatre*, Four all; *Cinq à cinq*, Five all; *Six à point*, Six *to* none; *Sept à point*, Seven *loved*.

10thly, *à* signifies sometimes *according to*, sometimes *for*, sometimes *with*, sometimes *on*, sometimes *till* or *until*: as *Cela n'est pas à son goût*; That is not *according to* his taste: *Je vous prends à témoin*; I take you *for* witness: *Se battre à l'épée & au pistolet*; To fight *with* sword and pistol: *Monter à cheval*; To ride

ride on horseback: *Mettre pied à terre*; To alight: *A l'honneur, au revoir*; Till our next meeting, till we meet again.

11thly, *à* sometimes is a redundancy: as *Il faut voir à qui l'aura*; We must see who shall have it: *C'est à qui l'attrapera*; It is who shall catch it.

12thly, *à*, between two nouns appellative, denotes the manner, or form, of the thing signified by the first noun; as likewise the use which it is designed for: as *Un chandelier à bras*, A branched candlestick: *Un chapeau à grands bords*, A broad brimmed hat; *Un cleu à crochet*, A tenter-hook; *Une boîte à mouches*, A patch-box; *De l'huile à brûler*, Lamp-oil; *Une salle à manger*, A dining-room; *Un moulin à vent ou à eau*, A wind or water mill; *Une arme à feu*, A fire-arm.

This relation is commonly expressed in English by two nouns making a compound word, the first of which signifies the *Manner, Form, and Use* denoted by the French preposition.

13thly, *à*, between two nouns of number, signifies *between*, and sometimes *about*; as *Un homme de quarante à cinquante ans*, A man *between* forty and fifty: *Il y a quatre à cinq lieues*; It is *about* four or five leagues distant.

14thly, *à*, before an infinitive, most commonly denotes what is proper to be done, the merit or demerit of persons and things, their seeming capacity, aptitude, fitness, and disposition, turn or duty: as *Un avis à suivre*; An advice worth following: *Des fruits bons à garder*; Fruit good or fit for keeping: *Une occasion à ne pas laisser échapper*; An opportunity worth seizing (which one must not let slip): *Une homme à récompenser ou à pendre*; A man that deserves to be rewarded or hanged: *C'est une affaire à le perdre*; It is an affair that will ruin him: *C'est à vous à jouer*; You are *to* play: *C'est à lui à parler*; He is *to* speak (It is his business, duty, or turn to speak).

15thly, *à*, coming before an infinitive, signifies sometimes *where-with*, and sometimes the verb may be resolved by the indicative with *if*, or by a gerund: as *Verser à boire*; To fill some drink: *Il n'a pas à manger*; He has nothing to eat: *A en juger par les apparences*; If we may judge by appearances: *A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin*; If he lives at that rate, he will not live long: *On croiroit à l'entendre qu'il ne sait rien*; One would think by hearing him speak that he knows nothing.

*Etre à l'abri*; To be sheltered: *Se tenir à couvert*; To keep under cover, or shelter: *Tenir à honneur*; To reckon it an honour: *Réputer à injure*; To deem it an affront: *Mettre un Officier aux arrêts*; To put an Officer under an arrest: *A votre avis*; In your opinion: *A son compte*; As he reckons: *A ce qu'il me semble*; As far as I apprehend: *A se qu'elle dit*; As she says: *Parler à tort & à travers*; To speak at random: *Mar-*  
cher

*cher à tâtons*; To go groping along in the dark: *Il est homme à s'en fâcher*; He is one who will take it ill: *Je suis ici à l'attendre depuis deux heures, et il est encore à revenir*; I have been waiting for him here these two hours, and he is not yet come back: *A cela près, nous sommes d'accord*; Excepting that we are agreed, &c.

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, each of which is set down in its proper place in my Dictionary.

DE, DU, DES.

*De* (whether alone or in composition) denotes, 1<sup>st</sup>, a relation of union or separation, effect, cause, dependence, &c. and is Englished by *of*, *from*, *by*: as *L'amour de Dieu*; The love of God: *Un membre du corps*; A member of the body: *Etre retranché de la société*; To be cut off from the society: *Etre estimé de tout le monde*; To be esteemed by every body.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *De* denotes the quality of a person or thing, the matter of which that thing is made, which is expressed by the first of the two nouns, whereof this preposition shews the relation, and is Englished by *of*: as *Un homme d'honneur*, A man of honour; *Un plat d'argent*, A silver dish; *Un pont de pierre*, A stone-bridge.

Observe that these two nouns so joined with either *de* or *à*, are commonly Englished by two nouns likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word, whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the *Matter* and *Quality*, *Manner*, *Form*, and *Use* of the other, as a stone-bridge; *un pont de pierre*: a dancing-master; *un maître à danser*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *De* denotes the limited sense of nouns, and distinguishes it from the universal and individual sense; which limited sense is expressed in English by *some*: as *De l'argent*; Some money: *Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, des habits*; Give me some bread, some meat, clothes: *J'ai affaire à des gens fort honnêtes*, or *à de fort honnêtes gens*; I have to do with very honest people.

4<sup>thly</sup>, *De* denotes the place from which one comes, and the term from which one begins to act, in English *from*: as *Sortir de Londres*; To go out of London: *Revenir de France, de la campagne, du Palais, des Indes*; To return from France, from the country, from the Palace, from the Indies: *Tomber de haut*; To fall from a high place: *Mesurer d'un bout à l'autre*; To measure from one end to the other.

5<sup>thly</sup>, *De* denotes the manner of acting or being, the means or cause, in English *with*, *in*, *upon*, *for*, *after*: as *faire de son mieux*; To do one's best, as well as one can: *Danser de bonne grâce*; To dance genteelly: *Couper de biais*; To cut slopingly, in a sloping manner: *S'y prendre de la bonne façon*; To go to work

after the right way : *Mourir de froid* ; To starve with cold : *Vivre de fruits & de légumes* ; To live on vegetables, on fruits and greens : *Sauter de joie* ; To leap for joy : *Il se conduit de cette manière-là* ; He behaves in or after this manner : *Ils peuvent nous nuire de mille manières différentes* ; They may hurt us a thousand different ways.

6thly, *De* is used before the noun of the thing made use of, and the instrument upon which one plays, in English *upon* : as *Se servir d'une épée, d'un bâton, d'un pistolet* ; To use a sword, to make use of a stick, of a pistol : *Jouer de la flûte, du violon, des instrumens* ; To play upon the flute, the fiddle, upon instruments.

7thly, *De* is governed of several other verbs neuter attended by a noun, in English *at, about, for, to, &c.* as *se moquer de quelqu'un* ; To laugh at one : *Jouir d'une chose* ; To enjoy a thing : *Se repentir de sa faute* ; To repent one's fault, or for one's fault : *Mêlez-vous de vos affaires* ; Trouble yourself about your business, Meddle with your own concerns.

8thly, *De* before a noun of time, signifies the duration of the time specified, in English *during, for, by* : as *Il partit de nuit, de jour, de grand matin* ; He set out by night, by day, early : *Je ne l'ai point vu d'aujourd'hui* ; I have not seen him to-day : *Je ne le verrai de ma vie* ; I will not see him as long as I live : *Il étudie des jours entiers* ; He studies whole days.

9thly, *De* is used before nouns denoting dimension, and after nouns preceded by a number, and followed by a participle : as *Il croît tous les jours d'un pouce* ; It grows an inch every day : *Il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés* ; There are thirty ships finished.

10thly, *De* is used after pronouns indeterminate, adverbs of quantity, and these words *point, jamais, rien, quelque chose*, and *que* of admiration or exclamation, followed by a noun or adnoun : as *Il n'y a personne de blessé* ; There is nobody wounded : *Y en avoit-il quelqu'un d'ivre ?* Was any of them drunk ? *Assez de provisions* ; Provisions enough : *Plus d'effets & moins de paroles* ; More deeds and less words : *Point de sens commun* ; No common sense : *Quelque chose de bon* ; Something good.

11thly, *De* is used before an infinitive after adnouns signifying *Fulness, Emptiness, Plenty or Want* ; as likewise after some verbs, and almost all nouns, so they do not signify or imply *Inclination, Reluctance, Aptness, Fitness, or Unfitness*, in English *to* : as *Indigne de vivre* ; Unworthy to live : *Il est capable de faire cela* ; He is capable of doing that : *Je m'abstiendrai d'y aller* ; I will refrain from going thither : *Il m'a détournée de le faire* ; He has deterred me from doing it : *Le désir d'apprendre* ; The desire of learning :

ing: *Il a le bonheur de plaire*; He has the good fortune to please.

*Si j'étois de vous, Si j'étois que de vous*; Was I in your place: *Son habit est comme de cire*; His coat fits well: *De grâce n'en faites rien*; Pray don't do it, I beg you would not do it: *Vous êtes fort de son goût*; You are very much to her taste: *Il vient de sortir*; He is just gone out: *De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne fais pas*; As for telling you what happened, it is more than I am able to do: *Les Magistrats doivent rendre la justice de citoyen à citoyen*; *chaque peuple la doit rendre lui-même de lui à un autre peuple*; The magistrates ought to do justice between citizen and citizen; every nation ought to do the same between themselves and another nation: *Qu'est-ce que de vous*! What wretched creatures are we!

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, each of which is set down in its proper place in my Dictionary.

12thly, *De, des*, an inseparable preposition, giving the words composed of it a signification contrary to that which they have when simple, in English, *un, dis*: as *Défaire*, To undo: *Désavantage*, disadvantage.

13thly, *De par*, a form, made in English by *from*, in the name of: as *De par le Roi*, In the King's name.

14thly, *De ce que*, a conjunction governing the indicative, in English, *because, though*: as *De ce qu'un homme est plus adroit, ou plus fort qu'un autre, il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait de meilleures raisons*; Because one man is stronger or more dexterous than another, it does not follow that he has the better cause.

## A V A N T.

1st, *Avant* shows a relation of time, of which it denotes priority, as also of order and rank, and is always opposite to *après*, in English *before*: as *J'ai vu cela avant vous*; I have seen that before you: *Il faut mettre ce mot-ci avant l'autre*; This word must be placed before the other: *Il arriva avant moi*; He arrived before me.

2dly, *Avant* is also an adverb of place and time, commonly used with these adverbial particles, *si, bien, trop, plus, assez, fort*, and englished by *far, deep*: as *N'allez pas si avant*, Don't go so far; *Creuser fort avant or trop avant dans la terre*; To dig very deep or too deep in the ground: *Plus avant*, further, deeper: *L'épée lui est entrée bien avant dans le corps*; The sword went deep into his body: *Bien avant dans la nuit*; When the night was far gone.

*Vous poussez les choses trop avant*; You carry things too far: *La chose alla si avant que*; Matters went so far that, &c. *Jamais Philosophe ne pénétra plus avant dans la connoissance de la nature*; Never did any Philosopher make greater progress in the knowledge of nature: *Nous étions bien avant en mer*; We were got a great way to sea: *Graver cela bien avant dans votre mémoire*; Let that be deeply engraved on your memory.

*avant que* before, is a conjunction governing the subjunctive, as *avant qu'il soit un an*; Before twelve months are gone.

*avant que* de before, is another conjunction governing the infinitive, as *Parlez-lui avant que de le faire*; Speak to him before you do it. (But now-a-days *que* is generally left out, and we say: *Avant de le faire*.)

*en avant* forward, is another adverb of place and time, as *Aller en avant*; To go forward: *De ce jour là en avant*; From that day forward: *Mettre en avant*; To advance, to assert: *Vous mettez en avant un principe fort dangereux*; You advance or assert a very dangerous principle.

## A P R È S.

1<sup>st</sup>, *après* denotes posteriority both of time, place, and order, and is used in opposition to *avant*, with respect to time, and to *devant*, with respect to place and order, in English *after*, *next to*; as *Après le déluge*; After the deluge: *Sa maison est après la vôtre*; His house is after or next to yours: *Il marchoit après moi*; He walked after me.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *après* is construed with the infinitive of the auxiliary verb: as *Il mourut après avoir bien diné*; He died after eating (having eat) a hearty dinner: *Après diner*, or *après le diner*, after dinner: *Après boire* (Hudibrastic style) after drinking.

*Il est toujours après moi*; He ever hangs about me; He is always at my elbow; He is always dangling after me: *Etre après quelque chose*; To be actually about something: *Je suis après votre montre*; I am about your watch: *On est après*; It is a doing: *Je vais me mettre après*; I will set about it presently: *Il y avoit long-temps qu'il étoit après cet emploi, qu'il courroit après ce bénéfice, il l'a enfin obtenu*; He has been a long time about that place; He has solicited a long time for this living, at last he has got it: *Soupirer après quelque chose*; To wish a thing eagerly: *Se mettre après quelqu'un*; To fall upon one: *On a long-temps attendu après lui*; He has made us wait for him a long while: *On n'attend plus qu'après cela pour partir*; That's the only thing hinders us to set out: *N'attendre pas après une chose*; To be in a condition to do or to live without a thing: *C'est un homme riche, & qui n'attend pas après cela*; He is a rich man, who can do or live without that: *Jeter le manche après la cognée*; To throw the handle after the hatchet; To venture the saddle after the horse: *Après lui il faut tirer l'échelle*; He is never to be undone.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *après* signifies *excepté*, in English *except*, *next to*: as *Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur*; Next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us: *C'est la plus laide bête après le loup* (is said of a very ugly person), He or She is enough to fright a horse.

4<sup>thly</sup>, *après* signifies *contre*, in English *at*: as *Crier après quelqu'un*; To scold at one: *Cette femme-là crie toujours après ses servantes*; That woman is constantly scolding at her maids: *Tout le monde crie après lui*; Every body complains of him.

*Après*, is also an adverb of time, in English *after*, *after that*, *afterwards*, *then*: as *Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après*; Begin with breakfasting, and after that you study.

*après que*, is a conjunction signifying *lorsque*, in English *after*, *when*: as *Après que vous aurez fait*; After you have done: *Après que les troupes furent parties*; When the troops were gone.

après

*après quoi*, is a form of speech signifying *après laquelle chose*, in English *after that*, then afterwards: as *On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit*; They signed the capitulation, and afterwards the place surrendered.

*après tout*, another form of speech of the same signification, as in English, *after all*.

5thly, *d'après* is another preposition, in English *from, by, after*: as *Ce portrait est fait d'après nature*; That picture is drawn after life: *Tableau d'après Raphaël*; A picture copied from the original of Raphael.

*Ci-après*, is an adverb, signifying *dans la suite*, in English *hereafter, afterwards, in the sequel*: as *Comme on verra ci-après*; As will be seen in the sequel.

# DEVANT.

1st, *devant* is used in opposition to *derrière*, and is construed with *de, au, and par*, in English *before, against, over-against*: as *Mettez cela devant le feu*; Put that before the fire: *Il demeure tout devant l'église*; He lives quite over-against the church: *Otez-vous de devant mon jour*; Get out of my light: *Otez-vous de devant moi*; Stand out of my sight, Get out of my sight, Avoid my presence: *Ils passent par devant chez nous*; They pass before our door: *Un acte par devant notaire*; A deed drawn by a lawyer.

*Sens devant derrière*; Preposterously, the wrong way, in the wrong situation. *Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière*; He puts on his shirt the wrong way. *Aller, Venir, Envoyer au devant de quelqu'un*; To go, to come, to send to meet one. *Aller au devant d'une chose*; To obviate a thing, to prevent it.

2dly, *devant* is used in opposition to *après*: as *Il marchoit devant moi*; He walked before me: *Avoir le pas devant quelqu'un*; To have the precedency of one.

3dly, *devant* signifies in the presence of, in English *before, in the presence of*: as *Prêcher devant le Roi*; To preach before the King: *Quand il fut devant ses Juges*; When he was in the presence of his Judges: *Il est devant Dieu, Son âme est devant Dieu*; He is before God, He is dead and gone.

*devant*, is also an adverb, and serves to make some phrases, as *Passez devant*; Go before: *Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant* (a proverb); If you are in a hurry set forward, or you may set off when you please: *Les premiers vont devant* (another proverb); Those that are most diligent get the start of others: *Comme nous avons dit ci-devant*; As we said before: *Il est blessé par devant*; He is wounded in the fore-part of his body.

*Le chapitre de devant*; The chapter before. *Le train de devant d'un carrosse*; The fore wheels of a coach. *Les jambes de devant d'un cheval*; The fore legs of a horse.

*devant*, is also a noun signifying the fore-part of a thing; as *Un devant de chemise*; The fore-flap of a shirt. *Un devant d'estomac*; A stomacher. *Le devant d'une perruque*; The fore-top of a perriwig. *Le devant d'une cuirasse*; The breast of an armour. *Un devant d'autel*; The antependium of an altar. *Prendre le devant, Gagner le devant*; To go or set out before. *La cavalerie tenoit le devant*; The cavalry marched first. *Il sera ici dans un instant, j'ai pris le devant pour vous en avertir*; He will be here presently,

sently, I came before to give you notice of his coming. *Prendre le devant* (in a figurative sense); To prevent, to be before-hand with one, to get the start of him. *Bâir sur le devant* (another metaphorical phrase); To grow luffy or bulky, to get a big belly.

## D E R R I È R E.

1<sup>st</sup>, *derrière* denotes place, and is opposite to *devant*, in English *behind*: as *Regardez derrière vous*, Look behind you.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *derrière* is also an adverb construed with *de* and *par*, in English *back, behind*: as *Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière?* What matters it, whether it is before or behind? *Par derrière*; Backwards: *Porte de derrière*; A back-door, (and figuratively) evasion, shift: *Mettre une chose sens devant derrière*; To put a thing preposterously, to put backward what should be forward.

*derrière*, is also a noun said of the posterior part of a thing or person, in English, *the back side, the hind parts*: as *Les jambes de derrière d'un cheval*; The hind legs of a horse. *Etre logé sur le derrière*; To lodge backwards.

*Faire rage des pieds de derrière* (a proverbial phrase); To work with might and main, *Montrer le derrière* (another metaphorical phrase); To fail in one's promise.

## C H E Z.

1<sup>st</sup>, *chez* denotes, and is englished by, *at or to somebody's house*, and is construed with *de* and *par*: as *Il est chez moi*; He is at my house or home: *Je vais chez vous*; I am going to your house: *Je viens de chez Madame le Blanc*; I come from Mistress White's: *J'ai passé par chez lui*; I have called at his house: *Chacun est maître chez soi*; Every body is master in his own house: *Avoir un chez soi*; To have a house of one's own.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *chez* signifies also *among, with*: as *Il y avoit une coutume chez les Athéniens, chez les Romains*; There was a custom among the Athenians or Romans.

## C O N T R E.

1<sup>st</sup>, *contre* denotes opposition, signifying *against, contrary to*, and is englished by *with* or *at* after verbs signifying being angry, incensed, irritated, provoked, and exasperated: as *Aller contre vent & marée*; To go, to sail against wind and tide: *Se fâcher contre quelqu'un*; To be angry with one: *Se battre contre quelqu'un*; To fight one.

*Quand on fit cette proposition, tout le monde s'éleva contre*; When this was moved, every body expressed his dislike to the motion. *Pour moi, je suis contre*; For my part, I am against it. *Je ne suis ni pour ni contre*; I am neither pro nor con, or neither for nor against it.

2dly, *contre* denotes also proximity of situation; and signifies near, by: as *J'étois assis contre lui*; I sat by him: *Sa maison est contre la mienne*; His house is by mine: *Contre le bois*; Near the wood: *Tout contre*; Hard by.

*contre*, is also a noun signifying *con* (the opposite of *pro*) and *against*: as *On parle diversément de cette affaire, il faut savoir le pour & le contre*; They talk variously of this affair, one must hear what is said *pro* and *con*, or hear both sides. *La chose n'est pas sans difficulté, il y a du pour & du contre*; The matter is not without difficulty, much may be said on both sides. (See in my Dictionary another signification of *le contre*.)

# DANS and EN.

1st, *dans* denotes a relation of time and place, and is englished by *in*, *into*, *to*, *within*: as *Etre dans la boîte, dans la maison, dans la ville*; To be in the box, in the house, in the town: *Quand il entra dans la chambre*; When he got into the room: *Dans la même année*; In the same year: *Dans un mois*; Within a month.

2dly, *dans* denotes the state and disposition of the body, the mind, manners and fortune: as *Etre dans une posture contrainte*; To be in an uneasy posture: *Dans la colère où il étoit*; In the passion he was in.

3dly, *dans* denotes the motive and view of one's acting, which is usually expressed in English by *with*: as *Il fait sa cour dans le dessein de s'avancer*; He makes his court with a design to be preferred.

4thly, *dans* signifies also *according to*: as *Cela est vrai dans les principes d'Aristote*; That's true according to Aristotle's principles.

5thly, *dans* is used, and never *en*, before proper names of towns and authors: as *Il est dans Londres*; He is in London: *Nous lisons dans Cicéron*; We read in Cicero: *J'ai vu cela dans Ovide*; I've read that in Ovid.

6thly, *en* denotes a place, and the things considered as relating to place; and is never used with the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, and is englished by *in*: as *Etre en Angleterre*; To be in England: *Vivre en sa maison*; To live in one's own house.

7thly, *en* denotes the country whither one is going, and is englished by *to*: as *Aller en France*; To go to France: *Venir or Passer en Angleterre*; To come or pass over to England.

8thly, *en* denotes time, and things considered as relating to time, and is rendered by *at* and *in*: as *En tout temps*, At all times; *En plein jour*, In open day-light; *En hiver*, In winter; *Tant en paix qu'en guerre*, Both in peace and war.

9thly,

9thly, *en*, before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that slides away in doing something; and *dans* the space of time after which something is to be done; as *Le Roi va à Hanovre en trois jours*; The King goes to Hanover in three days; that is, he is no longer than three days in going: *Le Roi va à Hanovre dans trois jours*; The King will go to Hanover three days hence; that is, after three days are gone, he will set out.

10thly, *en*, denotes the state and disposition of persons and things, and is englished by *in* and *at*: as *Etre en vie*; To be alive: *Etre en bonne santé*; To be in good health: *Un enfant en nourrice*; A child at nurse: *Une femme en couche*; A woman lying in: *Etre en bonheur*; To be lucky, to have good luck, to play with good luck.

11thly, *en*, denotes what one is employed in, and is englished by *at* and *in*: as *Etre en oraison, en prières*; To be at one's devotions, or prayers.

12thly, *en*, denotes the manner of being, of behaving, of acting, and is englished by *like* and *in*: as *Etre en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit & en pantoufles*; To be in one's night-gown, night-cap and slippers: *Vivre en Roi*; To live like a King: *Se conduire en étourdi*; To behave like a blunderer.

13thly, *en*, denotes the motive and end of acting, and is englished by *through*, *out of*, *in*: as *Il fit cela en haine de ce que, &c.* He did it through hatred of, &c. *En considération de ses services*; In consideration of his services: *En dépit de lui*; In spite of him.

14thly, *en*, denotes the passage from one place to another, the progress of things, the change of condition both of persons and things, and is englished by *to* and *into*: as *Courir de rue en rue*; To run from street to street: *Narcisse fut métamorphosé en fleur*; Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower: *L'affaire va de mal en pis*; The case is worse and worse: *De mieux en mieux*; Better and better.

15thly, *dans*, and *en*, must be repeated before each noun governed; as *Il étoit en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit, & en pantoufles*; He was in a morning-gown, night-cap, and slippers: *On ne voit que des brochures dans sa salle, dans sa chambre, & dans son cabinet*: One sees nothing but pamphlets in his parlour, his room and study.

Tho' it is sometimes indifferent to use either of these two prepositions, yet that must continue the same before each noun, which was used before the first, when it is the same sense all along the sentence, and the same thread of speech: as, *Seville, capitale de l'Andalousie, surpasse toutes les villes d'Espagne en grandeur, en commerce, en richesses & en beauté*; Seville, the capital of Andalusia, exceeds in largeness, trade, riches and beauty,  
all

all the cities in Spain. *Il est fidelle dans ses promesses, inépuisable dans ses bienfaits, juste dans ses jugemens*; He is faithful in his promises, inexhaustible in his favours, just in his judgments.

But if it is not the same thread of speech, and the same sense all along the sentence, both prepositions must be used for variety sake: as *Il passa un jour & une nuit entêre en une si profonde méditation, qu'il se tint toujours dans une même posture*; He spent a whole day and night in so deep a meditation, that he always remained in the same posture.

16thly, *en*, when it is construed with a gerund, denotes either time or manner, and may be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, or *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as *Parler en tremblant*; To speak trembling; *Il laissa ordre en partant*; He left order when he went away: *Il l'aborda en riant*; He came up to her with a smile: *En passant*; By the way.

*en tant que*, is a conjunction signifying *as*, *considered as*: as *Jésus-Christ en tant qu'homme*; Christ as a man. It is also a law expression, signifying *as far as*, *as much as*: as *En tant que je puis*; As far as lies in my power: *En tant que besoin sera*; As far as need will require.

We say both *en été* and *dans l'été*; in summer: *en hiver* and *dans l'hiver*; in winter: *en automne* and *dans l'automne*; in autumn: but we do not say *en printemps*, in the spring; but *dans le printemps* or *au printemps*.

Observe further, that *in* and *into* must be rendered into French by *entre*, and never by *dans* or *en*, in these following expressions: To hold a child in one's arms; *Tenir un enfant entre ses bras*; To deliver a thing into somebody's hands; *Remettre quelque chose entre les mains de quelqu'un*, or *Remettre en main*; To get it again from his hands; *Le retirer d'entre ses mains*.

*Etre en butte à tout le monde*; To be exposed to all the world: *s'en aller*, *s'en revenir*; to go away, or come back again: *En avan*\*, Forward; *En dedans*, Within: *Etre en train*; To begin, to be at it: *Mettre en train*; To set on, to set a going; *Se mettre en train*; To begin doing a thing, &c. &c. &c.

The other significations of *en* must be looked for in my Dictionary.

## DEPUIS.

1st, *depuis*, denotes both time, place and order, or enumeration of things, and is englished by *since* and *from*; and is commonly followed in the sentence by *jusqu'à* (to); then *depuis* denotes the term *from whence*, and *jusqu'à*, that of *hitherto*, as *Depuis ce temps-là*; Since that time: *Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis son retour*; I have not seen him since his return: *Je vous attendrai depuis cinq jusqu'à six*; I'll wait for you from five to six: *Vous êtes venu depuis moi*; You came after me: *Elle est arrivée depuis lui*; She is arrived since he did: *Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin*; From the beginning to the end: *Il m'a suivi depuis la Bourse jusqu'au Palais*; He has followed me from the Royal Exchange to the Palace: *Je les ai tous vus depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier*; I have seen them all from the first to the last.

Observe the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu'à*, *de* and *à*, and *de* and *en*, all which prepositions are englished by *from* and *to*.

de

*de* and *à*, before nouns of places, denote simply the distance that is between the two places: as *On compte vingt deux milles de Windsor à Londres*; They reckon twenty-two miles from Windsor to London.

*depuis* and *jusqu'à*, denote, besides the quality of the distance, its being great or little: as,

*Il marcha depuis Windsor jusqu'à Londres*; He walked from Windsor to London.

*de* and *en*, with the same noun repeated, denotes succession of place: as

*Il va de cabaret en cabaret*; He goes from alehouse to alehouse.

*Depuis peu*; lately, not long since or ago: *Depuis quand*? How long? How long since? *Depuis deux ans*; These two years: *Depuis long-temps*; This great while.

2dly, *depuis*, is also an adverb signifying *since, since that time*: as *Je n'en ai point oui parler depuis*; I have not heard of it since.

3dly, *depuis que*, is a conjunction governing the indicative, and is also englished by *since*: as *Depuis que vous êtes parti*; Since you went away.

### JUSQUE or JUSQUES.

1st, *jusque* (*to, even to, as far as, till, until*), denotes both place and time, to a degree that cannot be exceeded, and requires besides the preposition *à* before a noun. It is indifferent to spell it with or without an *s* at the end, but when it is construed with a word beginning with a vowel, it loses its final *s*: as *Depuis Paris jusqu'à Londres*; From Paris to London: *Depuis la St. Jean jusqu'à Noël*; From Midsummer to Christmas: *Il alla jusqu'au Grand-Caire*; He went as far as Grand Cairo: *Le vice règne jusques sur le trône*; Vice rides triumphant even to the throne: *Jusqu'à présent*; Till now, until now: *Jusqu'où*? To what place? How far? *Jusqu'ici*; To this place, hither, so far: *Jusques-là*; To that place, thither, so far: *Ils en vinrent jusques-là qu'on crut qu'ils s'alloient battre*; They went so far, or to such extremities, that people thought they were going to fight.

*Crier jusqu'à s'enrouer*; To bawl one's self hoarse: *Brûler du vin jusqu'au déchet de deux tiers*; To burn two-thirds of wine away. *Jusqu'au revoir* (a phrase at parting); Till our next meeting, Till we meet again: *Ami jusqu'aux outels*; A friend as far as conscience permits. *Brave jusqu'au dégaîner* (is said of a bully); Courageous till the question is to draw.

2dly, *jusqu'à, jusqu'aux* (*even, every*), denotes also excess, but is used instead of the article: as *Il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis*; He loves even his enemies: *Jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes se donnoient la licence de, &c.* (which may also be expressed thus) *Il n'y avoit pas jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes qui ne se donnassent la licence de, &c.* The very worst of men took such a liberty as to, &c.

*jusqu'à* and *jusqu'aux* taken in this sense, are also used in the third state, but with such

such verbs only' as require after them nothing but the third state, or govern both the absolute and respective state together (or are attended with an object and term). Thus we say, *Il étendit sa libéralité jusqu'aux valets*, He extended his generosity even to the servants; because *étendre* requires here both the absolute and respective state after it. But we do not say, *Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, to mean that, He gave to every body, and even to the servants, because as *Il donne jusqu'à son carrosse*, signifies that He gave every thing he had, and even his very coach (in which sentence, *jusqu'à son carrosse* expresses the word of the object, coming after the verb) so *Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, would signify that he gave every thing he had, and even his servants: Which causes an ambiguity, that ought to be carefully avoided in French.

3dly, *Jusqu'à ce que*, is a conjunction which governs the subjunctive, till, until: as *Jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne*; Until he comes. And *Jusqu'à quand* (pronounced in declamation *Jusques à quand*) governs the indicative, How long.

HORS, HORMIS, EXCEPTÉ, &c.

1st, *hors* (out, except, but) denotes exclusion and exception. When it comes before a noun of time and place, it requires the preposition *de* before it, as also before the infinitive; or it governs the indicative with *que*: as *Vous les verrez quand ils seront hors de table*; You shall see them when they have left table: *Hors du royaume*; Out of the kingdom: *Hors de saison*; Out of season: *Il ne pouvoit faire pis hors de se pendre*; He could not do worse, except or but to hang himself: *Il lui a fait toutes sortes de mauvais traitemens, hors qu'il ne l'a pas battu*; He has used him as ill as he possibly could, except that he has not beat him: *Hors cela nous sommes d'accord*; Except that we agree.

2dly, *hormis* and *excepté* (but, except, save, saving) denote also exception and exclusion, but they govern the noun immediately, without *de*, tho' they require this preposition before the infinitive; they also govern the indicative with *que*: as *Ils sortirent tous hormis or excepté deux ou trois*; They all went out, except or but two or three: *Il lui permet tout excepté d'aller aux assemblées*; He indulges her in every thing, but in going to assemblies: *Je me porte assez bien, excepté que mon bras est toujours enflé, or excepté or hormis mon bras qui*, &c. I am pretty well, but my arm is swell'd still.

3dly, *à la réserve*, is used in the same sense, and englished after the same manner, but is attended with *de* before the next noun and infinitive: as *Il a donné tout son bien à ses enfans, à la réserve de ses rentes viagères*; He has given all his substance to his children, except his annuities for life: *Il a tout pouvoir à la réserve de conclure*; He has full powers, except of concluding.

LOIN.

## L O I N.

*loin* (*far, at a distance, a great way off*) requires the preposition *de* before the next noun and infinitive, or *que* before the subjunctive: as *Loin du chemin, de la rue, de chez nous*; Far from the road, the street, from home: *Loin d'ici*; Far from hence: *Loin de secourir ses alliés, il se déclare contre eux*; Far from assisting his allies, he declares himself against them: *Loin qu'il soit disposé à vous faire satisfaction, il est homme à vous quereller*; Far from being disposed to offer you satisfaction, it is likely he will pick a quarrel with you: *Bien loin que cela soit*; It is so far from being so.

## M A L G R É, E N D É P I T.

*malgré* and *en dépit* (*maugre, in spite of, notwithstanding*) govern, *malgré*, the first state of the noun, and *en dépit*, the second; they also form with *que* a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as *Il l'a fait malgré moi*; He did it in spite of me: *En dépit de lui & de tout le monde*; In spite of him and of all the world: *Il le fera malgré qu'il en ait*; He shall do it in spite of his teeth: *Bon gré, malgré, je l'aurai*; Will he, n'll he, I shall get it.

## P A R.

1<sup>st</sup>, *par*, denotes the cause, motive, means, instrument and manner, and is englished thus, *by, through, out of, for, at, with*: as *Par ordre du Roi*; By the King's order: *Je lui ai fait dire par un tel*; I sent him word by such a one: *Il l'a obtenu par mon moyen*; He got it through my means: *Vous n'en parlez que par envie*; It is out of envy only you speak of it: *Je l'ai fait par cette raison*; I did it for that very reason: *Il entra par la porte, mais il sortit par la fenêtre*; He got in at the door, but he got out at the window: *Je le lui ferai tenir par la première occasion*; I'll send it him with the first opportunity: *Je compris par là*—By that or thereby I understood—

2<sup>dly</sup>, *par*, denotes the place, being englished by *in*, and is construed with several prepositions and adverbs of place: as *Cela se fait par tout pays*; That's done in all countries: *Par-tout*; Every where: *Par tout le Royaume*; All over the Kingdom: *Par-tout où*; Wherever: *Par où?* Which way? *Par ici*; This way: *Par là*; That way: *Par deçà*; This side, on this side: *Par delà*; That side,

side, t'other side, on the other side; *Par-dedans*, Within; *Par-dehors*, Without; *Par-après*, By; *Par-devers*, By; *Par-dessus*, Upon, over, above, over and above; *Par-dessous*, Under, underneath; *Par-devant*, Before, forwards; *Par-derrière*, Behind, backwards; *Par-à-côté*, By; *Par-le haut*, *Par-en haut*, Towards the top, upwards; *Par-le bas*, *Par-en bas*, Downwards; *Par-haut & par bas*, Upwards and downwards; *Par-le passé*, Formerly, in time past, heretofore; *Par-ci par-là*, Here and there, now and then, at several times; *Par-ainsi*, Therefore.

3dly, *par* denotes motion and going through, being englished by *through*, *about*, *by*, *out of*: as *Il a passé par Paris*; He went through Paris: *Se promener par les rues*; To walk about the streets: *Jeter par la fenêtre*; To throw out of the window.

*Passer par l'examen*; To submit to the examination: *Il en faut passer par-là*, *Il faut passer par-là ou par la fenêtre* (a proverb), One, You, They, &c. must submit to that.

4thly, *par* denotes time during which, and is englished by *in*: as *Où allez-vous par cette pluie là!* Where are you going in such a rain as this? *Nous partimes par un beau temps*; We set out in fair weather.

5thly, *par* is construed with the infinitive after verbs signifying beginning and endings, and is englished by *with*, *by*, *in*: as *Il comença par se plaindre, & finit par demander de l'argent*; He began by complaining, and concluded with asking money: *Elle conclut par le supplier de—* She concluded in beseeching him to—

6thly, *par*, construed with nouns, without the article, denotes distribution and division of people, time, place, or any thing signified by the noun, and is sometimes englished by *by*, *in*, *into*, *for*, *per*; but that distribution is commonly expressed by *a*, *each*, or *every*, before the noun, but without a preposition (at least expressed, for *for* is grammatically understood): as *Distribuer par chapitres*; To divide into chapters: *Aller par bandes*; To go in companies: *Donner tant par tête*; To give so much a head: *Cent pièces par an*; An hundred pounds a year, or *per annum*: *Une Guinée par soldat*; A Guinea a soldier or every soldier.

P O U R.

1st, *pour* denotes the same relations as in English, to wit, of the end or final cause, motive and reason of action, and the use which a thing is designed for, and is englished by *for*, *upon the account of*: as *Cela est pour vous, & ceci pour moi*; That is for you,

you, and this for me : *J'ai eu tant pour ma part* ; I have had so much for my share : *Pour l'amour de vous* ; For your sake : *Il fera cela pour vous* ; He will do that upon your account, or for your sake.

2dly, *pour* is commonly englished by *considering*, or *with respect to*, when it denotes the suitableness or unsuitableness of a thing : as *Cet enfant est bien avancé pour son âge*, or *pour le peu de temps qu'il a appris* ; That child is very forward for his age, or considering the little time he has learnt.

*Pour toujours*, *pour jamais* ; For ever : *Pour le moins* ; At least : *Pour lors* ; Then, at that time : *Pour cet effet* ; Therefore, and therefore : *Je compte son témoignage pour dix autres* ; I reckon his testimony as good as ten others : *Je le tiens pour mon ami* ; I take him to be my friend : *Je ne'en dis pas davantage, & pour cause* ; I say no more, and good reason why, or because of something : *Ne laissons pas pour cela de nous divertir* ; Let us divert ourselves nevertheless, Let's be merry for all that : *Pour ainsi dire* ; As one may say, If I or We may say so, or If I may use the expression.

3dly, *pour* is construed with the infinitive (and never *de* or *à*) after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire* ; and whenever we express the design, cause, and reason of doing something, it is englished by *to*, *in order to*, *with a design to* : as *Il est trop sensé pour faire cela* ; He has too much sense to do that : *Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir* ; Merit is not enough to thrive : *Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine* ; He did it to make me uneasy : *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin* ; He was hanged for robbing upon the highway.

4thly, *pour*, before an infinitive followed by *moins*, and a negative in the latter part of the sentence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies *although* or *tho'* ; and *moins* with the negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies *and* is englished by *nevertheless* or *yet* : as *Pour avoir de la Religion, elle n'en est pas moins femme* ; Although she is a religious woman, yet she is a woman : *Pour n'avoir point de bien, elle ne laisse pas d'être extrêmement fière* ; Tho' she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, or for all that, mighty proud.

5thly, *pour*, between two nouns without the article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances. The two nouns or verbs thus construed are rendered into English with a periphrase ; as *Chambre pour chambre, j'aime mieux celle-ci que l'autre* ; Since I must have one of these two rooms, I like this better than the other : *Mourir pour mourir, il vaut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant* ; When a man must die, it is better to die in fighting than in running away.

6thly,

6thly, *pour*, followed by *que*, but coming after *assez* and *trop*, makes a conjunction governing the subjunctive, and may be englished by *that* : as *Je ne suis pas assez heureux pour que cela m'arrive* ; I am not so lucky as that should happen to me : *C'est trop outrageant pour que je ne m'en venge pas* ; It is too outrageous for me not to resent it.

*Pour peu que*, is another conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is englished by *If ever* or *never so little*, *let ever so little* : as *Pour peu que vous en preniez soin* ; If you take care of it ever so little : *Pour peu qu'ils soient jolis* ; If they are at all pretty.

*Pour*, before nouns and pronouns personal, signifies sometimes *as for* : as *Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais pour du jugement, il n'en a guères* ; He has much wit, but as for sense, he has but little : *Pour moi, je crois* ; As for me, or for my part, I believe, &c. *Pour ce qui est de moi* ; As for me.

*For*, before a noun of time, is made in French by *pendant*, before the noun of time, or *durant* after it : as, He has drank the water *for* six weeks ; *Il a pris les eaux pendant six semaines, or six semaines durant*.

P R È S.

1st, *près* denotes proximity of place, and is always attended by *de* (or the particles *du, des*), except in some few instances of common discourse, and is englished by *by, near, nigh, close to* : as *S'asseoir près de quelqu'un* ; To sit by or near one : *Il demeure près du palais* ; He lives by the palace.

*Près* is usually construed with *trop, si, assez, plus, bien*,—and these adverbs are never construed with *auprès*.

2dly, *près* denotes proximity of time, and is construed with the infinitive : as *Il est bien près de midi* ; It is very near twelve, or upon twelve : *Cela n'est pas près d'être fait* ; That is not near being done : *Elle est près d'accoucher* ; She is near her time.

3dly, *près* signifies also *almost* : *Il a été près de trois heures à dîner* ; He was almost three hours at dinner : *Son armée est de près de cinquante mille hommes* ; His army is almost fifty thousand strong.

4thly, *près* is also used in the sense of *save, excepting*, but it always comes after its regimen, and therefore is not attended by *de* : as *C'est un galant homme à son humeur près* ; He is a clever man *save* his temper : *J'ai été payé à cent Louis près* ; I have been paid all to an hundred Louis d'or : *A cent pistoles près nous sommes d'accord* ; There is but an hundred pistoles difference between us : *A cela près, A telle chose près* ; *Save that, That being excepted, Nevertheless, For all that* : *Ne laissez pas de conclure votre marché à cela près* ; Strike up the bargain for all that, or nevertheless : *Il n'est pas à cent Guinées près, Il n'en est pas à*

*à la près*; He can afford to lose, to give, or to throw away an hundred Guineas.

*Près*, *De près*, adverbs, signifying *near*, *hard by*, *close*; *Plus près*, *Nearer*; *Près à près*, *Close*, *close together*, *quite near each other*; *Plus près à près*, *Closer*; *A peu près*, *Pretty near*, *near about*, *nearly*, *within compass*, *within a little matter*; *Il reconnoît une Divinité, mais à peu près de la trempe des Dieux d' Epicure*, He believes a God, but it is one much of the same kind with the Gods of Epicurus. (See in my Dictionary for the phrases made of that preposition.)

## A U P R È S.

1<sup>st</sup>, *après* denotes also proximity of place, and is attended by *de*, and englished likewise by *near*, *nigh*, *by*, but signifies particularly *next to*: as *Sa maison est après de la mienne*; His house is next to mine.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *après* denotes a relation of domestic or servile attachment, and is rendered by *to*, *with*, *by*, *near*: as *Etre après d'un Seigneur*; To live with a nobleman: *L'Ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique après du Roi très-Chrétien*; The Ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the most Christian King: *Il me demanda pour être après de son fils unique, qui avoit à peu près mon âge*; He asked me as a companion to his only son, who was pretty much of my age.

*Etre bien après de quelqu'un*; To be in somebody's favour and benevolence: *N'être pas bien après de quelqu'un*; To be under somebody's disgrace: *Pouvoir beaucoup après de quelqu'un, Avoir du pouvoir après de lui*; To have a great influence or power over somebody's mind: *Elle peut tout après de lui*; She can do any thing with him.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *après* denotes a relation of comparison, and signifies *to*, *in comparison*: as *La terre n'est qu'un point après du reste de l'univers*; The earth is but one point to the universe.

*Après* is also an adverb of place, of the same signification as the preposition: as *Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis après, tout après*; I cannot see that, except I am near it, hard by: *Par après*; By, near, a little aside.

## P R O C H E.

*Proche*, near by, hard by, is also attended by *de*, and is likewise an adverb, as *Proche de la ville, du Palais*; Near the town, or the Palace: *Il demeure ici proche*; He lives hard by.

*De proche en proche*, another adverb, signifying *contiguous to one another*: as *Couper les bois de proche en proche*; To cut the woods gradually one after another: *Faire des conquêtes de proche en proche*; To make one's conquests contiguous to one another.

VIS-A-VIS, À L'OPPOSITE.

*vis-à-vis*, à l'opposite, over-against, opposite, are also attended by *de*, and are likewise adverbs; but when they are adverbs, they are not attended by the preposition *de*: as *Je me plaçai vis-à-vis de lui*; I sat over-against him: *Il est vis-à-vis*; He is over the way: *À l'opposite de sa maison est une colline*; Over-against his house is a hill.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*: as *Près l'Eglise St. Paul*; Near St. Paul's Church: *Proche le pont de Londres*; Near London-bridge: *Vis-à-vis la Bourse*; opposite the Royal-Exchange.

*Vis-à-vis* is said of both persons and things, and signifies properly two persons or things facing one another: but à l'opposite, tho' of the same signification, is said of places and things only, not of persons.

*À côté de* (by) denotes also proximity of place: as *S'asseoir à côté de quelqu'un*; To sit by one: *Passer à côté du village*; To pass by the village.

S A N S.

*Sans*, without, denotes exclusion; is construed with the infinitive (which is rendered into English by the gerund); and is besides, with *que*, a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as *Sans argent*, Without money; *Sans amis*, Friendless; *Un homme sans morale*, An immoral man; *Sans parler*, Without speaking; *Sans y penser*, Unaware, unwittingly; *Vous ferez bien cela, sans que j'y aille*, You'll do that well enough, without my going thither; *Sans faire semblant de rien*, As though he did not.

SELON, SUIVANT.

*Selon* and *suiwant*, according to, agreeably, conformably or pursuant to, govern the noun immediately, never taking à before it as in English *to*, and form also an adverb, and along with *que*, a conjunction governing the indicative: *selon* is said of an opinion, and *suiwant* of practice: as *On l'a traité selon son mérite*; He was treated according to his deserts: *Il sera payé selon qu'il travaillera*; He shall be paid according to his work: *Selon moi*; In my judgment or opinion: *C'est selon*; It is as it happens, May be yes, May be not, That's according: *Je me conduirai en tout suivant vos avis*; I will conduct myself, or behave, in every thing according to or conformably to your advice.

S U R.

*Sur*, denoting place and matter, is upon, on, over, both in the proper and figurative sense: as *Sur la table*, Upon the table; *Sur la rivière*, Upon the river; *Sur un vaisseau*, On board a ship; *Se reposer sur quelqu'un*, To rely or depend upon one.

2dly, *Sur*, denoting time, is *about, against, towards, by* : as *Je partirai sur les trois heures* ; I shall set out about or by three : *Sur le soir* ; Towards the evening : *Sur la brune* ; In the dusk of the evening : *Il est sur son départ* ; He is upon his departure.

3dly, *Sur*, denoting the superiority of power or excellence, is rendered by *over* : as *Un Prince qui règne sur plusieurs peuples* ; A Prince that reigns over many nations : *Les François ont de grands avantages sur les autres nations* ; The French have great advantages over the other nations.

*Sur* signifies also *against, by, on account of* : as *Sur la fin de la semaine*, Against the end of the week : *Je me réglerai sur son exemple* ; I shall regulate myself by his example : *Il s'excusa sur son âge* ; He excused himself on account of his age.

*Sur* coming before *ce que*, makes a conjunction governing the indicative, and is Englished by *as* with the indicative, or *on* or *upon* with the gerund : as *Sur ce qu'il apprit que* ; As he learnt that, or *On* or *Upon* hearing that.

The English particle *on* coming after a verb, of whose action it denotes the continuation, is rendered into French by the verb *continuer*, or the adverb *toujours* : as *Play on, Continuez de jouer*, or *Jouez toujours* ; Read on, *Lisez toujours*, or *Continuez de lire*.

*Sur* is used besides in a great many figurative phrases, which must be learned in the Dictionary.

#### AU-DESSUS, AU-DESSOUS.

1st, *Au-dessus* (above, over, beyond), *au-dessous* (below, under), compound prepositions, denoting superiority and inferiority of age, place, rank, and other physical and moral subjects, require besides the other preposition *de* before their regimen : as *Loger au-dessus* or *au-dessous de quelqu'un* ; To lodge above or below one : *On enrôle tous les gens au-dessus de quatorze ans & au-dessous de cinquante* ; They enlist every body above fourteen and under fifty : *Il fait un peu trop le familier avec ceux qui sont au dessus de lui* ; He makes himself too familiar with his betters : *Il est au-dessus de ses affaires* ; He is beforehand with the world : *Etre au-dessous d'un autre en mérite, en bien, &c.* To be inferior to one in merit, wealth, &c.

2dly, *Au-dessus* and *au-dessous* are also adverbs : as *Il occupe le premier étage, & je loge au-dessus* ; He occupies the first floor, and I lodge above : *Hérode fit tuer tous les enfans de l'âge de deux ans & au dessous* ; Herod put to death all the children of two years old and under. — *Par dessus* and *par dessous* are also both adverbs and prepositions, but without requiring *de* before their regimen.

*Sur, sous, dans, and hors*, are prepositions always requiring a regimen : but *dessus, dessous, dedans, and dehors*, which are adverbs, signifying as much as the prepositions with

with a noun, become also prepositions, used instead of, and in the same sense as *sur*, *sous*, *sans*, *hors*, of which they are composed, whenever they are preceded by the prepositions *par* and *de*, or when they both serve for one and the same noun; especially if the two prepositions are the two contraries, or opposite the one to the other. In which case *dehors* governs its noun immediately, tho' *hors* always requires *de* before it: as

*Cherchez dessus & dessous la table*; Look upon and under the table, not *sur & sous*.  
*Il n'est ni dedans ni dessous le coffre*; It is neither in nor under the chest, not *dans & sous*.

*La balle lui passa par dessus la tête*; The ball went over his head, and not *par sur*.  
*Il passa par dedans la ville*; He went through the city, and not *par dans*.

*On le tira de dessous le lit*; He was got from under the bed, and not *de sous*.  
 Those cases excepted, *sur*, *sous*, *dans*, *hors*, must always be prepositions; and *dessus*, *dessous*, *dedans*, and *dehors*, adverbs.

VERS, ENVERS.

1<sup>st</sup>, *vers* (towards, to) denotes a certain side or situation: as *Vers l'Orient*, Towards or to the East, or Eastwards.

2<sup>dly</sup>, *vers* (to) denotes sometimes the residence of a Minister; as *Envoyé vers les Princes d'Allemagne*; Envoy to the Princes of Germany.

3<sup>dly</sup>, *vers* (about, towards) denotes time: as *Vers les quatre heures*; About four o'clock.

4<sup>thly</sup>, *envers* (towards, to) is only said of persons: as *Sa tendresse envers eux* (or *à leur égard*); His tenderness towards or to them: *Ingrat envers son bienfaiteur*; Ungrateful to one's benefactor: *Je vous défendrai envers & contre tous*; I will defend you against all manner of persons.

A L'ÉGARD.

*à l'égard* (as to or for, with respect to, in comparison of) requires *de* before its regimen: as *À l'égard du prix, nous en conviendrons*; As to the price, we shall agree: *À l'égard de ce que vous me devez*; As to what you owe me: *La terre est petite à l'égard du soleil*; The earth is but small in comparison to the sun, or if compared to the sun: *À mon égard*; For my sake, upon my account: *On doit être honnête à son égard, & à l'égard des autres*; One ought to be honest to himself, and to others.

AU LIEU.

1<sup>st</sup>, *au lieu* requires also the other preposition *de* before the next noun and infinitive, being englished by *in the place of*, in-

*stead of, in lieu of:* as *Au lieu de celui que j'attendois, il est venu un homme de sa part*; Instead of the person I expected, there came a man from him: *Au lieu de secourir son ami, il l'a trahi*; Instead of succouring his friend, he has betrayed him.

2dly, *au lieu que* is a conjunction governing the indicative, and is englished by *whereas, while, when on the contrary*: as *Il ne songe qu'à son plaisir, au lieu qu'il devoit veiller à ses affaires*; He minds nothing but his pleasure, when on the contrary he should look after his own concerns.

#### À REBOURS, AU REBOURS.

*à rebours* (against the hair or grain, the wrong way, preposterously, cross, quite contrary), which is an adverb, is also made a preposition with *de*: as *Vergeter du drap à rebours*; To brush cloth against the grain: *Il fait tout à rebours, au rebours de ce qu'on lui dit*; He does every thing the wrong way, quite the reverse of what he is bid.

#### À TRAVERS, AU TRAVERS.

*A travers* (through, thorough, cross), comes immediately before its regimen, and *au travers* requires *de*: as *A travers le corps, or Au travers du corps*; Through the body: *Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis, or à travers les ennemis*; He made his way thro' the enemies: *à travers champs*; Cross the fields: *Regarder au travers d'une jalousie*; To look through a lattice window: *Parler à tort & à travers*; To talk at random.

In some occasions two prepositions come together before a noun, as in this instance, *Il peint d'après nature*; He draws by the life.

These six prepositions have the right of governing others before the noun; *de, pour, excepté, hors, jusque, par*.

*De* governs these eight; *entre, après, chez, avec, par, en, dessus, dessous*: as

*Plusieurs d'entre eux y allèrent*; Many of them went thither: *Je viens de chez vous*; I come from your house: *Je sors d'avec lui*; I have just left him: *La partie d'en haut*; The upper part: *De par le Roi* (style of proclamation, &c.)

*Pour* governs these five, *après, dans, devant, à, derrière*.

*Ce sera pour après le dîner*; It will be for after dinner.

*C'est pour dans quinze jours*; It is for a fortnight hence.

*Ce morceau-ci est destiné pour devant la porte, celui-là pour à côté, & l'autre pour derrière le lit*; This piece is designed for before the door, that for the side, and this other for behind the bed.

*Jusque* governs these six, *à (or au or aux), par, en, dans, sur, sous*: as

*Jusqu' au plancher*, as high, as far as the ceiling: *Jusques dans le lit*; Even in bed: *Jusques par delà la rivière*; Even beyond the river, &c.

*Par* governs these eight; *chez, à côté, dessus, dessous, devant, derrière, deçà, delà*: as *Passer par chez nous*; Call at our house: *Par dessus la tête*; Above one's head: *Par delà la mer*; Beyond the sea, &c.

Excepté

*Excepté* and *hors* govern these nineteen ; *chez, dans, sous, sur, devant, derrière, parmi, vers, avant, après, entre, depuis, avec, par, durant, pendant, à, de, and en*. Examples may be found every where.

Prepositions always come before the noun which they govern, never after, as they do sometimes in English : as *Avec qui, or à qui voulez-vous que je parle ?* Whom will you have me speak with, or to ? Except these three, *après, durant, près* : as

*Quelque temps après, or après quelque temps* ; Some time after. *Sa vie durant, or durant sa vie* ; During, or for his life.

*A son humeur près* ; Save his humour.

Thus it is not necessary for *après* and *durant* to come after the noun, but only for *près*. From a great many nouns, prepositions are formed, by putting before them some particle, especially *à, au, aux, en* : which compound prepositions are always attended by *de, du, des*, before the noun : as

*Au milieu de la compagnie* ; In the middle of the company.

*En présence de ses amis* ; In the presence of his friends.

*A l'insçu de son père* ; Unknown to his father.

*A raison de vingt pour cent* ; At the rate of twenty per cent.

These prepositions, *de, contre, sur, sous, sans*, which are seldom, if ever, repeated in English, must always be repeated in French before each noun governed : as

*Beaucoup d'amour pour le plaisir, & de haine pour le travail* ;

Much love for pleasure, and aversion for work,

*Je suis sans amis, sans protection, sans secours, & je meurs de faim* ;

I am friendless, without protection, without help, and starving.

These others must be also repeated when the following noun, or nouns, are not synonymous, or pretty near of the same signification, *à, par, pour, avec* : as

*Il est venu à bout de ses desseins par les ruses & par les armes de mes ennemis* ;

He has compassed his ends by the devices and arms of my enemies.

Devices and arms not signifying the same thing, *par* is repeated : but if there was *par l'assistance & les armes*, as *assistance* and *arms* signify pretty near the same, *par* should not be repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à aimer ou à haïr leurs semblables que, &c.*

Nothing induces men so much to love or hate their equals as, &c.

*To love and hate* are the two contraries, and therefore *à* is repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à louer & à imiter leurs semblables que, &c.*

Nothing induces men so much to commend and imitate their equals as, &c.

*To commend and to imitate* are not contraries indeed, but they are different, therefore *à* is repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à aimer & estimer leurs semblables que, &c.*

Nothing induces men so much to love and esteem their equals as, &c.

*To love and esteem are near the same signification, therefore à is not repeated.*

*On les envoya pour avitailler les vaisseaux, & pour sonder le port;*

They were sent to victual the ships, and sound the haven.

*To victual and sound are very different, therefore pour is repeated.*

*On les envoya au port pour radoubler les vaisseaux, & en construire de nouveaux;*

They were sent to harbour to refit the ships, and build new ones.

*To refit and build are pretty near alike, therefore pour is not repeated.*

### Further observations upon some English prepositions.

These particles, *again, back, away, up, down, in, out of, over, forth, &c.* oftentimes make part of the signification of the verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French: as, to keep back *retenir*, to take away *emporter*, to come up *monter*, to take up arms *prendre les armes*, to lay them down *les quitter*, *les mettre bas*, to pull off *arracher*, to go, or set forth, *partir*, &c.

*Aboard a ship*, is *à bord d'un vaisseau*: but to embark on board a ship, is *s'embarquer sur un vaisseau*, *monter sur un vaisseau*.

about answers to these different French prepositions:

<p><i>sur,</i> <i>touchant,</i> <i>vers,</i> <i>dans,</i> <i>par,</i></p>	}	<p>about the year's end; <i>sur la fin de l'année.</i> I come to you about that business; <i>Je viens vous voir touchant cette affaire.</i> about the latter end of the book; <i>vers la fin du livre.</i> What do they cry about the streets? <i>Qu'est-ce qu'en crie dans les rues?</i> He took him about the middle? <i>Il le prit par le milieu du corps.</i></p>
---	---	---

*against*, which signifies *contre* in its general sense, denotes also *Time*, and is rendered sometimes by *sur*: as *Against the end of the week*; *Sur la fin de la semaine*: Sometimes without any preposition at all; as *Your shoes will be made against after to-morrow*; *Vos souliers seront faits après demain*.—*against* is also a conjunction, several ways expressed in French: as *Against he comes*; *En attendant qu'il vienne*: Let all things be ready *against* we come; *Que tout soit prêt à notre retour*.

*both*, before two nouns copulated with *and*, is rendered in French, either by *et* before each noun, or by *tant* before the first noun, and *que* before the second, or is not expressed at all: *Both young and rich*; *Et jeune & riche*, *tant jeune que riche*: *Both by sea and land*; *Par mer & par terre*, *Tant par mer que par terre*: *Both at home and abroad*; *Au dedans & au dehors*, & *au dedans & au dehors*, *Tant au dedans qu'au dehors*.

*away*, another particle, so variously and elegantly used, cannot be rendered in French without a verb, which is also performed several ways, conformable to the genius of the language: as *Away with this*; *Otez tout ceci*: *Away with him to the University*; *Qu'on l'envoie à l'Université*: I cannot away with it; *Je ne saurais souffrir,*

ou

ou digéren cela : Away with these soppenies ; *Défaites-vous de ces sottises* : To eat a bit and away ; *Manger un morceau à la bâte, avant de partir* : To scold one away ; *Obliger quelqu'un de s'en aller à force de le gronder* : He shall not go away with it so ; *Il n'en sera pas quitte à si bon marché.*

CHAP. X.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

OF Conjunctions, some govern, that is, will have the next verb in the indicative mood, some in the subjunctive, and some in the infinitive.

1°. These following conjunctions govern the indicative :

<i>ainsi que,</i>	as.	<i>d'où vient que ?</i>	{ How comes it
<i>tout ainsi que,</i>	just as.		{ to pass ?
<i>de même que,</i>	even as.	<i>après que,</i>	after that, when.
<i>si,</i>	if.	<i>depuis que,</i>	{ since.
<i>si bien que,</i>	so that.	<i>puisque,</i>	
<i>de sorte que,</i>		<i>vû que,</i>	seeing, being that.
<i>de manière que,</i>	{ in such a man-	<i>attendu que,</i>	considering that.
<i>de façon que,</i>		<i>au lieu que,</i>	whereas.
<i>tellement que,</i>	so that.	<i>à mesure que,</i>	in proportion as.
<i>comme,</i>	as.	<i>tant que,</i>	as long as.
<i>en tant que,</i>		<i>autant que,</i>	as much as.
<i>à ce que,</i>	according to.	<i>oultre que,</i>	besides that.
<i>comme si,</i>	as if, as tho'.	<i>joint que,</i>	add to that.
<i>lorsque,</i>	when.	<i>selon que,</i>	{ as, according to.
<i>quand,</i>		<i>suivant que,</i>	
<i>pendant que,</i>	whilst.	<i>peut-être que,</i>	perhaps.
<i>tandis que,</i>		<i>d'autant que,</i>	{ whereas, foras-
<i>à cause que,</i>	because.		{ much as.
<i>parce que,</i>		<i>or est-il que,</i>	now is it that.
<i>à peine,</i>	scarce, hardly *.	<i>aussi long temps</i>	{ as long as.
<i>aussitôt que,</i>	as soon as.	<i>que,</i>	
<i>sitôt que,</i>		<i>bien entendu</i>	{ with a proviso
<i>dès que,</i>	why.	<i>que,</i>	
<i>pourquoi,</i>			that.

and the others not included in the next list.

\* *à peine* is followed by *que* in the second part of the sentence, and that *que* is Englished by *than*, or *but*.

2°. These

## 2°. These Conjunctions govern the subjunctive :

<i>afin que,</i>	} that, to the end that.	<i>à condition</i>	} upon condition
<i>pour que,</i>		<i>que *,</i>	
<i>avant que,</i>	before.	<i>excepté que,</i>	except that.
<i>sans que,</i>	without that.	<i>hormis que,</i>	} save that.
<i>bien que,</i>	tho',	<i>hors que,</i>	
<i>quoique,</i>	} although.	<i>sinon que,</i>	but that.
<i>encore que,</i>		<i>de peur que,</i>	for fear that.
<i>soit que,</i>	whether and or.	<i>de crainte que,</i>	lest.
<i>supposez que,</i>	suppose that.	<i>loin que †,</i>	far.
<i>supposons que,</i>	let us suppose that.	<i>bien loin que †,</i>	very far from.
<i>posez le cas que,</i>	put the case that.	<i>tant s'en faut que,</i>	} it is so far
<i>à la bonne heure que,</i>	{ I grant that, &c.	<i>bien loin que †,</i>	
<i>au cas que,</i>		} in case that, or if.	<i>tant s'en faut que,</i>
<i>en cas que,</i>	<i>bien loin que,</i>		
<i>non que,</i>	not that.	<i>Malgré que,</i>	for all that.
<i>non pas que,</i>	not but.	<i>nonobstant que,</i>	{ notwithstanding ing that.
<i>ce n'est pas que,</i>	it is not but that.	<i>Dieu veuille que,</i>	
<i>pourvu que,</i>	} so, if, provided	<i>Plaise, or Plût</i>	{ would to God.
<i>moyennant que,</i>		that.	
<i>à moins que,</i>	} unless.	<i>À Dieu ne</i>	{ God forbid.
<i>si ce n'est que,</i>		<i>plaise que,</i>	
<i>pour peu que,</i>	if, never so little.		

## 3°. These govern the infinitive :

<i>à and de,</i>	to.	<i>au lieu de,</i>	instead of.
<i>par,</i>	by.	<i>loin de,</i>	far from.
<i>pour,</i>	to, in order to.	<i>bien loin de,</i>	very far from.
<i>après,</i>	after.	<i>excepté de,</i>	except to.
<i>sans,</i>	without.	<i>avant de,</i>	} before.
<i>jusqu'à,</i>	to that degree, that till.	<i>avant que de,</i>	
<i>sauf à,</i>	save.	<i>à moins de,</i>	} unless.
<i>faute de,</i>	for want of.	<i>à moins que de,</i>	
<i>afin de,</i>	in order to.	<i>plutôt que</i>	{ rather than to; and all conjunctions ending in <i>de</i> .
<i>de peur de,</i>	} for fear of.	<i>de,</i>	
<i>de crainte de,</i>			

\* *à condition que,* is also construed with the future and conditional.

† These three are used in compound sentences, and require *que* before the second part of the sentence : but *Il s'en faut bien que* is used in simple sentences.

## 4°. The

4°. The French use the conjunction *que* in the second part of a compound sentence, instead of repeating the following conjunctions, expressed in the first.

*si* if. *pourquoi*, why. *parce que*, because.  
*quand*, } *comme*, as. *quoique*, although.  
*lorsque*, } when. *peut-être*, perhaps. *afin que*, that ; and  
 others composed of *que*. Which particle always governs the subjunctive, when it stands for *si*, *quoique*, and *afin que* ; and therefore causes the verb, governed in the indicative in the first part of the sentence, to be changed into the subjunctive in the second part ; but the verb continues in the same mood, when *que* stands for *quand*, *lorsque*, *comme*, &c. as

*Si vous m'aimez, & que vous vouliez me le persuader*, for *& si vous voulez me le persuader* ; If you love me, and want to persuade me of it.

*Afin que vous en soyez sûr, & que vous ne croyiez pas qu'on vous trompe* ; That you may be sure of it, and don't think that one cheats you.

*La raison pourquoi il ne pouvoit venir alors, & que les autres ne se soucioient guères de l'attendre, &c.* The reason why he could not come at that time, and the others did not care to wait for him.

*Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais qu'il ne veut pas l'avouer, de peur, &c.* Perhaps he loves her, but is unwilling to own it, lest, &c.

*afin*, may be attended in the same sentence, both by *que* and *de*, governing each its respective mood, viz. *que* the subjunctive, and *de* the infinitive : as

*Afin de vous convaincre, & que vous n'en doutiez plus ;*

In order to convince you, and that you doubt no more of it.

5°. *When*, is both *lorsque*, and *quand*, indifferently used for one another, except that *quand* denotes time in a more positive and determinate manner, and *lorsque* denotes occasion ; as

*Ne manquez pas de venir, quand je vous appellerai ;*

Be sure to come, when I shall call for you.

*On ne fait jamais tant de folies, que quand on aime ;* We never commit so many extravagancies, as *when* we are in love.

*On se fait aimer lorsqu'on aime ;* It is *by* loving we make ourselves be beloved.

*Les chanoines vont à l'office, quand la cloche sonne ;* Canons go to divine service, *when* the bell rings.

*et lorsqu'ils assistent à l'office, ils font leur devoir ;* And *when* they assist, or, *by* assisting in the service, they do their duty.

When a question is asked, we always do it with *quand*, and never *lorsque*: as *Quand viendrez vous?* When will you come?

*Quand*, being construed with the conditional, has the signification of *tho'* or *although*, and *même*, or *bien même*, is sometimes added to *quand*, to give more weight to what one says; as

*Quand il y consentiroit, or Quand même, Quand bien même il y consentiroit, cela ne pourroit pas se faire*; Although he would consent to it, that could not be done.

Sometimes also *tho'* may be left out in French (the French prepositions *quand* or *quand même* may be suppressed in the sentence), and the pronoun expressing the subject of the verb, comes after the verb, which is made by the subjunctive; as

*Fût-elle riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point*;

*Tho' she were worth several millions, I would not have her.*

6°. *si*, is never construed with the conditional as in English. Therefore that tense with *if* is made by the imperfect in French: as, *If he should come, S'il venoit.*

*si* after *et*, signifies *yet*, or *altho'*: as

*Il travaille toujours, & si il meurt de faim*;

*He is always at work, and yet is starving.*

But this is of the low style.

7°. *d'où vient que* (conjunction interrogative) requires immediately after it the pronoun, or noun, that expresses the subject of the verb of the question: whereas with the other conjunctions interrogative, it comes after the verb: as

*D'où vient que vous ne voulez pas faire cela?* or

*Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas faire cela?* Why won't you do that?

8°. *Pourtant*, *cependant*, and *toutefois* (yet, however); *toutefois* begins to be obsolete. — *pourtant* always comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the particle, if the tense is compound, and assures more positively, than *cependant*. — *cependant* may indifferently begin the sentence, or come after the verb; and they both make a contrast with these two other conjunctions *quoique* and *bien que*: as

*Quoiqu'il ait tant étudié, il ne sait pourtant pas cela* (or) *cependant il ne sait pas cela*, *Altho' he has learnt so much, yet he don't know that.*

9°. *donc*, *c'est pourquoi* (therefore, then), *c'est pourquoi* always begins the sentence, and *donc* never does, but always comes the second, or third word; except however when the case is to draw a consequence of premises: as

*C'est pourquoi vous m'obligerez de faire cela, or*  
*Vous m'obligerez donc de faire cela;*  
 Therefore you will oblige (that is compel) me to do that.  
*Il rougit; donc il est coupable;*  
 He blushes; therefore he is guilty.

*Encore*, being an adverb, signifies *again, yet, still*; being a conjunction copulative, it signifies *even, also*; and *else* and *besides* in such expressions as these: *Qui encore*, Who else? *Quoi encore*, What else, what besides? But *encore* is besides a conjunction adverbative, especially when *et si* comes before it, which signifies, and is englished by *besides* and *nevertheless*: as

*Il est extrêmement riche, encore n'est il pas content (or), & si encore il se plaint;*

He is extremely rich, yet he is not contented, or nevertheless he complains.

*Encore* has a sense of restriction, in some ways of speaking rendered into English thus:

*Encore s'il ne faisoit pas l'entendu, on lui passeroit son ignorance;*

Should he not pretend to great matters, one would not mind his ignorance.

*Encore s'il savoit quelque chose, mais il ne fait rien du tout;*

If he knew something, well and good: but he knows nothing at all.

*Au moins, du moins, and pour le moins*, are three conjunctions of restriction, signifying *at least*, but which must not be confounded: *au moins* being used to say something to one by way of advice, as also to clear one's self of something, and englished thus.

*Si vous ne voulez pas prendre son parti, du moins ne vous déclarez pas contre lui;*

If you won't take his part, at least do not declare against him.

*Prenez garde au moins à vous retirer de bonne heure;*

Take care to come home betimes, I must desire you, or, Be sure to keep good hours, I beg of you.

*Au moins ce n'est pas moi qui en suis cause;*

I am not the cause of it, however, or, I can tell you.

Sometimes also *tout* is put before these conjunctions, and *tout au moins, tout du moins*, denote still a greater restriction of what one says.

This particle conjunctive *tout* is likewise sometimes put before these comparative terms, *comme, de même que*; as *aussi bien que* as, well as *autant que* as much as, and *aussi peu que* as little as: which may be properly englished by *just* or *full*: as

*Vous faites tout comme il vous plaît;* You do just as you please.

*Je vis tout aussi bien en Angleterre qu'en France;*

I live full as well in England as in France.

From the abuse oftentimes made of the conjunction transitive *à propos*, very much used in conversation, is come this proverbial phrase, *À propos de bottes, comment se porte Mr. votre père?* (word for word) Now we are speaking of boots, how does your father do? The meaning of which is, *Now we don't speak, or think of your father, How does he do?*

10°. These conjunctions *either* and *or*, used in the same sentence before nouns, and verbs, are rendered into French, *either* by *soit*, before the first noun, or verb, and *or* by *ou*, before the other, or others: or by *soit*, before each noun, or verb; which last way is more emphatical: as [him.

*Either* through gratitude, or clemency, or policy, he pardoned

*Soit par reconnaissance, ou par clémence, ou par politique, il lui pardonna, or Soit par reconnaissance, soit par clémence, soit par politique, il lui pardonna.*

When

When the same conjunctions disjunctive serve to distinguish two things, or two parts of a sentence, they are also rendered into French, by *soit* repeated, or by *ou*, likewise repeated; or by *soit* before the first noun, and *ou* before the second: as

An exercise *either* of the body, *or* the mind,

*Un exercice soit du corps soit de l'esprit, or*

*Un exercice soit du corps ou de l'esprit.*

*Either* he is a wise man, *or* a fool; *Ou il est sage, ou il est fou.*

11°. These conjunctions, *whether*, and *or*, are rendered into French, either by *soit que* repeated, or by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence, and *ou que* before the other: as

*Whether* you have done that *or* no.

*Soit que vous ayez fait cela, soit que vous ne l'ayez pas fait: or*  
*Soit que vous ayez fait cela, ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait: or only*  
*Soit que vous ayez fait cela ou non; but soit que repeated, is much better.*

12°. *or else* is rendered into French by *ou bien*, or *ou* only, or *sinon*: as

The case is so, *or else* I should have been deceived;

*La chose est ainsi, ou bien, (or) ou l'on m'auroit trompé.*

Moreover, observe that some words answer to divers parts of speech together, according to the grammatical use which they are put to: as *après*, which is an adverb in the first following example, a preposition in the second, and a conjunction in the third.

*Il parla après;*

He spoke afterwards.

*Il parla après moi;*

He spoke after me.

*Après qu'il eut parlé;*

After he had spoken.

# A P P E N D I X.

---

## SECTION I.

### *The* ANALOGY *of* SPEECH;

*Or, the Grounds and Principles of the Art of  
Speaking continued.*

**W**E have seen in the Introduction to this work, that the words which speech is composed of, and the letters which compose those words, are signs, invented by men, to represent their thoughts. Now these signs have been found out in a quite natural manner. For as the mouth is the organ that forms them, it has been observed, that some sounds are formed with a larger, some with a less degree of opening the mouth, others through the throat, and others through the nose. And likewise according to the differences observed in the forming of the articulations, that is, as the breath emitted from the lungs is, in its way through the throat and mouth, more or less forcibly compressed by the palate, the lips, or the teeth, or any where intercepted, the consonants have been distinguished into Labial, Hissing, Palatal, Guttural, Liquid, and Aspirative.

Our acute sounds were called by the Ancients *narrow* or *close* vowels; and they called *broad* and *open* vowels our grave sounds; they had neither guttural nor nasal vowels. They called *mute* our weak consonants: but our distinction of them into weak and strong has a better foundation in nature.

And indeed B, and P, have so great an affinity the one to the other, that some nations often pronounce one for the other. The Germans pronounce *ponum finum* for *bonum vinum*. The Latins, as Quintilian reports, pronounced the *b* in *obtinere* exactly like *p*: The French do it too in *obtenir*, and perhaps the English in *obtain*.

A a

There

There are many English and Dutch words that differ only in one of these two letters F and V. *Father*, for example, being pronounced *Vatber* : and the German Swisses pronounce French V's like F's, and B's like P's, and D's like T's, saying *Foulez-vous foir une pelle tame*, instead of *Voulez-vous voir une belle dame* ? Will you see a fine lady ? *Foulez-vous poire tu fin* ? or in English, *Fuill you trink some swine* ? instead of *Voulez-vous boire du vin* ?

The relation there is between C, Q, and K, is so obvious, that there is perhaps no language, but these three letters have the same power and articulation before *a, o, u*.

It is the same with G and J before some vowels, as in *George*, that might as well be spelt *Jorje*. Moreover G is only a lessening or decreasing of C, as D is of T : nay *d* final is articulated in French with all the power and force of *t*, when the next word begins with a vowel, as *gran tami* for *grand ami*, great friend.

The Ancients called L, M, N, R liquid, or flowing, as consonants of a very agreeable and easy articulation ; tho' strictly speaking, L alone deserves that appellation. The Romans found the articulation of M so swelling in the ear, and so disagreeable, that, most times, they did not pronounce it, even in prose, saying *die' hanc* for *diam* ; *restitutu'iri*, for *restitutum* (in their law), which made Quintilian call it *mugientem literam*. For the same reason the Greeks never used it in the end of words. The same, after the Chaldeans, often changed *y* into *λ*, saying *πνευμων* for *πνεύμων*, from whence *pulmo* is derived : and *Μαλλιος* for *Manlius*, &c. — As to R, we daily see many people who cannot pronounce it.

Again. L and R, Z and J, or G, are so near a kin to one another, that those who cannot pronounce R, on account of its roaring articulation, naturally fall into the pronunciation of L ; as likewise those who cannot pronounce J, or G, before a vowel, express of course the articulation of Z, saying *King Zorze* and *the Loyal Family*, for *King George* and *the Royal Family*.

S had no other articulation in Latin but its hissing one ; but in our modern languages it takes the articulation of z, when it comes between two vowels ; as in the French word *misère*, from the Latins, which they pronounce *misse'ia*.

H serves only to denote aspiration. The Oriental languages had three or four guttural letters, serving to that purpose only. The Romans have only preserved that letter, with which they supplied in their language, what the Greeks used to denote by their *esprits rudes*, and aspirate consonants. It keeps still something

thing of that use in many English words spelt with *th*, which answers the  $\theta$  of the Greeks. Besides, it does not always denote aspiration in our modern languages, but most times serves only to show the Etymology of words.

The Ancients called X and Z double, because they were, the first, as much as *cs*, and *gs*, and the other as *ds*. The Greeks had besides their  $\Psi$ , which was as much as *ps*.

X keeps still the same power and articulation with us. Z has got another more simple and less harsh. But the English have some other double consonants, especially G and J, which are as much as *dg* or *dj*, and *c* before *h*, followed by a vowel, which is as much as *tch*, as in the word *chin*, which is pronounced *tshin*.

It is still a great difficulty to resolve, among Grammarians, whether the Latins had our J and V, and therefore whether or not they had Triphthongs in their language (that is, the meeting of three vowels in one syllable, each expressed by its peculiar and usual sound). One may see what learned Grammarians have written thereupon. It is to be observed here, that although the English give the name of vowels to the five or six first figures, yet when they pronounce I, U, and Y, by themselves, they express the natural and peculiar sound of Diphthongs, expressing in the sound of U by itself, the very same that is heard in pronouncing the pronoun *you*; and in the sound of Y, the very same that's heard in *why*.

However it be, as to the invention of those sounds and articulations, and of the figures that represent them, as also the different distinctions Grammarians have made of them, it is certain, that in every language reason has been left unregarded, which prescribed, in the first place, to make as many vowels as the mouth can naturally form simple sounds, and mark them with so many simple figures or letters. Thus although five vowels only are usually reckoned, yet the Greeks have seven or eight, marked with so many simple figures. And since they thought the difference in pronouncing one and the same sound, as *e* and *o*, sufficient to make two several and distinct sounds of each of these two vowels, according as it is formed with a larger or less degree of opening the mouth, and have likewise marked them with very different figures,  $\epsilon$ ,  $\eta$ ,  $\circ$ ,  $\omega$ ; had they done the same thing with respect to the other vowels, and considered the difference that may be found in each of them, according to the various opening of the mouth, and as the breath, which forms them, is affected in its passage by

the several parts of that organ, they should have discovered at least sixteen or seventeen, all which are found in the French language; *a, â, é* or *ai, è* or *ait, ê* or *ais, e* or *eu, i, o, ô* or *aux, u, an, en, in, on, un, eux, ou*: all sounds as simple as *a, e, i, o, u*, and which could have been represented by simple figures thus:

*a, â, e, é, è, ê, i, o, ω, z, ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, s.*

Again: It is certain, that it would have been more natural, and more convenient for the mutual correspondence of nations, to have marked with simple figures the articulations which we mark with two figures, tho' we only intend to express and represent a consonant. Such are the articulations of *gn* and *ill* before vowels, which could have been marked, the first called *n liquid*, with *ν*; and the second called *l liquid* with *λ*. Such is also the articulation of *ch*, or the English *sh*, marked in Hebrew with the simple letter *ש* (*schin*). So that the French language should have had about forty figures or letters, instead of its five-and-twenty, to mark its sounds and articulations in the most natural manner, as appears by the tables prefixed to the treatise of the Pronunciation: without taking notice here of other figures, that might have been invented for the perfection of writing, as the Greeks did their *Ξ* or *ξ, Ψ, ς, and ϣ*, which are only abbreviations for *cs, ds, β, and βk*, of which we have preserved only *X*.

Another thing, that reason prescribed in the invention of figures or letters, is, that one and the same sound should not be marked with more figures than one, or with different figures; as the sound of *ea* in *read*, which is marked with *ee* in *feed*; or *ea* in *bread*, denoted by *e* in *bred*, and *bed*, &c. nor that the same figures should have marked different sounds, as *ea*, that denotes in *earth* the sound of French *a*, in *bread* that of French *e*, in *meat* that of French *i*, &c.

For the like reason, one and the same articulation should not have been marked with these three different figures, *C, K, Q*: nor should *C* have taken the power of *s* before *e* and *i*; nor *g* before the same vowels, have been pronounced otherwise than before *a, o, u*; nor *t* have been articulated like *s* before *i*, followed by another vowel.

Lastly, Reason required that every figure should mark some sound or articulation, that is, that no letter should be set down in any word, but what is pronounced. For although the superfluous letters in words often denote their Etymology, modern languages being all derived from the ancient ones; as *p* in the French

word *champs* denotes its being derived from the Latin *campus*, and *t* in *chants* from *captus*; yet it seems that the inconvenience would have been less, to pronounce these words *champs* and *chants*, conformable to the whole import and force of the letters, even without excepting the characteristic letter of the plural number, than to mark with these so many different figures (*amps* and *ants*) the simple sound of *a* (nasal), or *an*.

Upon the whole, there are abuses common to all languages, and there is no possibility of remedying them, since the Emperor *Claudius* could not get one new letter only introduced into the Roman language. (It was the Digamma of the *Æolians*, very likely to serve as a *V*.) But there is no nation that has less reason to complain that the French write otherwise than they pronounce, than the English; there being perhaps no language in the world, wherein the sounds are marked with more different letters, and the same letters mark more various sounds, than in the English Tongue, which besides wants the foundations essential to all languages, I mean a Grammar, to promote the learning of it, and make it easy to Foreigners.

From these observations upon letters it follows,

1<sup>st</sup>, That in all languages there are more simple sounds or vowels, than are used to be marked with simple figures, or letters.

2<sup>dly</sup>, That of these three compound sounds, *C*, *K*, *Q*, two of them are useless, they all three expressing but one and the same articulation: as likewise the power and use of *G*, before *e* and *i*, in some languages, which marks no other articulation but that of *J*, and therefore might have kept before these two vowels the same power and use that it has in all languages before *a*, *o*, *u*.

3<sup>dly</sup>, That those three consonants might, nay should, have been supplied by three or more others, essential in some languages, to mark the liquid articulations denoted by *gn*, and *ill*, as also the articulations of *ch*, *sh*, &c.

4<sup>thly</sup>, That the Hebrews and Greeks, from whom the Latins took their Letters, always began with a consonant to name the letters of that appellation, calling, the Greeks their *B Beta*, and the Hebrews, their *ב Beth*, &c. But that the Latins, from whom our modern languages have taken their consonants, with their appellations, most arbitrarily, and injudiciously too, changed that natural order, calling *el*, *em*, *en*, &c. the  $\lambda$  *Lambda*,  $\mu$  *Mu*,  $\nu$  *Nu*, of the Greeks, and the  $\aleph$  *Lamed*,  $\mem$  *Mem*,  $\nun$  *Nun* of the Hebrews. They had indeed some reason to shorten the appellation of conso-

nants, calling only *bee* and *ell* what the others called *beta*, *lambda*, &c. But it was contrary to all reason they began the appellation of some of them with the vowel *e*: although they, at the same time, abstained, either through caprice or reason, to put *e* before some others, and rather chose to say *bee*, *cee*, *dee*, than *eb*, *ec*, *ed*, as they said *el*, *em*, *en*, &c.

5thly, That double letters, tho' ever so useful for the perfection of writing, yet are not necessary in the language; they expressing and denoting no peculiar articulation, but what may be, and is, in effect, denoted by other letters: and therefore we could as well be without *x*, as without *ψ*, *ς*, and *ϕ*, instead of which we use the two letters *ps*, *st*, *sc*. So that even omitting *K*, *Q*, and *G*, which we have seen to be useless in speech, having no other power than *C* and *J*; and reducing therefore the letters of the foregoing tables to the number of twenty-one, or even twenty (for *H* is no letter, and denotes only aspiration); these twenty letters not only serve as much as the forty, which I have said the French language should have had, if regard had been had to reason in the invention of sounds and figures; but also they are sufficient for all languages that ever were, or ever can be, to distinguish every modification of the voice, and by their various combinations to form that infinite number of words, which represent our thoughts.

“There are indeed butt twenty-six in our tongue (says the author of an English Grammar), and yet they may be so variously disposed as to make more than five hundred and seventy-six several words of two letters, and twenty-six times as many words may be formed of three letters; that is to say, fifteen thousand and six; and twenty-six times as many more may be made of four several letters, that is, nine hundred thousand thirty-six; and so on in proportion. From this manifold generation of words, from the various combinations of letters, we may judge of their vast variety, as being indeed not much less than infinite.” *Eng. Gram. N. 2. p. 61.*

These characters, or letters, were called in Greek *γραμματα*, from whence the word *Grammar* is derived: not that Grammar treats of sounds and letters only, but because they are the foundation and basis of speech. And the set of letters, used in any language, is called *Alphabet*, from the two first Greek letters *Αλφα*, *Βητα*.

A syllable, which we have said to be part of words; either spoken or written, is derived from the Greek word *συλλαβη*, which is, *Comprehension*, to wit, of letters in one sound, though a vowel

vowel only can make a syllable. Thus much for sounds and letters.

The several species of words which speech is composed of, is also a natural consequence of what passes in our mind: and the order in which they have been invented, for representing our thoughts, has necessarily its ground in the nature of things.

The first thing men did, was to give names to the various beings of the universe, in the middle of which they lived, and of which they wanted to speak. Considering therefore every being as a thing subsisting, as well as themselves, in nature, they called *Nouns* and *Substantives* the words of this species.

As they found it disagreeable to repeat the same name, when they wanted to speak of its subject several times together; in order to remedy that inconvenience, they invented a species of words, whose part is to denote what other words are to name. They have been well named *Pronouns*, as if one said, which is used instead of nouns. And this proves evidently, that these words commonly ranged among pronouns, *mon, ma, mes, my; ton, ta, tes, thy; son, sa, ses, his; notre, nos, our; votre, vos, your; le mien, mine, &c. quelque* some, *quel* what, *chaque* every, &c. don't belong to this species of words, being only adnouns qualifying and restraining, instead of articles, the sense of the nouns before which they come.

As men cannot speak of things but in saying what they are, or do, or what happens to them, that is, in giving them qualities, or showing their action by events, it was necessary to establish words for these two ends. Those used to denote the Qualities are called *Adnouns*, or *Adjectives*, because they are added and joined to the nouns, or substantives, to qualify the things named by them. Such is the third species of words.

The words designed to denote the actions and events, caused by the perpetual motion of all the parts of the universe, make the fourth species called *Verbs*; which signifies *speech* in an eminent sense, because there can be no speech without verbs.

In considering the Qualifications and Actions, it appeared that they were susceptible of different modifications. From thence arose the *Adverbs*, which are only modifications of actions and qualifications, and signify what is added to the verb.

The number of the same objects, or the repeating of the same actions, caused of course the invention of another species of words, proper to denote *Calculation* or *Reckoning*: and these are the *Numerals*, or nouns of number, which cannot be ranged in any

other class, being as different from the other words by their accidents, as by the origin and cause of their institution.

Afterwards men saw that they wanted words proper to denote the relations that are put between things, in order to fix the idea of the one by that of the other. For which purpose they invented the *Prepositions*, which (as their signification is) being put before a noun, denote the relation which it has with the noun or verb that comes before.

They likewise perceived that, things being often connected together, it was necessary to express those connexions, in order to make a coherent and well-connected speech; which occasioned the species of words called *Conjunctions*, whose name shews plain enough the part which they act in speech.

*Lastly*, After providing for the words fit to express the name, denotation, qualification, action, modification, calculation, as likewise the relations and connections of things, they wanted moreover to express the passions and emotions of their mind; and to that end they invented *Particles*, which are more or less in number, according to the genius of languages.

Thus the Art of Speech turns upon nine species of words, vulgarly called by Grammarians *Parts of Speech*. Some add to them the Article; but I think it is only an accident in the noun, its power being to extend or restrain the signification of it: nouns being as often used without the article as with it; and therefore I have ranged the article among the particles. Others make a particular species of words of the Participle, which is nothing but a mode of the verb, and won't allow the adjectives to be one, but confound them with the substantives, tho' essentially different: so that Grammarians are not agreed as yet concerning the number of the parts of speech, nor what they are.

I have kept in my Grammar to the number and divisions of the parts of speech which seem to be more natural; tho', upon the whole, it is very indifferent how many I admit, and how I divide them, so I thoroughly explain the proper use and construction of the words of the French language: which I think I have done in the most accurate and intelligible manner, in the third part of this Grammar. The narrow compass of this work does not permit me to enlarge more upon the relations that the parts of speech have to each other, and to the nature of things; nor to treat of the subdivisions of the same parts of speech, and the reasons of them. (One may consult thereupon the learned Authors of *la Grammaire raisonnée*, *Port-Royal's Latin Grammar*, and the Notes upon the English Grammar, which contains an abridgement

ment of the said works.) I shall only set down here the chief divisions, with the significations of such Grammatical Terms as most occur, and which one must not be quite ignorant of.

Words are considered both with respect to their Figure or Frame, and with respect to their Species or Origin.

Words, considered with respect to their figure, are either Simple, as *juste* just, *dire* to say: or Compound, that is, made up of one or more words, or that take some syllabical adjection; as *injuste* unjust, *redire* to say again.

Words considered with respect to their species, are either Primitive, which come from no other word, as *mort* death, *babil* prattling; or Derivative, which come from another word, as *mortel* mortal, *babiller* to prattle.

Nouns are divided into Substantive and Adjective by most Grammarians. Nouns substantive are again divided into Proper and Appellative, or Common: and this last into Abstract, Patrial, Equivocal, Synonyma's, Verbal, Augmentative and Diminutive.

A Proper noun is the particular name of any singular person or thing, or place: as *George*, *Londres* London, *la Tamise* the Thames.

An Appellative or Common noun, is that which is applicable to all things of the same kind: as *Animal*, *homme* a man, *Roi* a King, *ville* a city, *rivière* a river.

Men have besides joined two accessory Ideas to that of the noun. The one is a respect to the sex, called *Gender*; the other a respect to unity, or plurality, which is called *Number*; and both together are called *Accidence*.

An Abstract noun is a substantive derived from an adjective, expressing the quality of that adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the quality is: as *bonté* goodness, from *bon* good; *douceur* sweetness, from *doux* sweet.

A Patrial or Gentile noun is derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's country: as *François*, a Frenchman, *Parisien*, of Paris, *Bourguignon*, *Gascon*, &c. of Burgundy, Gascon, &c.

An Equivocal noun is that which has a double meaning; as *un livre* a book, *une livre* a pound.

Synonyma's are words of the same import, or which express the same thing several ways; as *chemin* way, *route* road, &c.

Verbal nouns are substantives or adjectives derived from a verb; as *amour* love, *aimable* lovely, from *aimer* to love; *parleur* talker, from *parler* to talk, &c.

Augmentative and Diminutive nouns are substantives importing an increase or lessening of the signification of their primitive: as *lourdant* a loggerhead, from *lourd* heavy; *fillette* a little girl, from *fille* a girl; *arbrisseau* a shrub, from *arbre* a tree; *lapereau* a young rabbit, from *lapin* a rabbit, &c. — Some diminutives have no resemblance at all to the substantives of which they lessen the signification: as *bidet* a poney, being the diminutive of *cheval* a horse; *marcassin* a young wild-boar, of *sanglier* a wild boar.

§ II. Observations on the Construction, Use, and Signification of certain Words, which most frequently occur in Speech, wherein chiefly consists the

### IDIOM OF FRENCH.

Grammar should, if it were possible, treat of all the words of a language, and take notice of the signification of each singly; for it is not the art of making one's self understood and how, but of exhibiting one's thoughts with propriety and perspicuity: which cannot be done without a thorough knowledge of all the various significations, and constructions of the words of which it is composed. The Genius of a language consists in the latter, the other relates to its Idiom. Grammar hardly treats of the significations of words. It suffices for it to consider such constructions wherein the Genius of the language consists, and leaves it to Dictionaries to treat of the words and Idioms. I shall nevertheless consider here orderly the common Idiom of the French with respect to English; and have reserved for a particular book such idioms as cannot be treated of methodically.

I. AMITIÉ (*friendship*) is often used in the singular for *favour*, *kindness*; as

*Faites-moi cette amitié*; Do me that kindness, or favour.

*Amitiés* (in the plural) is said of *caresses*, and *making much of*: as *Il m'a fait mille amitiés*; He made very much of me.

II. AMOÛRS (in the plural) is feminine, except when it signifies *Cupids*: as *Il n'est point de laides amours*; Never seemed a mistress foul. *Il y autour d'elle mille petits amours*; A thousand Cupids stand round her.

III. AN, ANNÉE (a year) are not used promiscuously; *an* is used,

1°. After nouns of the cardinal number: as *J'ai trente ans*; I am thirty years old. *C'est une fille de quinze ans*; She is a girl of fifteen. *Il y a vingt-cinq ans passés*; It was five and twenty years ago.

2°. Before nouns of the ordinal number: as *L'an quinzième de l'empire*, the fifteenth year of the empire: *L'an mil sept cent quarante-neuf*, the year one thousand seven hundred and forty-nine, (wherein the cardinal number is used for the ordinal.) We say *le jour de l'an*; New year's day: *le premier jour de l'an*; the first day of the year.

*Année* is used, 1°. After nouns of the ordinal number: as *Elle est dans sa vingtième année*, or *Elle a vingt ans*; She is in her twentieth year, or she is twenty.

2°. After the article: as *l'année passée* or *dernière*; last year: *l'année qui vient* or *l'année prochaine*; next year: altho' we say *l'an de grâce*; the year of grace: *l'an du monde* or *de notre Seigneur*; the year of the world, or of our Lord.

3°. With an epithet, or adnoun, signifying any thing but measure of time: as *Une bonne & heureuse année*; a happy new year: *Nos belles années passent bien vite*; Our prime goes away very quick, or is soon over.

4°. We almost always use *année* before and after nouns: as *Un grand nombre d'années*; a great number of years: *Il reste encore trois mois de l'année*; We have three months yet to come of this year.

IV. ACCOUTUMER (to use), and S'ACCOUTUMER (to use or accustom one's self), ETRE ACCOUTUMÉ (to be used), require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: and AVOIR COUTUME, AVOIR ACCOUTUMÉ (this last begins to be obsolete) require *de*: as

*Il l'accoutume à le suivre*; He uses him to follow him.

*Il s'accoutume à lire*; He uses himself to read.

*Je suis accoutumé à souffrir*; I am used to bear,

*J'ai coutume de perdre*; I use to lose.

V. AGIR (to act), preceded by the particle *en*, and followed by an adverb, signifies *to do by*, *to deal with*, or *use one*: as *En agir bien avec*, or *envers quelqu'un*, or *à son égard*; To do well by one, to deal well with him. *Il en agit mal envers elle* or *à son égard*; He uses her ill.

And when *agir* is used impersonally with the reflected pronoun (*il s'agit*, *il s'agissoit*) it is englished as follows:

*De quoi s'agit-il?* What is the matter? *Il s'agit de faire cela*; This is the business in question. *Il ne s'agissoit pas de cela*; That

was not the business in hand. *Il ne s'agit pas de peu de choses*; It is not a trifling concern.

VI. AIDER (*to help*) governs both the first and third state, as *Aidez-le à faire cela*; Help him to do that. *Aidez-lui à porter sa charge*; Help him to carry his burthen. It governs the third state, when it signifies more properly, *to share and divide the trouble with one*.

VII. AIMER is *to love*: but AIMER MIEUX denotes commonly the choice which one makes of one thing before another, and is expressed by *to have rather, to chuse rather, &c.* as *J'aime mieux celui-ci que l'autre*; I like this better than the other: *J'aime mieux rester au logis que d'aller promener*; I rather chuse to stay at home than go a walking.

VIII. The Present and Imperfect of ALLER (*to go*), coming before an infinitive without a preposition, denote a thing which one is, or was about to do, or which is, or was about to fall out, and is rendered with *to be going, to be ready, to be about, or upon the point*, and sometimes with a future only: as

*Je vais étudier*; I am going to study. *Elle alloit chanter*; She was going to sing. *Je vais, or Je m'en vais partir tout à l'heure*; I'll set out presently. Nay, these two tenses are even construed with the verb *aller* in that sense: as

*Je vais m'en aller*; I am going away. *Il alloit y aller*; He was going thither. *Nous allions aller chez vous*; We were upon the point of going to your house.

IX. The Present and Imperfect of VENIR (*to come*), coming before an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes a thing *just now done*, which is most times too expressed with these two particles: as *Je viens de dîner*; I have just dined. *Elle venoit de lui écrire quand, &c.*; She had just written to him when—*Le Roi vient de le nommer à cet Evêché*; The King has lately named him to that Bishoprick.

*Venir*, before the infinitive with *à*, denotes, and is englished by, *setting, or going about something, or to begin*: as *Quand il vint à danser*; When he began to dance.—*Se mettre à*, is another verb of the same signification: as *Pour peu que vous lui parliez, elle se met à pleurer*; If you speak to her ever so little, she falls a crying.

Again, *Aller*, as well as *venir*, sometimes serves only to denote the possibility there is for the action of the verb following to happen, and is englished sometimes by *to happen, to chance*, and sometimes

times by a Conditional tense only: as *Il seroit perdu si sa femme venoit à savoir cela*; He would be undone if his wife should happen to know that. *Voyez où j'en serois si elle alloit croire cela*; Mind what case I should be in, if she should chance to believe that.

*Aller*, is also said, as well as *faire*, of things that fit, or do not fit one well: as *Cet habit vous va bien*; This coat fits you well. *Cette grande perruque ne lui va, or ne lui fait, pas bien du tout*; That great wig does not fit him well at all.

*Aller*, *venir*, and *revenir*, are said of ships bound from one place to another: as *Ce vaisseau vient de la Havanne & va à Cadix*. That ship is bound from the Havannah to Cadiz. *Nous allions à la Chine*; We were sailing to China. *Un vaisseau qui revient de l'Amérique*; A ship homeward bound from the West-Indies.

*Aller*, used impersonally with the particle *y* before, and a noun in the second state after it, is englished thus, *Il y va de l'honneur*; Honour is at stake. *Il y alloit de la vie*; Life was concerned in it, or life was at stake.

X. APPAROITRE and PAROITRE (*to appear*). The first is said only of spirits and ghosts: as *Un ange lui apparut*; An Angel appeared to him. *Les spectres n'apparoissent que dans la nuit*; Ghosts, or spirits, appear only in the night-time. The other is said of whatever falls under the eyes; as *Le soleil paroît*; The sun appears, or shows itself. *Il paroît une Comète*; A Comet appears.

XI. AVOIR (*to have*) is used instead of *être*, when we speak of being old, hungry, thirsty, cold and hot (relating to the weather, as it affects men); as *Il a six ans*; He is six years old. *J'ai faim*; I am hungry. *Je n'ai pas soif*; I am not thirsty. *Elle a chaud*; She is warm.

Observe that *chaud* and *froid* are indeclinable in these sentences; these words being then used adverbially: Therefore let not a woman say *J'ai chaude*, and still less *Je suis chaude*.

But with respect to being hot and cold, the English Pronouns possessive, construed with the nouns of the parts said to be hot, or cold, are made moreover by the pronoun personal, expressing the subject before *avoir*, in French, and the noun of the part is put in the 3d state; as *J'ai froid aux pieds*; My feet are cold. *Il a chaud aux mains*; His hand are warm.

It is the same when we speak of any pain, wound, or sore, which we have got in any part of the body. We use *avoir* without a pronoun

pronoun possessive before the noun of the sick or wounded part, which is always put in the third state, and the words *pain* and *sore* are rendered by *mal*: as *J'ai mal à la tête*; I have a pain in my head. *Il a mal aux yeux*; He has sore eyes.

AVOIR BEAU, used to denote that one does a thing in vain, is englished several ways, as follows:

*J'ai beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas*; I may stay long enough for him, he will not come. *Il a beau faire, il n'en viendra jamais à bout*; Let him do what he will, or what he can, or for all that he may do, he will never bring it about. *Vous avez beau lui donner des avis, elle ne veut suivre que sa tête*; It signifies nothing to advise her ever so much, or ever so well, she will follow her own head nevertheless. *Vous avez beau faire & beau dire, il n'en sera ni plus ni moins*; You may do and say what you please, or whatsoever you may do and say, or for all you may do and say, it will be so nevertheless. *Il aura beau dire & beau faire, je n'en rabattrai rien*; He may do and say whatever he pleases, I will not abate an inch on't. *Le pauvre homme eut beau appeler du secours*; It was to little purpose the poor man called for assistance.

XII. N'AVOIR GARDE, signifies *to have not the inclination or power to do a thing*, and is englished thus: *Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête homme*; He is too honest a man to think of cheating. *Il n'a garde de s'enfuir, il a la jambe rompue*; How can he run away since his leg is broken?

XIII. *To do nothing but*, is NE FAIRE QUE, with an infinitive without a preposition: as *Il ne fait que boire & manger*; He does nothing but eat and drink.

XIV. *To want none of, to have no occasion for, or no need of*, is N'AVOIR QUE FAIRE DE: as AVOIR AFFAIRE DE is *to want, to have occasion for*: as

*Je n'ai que faire de votre argent*; I want none of your money.

*Elle n'a que faire de parler*; She has no occasion to speak, she needs not speak.

XV. AU RESTE, DU RESTE (as for the rest, besides), must not be confounded. *Au reste* is used, when, to what comes before, something is added of the same kind, and is the sequel of it: as *Cette poursuite ne se peut faire qu'à grands frais. Au reste elle a peu de bien, huit enfans, et est endettée*. This prosecution cannot be but very expensive. As for the rest, or besides, her fortune is but small, she has eight children, and is in debt.

*Du reste* is used, when what follows is not of the same kind as that which comes before, or is not essentially related to it: as *Il étoit colère, bizarre, prodigue; du reste, homme d'honneur & bon ami*; He was passionate, whimsical and extravagant; but in other respects, a man of honour and a good friend.

*Au reste* outdoes most commonly what has been said. *Du reste* always implies opposition, and signifies almost the same thing as *for all that, that being excepted*.

*Au reste* sometimes elegantly comes after the first word or words of the sentence: *Du reste* always comes the first.

XVI. AÏEUX (plur. numb. of *aïeul*, Grandfather) is generally used to signify *ancestors* and *forefathers*: as *Ses aïeux ont possédé de grandes charges*; His ancestors have enjoyed great places: *ancestors* signifying no more *Grandfathers* than *Great-grandfathers*, or *Great-great-grandfathers*, &c. But *aïeux* may be (tho' seldom) restrained to its first signification of the plural of *aïeul*: as

*Sex deux aïeux ont été honorés des plus belles charges du Royaume*; Both his grandfathers have been honoured with the handsomest places in the kingdom.

XVII. *To know*, is both *SAVOIR*, and *CONNOÎTRE*, with the difference, that the former is said of Sciences, and things that are properly the object of the intellectual faculties, and have been studied or got by heart: as *Savez-vous votre leçon?* Can you say your lesson? *Il sait le Latin*; He understands Latin. *Je sais ce que vous dites*; I know what you say. *Il sait mieux qu'il ne dit*; He knows better than he says.

The latter is said of things that are the object of our senses, and import properly *being acquainted with*: as *Je connois cet homme-là*; I know that man. *Il connoît ce pays-là*; He knows that country.

Again. Whenever *to know* can be resolved by *to understand*, it is *savoir*, otherwise it is *connoître*.

*Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose*; To take it well, or kindly of one.

*Lui en savoir mauvais gré*; To take it amiss, or unkindly of him.

*Faire savoir une chose à quelqu'un*; To let one know a thing, to acquaint him with it.

XVIII. DEVOIR (*to owe, to be bound*), when it comes before an infinitive without a preposition, denotes only futurity in the action of the verb following, and is made by the future of the second

second verb in *English*, or by the verb *to be*, before an infinitive :  
as

*Il doit venir* ; He is to come. *Elle doit partir demain* ; She will set out to-morrow. *Je dois parler sur cette affaire* ; I am to speak about that affair.

Sometimes *devoir* signifies *must needs* : as *Il est tout nu, il doit avoir bien froid* ; He is all naked, he *must needs* be very cold.

XIX. *ECOUTER* sometimes signifies *to hearken* and *to listen to* : as *Ecoutez*, Hark'ye ; *Il écoute ce que nous disons*, He listens to what we say : and sometimes *to mind*, *to attend* ; as *Ecoutez ce qu'on dit* ; Mind what is said.

*ENTENDRE* signifies *to hear* and *to overhear* : *Il nous a entendus tout le temps* ; He has overheard us all the while.

XX. *EMPLIR* (*to fill up*) is said of liquids only : as *Emplir un tonneau, une bouteille, &c.* to fill a cask, a bottle, &c.

*REEMPLIR* is said of any thing but liquids, besides its signification of reduplication : as *Remplir ses coffres d'or & d'argent* ; To fill up one's trunk with gold and silver. *Remplissez le verre* ; Fill up the glass again.

XXI. *ENFERMER* is said of what is locked or shut in a box, trunk, chamber, &c. and *RENFERMER*, of what nature produces, and is contained, or included in the earth or sea : as *Je l'ai enfermé dans mon bureau* ; I have locked it up in my bureau. *Que de trésors la Nature ne renferme-t-elle pas dans son sein !* What treasure does not Nature inclose in her bosom !

XXII. *ENFER*, with the Christians is not used in the plural, except in the article of the Creed. *Il est descendu aux enfers* ; He descended into Hell.

With the Heathens it is not used in the singular : as *Mercuré conduisoit les âmes aux enfers* ; Mercury carried the souls to hell. But we say *les peines de l'enfer* ; the torments of hell.

XXIII. *ENTENDRE* is both *to hear* and *to understand*, according as the thing is the object of the sense of *hearing*, or that of the *understanding* : as *Je vous entends* ; I hear you, I understand you.

*Il entend cela mieux que vous* ; He understands that better than you.

*Faire entendre*, is *to intimate*.

*To understand*, signifies also *savoir*, when the thing spoken of is a science or an art : as *Elle fait le Latin* ; She understands Latin.

And

And when the thing meant, or the object of the verb, is any quality of things, *to understand* is made in French by *se connoître en*, or *à*, as *Il se connoît en toile*; He understands linen-cloth.

*Vous y connoissez-vous?* Do you understand these things?

XXIV. *ESPERER* (*to hope*) is never said in French of what is present or past: because hope is the expectation of things to come, tho' not certain or sure. Therefore do not say *J'espère que vous vous portez bien*; I hope that you are well: *J'espère qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne*; I hope that he has been well in the country: But say *Il paroît, il me semble*, or *Je présume que vous vous portez bien*; *Je me flatte*, or *J'ai lieu de croire*, or *Je m'imagine, qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne*: or else take another turn, as an interrogation, saying simply, *Vous portez-vous bien? Comment s'est-il porté à la campagne?*

XXV. *ÉVEILLER* and *RÉVEILLER*, (*to awake, to call up*:) *éveiller* is said of a regular time, and intimates something natural and usual: as *On m'éveille tous les matins à cinq heures*; I am awaked every morning at five of the clock: *Ne m'éveillez demain qu'à sept*; Don't awake me to-morrow before seven.

*Réveiller*, implies something irregular and sudden, and is said with respect to an extraordinary, unusual time: as

*Un grand bruit m'a réveillé*; A great noise has awaked me.  
*Le Ministre veut qu'on le réveille toutes les fois qu'il arrive un courier*; The Minister will be awaked, whenever an express or messenger comes.

XXVI. *FAIRE*, in its most general signification, is *to do*, or *to make*: but it has a great many more particular significations much in use.

1°. *Faire*, before an infinitive, without any preposition, signifies generally *to get, to bid, to cause, to order*, with the noun expressing the object after the verb in the infinitive, and not before, as in English: and when it signifies *to cause, or order*, the French infinitive is turned from its active state into the passive: as

*Faites lire cet enfant*; Make that child read.

*Faites venir cet homme*; Bid that man come.

*Il le fit mettre à mort*; He ordered him to be put to death.

*Elle fit assassiner son amant*; She caused her lover to be murdered.

2°. Before the infinitive of *faire*, it signifies *to bespeak, to get made*: as

*Il a fait faire une montre d'or à répétition*;

He has bespoken a gold repeating watch.

3°. It signifies *to see, to do in such a manner that* : as

*Faites qu'il soit content,* or } See that he is contented.  
*Faites en sorte qu'il soit content,* }

4°. *To counterfeit* : as

*Ceux qui font les fous à propos ne le font guères ;*

Those who counterfeit themselves mad seasonably, are hardly so.

5°. *To pretend, set up, personate, or act* : as

*Il fait le Philosophe ;* He sets up for a Philosopher.

*Elle fait la belle ;* She pretends to be handsome.

*Vous ferez l'avare ;* You will act or personate the miser.

6°. *To dress, clean, or make up* : as

*Faire la chambre ;* To clean the room.

*Faire la cuisine ;* To cook, to dress victuals.

*Faire le lit ;* To make the bed.

7°. *Se faire, is to use one's self to* : as

*Se faire à la fatigue ;* To use or inure one's self to hardships.

8°. *Faire, used impersonally with an adnoun, expresses the qualities of the weather* : as

*Il fait beau, or beau temps ;* It is fine weather: *Il fait froid ;* It is cold.

9°. *Avoir, with the word affaire, signifies to want* : and with *faire, but preceded by ne and que, it signifies not to want, to need not, to have no occasion for* : as

*J'ai affaire de cela, & vous n'en avez que faire ;*

I want that, and you don't, or you have no occasion for it.

10°. *Faire is used, as in English, instead of repeating a verb that has just been expressed in the sentence, especially after a comparative ; but it is not so frequently used in this sense as it is in English* : as

*Il apprend mieux qu'il ne faisoit ;* He learns better than he did.

XXVII. FAIRE GRACE signifies *to forgive, or excuse* : as

*Je vous fais grâce de la moitié } I forgive you half of the  
 des dépens ; } charges.*

*Le Roi lui a fait grâce ; } The King has forgiven him, or  
 granted him his pardon. And*

*Faire une grâce, is to do a favour* : as

*Faites-moi une grâce ;* Do me a favour. We also say,

*Il lui fait grâce ;* He favours him, he befriends him.

*Dieu lui en fasse la grâce ;* God grant he may.

XXVIII. FLEURIR, signifies in its proper sense *to blossom*, and in its figurative *to flourish, to be in repute* ; the French having but one expression for these two English words. But the more particularly distinguishing between the proper sense and the figurative,

tive, has occasioned an irregularity in some words of the verb.—The regular gerund of *fleurir* is *fleurissant*, as *les arbres fleurissant*, the trees being in blossom: but in the figurative sense we say *florissant*; as *un état, un empire florissant*, a flourishing state, or empire.

We say likewise in the imperfect, used properly, *Cet arbre fleurissoit tous les ans deux fois*, That tree was in blossom twice every year: and in the figurative sense we say, *Un tel florissoit sous son règne*, Such a one flourished, or was in repute under his reign. *Les Arts & les Sciences florissent alors*, Arts and Sciences flourished then, or were in high esteem.—That irregularity takes place in these two cases only, of the gerund and imperfect.

We also say figuratively *un style fleuri*, a florid style; *un teint fleuri*, a lively complexion.

XXIX. SE FIER (*to trust*) has a threefold construction. *Se fier à son mérite, se fier en son mérite, se fier sur son mérite*, to trust to one's merit.

XXX. FOURNIR (*to afford, to supply with*) is construed with both the first and third state: as

*La rivière le fournit de sel, La rivière lui fournit du sel,*

The river affords him salt, or supplies him with salt.

The former way signifies properly, that the river supplies him with as much salt as he can consume in his family. The latter may signify besides, that the river affords him so great a quantity of salt as to sell, and trade therewith.

XXXI. GENS (*people*). There is not one word in the French language liable to more several and odd constructions than this.

*Gens* is a noun of the plural, that is never said of a determinate number of people, unless it is attended by an adnoun. Therefore we don't say *trois ou quatre gens, six gens, &c.* as the English do, three or four people, six people, &c. but we say *trois honnêtes gens*, three honest people (meaning gentlemen); *dix jeunes gens*, ten young people, and *trois ou quatre personnes*.

*Gens* is masculine when it comes before its adnoun, and feminine when the adnoun comes first: as

*Ce sont des gens résolus*, They are resolute people.

*Ce sont de bonnes gens*, They are good people.

But tho' the adnoun coming before *gens* is feminine, yet if there follows another adnoun, or a participle, this last must be masculine: as

*Il y a de certaines gens qui sont bien sots, and not sottes,*

Some people are very foolish.

*Ce sont les meilleures gens que j'aie jamais vus, and not vues ;*  
They are the best sort of people I've ever seen.

The word *tout*, coming before *gens*, is put in the masculine when it is attended by no other adnouns, or the adnoun, coming before it, is of the common gender : as

*Tous les gens qui, &c.* All people that, &c.

*Tous les honnêtes gens font cela ;* All gentlefolks do that.

*Tous les jeunes gens sont volages ;* All young people are fickle.

But when the adnoun attending *gens* is feminine, the word *tout* agrees with it too : as

*Toutes les vieilles gens ;* All old people.

*Toutes les bonnes gens ;* All good people.

*Gens* signifies also *domestics*, and is used with a determinate number : as *Il arriva avec quatre de ses gens ;*

He arrived with four of his men, or servants.

XXXII. *BONNE GRACE*, in the singular, signifies *genteelness*, agreeable : as *Elle a bonne grâce ;* She is genteel.

*Il se bowe de bonne grâce ;* He bows in a genteel manner.

In the plural, *bonnes-grâces*, signifies *favour* and *benevolence* : as

*Il est dans ses bonnes grâces ;* He is in his or her favour.

*Conservez-moi l'honneur de vos bonnes grâces ;*

Do me the honour to keep me a place in your favour.

XXXIII. *JOUER* (*to play*) is both neuter and active in French ; tho' it is but in very few cases active in English : as

*Jouer quelque chose ;* To play for something.

*Jouons un écu ;* Let's play for a crown.

The particle *at*, used after the word *playing*, before the names of Games and Exercises, is expressed in French by the particles *a, au, à la, aux* : and the particle *upon*, used before the names of Instruments, by *du, de la, des* : as

*Jouer aux cartes ;* To play at cards.

*Jouons au Piquet, à la Bête, aux Echecs, à la Paume, aux Barres, &c.*

Let us play at Piquet, at Loo, at Chess, at Tennis, at Running-Bars, &c.

*Jouer des instrumens ; du violon ; de la flûte, &c.*

To play upon the instruments ; upon the fiddle ; the flute, &c.

*Jouer un pièce de Théâtre ;* To act a play.

*Jouer gros jeu ;* To play high, or deep.

*Jouer quelqu'un ;* To make a fool of one, to play upon him.

*Jouer au plus fin avec quelqu'un ;* To vie in cunning with one.

*Jouer de la prunelle ;* To ogle, or leer.

*Jouer à quitte ou double ;* To run all hazards.

*Jouer*

*Jouer une pièce, or un tour à quelqu'un, or lui en jouer d'une;*  
To serve one a trick, or put a trick upon one.

*Jouer* before an infinitive, with the preposition *à*, signifies to hazard, to venture: as

*Vous jouez à vous faire tuer;* You venture your life.

*Il joue à perdre sa place;* He runs the hazard of losing his place.

*Se jouer* is to sport, and *se jouer de quelqu'un*; to make a fool of one.—*Jouer* is besides used in some phrases like these:

*Ne vous jouez pas à lui;* Don't meddle or make with him.

*Ne vous y jouez pas;* Don't fool with it; don't be such a fool as to do it.

XXXIV. *JOUR* and *JOURNÉE* (a day). *Journée* is usually understood, and said of what is done during one day: as

*Payer la journée aux ouvriers;* To pay the workmen for their day's labour.

*Marcher à grandes journées;* To make great marches.

*Il y a huit journées de chemin;* It is eight days journey.

We say likewise, in that sense, *la journée d'Actium, la journée de Fontenoy*, the day or battle of *Actium*, or *Fontenoy*, &c.

We use *jour* when we speak of time only, and absolutely: as *Les jours sont courts;* The days are short.

*Il y a plus de huit jours que cela est passé;* It is above a week ago.

We say indifferently *Voilà un beau jour, or une belle journée;* This is a fine day: *J'ai travaillé tout le jour, or toute la journée;* I have been at work, or have studied all the day.

It is the same with *matin* and *matinée* (morning), and *soir* and *soirée* (evening).

XXXV. *LAISSER*, to leave, to let, and sometimes to forget: as

*Laissez ici votre manteau;* Leave your cloak here.

*Il ne veut pas me laisser parler;* He won't let me speak.

*J'ai laissé ma bourse sur la table;* } I have left, or forgot my purse upon the table.

*Laisser*, being construed with *ne* and *pas*, attended by *de*, denotes only affirmation in the next verb, which is rendered in English several ways, importing generally *still, nevertheless, for all that*, &c. as

*Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai, quoique vous en doutiez;*

Altho' you doubt of it, it is true nevertheless, or for all that.

*Malgré tout ce que je lui ai dit, elle ne laisse pas de le faire;*

For all that I told her, she still does it, or don't forbear doing it.

*Vous ne savez que faire de ces bagatelles, elles ne laissent pas d'avoir leur usage;* } You don't know what to do with these trifles, yet they are not without their use.

XXXVI. LIVRES and FRANCS (*Livres* or *Pounds*). These two words signifying the same thing, are liable to several various and odd constructions. — We say *Il a quatre mille livres de pension, dix mille livres de pension, vingt mille livres de rente, cent mille livres de rente, &c.* and never *quatre mille francs de pension, cent mille francs de rente, &c.* He has a pension of four, or ten thousand livres, or pounds, twenty thousand, or an hundred thousand livres *per annum*.

We on the contrary say, *Sa maison lui a coûté vingt mille francs*; His house has cost him twenty thousand pounds: *Sa charge vaut cent mille francs*; His place is worth an hundred thousand livres, &c. and never *vingt mille livres, cent mille livres*.

When *mille* and *cent* meet together, we always use the word *livres*; as likewise with the addition of these words *de rente, de pension* (when the words *a pension, a year, or per annum*, meet with pounds); as *Une somme de deux mille trois cents livres*; A sum of two thousand three hundred pounds: *Six mille neuf cents livres*; Six thousand nine hundred pounds, or livres.

We never say *un franc*, neither absolutely, nor with another number: as *vingt & un francs, trente & un francs, &c.* we say *vingt & une livres, trente & une livres, &c.* one-and-twenty, or thirty pounds.

Neither do we say *deux francs, trois francs, cinq francs* (two three, five livres), tho' we say *quatre francs, six francs, sept francs, huit francs*, down to *vingt francs*. We say neither *trente francs* nor *trente livres*, nor *soixante francs*, nor *soixante livres*, but *dix écus, vingt écus* (ten, or twenty crowns). We say *quarante francs, cinquante francs, quatre-vingts francs*, and *cent francs*.

Neither do we say *une livre, deux livres, trois livres, &c.* tho' we write it in Bank-notes, Letters of Exchange, Bills and Ac-compts. We say *vingt sous* for one livre, *quarante sous* for two, *un écu* for three. Instead of *cinq livres*, we say *cent sous*. But when pence (*des sous*) make part of the sum, we then always use the word *livre*: as *quatre livres dix sous*, four livres and ten-pence; *six livres huit sous*, six livres and eight-pence; not *quatre francs dix sous, six francs huit sous*.

When the sum exceeds an hundred, we, speaking of a debt, use indifferently *livres* or *francs*: as *Il me doit deux cents francs*, or *deux cents livres*; He owes me two hundred livres: *Je dois quinze ou seize cents livres* or *francs*; I owe fifteen or sixteen hundred livres.

However, we say *un sac de mille francs*, and not *un sac de mille livres*; a bag of a thousand livres.

When

When people distinguish, as in foreign countries, between *Tournois* and *Sterling* (the pound *Sterling* and the pound *Tournois*), they must always use the word *livre*: as *Il a apporté de France dix-mille livres Tournois, c'est-à-dire, près de cinq cens livres Sterling*; He has brought over from France ten thousand livres, or pounds *Tournois*; that is, near five hundred pounds *Sterling*.—A *livre*, or *livre Tournois*, is twenty-pence (*Tournois*). A pound *Sterling*, is two-and-twenty livres, or pounds *Tournois*.

XXXVII. UN COUP DE MAIN, signifies a bold action, and UN HOMME DE MAIN, a man fit for a bold and hazardous enterprise; DES COUPS DE MAIN, handy blows; MAIN FORTE, assistance; A PLEINES MAINS, largely, plentifully; SOUS MAIN, underhand, secretly.

*Donner*, or *Prêter la main à quelqu'un*; To help one.

*Donner les mains à quelque chose*; To consent to a thing.

*Etre en main*, or *à main pour faire une chose*; [hand easily.

To be in a convenient posture, or situation for one to use his

*En venir aux mains*; To come to blows, to engage.

*Prêter main forte à quelqu'un*; { To succour one, to come to his  
assistance with main strength.

*Donner de main en main*; To hand about.

*Cela est fait à la main*; That is done with concert.

*Lever la main*; { To take one's oath before a judge, to swear,  
to lay one's hand upon the Bible.

To have a good hand at } is { *S'entendre à faire quelque*  
doing something, } } *chose*.

XXXVIII. To walk (a verb neuter) is both *MARCHER* and *SE PROMENER*, with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another: and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, walking for pleasure-sake: as

*J'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui*; I have walk'd much to-day.

*Je me suis promené aujourd'hui une heure dans le jardin*;

I have walk'd an hour to-day in the garden.

We say *Se promener à cheval*, ou *en carrosse*;

To take a ride, or airing on horseback, or in a coach.

*Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, sur la Tamise*;

To go upon the water, upon the river, &c.

*Marcher sur quelqu'un, ou sur quelque chose*;

To tread upon one, or upon a thing.

*Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un*; To follow one's steps.

*Promener* is also used actively: as

*Promener quelqu'un*; To lead one, to make him walk. [ferent objects.

*Promener sa vue sur plusieurs objets*; To carry one's sight to many dif-

*Envoyer quelqu'un se promener*; To send one packing to the Devil.

*Marcher droit*; To keep to one's behaviour.

*Je le ferai marcher droit*; I'll keep him to his behaviour.

XXXIX. *MARIER, EPOUSER, SE MARIER* (*to marry*).

The two first are active, and the last a reflected verb; but *marier* is said only of the Parson or Priest who performs the ceremony; and *épouser* of the person who is married: as

*Monsieur A doit épouser Mademoi-* } Mr. A. is to marry Miss B. and  
*selle B, & c'est Monsieur le Curé* } it is the Rector of the Parish, or  
*qui les mariera,* } the Parson who will marry them.

*Elle ne veut point se marier*; She won't marry.

XL. *MENER* and *PORTER* (*to carry*), *AMENER* and *APPORTER* (*to bring*), must be very accurately distinguished, and fitted to the speech.

*Mener* is said of such creatures, either rational or irrational, that have by nature the capacity of walking, and are not disabled, either through accident or illness: and *Porter* is said of things that cannot walk by their nature, and of persons and dumb creatures that are disabled from walking, on account of lameness or illness, and other infirmities: as

*Menez Monsieur chez cette Dame*, and not *Portez Monsieur*, &c., Carry the Gentleman to that Lady's house.

*Portez-y vos chansons nouvelles*, and not *Menez-y*;

Carry there your new songs.

*Menez le cheval à l'écurie*, or *chez le Maréchal*;

Carry the horse to the stable, or to the farrier's, and not *Portez*, because horses, dogs, &c. have legs to walk.

*Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur*; Carry that stuff to the taylor's.

*Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison*;

That child is tired, carry him home (because he cannot walk),

Again, *Mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, answering to the question, *where, whither*: *amener* and *apporter*, are used with reference to the local adverbs *here, hither*: and *mener* and *porter* to *there, thither*: as

*Amenez-moi votre ami*; Bring your friend to me.

*Apportez-moi votre ouvrage*; Bring your work to me.

*Il les a amenés*, or *apportés ici*; He has brought them here, or hither.

All which instances are said with respect to the place where one is: but these following are said with reference to a place at any distance from that where one is.

*Il les y a menés, or portés; He carried them there, or thither.*  
*Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur; Carry your work to your sister.*  
*Menez-le chez le Commissaire; Carry him or take him to the Justice's.*  
 Observe that expression *to take one to a place*, rendered in French by *Mener quelqu'un à un endroit*.

XLI. MOURIR (*to die*), SE MOURIR (*to be dying*). We say

Mourir {	de faim,	to starve with hunger.
	de soif,	to be choaked with thirst.
	de froid,	to starve with cold.
	de chaud,	to be extremely hot.
	de peur,	to be affrighted to death.
	d'envie,	} to long mightily for a thing.
	d'impatience,	
	de chagrin,	to grieve one's self to death.
	de déplaisir,	to be vexed to death.
	de douleur,	to have one's heart broken.

XLII. NEUF and NOUVEAU (*new*). The construction of these two words is worth observing. *Neuf* must always come after the noun, and *nouveau* may come either before or after. But there is this difference between *neuf* and *nouveau*, that *neuf* is used only when one speaks of material things that are the object of Mechanic Arts; and *nouveau* of things that are the object of Liberal Arts, and relate to the mind, or else are the produce of Nature: as *un habit neuf*, a new suit of clothes; *un nouvel ouvrage*, or *un ouvrage nouveau*, a new performance.

Of these two expressions in use, *un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*, the former is said of its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, and having not been used or worn. The latter is said of, and imports, its not being extant before, and considers it only as being the produce of the mind.

*Neuf* is also said with respect to what is newly done, and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, and was unexpected. Thus *une maison neuve* signifies a house new built: and *une maison nouvelle*, one that we had not seen before, and is therefore the object of our surprise.

XLIII. PARENS, is said of all those that belong to us, or we belong to, by the ties of blood, or of those of the same consanguinity, as *Nos parens ne sont pas toujours nos meilleurs amis*,

Our kindred and relations are not always our best friends. Therefore *kindred*, *kin*, *kinsman*, *relation*, signify in French *Parens*.

*vens.* His or her parent, is, *son père ou sa mère*, and his parents, *son père & sa mère*.

XLIV. *PERSONNE*, has been considered in the Syntax with respect to its being a pronoun: but it is besides a noun feminine of a very extensive use, answering in its singular, sometimes to this word *person*, but most commonly to these, *man* and *woman*, *gentleman* and *gentlewoman*: as *Je vis hier la personne dont vous parlez*; I saw yesterday the person, or the man, or woman, you speak of (*L'homme* and *la femme* seldom being used, but out of scorn and contempt; and *le Monsieur* or *la Dame* in a banter, and through derision, or speaking of people of a station vastly superior to one's own in the world). In the Plural, it answers to the word *people*: as

*Des personnes honnêtes & civiles*; Honest and civil people.

Although the noun *personne*, when used in the plural, requires an adnoun feminine, yet if two adnouns, or some pronoun referring to it, meet in the same sentence, the pronouns and the second adnoun must be masculine; regard being then had to the thing signified by the word, to wit, *men* in general, and not to the word signifying the same: as

*Les personnes consommées dans la vertu ont en toutes choses une droiture d'esprit & une attention judicieuse qui les empêche d'être médifans.*

Such persons as are perfect in virtue, have in every thing an uprightness of mind and a judicious attention, which hinders them from being slanderers.

Wherein the adnoun *médifans* referring to *personnes* is masculine, tho' the first adnoun *consommées* is feminine.—Whereupon it is to be observed, that in order to make an adnoun masculine that has a reference to *personnes*, 1<sup>o</sup>. There must be, between the noun and the adnoun, a sufficient number of words, to make one forget that the adnoun masculine refers to the noun feminine *personnes*: so that the hearer, or reader, minds no longer the word, but only what is signified by it, as in the aforesaid instance.

2<sup>o</sup>. That the adnoun must not be governed by the verb that has *personnes* for its subject: otherwise it must be feminine, whatever number of words there may be between *personnes* and the adnouns. Thus we say

*Les personnes qui ont le cœur bon, & les sentimens de l'âme élevés, sont ordinairement généreuses; and not généreux, because it is governed of sont, before which comes the subject personnes.*

Good natured people, who have elevated sentiments, are commonly generous:

For the same reason, we don't use the

the relative masculine *ils*, tho' never so far from *personnes*, when it is near the adnoun feminine, referring also to *personnes*: as

*Les personnes qui ont l'esprit pénétrant, & une expérience de beaucoup d'années, sont presque toujours si judicieuses qu'elles se trompent rarement.*

People of a sagacious mind, that have the experience of many years, are almost always so judicious, that they are seldom mistaken.

We don't say *qu'ils se trompent*, on account of *ils* being too near the adnoun feminine, which determines it likewise to agree with the noun feminine.—Again, we say

*Les personnes qui ont l'âme belle sont si ravies quand elles trouvent l'occasion de reconnoître un bienfait, qu'elles ne la laissent jamais échapper (not qu'ils).*

People of a noble soul are so delighted when they find an opportunity to be grateful for a good turn, that they never let it slip.

The first relative feminine *elles* determining the second in the same gender, tho' there is a pretty good number of words between the Antecedent and the Relative. But we say

*Il y a à Paris une société de personnes très-savantes, auxquelles l'Europe est redevable d'un nombre infini de connoissances. Ils n'ont en vue que la perfection des Arts & des Sciences: & c'est dans ce motif qu'ils font tous les jours d'utiles découvertes.*

There is at Paris a society of very learned men, to whom Europe is beholden for a vast deal of knowledge. They have nothing in view but the improvement of Arts and Sciences: and it is with that motive only they every day make new and useful discoveries.

In which instance the pronoun *ils* refers to the thing signified by the word *personnes*, that is, *men*, and therefore agrees with the masculine; and the adnoun *savantes* agrees with the feminine, because it is next to the noun feminine *personnes*: as does likewise the relative *auxquelles*, which is next to the adnoun.

Here follows another instance with respect to number, wherein less regard is had to the noun, than to the thing signified by it.

*De deux mille hommes qu'ils étoient, six cents demeurèrent sur la place, & le reste se sauva par la connoissance qu'ils avoient du pays.*

Out of two thousand men that were there six hundred fell upon the spot, and the rest escaped by their being acquainted with the country.

One should say, to speak conformably to the Grammar, *par la connoissance qu'il avoit du pays*, since the pronoun *il* refers to *le reste*, which governs *sauva* in the singular.

XLV. PÂQUE, and more commonly PÂQUES, is masculine, when it signifies *Easter-day*: as *Pâque est bien reculé & bien chaud*

*cette*

cette année; Easter is very late and very hot this year: *quand Pâques sera venu*; when Easter is come.

But *Pâque* is feminine and spelt without *s*, when it signifies the Jewish *Passover*: as *Manger la Pâque*; To eat the Passover: *Préparer la Pâque*; To make ready the Passover.

*Pâques*, signifying the christian devotion at that season, is feminine, and in the plural number: as *Mes Pâques sont faites*; I have received the Sacrament this Easter.

We say ironically of immoral people who receive the Sacrament at that time, *Faire de belles Pâques*.

XLVI. *SE PASSER de quelque chose* (to be, or to go without a thing). *Si vous ne voulez pas me donner cela, il faudra bien que je m'en passe*; if you won't give me that, I must needs be without it.

XLVII. *To think*, is both *PENSER* and *SONGER*, with the preposition *à* before its regimen: as *Penser à quelque chose*; To think of a thing, to consider of it. *Vous ne songez pas à ce que vous faites*, better than *Vous ne pensez pas*, &c. You do not think of what you are doing. But when *to think* is used as a verb active, and not neuter, it is *penser* and not *songer*. Therefore don't say, *On songe de vous cent choses désavantageuses*, but *On pense de vous cent choses désavantageuses*; People think an hundred things to your disadvantage.

*Penser à mal*;

To have some ill design.

*Il ne pense pas à mal*;

He means no harm.

*Penser*, in the preterite, either simple or compound, before an infinitive, without a preposition, signifies any thing that *was like to have been done*, but has not been done; and is englished by *to be like, to be near, or ready*: as *Il pensa se noyer*; He was like to be drowned.

*J'ai pensé mourir*; I had like to die, or to have died.

*Nous pensâmes nous couper la gorge*;

We were near, or like cutting one another's throat.

XLVIII. *More*, is *PLUS*, *DAVANTAGE*, *ENCORE*. *Plus* is never used at the end of an affirmative sentence. Therefore say

*Donnez m'en davantage*; Give me some more, or more on't.

*En voulez-vous davantage*, or *En voulez-vous encore*? Will you have any more? *Encore un peu*; a little more: and never *Donnez m'en plus*, *En voulez-vous plus*? *Un peu encore*.

*Davantage*, can likewise be used at the end of negative sentences, but with the two negative particles, whereas *plus* requires but *ne*: as

*Je n'en veux plus*, or *Je n'en veux pas davantage*; I will have no more, no more on't, I don't chuse any more.

Neither

Neither does *davantage* govern a noun after it, as *plus*. Therefore don't say, *Mangez davantage de pain avec votre viande*, but *Mangez avec votre viande plus de pain que vous ne faites*; Eat more bread with your meat than you do.

*Encore*, at the end of negative sentences, don't signify *more*, but *as yet*, or *again*: as *Je n'en veux pas encore*; I won't have any yet.

**XLIX. PLAIRE** (to please) must be attended by the preposition *à*: as *plaire à quelqu'un*; to please one. But the construction of this verb, used impersonally in these, and other like sentences, is very remarkable, with respect to the English.

*S'il vous plaît*; If you please: *S'il plaît à Dieu*; If God pleases: *Cela lui plaît à dire*; He is pleased to say so: *Il a plu au Roi d'ordonner*; The king has been pleased to order: *Il me plaît de faire cela*; I am pleased to do so.

*Se plaire à quelque chose*; To take a pleasure, or delight in a thing.

**L. PICTURE**, is in French **PEINTURE**, **PORTRAIT**, and **TABLEAU**; but these three words don't signify the same thing, when they are taken in the proper sense.

*Peinture* signifies, 1°. the art of painting, or drawing: as *Il excelle dans la peinture*; He excels in painting, or drawing.

2°. The colour in general: as *La peinture de ce tableau n'est pas encore sèche*; The colour of that picture is not yet dry.

3°. What is painted upon a wall, or wainscot: as *On ne peut rien distinguer aux peintures du dôme de St. Paul. Les peintures du dôme des Invalides sont des chefs-d'œuvre de l'art*; One can distinguish nothing in the paintings of the Cupola of St. Paul's. The painting of the Cupola of the Invalids are master-pieces of art.

*Portrait*, signifies a picture representing any body drawn after life: *Voilà mon portrait*; That is my picture. *Le portrait du Roi ne lui ressemble pas*; The King's picture is not like him.

*Tableau*, signifies, and is said of any picture upon cloth, wood, or brass, representing an history, a landscape, building, in short any thing that can be thought of. Even what is drawn out of fancy, or after a statue, bust, or even after a picture drawn after life, is not called *portrait*, but *tableau*.

Therefore *Tableau* is equally said of *Portraits* or *Tableaux*; and *Portrait* is said only of the representation of one drawn after life.

But these three words signify the same thing, when they are used in the figurative sense:

*Il a fait*

{	<i>une agréable peinture</i>
{	<i>un agréable portrait</i>
{	<i>un agréable tableau</i>

*de toutes les personnes de la Cour*;

He has drawn a charming character of every one at Court.

LI. PRENDRE (*to take, seize, lay hold of*) is besides used in several other senses, as in these instances,

*Le feu a pris à sa maison*; A fire broke out in his house.

*Prendre les devans*; To get the start of one, to be before-hand with him.

*Se bien prendre à faire une chose, s'y prendre de la bonne manière*;

To go the right way to work, to take a right method, or course.

*Il s'y prend mal*; He goes the wrong way to work.

*De la manière dont il s'y prend*; As he goes to work, as he manages matters.

*S'en prendre à quelqu'un, or à quelque chose*; To tax one; To lay the fault, or lay it upon one, or upon a thing.

*Se prendre à quelque chose*; To take hold of something.

*Les gens qui se noient se prennent à tout ce qu'ils trouvent*;

People who are drowning take hold of any thing they meet with.

*Si l'affaire ne réussit pas, je m'en prendrai à vous*; If the affair don't succeed, I'll come upon you, I'll lay the blame upon you.

*S'il y a du mal, prenez-vous-en à vous-même*;

If any thing be amiss, you may thank yourself for it.

*Prendre parti*, To list one's self.

*Prendre son parti*, To take one's resolution.

LII. PRENDRE GARDE, SE DONNER DE GARDE (*to take heed, or care*). *Prendre garde à quelque chose*; To take care of a thing, to mind a thing, to take notice of it.

*Se donner de garde de quelqu'un*; To beware of one.

*N'avoir garde de*, To be far from, to take care not to, is besides used in some particular phrases, englished as follows:

*Il n'a garde de courir, il a une jambe de cassée*?

How can he, or how could he run, when one of his legs is broken?

*Je n'ai garde d'y aller*; I am not such a fool as to go thither, or I'll be sure not to go thither.

*Se bien garder de faire une chose*; To be sure not to do a thing.

*Prenez garde de tomber*, See pag. 300.

LIII. ROMPRE, BRISER, CASSER (*to break*). *Rompre*, is said of a thing broken asunder; and when it is broken in pieces, we use *briser*: as

*Un des pieds de la table est rompu*; One of the feet of the table is broken.

*La table est brisée*; The table is broken to pieces.

*Rompre*, is said of metals, stones, and wood; and *Casser*, of frail things, as glass, earthen ware, &c. as *La colonne est rompue* *brisée*, the post, or pillar is broken asunder, or broke in pieces.

*Le pot est cassé*; The pot is broken. *Les verres sont cassés*; The glasses are broken. But we never say *rompre un pot, rompre un verre, de la porcelaine, &c.*

*To bruiſe*, is *boſſuér, faire une boſſe*; and to ſplit, *fendre*.

In a figurative ſenſe we ſay, *Caſſer un teſtament, un contrat, une ſentence, des vœux*, and never *brifer, or rompre un contrat, &c.* to reverſe, or annul a will, to make void a contract, a ſentence, vows, &c.

*Caſſer un Parlement*;

To diſſolve a Parliament.

*Caſſer un Officier*;

To caſhier an Officer.

*Caſſer des troupes*;

To diſband troops.

*Caſſer quelqu'un*;

To turn one out of his place.

*Rompre la glace*, To break the ice; ſignifies to take the firſt ſteps in an affair, and overcome the firſt difficulties.

LIV. SEULEMENT, ſignifies ſometimes *ſo much as*: as *J'ai ſalué une perſonne qui n'a pas ſeulement daigné me regarder*; I have bowed to one who has not *ſo much* as vouchſafed to look at me.

LV. SUPPLÉER (*to ſupply, to make up*) is ſometimes indifferently uſed either with the 1ſt or the 3d ſtate: *Je ſuppléerai le reſte*, or *Je ſuppléerai au reſte*; I ſhall make up the reſt. But *ſuppléer*, without the prepoſition, ſignifies properly *to make up what is deficient*; and with *à*, *to be ſufficient for repairing, or making amends for the defects of a thing*: as *La valeur ſupplée au nombre*; Valour ſupplies the deficiency of the number.

LVI. TRAITER MAL (*to abuſe*) implies only outrageous words. MALTRAITER (*to uſe ill*) implies ill uſage with blows.

LVII. VALOIR is *to be good, or as good as*, when there is compariſon: as

*Vous ne les valez pas*; You are not ſo good as they are.

*Il valoit mieux qu'elle*; He was better than ſhe.

It ſignifies *to be worth*, when one ſpeaks of things bought and ſold.

*Cela ne vaut pas dix ſchellings*; That is not worth ten ſhillings.

But *to be worth*, ſpeaking of people's fortune and circumſtances, is expreſſed in French by *avoir du bien*; and ſometimes *avoir vaillant*: as

*Il a dix mille pièces de bien*; He is worth ten thouſand pounds.

*Il n'a pas mille livres ſterling vaillant*; He is not worth a thouſand pounds.

*Il a du bien*; He is worth money. *Il n'a rien*; He is worth nothing.

LVIII. VOILÀ (a word worth obſerving). It ſerves to ſhow, and points at ſomebody, or ſomething, and has the force of a verb, making a complete ſentence with a noun after it, or a pronoun

noun before; which is usually englished by *there is, that is, there he, there are, those be, those are, &c.* as *Voilà l'homme*; That is the man; Behold the man. *Le voilà, la voilà*; there he is, there she is, there it is.

*Voici*, is construed after the same manner, but it denotes, and points at, a very near object.—Sometimes *le voici*, and *le voilà*, are followed by a relative and a verb: as *Le voici qui vient*; Here he's a coming. *La voilà qui gronde*; There she scolds, Now she is scolding.

But *Voilà*, followed by an adnoun, and preceded by a pronoun personal, denotes, and stands for, the verb *être*, in the present tense: as

*Voyez comme les voilà mouillés*; See how wet they are.

*Comme la voilà triste*; How sorrowful she is.

*Nous voilà quittes*; We are quit, or even. *Les voilà fâchés*; They are angry, or vexed. *Voilà qu'on m'appelle*; I am called.

*Ne nous voilà pas mal*; We are in a fine pickle.

*Voilà bien du préambule*; What a deal of preamble.

*Les sottes raisons que voilà*; Very foolish reasons those.

LIX. *To be just, to have just*, followed by a participle, is expressed in French by *NE FAIRE QUE DE*, or *VENIR DE*, and the English participle is made by the present of the infinitive: as *To be just arrived*; *Ne faire que d'arriver*.

A child that is just born, *Un enfant qui vient de naître*, or *qui ne fait que de naître*: We have just finished, *Nous ne faisons que d'achever*, or *Nous venons d'achever*, The first way is more expressive.

LX. The impersonal *IL Y A* is construed with a negative, and *que*, in phrases worth observing: as *Vous vous imaginez qu'il n'y a qu'à demander*; You fancy that asking is all in all.

*Elle croit qu'il n'y a qu'à dire*; She thinks that speaking will do.

LXI. The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English.

We say *pied* (foot) of such animals only as have that part of hoof; and *patte* of all others. Thus we say, *le pied d'un cheval, d'un bœuf, d'un cerf, &c.* the foot of a horse, ox, stag, &c. *la patte d'un chien, d'un chat, d'une souris, d'un lion, d'un oiseau, &c.* the paw of a dog, cat, mouse, lion, a bird, &c.

We say *les griffes d'un lion, d'un chat, &c.* a lion's, a cat's claws, &c. *les serres d'un aigle, & d'un épervier*; the talons of an eagle, of a hawk: *les bras d'une écrevisse, & d'un cancre*; the claws

claws of a lobster, crawfish, and crab : *les gardes d'un sanglier* ; the hinder claws of a wild boar.

*La bouche d'un cheval* ; a horse's mouth : we also say *les naseaux d'un cheval*, not *les narines* ; the nostrils of a horse : *la gueule d'un lion, d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un loup, d'un serpent, d'un dragon, &c.* the mouth of a lion, a dog, a cat, a wolf, a serpent, a dragon, &c.

*Le groin d'un pourceau* ; the snout of a hog : *le muffle d'un cerf, d'un lion, d'un tigre, d'un taureau* ; the muzzle of a stag, lion, tyger, bull : *le museau d'un chien, d'un renard, d'un poisson* ; the muzzle, or snout of a dog, a fox, a fish : *le bec d'un oiseau* ; the beak, or bill of a bird.

*Les défenses d'un sanglier* ; the tusks of a wild boar : *la soie d'un sanglier, & d'un cochon* ; the bristle of a wild boar, and a hog : *le poil d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un cheval, & des autres animaux* ; the hair of a dog, a cat, a horse, and other creatures : *la crinière d'un cheval & d'un lion* ; the mane of a horse and a lion : *du crin* ; horse hair (of the tail) : the hair of the human body, is *le poil*, but that of the head, is *les cheveux*.

We also say *la hure d'un sanglier, d'un saumon & d'un brochet* ; the head of a wild boar, and of a large pike, and the jowl of a salmon.

Speaking of Deer we call *bois*, what the English call *horns*, or *head* ; and we say, *un bois de cerf, de daim, de chevreuil* ; the horns or head of a stag, deer, roe-buck ; but we call *corne* the same when it is wrought and manufactured, as *le manche de mon couteau est de corne de cerf*, the handle of my knife is of a deer's horn.

## XLII. The sounds of beasts.

<i>Les oiseaux chantent &amp; gazouillent</i>	* Birds sing and chirp.
<i>Le perroquet parle,</i>	The parrot talks.
<i>La pie caquette,</i>	The magpye chatters.
<i>Le merle siffle,</i>	The blackbird whistles.
<i>La colombe gémit,</i>	The dove cooes.
<i>Le coq chante †,</i>	The cock crows †.
<i>La poule glouffe,</i>	The hen clucks.
<i>Le corbeau &amp; la grenouille cro-</i>	} The raven and the frog croak.
<i>assent,</i>	
<i>Le chien aboye &amp; hurle,</i>	The dog barks and howls.

\* And the singing, chirping, or warbling of birds, is called by the French *ramage*.

† *Et coche la poule* ; and treads the hen.

*Les petits chiens jappent,*

*Le chat miaule, & file,*

*Le loup hurle,*

*Le renard glapit,*

*Le lièvre crie,*

*La brebis bêle,*

*Le serpent siffle,*

*Le pourceau grogne,*

*Le cheval hennit,*

*L'âne braît,*

*Le bœuf & la vache beuglent }*

*& meuglent,*

*Le taureau mugit,*

*Le lion rugit,*

The puppies yelp.

The cat mews and purrs.

The wolf howls.

The fox yelps.

The hare squeaks.

The sheep bleats, or bays.

The snake hisses.

The hog grunts.

The horse neighs.

The ass brays.

The ox and cow bellow.

The bull roars.

The lion roars.

§ III. *A List of Verbs, attended by a noun without an article, which form both together but one particular idea.*

Ajouter foi,

{ accès,  
affaire, or  
besoin,  
appétit,  
bon, }  
grand, } *appétit,*  
faim, }  
grand faim, }  
soif, }  
grand' soif, }  
froid, }  
chaud, }

Avoir

{ cours,  
envie,  
dessein,  
droit,  
égard,  
coutume,  
espérance,  
compassion,  
pitié,  
honte,  
attention,  
part,  
patience,

*To give credit.*

*To have free access to.*

*To have to do, or*

*To want, be in need of.*

*To have a stomach, or*

*—an appetite.*

*To have a good stomach.*

*To be hungry,*

*—very hungry.*

*To be dry, or thirsty,*

*—very dry.*

*To be { cold.*

*hot or warm.*

*To take, to be in vogue.*

*To have a mind.*

*To have a design, to design, to intend.*

*To have a right.*

*To have a regard.*

*To use, to be wont.*

*To hope.*

*To compassionate, commiserate.*

*To pity, to have a pity of.*

*To be ashamed.*

*To attend.*

*To have a share, to be concerned in.*

*To have patience.*

Avoir

	confiance,		To repose a confidence in.					
	peur,		To be afraid, to fear.					
	connoissance, avis,		To have notice.					
	permission,	}	To have	}	leave, or			
	carte blanche,				power.			
	plein pouvoir,				full power, and			
	tout pouvoir,				liberty.			
	lieu,				room,			
	sujet,				or			
	raison,				reason.			
	justice,				justice.			
	soin,				care,			
	grand soin,				a great, or special care.			
	ordre,		order.					
	occasion,		an opportunity.					
	obligation,		To be obligated.					
Avoir	tort,		To be in the wrong.					
	grand tort,		To be very much in the wrong.					
	horreur,		To quake with horror.					
	vent & marée,		To sail with wind and tide.					
	querelle,		To have a quarrel.					
	rapport,		To respect to.					
	mal	}	To have	}	the head-ache.			
					à la tête,	the tooth-ache.		
					aux dents,	sore eyes.		
					aux yeux,	sore feet.		
					aux pieds,	the belly-ache.		
					au ventre,	a pain	}	side.
					au côté,	in one's		arm.
					au bras,			shoulder.
					à l'épaule,		a sore nose.	
					au né,		sore ears.	
	à l'oreille, &c.							
	pouilles,		To call names, to rail at one at a strange					
Chanter	goguettes,		rate. To rattle one bitterly.					
	matines,	}	To sing	}	matins.			
	vêpres,				vespers.			
	chicane,		To cavil.					
Chercher	fortune,		To seek one's fortune.					
	querelle,		To pick a quarrel.					
	malheur,		To hunt for misfortune.					
Couper cours,			To stop the course.					
Courir risque,			To run the risk.					

Crier vengeance,		To call for revenge.
	{ audience,	{ audience.
	{ avis,	{ advice.
	{ caution,	To ask { a security.
	{ compte,	{ an account.
Demander { conseil,		{ counsel.
{ grâce, pardon,		{ one's pardon.
{ quartier,		To beg quarter.
{ justice,		{ justice.
{ raison,	To ask {	
{ satisfaction,		{ a satisfaction.
Demeurer court,		To be at a stand, mum, to stop.
	{ vrai,	To speak truth.
Dire { faux,		To say a falsehood.
{ matines,		matins.
{ vèpres, &c.		vespers, &c.
{ atteinte,		To strike at.
{ audience,		To give an audience.
{ avis,		To give advice, let one know.
{ beau jeu,		—fair play.
{ conseil,		To give counsel.
{ caution,		To give bail, a security.
{ carrière à son esprit,		To give one's wit its full scope.
{ congé,		To give leave, (also) a holy day.
{ courage,		To encourage.
{ permission,		To give permission.
{ envie,		To put in mind, to set one agog.
{ exemple,		To set an example.
{ parole,		To give word.
Donner { pouvoir,		To give power.
{ plein pouvoir,		{ To give full power and liberty.
{ tout pouvoir,		
{ carte blanche,		
{ part,		To impart a thing to one.
{ ordre,		To give order.
{ charge,		To charge one.
{ vent,		To give vent.
{ leçon,		To give a lesson.
{ heure,		To appoint an hour.
{ jour,		To fix upon a day.
{ cours,		To make a thing current.
{ prise,		{ To give one an advantage, an hold.

Donner	quartier,	To give quarters.
	quittance,	To give, write a receipt, or discharge.
	rendez-vous,	To give a rendez-vous, to make an affirmation, to appoint a place to meet.
	lieu,	To give { room.
Entendre	sujet,	To give { occasion.
	raison,	
	occasion,	
	raison,	To understand reason and sense.
L'échapper	malice,	To be acquainted with the jest.
	finesse,	
	raillerie,	
	vêpres,	
Faire	abjuration,	To be at vespers.
	abstinence,	To escape it narrowly.
	alliance,	To abjure, to recant.
	alte,	To fast.
	aiguade,	To make an alliance.
	amas,	To halt.
	argent,	To take in fresh water.
	amitié,	To heap up.
	arrêt,	To raise money.
	affaire,	To show one's self kind to one.
	attention,	To make much of him.
	binet,	To make an arrest upon one, to arrest him.
	cas de,	To make an end of a business.
	compte,	To attend, to mind.
	affront,	To make use of a save-all.
	banqueroute,	To value.
	bonne ou	To assure one's self.
	mauvaise mine,	To affront.
	brèche,	To break, to turn a bankrupt.
	bombance,	To put a good or bad face on the matter.
	bonne chère,	
	grand' chère,	To cut.
	choix,	To feast, to live, feed luxuriously.
	dépit,	
	difficulté,	

conscience,	to scruple.
compassion,	to raise compassion.
confidence,	to trust a secret with one.
corps neuf,	to take a new lease.
éclat,	to break out, come abroad.
envie,	to raise envy.
emplette,	to market, bargain, purchase.
épreuve,	to experiment.
excuse,	to beg pardon.
face,	to face.
feu,	to fire.
faux feu,	to wash in the pan, miss fire.
faute,	to miss one thing, to want it.
fête,	to give one a kind entertainment.
feinte,	to pretend, to dissemble.
fond,	to depend upon.
fortune,	to make a fortune.
flèche,	to make a shift.
front,	to face.
foi,	to prove.
grâce,	to favour.
Faire { gloire d'une chose, }	to pride, take a pride in a thing.
	to value one's self upon it.
gras ou maigre,	to eat flesh or abstain from it.
honneur,	to do honour.
déshonneur,	to disgrace.
honte,	to shame, to disgrace one.
horreur,	to strike with horror.
insulte,	to abuse, to insult.
injure,	to do an injury, to offend.
inventaire,	to make an inventory.
impression,	to make an impression.
justice,	to do justice.
jour (se faire)	to make way, to break through.
marché,	to make a bargain, an agreement.
main basse,	to put all to the sword.
mine de,	to look as if, to seem.
montre, }	to make a parade, or show.
parade, }	
naufrage,	to suffer shipwreck, to be wrecked.
ombrage,	to give an umbrage.
pacte,	to make a pact.
part,	to impart, to communicate.

Faire	pari,	}	to lay, to lay a wager.
	gageure,		
	pitié,		to move, or raise pity, compassion.
	peine,		to make uneasy.
	plaisir,		to do a pleasure.
	peur,		to affright.
	partie,		to make a party.
	pénitence,		to do penance, to repent, atone for.
	présent,		to make a present, to present with.
	place,		to make room.
	provision,	}	to provide, or supply one's self with.
	preuve,		to prove.
	quartier,		to give quarter, to spare.
	raison,		to pledge one, to satisfy one.
	réflexion,		to reflect.
	réparation,		to make a satisfaction.
	ressort,		to fly back again.
	ripaille,		to feast, to junket.
	route,		to sail, to be bound to (a sea term.)
	satisfaction,		to do a satisfaction.
	semblant,	}	to pretend, feign, make as if one were.
	scrupule,		to scruple.
	sentinelle,		to stand centry.
	serment,		to make an oath.
	signe,		to make a sign, to beck, nod, wink.
	tapage,		to make a clutter, to keep a racket.
	tort,		to wrong.
	trafic, or commerce,		to traffick, deal, trade.
	trêve,		to forbear.
	trophée,	}	to glory in a thing, to pride one's self in it.
	usage,		to use, make use of.
	vie qui dure	}	to live within compass.
	bonne vie,	}	to spare one's self.
	joyeuse vie,	}	to have a merry life on't.
	voile,		to set sail, to make sail.

Il fait	jour,	} It is	day-light, or	}	weather.
	clair,		broad day.		
	nuit,		night.		
	sombre,		cloudy.		
	obscur,		dusk.		
	chaud,		hot.		
	froid,		cold.		
	beau,		fine.		
	beau		fair		
	mauvais		bad		
Filer	vilain	} temps.	}	}	dirty.
	sale,				
	crotté,				
	du brouillard,				
	du vent,				
	soleil,				
	clair de lune,				
	doux,				
	pays,				
	feu & flammes,				
Gagner	prise,	}	}	}	}
	parole,				
	amitié				
	commerce,				
	bas,				
	fin,				
	piéd à terre,				
	ordre à ses affaires,				
	permission,				
	raison,				
Lâcher	sens commun,	}	}	}	}
	juste,				
	vrai,				
	François,				
	Latin,				
	Anglois, &c.				
	courage,				
	patience,				
	terre,				
	fond,				
Laisser		}	}	}	}
Lier		}	}	}	}
Mettre		}	}	}	}
Obtenir		}	}	}	}
Parler		}	}	}	}
Perdre		}	}	}	}

Plier	baggage, {	to pack away, pack up one's alls. to truss up bag and baggage.
	bonheur, {	to bear { good } luck.
	malheur, {	{ ill } { bad }
	guignon,	to pity.
	compassion,	to hit home.
Porter	coup,	to prejudice, to be prejudicial.
	préjudice,	to bear envy.
	envie,	to bear witness.
	témoignage,	to honour.
	honneur,	to respect.
	respect,	to take advantage of.
	avantage,	to gather flesh.
	chair,	to cheer up, to take courage.
	courage,	to take one's advice.
	conseil, }	to take one's leave of one.
	avis, }	to take care, or notice.
	congé,	to take, catch fire.
	garde,	to confide.
	feu,	to take notice.
	confiance,	to begin to be brown.
	connoissance,	to take, to be in vogue.
	couleur,	to fix upon a time, day and hour.
	cours,	to take example by one. To square
	heure,	one's life, or conduct by his.
	exemple sur quel- }	to begin to be in vogue.
	qu'un,	to end.
Prendre	faveur,	to like.
	fin,	to appoint a day, make an assigna- tion.
	goût,	to take one's breath.
	jour, }	to get intelligence, to find out.
	haleine,	to be born.
	langue,	to take physic.
	naissance,	to take pity, compassion, to commi- serate.
	médecine,	to take a part, to concern one's self in a thing,
	pitié, }	to take pleasure, to delight.
	part, }	to take one's place.
	intérêt, }	
	plaisir,	
	place,	

Prendre

Prendre	patience, {	to take patience, to bear, wait pa- tiently.
	possession,	to enter into possession.
	pied, {	to come within one's depth, to take footing.
	racine,	to take root, get footing.
	peine,	to take pains.
	séance,	to take one's place in.
	sel,	to take salt.
	soin, {	to take care of, to look to, or after a thing.
	suif,	to be lightning.
	terre,	to land, to get ashore.
Prêter ferment,	prétexte,	to take a pretence.
	parti,	to list one's self a soldier.
Promettre merveilles,		to take an oath.
Recevoir ordre,		to promise wonders.
Rendre	compte, {	to receive order.
	gorge,	to account for, or give an account for.
	gloire,	to spew up.
	grâce,	to do glory.
	hommage,	to return thanks.
	justice,	to pay homage.
	raison,	to do justice.
	service,	to give an account of.
	témoignage,	to do service.
	visite,	to witness.
Savoir	gré,	to pay a visit.
	bon,	to take a thing kindly.
	compte,	not to give over.
	lieu,	to make account, to value.
Tenir	tête,	to be as.
	parole,	to cope with one, oppose, resist.
	pied (à boue),	to be as good as one's word.
	table ouverte,	to stand fair.
	boutique,	to keep an open table.
	café,	to be a shop-keeper.
Tirer avantage, or parti de,	cabaret, &c.	to keep a coffee-house.
		to keep a tavern, &c.
	Vivre content,	to make an advantage of.
	Vouloir mal à quelqu'un,	to live contentedly.
		to bear one a grudge.

To which add the adverbs used with the impersonal *c'est*: as *c'est fâcheux, dommage, honteux, &c.* It is sad, pity, a shame.

§ IV. Observations upon VERBS, considered with respect to the Idioms of the English tongue.

WE have seen how verbs are conjugated in English by means of these signs, *do, did; shall, will; can, may; might, could, should, would; and let*; which being put before the verb, distinguish its moods and tenses, except the preterite, which is distinguished by a particular termination. But the same particles are also verbs, having particular significations of themselves, which must be carefully distinguished from their nature of signs. In order to which make the following observations:

1<sup>o</sup>. *Do* and *did*, are construed with any verb, to express its present or past action more fully, distinctly, and emphatically: as *I do love* for *I love* (*J'aime*); *I did love*, for *I loved* (*J'aimois, or J'aimai*). But

*Do* and *did*, signify also action of themselves, and are expressed in French by *faire*, being conjugated like other verbs with their signs, except in the present and imperfect tenses:

Pres.	I do,	<i>Je fais.</i>
Imp.	} I did,	<i>Je faisais.</i>
Pret.		<i>Je fis.</i>
Fut.	I shall, or will do,	<i>Je ferai.</i>
Cond.	I should, would, &c. do,	<i>Je ferois.</i> [Conjugation.
Comp.	I have done, &c.	<i>J'ai fait, &amp;c.</i> as in the sixth

2<sup>o</sup>. *Will* and *would*, or *wou'd*, which denote the time to come when they are placed before verbs, are also used in the sense of *willing*; to wit, when they imply *order, command, will, and earnestness of desire*; as

I will have you do so;	<i>Je veux que vous fassiez cela.</i>
He will not have him study;	<i>Il ne veut pas qu'il étudie.</i>
You would have us had done it;	<i>Vous vouliez que nous le fissions.</i>

Pres. and Fut. I will, *Je veux. Je voudrai*, for I am, or shall be willing.

Imp.	} I would	<i>Je voulois,</i>	} for	I was	} will-
Pret.		<i>Je voulus,</i>		I was	
Cond.		<i>Je voudrois,</i>		I would, &c. be	
Comp.		<i>J'ai, J'avois voulu, &amp;c.</i>		I've, had been	

3<sup>o</sup>. Should,

3°. *Should*, or *shou'd*, is the sign of the conditional, but generally denotes the necessity and duty of doing a thing. It implies, and stands for *must* or *ought*, and is made in French by the conditional tenses of *devoir*: as

We *should* do that; *Nous devrions faire cela.*

They *should* not lose their time; *Ils ne devoient pas perdre leur temps.*

You *should* have learnt your lesson; *Vous auriez dû apprendre votre leçon.*

4°. *Can* and *could*, *may* and *might*, import power and possibility, and are almost always taken in the sense of *being able*, and made in French by *pouvoir*, tho' *might* and *could* are oftener used as signs, than *can* and *may*: as

They *could* not do it;

*Ils ne pouvoient pas le faire.*

You *could* or *might* work;

*Vous pourriez travailler.*

He *could* or *might* have done that; *Il auroit pu faire cela.*

I *could* or *might* have gone thither; *J'aurois pu y aller.*

I *can* or *may* do it;

*Je puis le faire.*

That we *may* see;

*Asin que nous voyions, or puissions voir.*

That I *might* read;

*Asin que je lusse, or que je pusse lire.*

N. B. Tho' there be a difference between *could* and *might*, and they cannot be used in English promiscuously the one for the other, yet I have coupled them together in the aforesaid examples, because there is but one way to render them in French, to wit, the conditional tense of *pouvoir*.

5°. I might,	} <i>Je pourrais,</i>	} before an in-	{ <i>pouvoir</i> , to be able;				
I could,				} finitive, being	{		
I* would,						} made in French	{ <i>vouloir</i> , to be willing;
I should,							
I* ought,	} nal simple of						
I* would,		} <i>Je devrais,</i>					
I should,							
I ought,							

when the same come before a *Compound* tense of the infinitive, they must be made in the French by the *Compound* of the *Conditional* of the aforesaid verbs, and the *Compound* of the English infinitive be made in French by the *Present simple* of the *Infinitive*, without any preposition before; thus

I might have } done that, *J'aurois pu faire cela.*

I could have }

I would have done that, *J'aurois voulu, or souhaité faire cela.*

I should have }

I ought to have } done that, *J'aurois dû faire cela.*

\* I could, is also *Je pourrais, Je pus, and J'ai pu*; I would, *Je voulais, Je voulais, J'ai voulu*; and I ought, *Je devois, J'ai dû*.

In all other cases *do, did, shall, will, should, &c.* are only signs, which (with the verb which they are joined to) are expressed in French by one word only, to wit, the person of any tense simple or compound. Therefore do not say

<i>Je fais aimer,</i>	} for {	<i>J'aime,</i>	I do love.
<i>Je faisois, or fis travailler,</i>		<i>Je travaillai,</i>	I did work.
<i>Nous voulons, or voudrions aller,</i>		<i>Nous irons,</i>	we shall or will go.
<i>Vous vouliez, or voudriez avoir,</i>		<i>Vous auriez,</i>	you would have.
<i>Je voudrois faire cela,</i>		<i>Je ferois cela,</i>	I would do that.

Tho' it is sometimes indifferent to say with the signs *could, may, might.*

*Je pourrois faire cela, or Je serois cela ;* I could do that.

*Afin que je le fasse, or que je puisse le faire ;* That I may do it.

*Afin qu'il apprît, or qu'il pût apprendre ;* That he might learn.

Again. Do not say

*Je veux vous faire cela, or Je veux vous avoir faire cela, for Je veux que vous fassiez cela ;* I will have you do that.

*Nous ne voulions pas avoir eux venir, or les avoir venir, for*

*Nous ne voulions pas qu'ils vinssent ;* We would not have them come.

*Je devois avoir fait cela, for Je devois or J'aurois dû faire cela,*

I should have done that, or ought to have done that.

*Vous pouviez, or pourriez l'avoir fait, for Vous auriez pu le faire ;*

You might have done that, or You could have done it.

*Il vouloit avoir nous avoir fait cela, or Il nous auroit eu fait cela, for*

*Il vouloit que nous fissions cela, or Il voudroit que nous l'eussions fait ;*

He would have had us done that, &c.

6°. *Will, and shall,* are sometimes left out in English after the conjunction *when,* denoting a future action; but the verb must always be expressed in the future in French: as

*When we have done that, for When we shall have done that,*

*Quand nous aurons fait cela.*

*When he is come, or when he comes, for When he shall or will have come ; Quand il sera venu.*

It is to be noted here also, that we use the present tense, and never the future, after the conjunction *si, if,* in a great many cases, when it is construed in English with the future: as

*If he shall come, s'il vient ; tho' we say*

*Je ne sais s'il viendra, I don't know whether he will come.*

7°. The English use the signs *shall, will, &c.* without any verb express'd in the second part of the sentence, or in answer to a question; but we always repeat in French the future, or conditional

tional of the verb, expressed in the first part of the sentence, or the future of *faire*: as

Will you do that? I will. *Voulez-vous faire cela, or ferez-vous cela? Je le ferai, and not Je veux.*

He will have me do that; but I shall not. *Il veut que je fasse cela; mais je ne le ferai pas, or mais je n'en ferai rien.*

Learn that this afternoon; I will. *Apprenez cela tantôt: Je l'apprendrai.*

It is the same with the word *have* or *did*, standing for a preterite, expressed in the question to which we answer: which preterite must be repeated in French in the answer; as

Have you done that? Yes, I have.

*Avez-vous fait cela? Oui, je l'ai fait; and not, oui, J'ai.*

Did you go to Court yesterday? Yes, I did.

*Allates-vous hier à la Cour? Oui, j'y allai, or J'y fus.*

Observe that in such cases the verb repeated is also attended by its relation.

Moreover observe, that the verb *vouloir* governs, as any active verb, a noun in the first state, for its direct *Regimen*; and won't take after it any such verb as *have*, *get*, or *take*, before its noun, as in English; as

*Voulez-vous un livre, and not Voulez-vous avoir un livre?*

Will you have a book?

*En voulez-vous un écu? Will you take a crown for it?*

*Voulez-vous du tabac dans votre tabatière? and not Voulez-vous avoir du, &c. Will you have any snuff in your box?*

It is the same with *avoir*: as

*J'ai un beau tableau à vendre; I have got a fine picture to sell.*

8°. To express the continuance of an action, or thing, in English, the verb is varied in all its tenses, by the gerund, with the verb substantive *to be*: as

*Pres.* I am writing,

*Imp.* } I was writing,

*Pret.* }

*Com.* { I have been writing,

{ I had been writing,

*Fut.* I shall be writing,

instead

of

{ I write.

{ I did write.

{ I wrote.

{ I have written.

{ I had written.

{ I shall write.

That continuance of an action is likewise expressed in French by the several tenses of *être*, but with the present tense simple of the infinitive, preceded by the preposition *à* instead of the gerund;

I am

I am writing; *Je suis à écrire.*  
 I was writing; *J'étois à écrire.*  
 What was you doing? *Qu'est-ce que vous étiez à faire?*  
 When I shall be finishing any work; *Pendant que je serai à finir mon ouvrage.*

Sometimes *a* is put before the English gerund. Sometimes also that continuance of an action is expressed in French by turning the verb *to be*, and the gerund, into a reciprocal verb: as

It is a doing; *Cela se fait*, or *On est à le faire.*

The work was then forwarding; *L'ouvrage s'avançoit alors.*

Observe, that those ways of speaking are sometimes necessarily expressed by *on*: as The house is building; *On est à bâtir la maison*, or only *On bâtit la maison*.

While the house was building, *Pendant qu'on étoit à bâtir la maison*, or *Pendant qu'on bâtissoit la maison*, which is better than *Pendant que la maison se bâtit*, or *se bâtissoit*.

§ V. Of the Construction of certain English Particles, with respect to French.

THE English use their adverbs of place, *here, there, where*, compounded with these particles, *of, by, upon, about, in, with*, instead of the pronouns, *this, that, which*, and *what*, with the same particles: as

hereof, <i>for</i>	of this,	<i>de ceci</i> , or <i>d'en</i> .
thereof,	of that,	<i>de cela</i> , or <i>d'en</i> .
whereof,	of what, of which,	<i>de quoi, duquel, desquels, dont</i> .
hereby,	by this,	<i>par ceci</i> .
thereby,	by that,	<i>par là, par cela</i> .
whereby,	by what, by which,	<i>par quoi, par lequel, par où</i> .
hereupon,	upon this,	<i>sur ceci</i> .
thereupon,	upon that,	<i>sur cela, là dessus</i> .
whereupon,	upon what, or which,	<i>sur quoi</i> .
hereabouts,	about this place,	<i>autour d'ici, ici autour</i> .
thereabouts,	about that place,	<i>autour de là, là autour</i> .
whereabouts,	about what place,	<i>en quel endroit, où, vers où</i> .
herein,	in this,	<i>en ceci</i> .
therein,	in that,	<i>en cela</i> .
wherein,	in what, in which,	<i>en quoi</i> .
herewith,	with this,	<i>avec ceci</i> .
therewith,	with that,	<i>avec cela</i> .
wherewith,	- with what, or which,	<i>avec quoi, avec lequel</i> .

*Whose* and *its* (*dont*) are also used instead of, *of whom, of which, of it* (*duquel, desquels, de laquelle, desquelles*.)

§ VI. Of the various Significations and Constructions of the Particle *que*.

**I**T ought to have been observed, all along this treatise on the French language, that there are many particles, which, tho' the same with respect to their form, yet are very different with respect to their nature, or considered grammatically. Thus *le, la, les*, articles, must be carefully distinguished from *le, la, les*, pronouns; *à* preposition from *a* verb; *leur* pronoun personal from *leur* pronoun possessive; *si* conjunction conditional from *si* conjunction dubitative, and *si* comparative: as likewise several other words which are sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, according to the relation in which they stand to the parts of speech. But of all these particles there is none more variously used, and that gives more perplexity to the learner, in the construing of French Authors, than the particle *que*. Therefore it will not be amiss to make a particular section of this particle, and collect together all its several constructions, and uses.

*Que*, is the fourth state of the pronoun relative *qui*, for both genders and numbers, and is said of all sorts of objects, rational, irrational, animate and inanimate: as *L'homme, la femme que vous voyez*; The man or woman whom you see: *Les malheurs que vous appréhendez*; The misfortunes which, or that you fear.

*Que*, is the fourth state, and even the first (tho' seldom) of the pronoun interrogative *quoi* (what): as *Que dites-vous, Qu'est-ce que vous dites?* What do you say? *Qu'est-ce que de nous?* What wretched creatures are we?

*Que*, is the second and third state of the pronoun relative and interrogative *que* and *quoi*, standing for *de qui, de quoi, dont, à qui, à quoi*, for both genders and numbers: as *C'est de vous qu'on parle*; It is you they are speaking of: *C'est à vous qu'on s'adresse*; To you they make application.

*Que*, is a particle which most conjunctions are composed of: as *Afin que*, That; *De sorte que*, So that; *Puisque*, Since; *Quoique*, Although, &c.

*Que*, is a conjunction, used in the second part of a period, joined to the first by the enclitic *Et*, instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, expressed at the head of the first sentence; and this *que* governs the subjunctive: as *S'il le souhaite, Et que vous le vouliez*; if he desires it, and you will have it so.

*Que*

*Que*, is used in the middle of a sentence in lieu of the conjunctions *Comme, lorsque* (as, when), tho' they are not expressed before: as *Ils arrivèrent que j'allois partir*: They arrived as or when I was going: *Nous partîmes qu'il pleuvoit à verse*; We set out at a time when it did rain as fast as it could pour.

*Que*, is used instead of *à moins que, avant que, sans que* (unless, before, without); and, like these conjunctions, governs the subjunctive, and requires the negative *ne* before the next verb: as *Je ne serai point content que je ne le sache*; I shall never be contented unless I know it: *Je n'y irai point qu'elle ne soit venue*; I will not go thither before she comes.

*Que*, is used for *jusqu'à ce que* (till, until) and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as *attendez qu'il vienne*, stay till or until he comes.

*Que*, is used for *cependant* (yet, as yet): *Il me verroit périr qu'il n'en seroit pas touché*; He would see me die, yet he would not be concerned at it: *Il auroit tout l'or du monde qu'il en voudroit encore davantage*; Tho' he should enjoy all the gold in the world, yet he would have more.

*Que*, is used instead of *afin que* (that, to the end that), and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as *Approchez que je vous baise*; Draw near that I may kiss you: *Je vous prie de venir ici que je vous dise quelque chose*; Pray, come hither, that I may speak to you.

*Que*, is used in lieu of *de peur que* (lest, or for fear of) and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive, and requires the negative *ne* before the verb: as *N'approchez pas de ce chien qu'il ne vous morde*; Do not go near that dog, lest he should bite you: *Dépêchons nous que quelqu'un ne vienne*; Let us make haste for fear somebody should happen to come.

*Que*, is used in the place of *si* or *dès que* (if, as soon as) in the beginning of a sentence, and governs the subjunctive: as *Qu'il boive de la bière, il est malade à la mort*; If or When, or As soon as he drinks beer, he is sick to death.

*Que*, is used in the middle of a sentence for *depuis que* (since): as *Il n'y a qu'une heure qu'il est parti*; 'Tis but an hour since he is gone.

*Que*, is used for *de sorte que* (so that): as *Si vous n'êtes sage, je vous égrillerai que rien n'y manquera*; If you are not good, I'll flog you soundly.

*Que*, is used before the second verb of a sentence beginning with the conjunction *à peine*, which it serves to compose (scarce, hardly than): as *À peine eut-il achevé de parler qu'il expira*; He

had *hardly* done speaking, *but* he expired, or He had *no sooner* done speaking, *than* he expired.

*Que*, (than) is used before the noun or adnoun following an adverb comparative : as *Le mari est plus raisonnable que la femme* ; The husband is *more* reasonable *than* the wife : *Plutôt que de le faire* ; Rather *than* do it.

*Que*, coming after an adnoun, signifies *comme* ; and *quoique*, if the adnoun is preceded by *tout* : as *malade qu'il est, il ne sauroit vaquer à ses affaires* ; Being ill, he cannot attend business : *Tout savant qu'il est, il a bien peu de jugement* ; As learned as he is, he has but very little judgment.

*Que*, after a noun of time, signifies *quand* (when) : as *Le jour qu'il partit* ; The day *when* he set out.

*Que*, after a noun of place, signifies *où* (where) : as *C'est à la cour qu'on apprend les manières polies* ; 'Tis at court one learns, or *where* one learns politeness, or polite ways of behaving.

*Que*, (let) denotes the third persons of the imperative : as *Qu'il parle* ; Let him speak : *Qu'ils rient* ; Let them laugh.

*Que* is left out of these following phrases of the sing. numb. *Vienne qui voudra* ; Let who will come. *Sauve qui peut* ; Let every one make the best of his way, or take to his heels. *Qui m'aime me suive* ; Let him that loves me follow me.

*Que*, (that) is used in the beginning of a sentence with the indicative ; but such sentences as these are mostly titles to a chapter or section : as *Qu'on ne peut prouver l'immortalité de l'âme, avant d'en connaître la nature, & que sa nature est incompréhensible* ; That the immortality of the soul cannot be proved before its nature is known, and *that* the nature of the soul is incomprehensible.

*Que*, is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first, and governs sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive, according to the nature and signification of the first verb. This determinate conjunction is sometimes Englished by *that*, but most times left out and understood : as *Je vous assure que cela est ainsi* ; I assure you *that* it is so. *Je doute que cela soit ainsi* ; I doubt whether it is so or no.

*Que*, in the middle of a sentence beginning with the impersonal *c'est*, is only an expletive : as *C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu* ; Gaming is a dangerous passion : *C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux* ; 'Tis a kind of shame to be miserable.

*Que*, being immediately preceded by the impersonal *c'est*, signifies *parceque* ; as *C'est que je ne savois pas que*— 'Tis, or 'Twas, *because* I did not know that :—And when a word comes between

*c'est*

*c'est* and *que*, *c'est que* is a redundancy : as *C'est alors que je vis* ; 'Twas then I saw, or only Then I saw.

*Que*, after the impersonal *il y a* with a noun denoting time, is only an expletive ; as *Il y a dix ans que je l'aime* ; I have loved her these ten years.

*Que*, being followed by *si* in the beginning of a sentence, is only an expletive : as *Que si vous dites* ; If you say, And if you say.

*Que*, after *tel* or an adnoun preceded by the adverb *si*, is Englished by *as* : as *Soyez tel que vous voulez être estimé* ; Be such as you would be taken for : *Je ne suis pas si fou que de la croire* ; I am not such a fool as to believe it.

*Que*, after *autre* and *autrement*, signifies than : as *Il est tout autre que vous ne disiez* ; He is quite another man than you said.

*Que*, being used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, denotes wishing or imprecation : as *Que Dieu vous bénisse* ; God bless you : *Que je meure si j'en fais quelque chose* ; Let me die if I know any thing on't.

Sometimes also *que* is left out in those sorts of sentences : as *Dieu vous bénisse* ; God bless you : *Grand bien vous fasse* ; Much good may it do you.

*Que*, is also used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, to denote, by an exclamation, one's surprise, aversion, and reluctance of something ; in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que* : as *Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point !* I wonder, or is it possible for him to have forgot himself so far ? *Que j'agisse contre ma conscience !* Must I do a thing, or How can I do a thing against my conscience !

*Que*, is used adverbially in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation with the indicative, and is rendered into English several ways, according to the nature of the sentence ; for if the verb coming after *que* is followed by another verb, *que* is Englished by *how much* : as *Que vous aimez à parler !* How much you like to talk !—If the verb coming after *que* is followed by an adnoun only, *que* is Englished by *how only* before the adnoun : as *Qu'il fait crotté !* How dirty it is ! *Qu'elle est aimable !* How amiable she is !—Sometimes the exclamation, or admiration, is expressed without any verb : as *Que de plaisir & de peine tout à la fois !* How much pleasure and trouble at once !—Sometimes also *que* comes after the noun, especially if indignation meets with admiration : as *Le malheureux qu'il est !* What a wretch he is ! *L'indigne action*

*que la sienne !* O the unworthy action of his ! *Les beaux livres que vous avez !* What fine books you have got !

*Que*, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, signifies *comment* (how) : as *Que savez-vous si l'âme de votre père n'étoit pas passée dans cette bête ?* How do you know but that your father's soul was passed into that creature ?

*Que*, beginning a sentence of interrogation, and followed by the negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* (why) : as *Que ne parlez-vous ?* Why don't you speak ? *Que ne lui dites-vous cela ?* Why did not you tell him that ? And when *que* is followed by the double negative *ne* and *pas*, it stands for *quelle chose* (what or what thing) : as *Que ne fait il pas pour s'enrichir ?* What thing does he not do to grow rich ? *Que ne lui dites-vous pas pour l'en détourner ?* Is there any thing but you told him, to deter him from it ?

*Que*, in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation, and followed by *ne*, denotes only a wish and a great desire : as *Que ne suis-je déjà aux portes de Valence !* Would I were already at the gates of Valencia !

*Que*, in the middle of a sentence, but preceded by *ne* with some words between, signifies *seulement* (only, but, nothing but, &c.) as *Le Roi n'a en vue que le bien public ;* The King has no other view but, or only aims at the public good. And when *que* is preceded by the two negatives, and followed by a verb, it signifies *à moins que* (unless, but), and the verb must be put in the subjunctive with *ne* : as *Je ne sars point que je ne m'enrhume ;* I never go abroad, but I catch cold.

*Que*, preceded by *ne* and followed by the infinitive *faire*, without a preposition, signifies *nothing* ; or *to need not*, if *faire* is followed by another infinitive with *de* : as *Je n'ai que faire de cela ;* I have nothing to do with that : *Je n'ai que faire d'y aller ;* I need not go there. If *faire* is followed by the preposition *à*, it makes another idiom of a different signification : as *Je n'ai que faire à cela ;* I am not concerned with that.

*Que*, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive without any preposition at all, denotes only the continuance of the action signified by the second verb, and is englished by *to do nothing but* : as *Il ne fait que boire & manger ;* He does nothing but eat and drink.

*Que*, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes that the action signified by the second verb began some few minutes, a very little while, one moment before, that it does or did just or just

just now begin, and is expressed by *just* or *just now*: as *Nous ne faisons que de commencer*; We do but begin, We have but just begun; *Il ne faisoit que d'achever quand*— He had just finished when—

*Que*, besides these 38 significations, serves to form a great many idiomatical phrases, which must be learnt in my Dictionary, at this word.

### § VII. Of inseparable Prepositions.

Besides the prepositions that have been fully treated of, there are several particles in the beginning of words, which are mere prepositions, that have passed from the Latin Tongue into the French, wherein they signify nothing of themselves, without the words that are composed of them; and are therefore called *inseparable* prepositions. These particles are, *de, des, dis, é, ex, en, in, im, il, ir, ig, re, sur*, which may deserve the following observations.

1°. The particles *de, des*, and *dis* usually serve, in the beginning of words, to denote the contrary of what is signified by the words which they compose, and have the same signification as the English particle *un*, in the beginning of words: as *défaire* to undo, *dédire* to unsay, *décamper* to decamp, march off, *déranger* to put out of order, *désarmer* to disarm, *déshabiller* to undress, *désunir* to disunite, *disgrâce* disgrace, *disproportion* disproportion, &c.— Sometimes also they only serve to extend more the signification of the simple: as *découper* to cut (not in its common signification), *démontrer* to demonstrate, *disperser* to disperse, scatter about, *dissoudre* to dissolve.

2°. *é* and *ex*, in the beginning of words, sometimes denote privation and separation, or taking off: as *écervelé* hair-brained, *écrémer* to take off the cream from the milk, *effilé* fringed (not in the common signification), *essouffler* to put out of breath, *excommunier* to excommunicate, *exterminer* to exterminate, destroy entirely, *extraire* to extract, draw or take out. Sometimes they denote production of an action, and add to, or extend more, the signification of the simple; as *ébranler* to shake, *échanger* to exchange, *échauder* to scald, *éprouver* to try, *exalter* to exalt, extol, *exhausser* to rise higher, *expliquer* to explain, expound.

The particle *en* in words compound, keeps pretty near the same signification which it has with the simple, when it is a separable preposition; and usually denotes either the action whereby a thing

is in some manner put in another, as *enclorre* to inclose, *enchainer* to chain, *embrasser* to embrace, *emporter* to take away, *enrôler* to enlist, *envelopper* to fold up, involve; or the impression by which a thing receives such or such a form, and becomes such or such, as *encourager* to encourage, *enrichir* to enrich, *enivrer* to fuddle, *engrosser* to get with child.

*in*, in the beginning of words, has sometimes the same use and signification as *en*; as in *investir* to invest, *insister* to insist; but it has commonly a privative power, and denotes quite the contrary of the signification of the simple, as *inanimé* inanimate, *inconstant* inconstant, *incivil* uncivil, *infortuné* unfortunate, *injuste* unjust, *inhumain* inhuman, *innombrable* innumerable, *invincible* invincible, *inutile* useless, &c.

It is the same with the inseparable particles *im*; as in *immodeste* immodest, *imprimer* to print, *imparfait* imperfect; *il*, in *illégitime* illegitimate, *illicite* unlawful; *ir*, in *irrégulier* irregular, *irrésolu* irresolute; *ig*, in *ignoble* ignoble, base; all which particles are but the same particle *in*, which changes its *n* into the initial consonant of the word to which it is joined, according to the Genius of the language.

*re*, in the beginning of words, usually denotes either reiteration, and reduplication of the action denoted by the word; as in *refaire* to make or do again, *redire* to say again, *revenir* to come back again; or restitution and re-establishment into a former state, as in *redresser* to make straight again, *rallumer* to light again, *réunir* to reunite, &c. Sometimes also it only serves to extend further the signification of the simple: as in *réveiller* to awake, *reluire* to shine, *repâitre* to feed, *radoucir* to appease, to sweeten.

*re*, is found besides in the beginning of a great many words simple, without making a part of them, as in *recommander* to recommend, *renoncer* to renounce, *redoutable* dreadful, *se repentir* to repent, &c.

The particle *sur*, denotes excess of the action signified by the simple; as *surabondance* superabundance, *surcharge* to overcharge, *surnaturel* supernatural, *surfaire* to exact, *survivre* to outlive, &c.

#### § VIII. Observations upon Proper Names.

Reason requires that proper names of places, as Kingdoms, Counties, Cities, and Towns, should keep the same appellations all over the world, without varying according to the diversity of the languages spoken by the several nations; so that *England* and *London*, &c. should be called by the same name by the French, Spaniards, Italians, Turks, Russians, &c. as well as by the English.

lish; yet custom has obtained among most, if not all, nations, to adapt foreign names to the genius of their own language. Thus *England* is called by the French *L'ANGLETERRE*; *London*, *LONDRES*; *Germany*, *L'ALLEMAGNE*; *Bohemia*, *la BOHÈME*; *Poland*, *la POLOGNE*; *Cracow*, *CRACOVIE*, &c. but it is only the most renowned places whose names are liable to variation. The others keep their national appellation; as *Kent*, *Bristol*, *Breslau*, &c.

Neither are foreign proper names of men subject to any alteration. The following observations are only upon ancient Latin and Greek Proper Names, that occur in History, to which custom has given a French Termination.

1<sup>st</sup>, Latin names of men in *a* never change, *Agrippa*, *Dolabella*, *Nerva*, *Galba*, *Sylla*, &c. are the same in French as in Latin, except *Seneca* that is changed into *Senèque*. But proper names of women in *a* take all a French termination; some *ie*, as *Julia* *JULIE*, *Livia* *LIVIE*, *Octavia* *OCTAVIE*; and some *ine*, as *Agrippina* *AGRIPPINE*; *Cleopatra* makes *CLÉOPATRE*, and *Poppea* *POPPÉE*.

2<sup>d</sup>ly, Names of men terminating in *as*, change *as* into *e* not sounded: as *Pythagoras* *PYTHAGORE*, *Anaxagoras* *ANAXAGORE*, *Mecenas* *MÉCÈNE*, *Æneas* *ENÉE*: Except *Léonidas*, *Pélopidas*, *Prussias*, *Phidias*, *Epaminondas*, *Josias*, *Ananias*, and all Hebrew names, that continue the same; as likewise names of women, as *Olympias*, *Alexander's* mother, &c. where *s* final is sounded.

3<sup>d</sup>ly, Names in *e*, take some the accent acute over it; as *Daphné*, *Phryné*, *Circé*, *Thïsbé*, *Hélé*, *Gloé*, &c. others make that *e* mute; as *Calliope*, *Climène*, *Melpomène*, *Mnémosine*, *Amphitrite*, *Ariadne*, *Cibèle*, *Euridice*, *Pénélope*, &c.

4<sup>th</sup>ly, Names in *ander* make *andre*: *Alexander* *ALEXANDRE*, *Leander* *LÉANDRE*, *Scamander* *SCAMANDRE*, &c.

5<sup>th</sup>ly, Names in *es* lose their final *s*, and the *e* is not sounded; as *Demosthenes* *DEMOSTHÈNE*, *Mithridates* *MITRIDATE*, *Arsaces* *ARSACE*, *Isocrates* *ISOCRATE*, *Apelles* *APELLE*, *Aristides* *ARISTIDE*, &c. except *Cérès*, *Artaxerxès*, *Xerxès*, *Périclès*, *Chosroès*, *Verrès*, and all dissyllables, that continue the same, but their last syllable has the sound of *è grave*, and the second *x* in *Xerxès* the articulation of *s*.

6<sup>th</sup>ly, Names in *is*, and in *al*, continue the same; as *Adonis*, *Omphis*, *Memphis*, *Sisgambis*, *Thalestris*, &c. *Annibal*, *Ajdruhal*, &c. Except *Martial*, *Juvenal*, and *Mathilde*, from *Martialis*, *Juvenalis*, *Mathildis*.

7<sup>th</sup>ly, Latin names in *o*, and Greek in *ov*, have the termination of *o nasal*; as *Cicero* *CICERON*, *Corbulo* *CORBULON*, *Varro*

VARRON, *Strabo* STRABON, *Dido* DIDON, *Xenophon* XÉNOPHON, &c. Except *Labco* and *Carbo*; *Clio*, *Calypso*, *Erato*, *Echo*, and *Sopha*.

8thly, As to names in *us*, this distinction is to be made. Proper names of two syllables only, as *Brutus*, *Cyrus*, *Cræsus*, *Porus*, *Pyrrhus*, remain the same; except *Titus* that makes TITE, and *Plautus* PLAUTE, and such names of Saints as *Petrus*, *Paulus*, &c. that have been entirely frenchified into PIERRE and PAUL. Those of three or four syllables, if they are much celebrated, take the termination of *e* not sounded; as *Tacitus* TACITE, *Plutarchus* PLUTARQUE, *Homerus* HOMÈRE, *Virgilius* VIRGILE, *Ovidius* OVIDE, *Horatius* HORACE, *Petronius* PÉTRONE, *Pompeius* POMPÉE, *Quintus Curtius* QUINTE-CURCE, *Julius Caesar* JULE CÉSAR, *Aulus Gellius* AULU-GELLE, *Paulus Æmilius* PAUL-ÉMILE, *Lucretius* LUCRÈCE. *Terentius* is changed into TÉRENCE, and *Antonius* into ANTOINE. The others, that do not occur so much, keep the Latin termination, *Fulvius*, *Præculus*, *Quintius*, *Virginius*, as likewise *Darius*, and *Marius*; and the names of Barbarians, *Alaric*, *Chilpéric*, *Theodoric*. We also say LES GRACQUES *Gracchi*.

9thly, Proper names in *ianus* take the French termination *ien*, *Quintilien*, *Tertulien*, *Cyprien*, &c. We also say *Chaldéen*, *Lernéen*, *Néméen*. But *anus*, preceded by a consonant, is changed into AN; as *Coriolanus* CORIOLAN. We also say *Trajan*, *Séjan*, *Titan*; as also *Ammian*, *Appian*, *Elian*, and not *Appien*, &c.

Names of Sects terminate also most commonly in *ien*; as *Presbytérien*, *Luthérien*, *Nestoriens*, *Eutichéens*, *Sociniens*, &c. Some few only are excepted; as *Calviniste*, *Anabaptiste*, &c.

As to the other Proper names, ending with one or more consonants, as *Agar*, *Cæsar*, *Castor*, *Jacob*, *Joachim*, *Minos*, *Béatrix*, &c. they remain the same in French.

Mr. Ménage has made complete lists of all Hebrew, Greek, Latin, and Gothic proper names, which change their terminations in French, as also those that do not. Those who are desirous to know more of this matter, must consult him.

#### § IX. Observations upon the Titles annexed by custom to the divers ranks and stations of civil Life.

It is the custom in France to call any Gentleman *Monsieur*, any married Gentlewoman *Madame*, and any Miss, young Lady, as well as any unmarried Gentlewoman (tho' she is ever so old) *Mademoiselle*. We say in the plural *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles*. If in a company of young Ladies, or unmarried Gentlewomen

tlewomen (*Demoiselles*), there is one married Gentlewoman only (*une Dame*) we say *Mesdames* in speaking of them, and not *Mesdemoiselles*. We say in speaking of a woman *la Dame*, or *la Demoiselle dont je vous ai parlé*; The Lady, or Miss, whom I told you of. But we don't say *le sieur* nor *les sieurs*. *Le Monsieur*, for the Gentleman, is very seldom used, and *le Gentilhomme* (in that sense) never. In public acts, and through contempt, or in a banter, we say *le sieur un tel*, instead of *Monsieur* (Master such a one); and altho' these words are composed of a pronoun, and we write in two words *nos Dames*, *nos Demoiselles*, yet we make but one word of *Monsieur*, *Messieurs*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, *Monseigneur*; and even the pronoun possessive in *Monsieur* stands for nothing, when an adnoun comes before the word, so that the adnoun must be preceded by another pronoun thus, *Mon cher Monsieur*, Dear Sir. But we don't say *Ma chère Madame*, but *Ma chère Dame*, *ma chère Demoiselle*, Dear Madam, or Miss; *Mon cher Seigneur*, My dear Lord.

In speaking to the King, we say *Sire*, *Votre Majesté*, Sire, Your Majesty; to the Queen, *Madame*, *Votre Majesté*, Madam, Your Majesty. Then we use the personal and possessive pronouns of the 3d pers. relating to *Majesté*, instead of the personal pronoun of the second person; as

*Votre Majesté ne peut montrer pour son peuple plus d'amour qu'elle ne fait*, Your Majesty cannot shew more love to your people than you do.

*Votre Majesté a enfin triomphé de ses ennemis; et elle les convainc que, &c.* Your Majesty has at last triumphed over your enemies, and you convince them that, &c.

The King's children, and grand-children, are called *Enfans de France*. His Brother's children, when he has any, are called *Petits-fils de France*. The eldest Prince (*le fils aîné de France*) is called *Dauphin*. In speaking of him, we say *Monseigneur* only, and he is never called *Royal Highness*: as *J'aurai l'honneur de dire à Monseigneur que j'ai exécuté ses ordres*. The other Princes, his brothers, have divers titles, according to their appendages: as the Duke of Burgundy, the Duke of Anjou, &c. and they are called *Monseigneur*, with the title *Altesse Royale*.

The princesses of France, the King's daughters, are called *Mesdames de France*, as soon as they are born: *Madame de France l'aînée*, *Madame de France puînée*, *Madame de France troisième*.

The King's Brother is called *Monsieur* only, when he is spoken of; but when we speak to him, we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre Altesse Royale*,

*Les Petites-filles de France*, have the title of *Mademoiselle*. If there is but one, she is called *Mademoiselle* only; if she has any sisters, they take besides the title of some appendage: as *Mademoiselle de Clermont*, *Mademoiselle de Charolois*, &c. When we speak to them, we say *Mademoiselle*, *Votre Altesse Royale*.

The Princes of the Royal Blood, but who are not *Petits-fils de France*, are called, the first *Monsieur le Prince*, the second *Monsieur le Duc*: the others have the title of some appendage or other: and when we speak to them, we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre Altesse Sérénissime*. The late Regent of France, great-grand-father of the present Duke of Orléans (1790), was *Petit-fils de France*, being son to Gaston, Lewis the XIVth's brother. The present Duke of Orléans is only the first Prince of the blood. The son of *Mr. le Duc*'s title is Prince of *Condé*, and that of the Prince of *Condé*'s son is Duke of Bourbon: The present Prince of *Condé*'s son is Duke of Bourbon, as the late Duke of Bourbon was his father.

The *Dauphin*'s Consort is called *Madame la Dauphine*, and those of the children, grand-children, and Princes of the blood, have the same title as the Princes their Consorts.

When the King dies, his Queen is called *la Reine-Mère*; and *Madame la Dauphine*, then Queen, is called *la Reine*. If there were more Queens, as we have seen lately in Spain, the next to the *Queen-Mother* is called *Reine-Douairière*. The Widows of the Princes of the blood are also called *Douairières* (Dowagers).

As to the Princes that are not of the Royal Blood, they are called *Mon Prince*, *Votre Altesse*.

The Chancellor of France, the Keeper of the Seals, the Members of the Council, and the four Secretaries of State, the Dukes and Peers, the *Contrôleur général*, and *les Intendants* (the Lieutenants of the Counties) are called *Monseigneur*, with the title of *Grandeur*, when we speak or write to them: in speaking of them, we say only *Monsieur le Chancelier*, *Monsieur de Maurepas*.

The Marshals of France, Lieutenants General, and Ambassadors titles are *Monseigneur*, *Votre Excellence*.

We say to the Parliaments, to the *Chambres des Parlemens* (the Houses of Parliaments) and other sovereign Companies (*collectively*), *Nos Seigneurs du Parlement*, *Nos Seigneurs de la Grande Chambre*. To their Speakers (*les Présidens des Parlemens*) the Attorneys-General of Parliaments, and other sovereign Courts (*distributively*) we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre grandeur*. But *les Avocats-généraux*, *les Substituts*, *les Conseillers*, and other Magistrates, are called only *Monsieur*.

The

The Consorts to the Chancellor, Marshals, *les Présidens*, and Ambassadors, as likewise those of Dukes, Counts, Marquisses, and Barons, are called *Madame la Chancelière*, *Madame la Maréchale*, *la Présidente*, *l'Ambassadrice*, *Madame la Duchesse*, *la Marquise*, *la Comtesse*, &c. with the titles of *Grandeur* and *Excellence*, if their husbands have them : but we don't say *Madame la Chevalière*.

The Bishop of Rome is called *le Pape* (Pope), with the titles of *Très-Saint Père*, *Votre Sainteté* (most holy Father, your Holiness). His Legates, and Apostolic Nuncios, have the title of *Excellence* ; the Cardinals, that of *Eminence*, and the Archbishops and Bishops, that of *Grandeur* ; and in speaking to them we say, *Monseigneur*, *vosre Eminence*, *vosre Grandeur*. The direction of a letter, or of a Dedication to them, is *A son Eminence Monseigneur le Cardinal*. *A Monseigneur l'Illustrissime Et Révérendissime Archevêque*, or *Evêque*. We also write *Au Roi*, *A Monseigneur le Dauphin*.

Any other person, of what condition or rank soever they are, as *Marquis*, *Comte*, *Baron*, *Chevalier*, are also called *Monsieur*, the French having nothing to answer these petty English titles, *Worship*, *Honour*, *Reverence*, *Esquire*. But in speaking to them, we say *Monsieur le Comte*, *Mr. le Chevalier*.

When we speak to one below us in the world, as a Gentleman to a Tradesman, we add his name to *Mr.* as *Monsieur Renaut*, *je suis content de votre ouvrage, mais je trouve que vous êtes bien cher* ; *Mr. Renaut*, I like your work very well, but think that you are very dear. To a soldier we say *Camarade* ; to a countryman, and others of the lowest class of people, we say *mon ami*, *bon homme*, *bonne femme*.

I had almost forgot to say, that Lawyers at the Bar call one another *Maître*, instead of *Monsieur* : as *Maître Patru*, *Maître Chevalier*, &c.

The expressions of tenderness, used among the French, are *mon cher*, *ma chère* ; *mon ami*, *mon cher ami*, *ma chère amie* ; *mon cœur*, *mon cher cœur* ; *mon petit*, *ma petite*. But we do not say, as the English, *mon âme*, *ma chère âme*, *ma précieuse*, *ma chère précieuse*, &c.

Children call their Parents *mon cher père*, *ma chère mère*, *mon frère*, *ma sœur*, *mon oncle*, *ma cousine* : the pronoun possessive must not be left out, as in English, *Father*, *Sister*, *Cousin*, &c. They call their Nurses *mamie*, *ma bonne*, (a contraction for *mon amie*, *ma bonne amie*) : and they are called by them *mon fils*, *ma fille*, *mon cher*, *mon poulet*, *ma poule*.

School boys call their Master *Monsieur*, and they are called by him by their Proper names, and never by the Christian one. Sometimes he calls his boys *mon ami*, *petit garçon*.

To

To conclude, the French language does not suffer many things to be called by their true names, either in conversation or writing, which can be expressed so in Latin, and other languages, without any indecency; but requires that they be expressed with Circumlocutions and Periphrases.

§ X. *Observations upon the writing of Letters.*

1°. Mr. Vaugelas pretends that a letter must not begin with *Monsieur, Madame, Monseigneur*, on account of these words being already at the top of the page. Indeed it is better to avoid the repeating of them, if possible: but, upon the whole, it is not so shocking, as it seemed to our author.

2°. These same words must never be repeated in the same period, tho' it is ever so long; and the writer must endeavour to place them, either mediately or immediately, after the pronoun *vous*; as

*Il n'appartient qu'à vous, Monsieur, de, &c.*

It becomes you alone, Sir, to, &c.

*Pour vous dire, Madame, ce que je pense, &c.*

To tell you, Madam, what I think, &c.

These honorary terms come also very properly after these conjunctions Copulative and Transitive, beginning sentences: as *Après tout, Monsieur,—Au reste, Monseigneur,—C'est pourquoi, Madame,—But*

3°. A special care ought to be taken, lest those terms should come in some part of the sentence, where they might cause a ridiculous equivocation, as next after a verb active: as

*Je ne veux pas acheter, Madame, si peu de chose à si haut prix;*  
I won't buy, Madam, so small a matter at so dear a rate.

*Je ne doute pas que vous n'ayez reçu, Monsieur, ce que je vous ai envoyé;*

I doubt not but you have received, Sir, what I sent you.

We write

*Je ne doute pas, Monsieur, que, &c. Je ne veux pas, Madame, &c.*

4°. If the letter is written to a King, a Prince, or a person of a distinguished rank, and it is not a long one, the terms of *Votre Majesté, Votre Altesse, Votre Excellence, Votre Grandeur*, must be used with the pronoun *elle* instead of *vous*. If the letter is pretty long, *vous* may be used for variety (tho' not often); but it must always be attended by *Votre Majesté, Votre Grandeur, &c.*

5°. Never begin a letter thus: *J'ai reçu la vôtre du premier du courant ou du vingt-six du passé*; I have received yours of the

1st instant, or the 26th past: or *Vous verrez par celle-ci, &c.* You will see by this, &c. *Celle-ci, la vôtre, le courant, and le passé*, supposing always an antecedent, expressed before, to which they relate. However, as merchants don't scruple to write in this manner, those expressions may be looked upon as appropriated to trade, and merchants business; but quite banished from polite correspondence.

6°. Lastly, never end a letter, as in English, with a noun governed by a preposition. Therefore the ending of letters in the following manner won't do in French, and is contrary to the genius of the language, inasmuch as the words are in a wrong order and false construction:

*Permettez moi de prendre le titre de, Monsieur, ou le titre, Monsieur, de votre très-humble Serviteur.* Permit me to take the title of, Sir, your most humble Servant.

*Vous connoîtrez dans peu que vous n'avez pas obligé un ingrat, en faisant un plaisir à, Monsieur, V. T. H. S.* You will see in a short time that you have not obliged an ungrateful person in doing a kindness to, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

*Il n'y a point de service qui ne vous doive être rendu par Mons. V. T. H. S.* There is no service but ought to be done to you by Sir, Y. H. S.

*Sachant bien qu'il n'y a rien que vous ne voulussiez faire pour, Mr. V. T. H. S.* Knowing very well that there's nothing but what you would do for, Sir, Y. H. S.

Therefore nothing but a noun, expressing the subject or object of a verb, can end a letter; thus

*J'ai l'honneur d'être, Mr. V. T. H. S.*

I have the honour to be, Sir, Y. H. S.

*Faites-moi l'honneur de me croire, Monsieur, V. T. H. S.*

Do me the honour to believe me, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

§ XI. Of some Adnouns, whose signification is different, according to the different placing of them, before or after some nouns.

These adnouns are fourteen or fifteen in number, which import, in the examples in the second column, quite different ideas than they do, considered as adnouns only, as in the first column.

bonne	{	Un bon homme;	Un homme bon;
		An honest man.	A civil man.
brave	{	Un brave homme;	Un homme brave;
		An honest man, a gentleman.	One that has courage.

gentil,

<i>gentil,</i>	<i>Un Gentilhomme;</i> A man nobly descended.	<i>Un homme gentil;</i> A genteel man.
<i>pauvre,</i>	<i>Un homme pauvre;</i> A poor man.	<i>Un pauvre homme;</i> A man without genius or parts.
<i>sage,</i>	<i>Une femme sage;</i> A sober discreet woman.	<i>Une sage-femme;</i> A midwife.
<i>grosse,</i>	<i>Une grosse femme;</i> A big fat woman.	<i>Une femme grosse;</i> A woman with child.
<i>cruel,</i>	<i>Une femme cruelle;</i> A cruel woman.	<i>Une cruelle femme;</i> A hard woman.
<i>galant,</i>	<i>Un galant homme;</i> A clever well-bred man, a complete gentleman.	<i>Un homme galant;</i> One who runs after ladies.
<i>plaisant,</i>	<i>Un homme plaisant;</i> A good, merry, facetious companion.	<i>Un plaisant homme;</i> A ridiculous and impertinent fellow.
<i>vilain,</i>	<i>Un vilain homme;</i> A disagreeable man.	<i>Un homme vilain;</i> A niggardly fellow.
<i>furieux,</i>	<i>Un furieux animal;</i> A huge creature.	<i>Un animal furieux;</i> A fierce creature.
<i>certain,</i>	<i>Une nouvelle certaine;</i> True, or sure news (the certainty whereof cannot be questioned.)	<i>Une certaine nouvelle;</i> A certain piece of news (but which requires confirmation.)
<i>grand,</i>	<i>Avoir l'air grand;</i> To have a noble aspect, to look grand.  <i>Un grand homme;</i> A great man.	<i>Avoir le grand air;</i> To copy after great folks, To make a great figure, to live grand.  <i>Un homme grand;</i> A tall man.

Again, *Grand*, speaking of a man, is said with respect to his merit, parts, and stature; whereas speaking of a woman, it is said with respect to her stature only. Thus *un grand homme* may equally well signify a tall man, and one of great parts and merit: but *une grande femme* signifies only a tall woman.

These five, used only in the following ways of speaking, are indeclinable.

court,	Il <sup>s</sup> sont demeurés court ;	Elles sont demeurées court ;
	They were mum, or	They were at a stand.
fort,	Il se fait fort de, &c. Elle se fait fort de, &c. Il se font, &c.	
	He takes upon him to, &c. She takes, &c. They, &c.	
haut,	Vous êtes assise trop haut,	You sit too high, } said of a
bas,	Elle est assise trop bas,	She sits too low. } woman,
bon,	Des deniers revenant bon,	So much money good, the re-
	mainder of a sum of money.	

*Feu, feue* (late) is an adjective without plural, and even without feminine when it is placed before the article, and we say

*Feu la reine,* } the late queen.  
*La feue reine,* }

§ XI. A List of the Nouns which are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Un aigle,	an eagle.	L'aigle Romaine, or Impériale,	{ the Roman, or Imperial eagle.
Un Ange,	an Angel.	Une ange,	a sort of fish.
Un aune,	an alder-tree.	Une aune,	an ell.
Un Barbe,	a Barb (a horse).	Une barbe,	a beard.
Un Capre, Corsair,	a privateer.	Une capre,	a caper (fruit).
Le carpe,	(part of the wrist).	Une carpe,	a carp.
Le carouge,	the carob-tree.	La carouge,	{ the carob-bean (its fruit).
Un coche,	a caravan.	Une coche,	{ a sow, (fig) a wo- man noisomely fat.
Un cornette,	{ a cornet (of a troop of horse.)	Une cor- nette,	{ a woman's cornet, (a head-dress.)
Un couple,	{ a couple, (two people united to- gether.)	Une couple,	{ a pair, a yoke, a brace (two things together).
Un Cravate, a Croatian	(Soldier).	Une cravate,	{ a cravat (neck- cloth).
Un Enseigne,	an Ensign.	Une enseigne,	a sign (a post-sign).
Le SaintCrème,	{ Crism, (oint- ment used in popishworship).	De la crème,	cream.
Un exemple,	{ an example, a pattern.	Une exem- ple,	{ a copy for writing, or drawing.
Le fin d'une affaire,	{ the main, or chief point of a business.	La fin d'une affaire,	{ the end, or con- clusion of a thing, or business.
Le fin des choses, the nicest point, the quintessence of things.			

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	
Un foret,	<i>a piercer.</i>	Une forêt,	<i>a forest.</i>
Le foudre de Jupiter,	<i>Jupiter's thunder-bolt.</i>	La foudre,	<i>the thunder (a poetical expression for le tonnerre).</i>
Un foudre de guerre,	<i>a warlike general, dreaded by his enemies, (a figurative expression).</i>		
Un garde,	<i>one of the guards.</i>	Une garde,	<i>many soldiers to guard to wait on somebody.</i>
Un garde du corps,	<i>a life guard-man.</i>	Une garde,	<i>a nurse (for sick persons).</i>
Le Greffe,	<i>the Rolls.</i>	La greffe,	<i>the graft.</i>
Le Gueule,	<i>the Gules (in Heraldry).</i>	La gueule,	<i>the mouth (of a dog, cat, &amp;c.)</i>
Le hâle,	<i>drying weather.</i>	La halle,	<i>a market hall.</i>
Un huitième,	<i>the eighth part of something.</i>	Une huitième,	<i>a sequence of 8 cards at piquet.</i>
Un livre,	<i>a book.</i>	Une livre,	<i>a pound.</i>
Un loutre,	<i>a sort of hat.</i>	Une loutre,	<i>an otter.</i>
Un manœuvre,	<i>a labourer.</i>	Une manœuvre,	<i>the working of a ship; also secret practices in an affair.</i>
Un manche,	<i>a handle.</i>	Une manche,	<i>a sleeve.</i>
		La manche,	<i>the channel.</i>
Un mémoire,	<i>a bill, also a writing wherein facts are set down.</i>	Une bonne mémoire,	<i>a good memory.</i>
Un Mestre de camp,	<i>a Colonel of horse.</i>	La Mestre de camp,	<i>the first company of a regiment of horse.</i>
Un mode,	<i>a mood, modality.</i>	Une mode,	<i>a fashion.</i>
Un mole,	<i>a mole, a pier.</i>	Une mole,	<i>a tympany, or moon-calf.</i>
Un moule,	<i>a mould (to cast).</i>	Une moule,	<i>a muscle (a shell-fish).</i>
Un mouffe,	<i>a cabin boy.</i>	De la mouffe,	<i>moss.</i>
Un bon office,	<i>a good turn.</i>	Une Office,	<i>a buttery.</i>
L'office divin,	<i>the divine service.</i>		
Le St. Office,	<i>the Inquisition.</i>	Une ombre,	<i>a shade, shadow.</i>
L'hombre, ombre (a card game.)			

Un

## Masculine.

Un page,	a page.
Un palme,	a hand's breadth.
Un parallèle,	a comparison.
Un pendule,	a pendulum.
Le période,	{ pitch, summit, end. (in figur. sense)
(in figur. sense)	
Un pique,	a spade (at cards).
Un pivoine,	a gnat-snapper.
Un poêle,	a stove.
Un plane, or	{ a plane tree.
platane,	
Un poste,	{ a post, place, station, employment.
Le Ponte,	Ponto.
Le pourpre,	{ purples (a sort of distemper with a violent fever).
	{ the sign, or sound to call back a hawk.
Le réclame,	{
Un Sotyre,	a sylvan god.
Un somme,	a nap.
Un souris,	a smile.
Le temple,	the church.
Un triomphe,	a triumph.
Un trompette,	{ he who sounds the charge.
Un voile,	a veil.
Un tour,	a turn, trick, tour.
Un teneur de	{ a book-keeper.
livres,	
Un vase,	a jar, a vessel.
Le grand œuvre,	{ the philosopher's stone.

## Feminine.

Une page,	the page of a book.
Une palme,	{ a branch of a palm tree..
Une parallèle,	a parallel-line.
Une pendule,	a clock.
Une période,	{ a revolution, epocha; period (in a speech).
Une pique,	a pike.
De la pivoine,	piony.
Une poêle,	a frying-pan.
Une plane,	{ a plane (instrument of steel).
La poste,	{ The Post-boy, or the Post-office, &c.
La ponte (des oiseaux)	bird's egg.
La pourpre,	{ the purple colour, also the mark of cardinalship, &c.
La réclame,	{ the catch-word (at the bottom of a page).
Une satire,	a lampoon, satire.
Une somme,	a sum.
Une souris,	a mouse.
La tempe,	{ (called by some people la temple, but very improperly), the temple of the head.
Une triomphe,	trump at cards.
Une trompette,	a trumpet.
Une voile,	a sail.
Une tour,	a tower.
La teneur	{ the tenor, or contents of a writing.
d'un acte,	
La vase,	mud, or mire.
Une bonne œuvre,	{ a good deed.

§ XIII. *A List of Nouns that have also their Feminine Gender, because they are applied to both Sexes, and are nouns but improperly. They, for the most part, follow the rules of adnouns, adding only e to the final letter of their masculine, or doubling its last consonant before e.*

<i>Masc. Gender.</i>		<i>Fem. Gender.</i>	
Dieu,	God,	Déesse,	Goddess.
Roi,	King,	Reine,	Queen.
Empereur,	Emperor,	Impératrice,	Empress.
Sultan,	Sultan,	Sultane,	Sultana.
Prince,	Prince,	Princesse,	Princess.
Duc,	Duke,	Duchesse,	Dutchess.
Comte,	Count, Earl,	Comtesse,	Countess.
Baron,	Baron,	Bâronne,	Baroness.
Marquis,	Marquis,	Marquise,	Marchioness.
Ambassadeur,	Ambassador,	Ambassadrice,	his Lady.
Electeur,	Electer,	Electrice, Electress,	(his Lady).
Régent,	Regent,	Régente,	Regent.
Marié,	the Bridegroom,	Mariée,	a Bride.
Epoux,	Spouse,	Epouse,	Spouse.
Mari,	Husband,	Femme,	Wife.
Père,	Father,	Mère,	Mother.
Frère,	Brother,	Sœur,	Sister.
Fils,	Son,	Fille,	Daughter.
Aïeul,	Grandfather,	Aïeule,	Grandmother.
Cousin,	He-Cousin,	Cousine,	She Cousin.
Cousin germain,	He first Cousin,	Cousine germaine,	{ She first Cousin.
Neveu,	Nephew,	Nièce,	Niece.
Parrain,	God-father,	Marraine,	God mother.
Filleul,	God-son.	Filleule,	God-daughter.
Parent,	Relation, Kinsman,	Parente,	Kinswoman.
Allié,	Kin,	Alliée,	Kin.
Jumeau,	a Twin,	Jumelle,	a Twin.
Ami,	a Friend,	Amie,	a She-Friend.
Compagnon,	a He-Companion,	Compagne,	a She-Companion.
Mignon,	Darling,	Mignonne,	Darling.
Compère,	a He-Gossip,	Commère,	a She-Gossip.
Voisin,	a He-Neighbour,	Voisine,	a She Neighbour.
Hôte,	Landlord,	Hôtesse,	Landlady.
Héritier,	an Heir,	Héritière,	an Heiress.
			Veuf,

## Masc. Gender.

## Fem. Gender.

Veuf,	<i>a Widower,</i>	Veuve,	<i>a Widow.</i>
Orphelin,	<i>an Orphan,</i>	Orpheline,	<i>a She-Orphan.</i>
Maître,	<i>Master,</i>	Maîtresse,	<i>Mistress.</i>
Serviteur,	<i>Servant,</i>	Servante,	<i>Servant.</i>
Gouverneur,	<i>Governor,</i>	Gouvernante,	<i>Governess.</i>
Tuteur,	<i>He-Guardian,</i>	Tutrice,	<i>She Guardian.</i>
Ecolier,	<i>a He-Scholar,</i>	Ecolière,	<i>a She-Scholar.</i>
un Pupille,	<i>a He-Pupil,</i>	une Pupille,	<i>a She-Pupil.</i>
un Apprenti,	<i>a Prentice,</i>	une Apprentie,	<i>a Prentice-Girl.</i>
Bâtard,	<i>a He Bastard,</i>	Bâtarde,	<i>a She-Bastard.</i>
Curateur,	<i>a Trustee,</i>	Curatrice,	<i>a She-Trustee.</i>
Protecteur,	<i>Protector,</i>	Protectrice,	<i>Protectrix.</i>
Bienfaiteur,	<i>Benefactor,</i>	Bienfaitrice,	<i>Benefactress.</i>
Médiateur,	<i>Mediator,</i>	Médiatrice,	<i>Mediatrix.</i>
Testateur,	<i>Testator,</i>	Testatrice,	<i>Testatrix.</i>
Conservateur,	<i>Conservator,</i>	Conservatrice *,	<i>Conservatrix.</i>
Moteur,	<i>Mover,</i>	Motrice *,	<i>Motive.</i>
Débiteur,	<i>Debtor,</i>	Débitrice,	<i>a Woman Debtor.</i>
Demandeur,	<i>Plaintiff,</i>	Demanderesse,	} <i>Law Terms.</i>
Défendeur,	<i>Defendant,</i>	Défenderesse,	
Abbé,	<i>Abbot,</i>	Abbësse,	<i>Abbess.</i>
Prieur,	<i>Prior,</i>	Prieure,	<i>the Prior Nun.</i>
Prêtre,	<i>a Priest,</i>	Prêtresse,	<i>Priestess.</i>
Religieux,	<i>a Friar,</i>	Religieuse,	<i>a Nun.</i>
Un Profès,	<i>a profess'd Monk,</i>	Professe,	<i>a profess'd Nun.</i>
Lecteur,	<i>Reader,</i>	Lectrice,	} <i>(said only of the Nun who reads while the Nuns are at dinner or supper.)</i>
Portier,	<i>Porter,</i>	Portière,	
Chanoine,	<i>a Canon,</i>	Chanoinesse,	<i>a She-Canon.</i>
Pécheur,	<i>Sinner,</i>	Pécheresse,	<i>She-Sinner.</i>
Vengeur,	<i>Avenger,</i>	Vengeresse,	<i>She-Avenger.</i>
Flatteur,	<i>a Flatterer,</i>	Flatteuse,	<i>She-Flatterer.</i>
Enchanteur,	<i>Bewitcher,</i>	Enchanteresse,	<i>Inchantress.</i>
Acteur,	<i>an Actor,</i>	Actrice,	<i>Actress.</i>
Comédien,	<i>a Comedian,</i>	Comédienne,	<i>a She Comedian.</i>
Berger,	<i>a Shepherd,</i>	Bergère,	<i>a Shepherdess.</i>
un Payſan,	<i>a Country-man,</i>	une Payſanne,	<i>a Country Girl.</i>
Chien,	<i>a Dog,</i>	Chienne,	<i>a Bitch.</i>

\* Used only in these dogmatical expressions, Faculté conservatrice, The conservatrix faculty; Vertu motrice, The motive virtue.

Masc. Gender.		Fem. Gender.	
Lion,	a Lion,	Lionne,	a Lioness.
Tigre,	a Tyger,	Tigresse,	a Tygress.
Lévrier,	a Greyhound,	Levrette,	a Greyhound-Bitch.
un Chat,	a Cat,	une Chatte,	a She-Cat.
Ivrogne,	a drunken Man,	Ivrognesse,	a drunken Woman.
Courtaud,	a short thick-set Man,	Courtaude,	{ a short thick-set Woman.
Noiraud,	one of a black complexion,	Noiraude.	
Lourdaud,	an awkward Fellow,	Lourdaude,	an awkward Wench.
Menteur,	a Liar,	Menteuse,	a She-Liar.
Traître,	a Traitor,	Traïtresse,	a She-Traitor.
Diable,	Devil.	Diablesse,	a She-Devil.
Coquin,	a Rascal, a Rogue,	Coquine,	Baggage, She-Rogue.
Maquereau,	a Pimp,	Maquerelle,	a Bawd.
Prisonnier,	a Prisoner,	Prisonnière,	a She-Prisoner.
Marchand,	a Merchant,	Marchande,	a Shopkeeper woman.
Cuifinier,	a Man-cook,	Cuifinière,	a Maid-cook.

Names of women, that sell any thing in shops, take a feminine termination in this manner :

Boulangier,	a Baker,	Boulangère.
Meûnier,	a Miller,	Meûnière.
Fruitier,	one that sells Fruit,	Fruitière.
Vendeur,	any Seller,	Vendeuse.
Faiseur,	any Workman,	Faiseuse.
Ouvrier,	or Tradesman,	Ouvrière, &c.

*Témoin*, a Witness, *Auteur*, an Author, and *Poète*, a Poet, are said of both men and women. *Possesseur*, Possessor, and *Successeur*, Successor, are never said of women ; but we say : *Inventeur* or *Inventrice*, Inventor.

*More*, a Black-moor, makes also *Moresque* ; and

*Suisse*, a Swiss, *Suisse* ; tho' we say also *Penser à la Suisse*, To think on nothing.

§ XIV. A List of Adnouns used substantively, but which cannot stand by themselves in English, without a noun, such as Man, Woman, Fellow, or some such word, or are englished by Nouns, or a Periphrase.

Un abandonné,	{ a lewd profligate fellow.	Une abandonnée,	{ a lewd loose woman.
---------------	-----------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

L'ac-

L'accessoire,	what is necessary.	Faire le fâché,	{ to act the an- gry person, to pretend to be angry.
L'accidentel,	what is accidental.	-la fâchée,	
Une accouchée,	{ a woman in the straw.	Le faux,	what is false.
Un avorton,	an abortive child.	Le fort,	{ the strongest part of a thing.
L'agréable,	agreeableness.	Le foible,	the weak side of a thing.
L'essentiel,	the main thing.	Les foibles,	the feeble minded.
L'utile,	usefulness.	Le gras,	the fat.
L'honnête,	what is honest.	Le maigre,	the lean.
L'accusé,-ée,	the party accused.	Un galeux,	{ a scabby man, or -euse, } woman.
Un affran-	{ one that of bond is chi, ie, } made free.	Un ignorant,	an ignorant fellow.
Un audacieux,	{ a daring rash -euse, } man or woman.	Imprudent,-te,	a foolish fellow.
Un barbare,	a barbarous man.	Un impudent,	{ an impudent -te, } fellow or slut.
Le beau,	{ what is fairest, best in any thing, ex- cellency, &c.	Impudique,	{ a lewd man or woman.
Le beau & l'ef-	{ the fair and froyable, } the foul.	Incommode,	a troublesome person.
Une belle,	a fair one.	Impertinent,-te,	{ an imper- tinent cox- Importun,-e, } combor slut.
Les belles,	the fair sex.	Un inconnu,	{ an unknown per- -ue, } son.
Le bon,	what is good.	Un incrédule,	an unbeliever.
Brailleur,	{ a noisy, obstrepe- rous fellow; a -euse, } bawling noisy wo- man.	Un indiscret,	{ an indiscreet man -ette, } or woman.
Le brillant,	the brilliancy.	Un, une in-	{ an infamous per- fâme, } son.
Le brûlé,	something burnt.	Un ingrat,	{ an ungrateful -te, } wretch.
Un convié,	a guest.	Un innocent,	{ an innocent, a -te, } silly person.
Capricieux,	{ a whimsical man -euse, } or woman.	Un insensé,-ée,	a mad person.
Délicat,-cate,	a nice person.	Un insolent,-te,	{ a saucy per- son.
Un désespéré,	{ a desperate man -ée, } or woman.	L'intérieur,	{ the inward part of a thing.
Un déterminé,	{ a resolute, de- sperate fellow.	Un lénitif,	a lenitive.
Un dévot,	{ a religious man or -ote, } woman.	L'extérieur,	{ the outward part of a thing, the outside.
Un élu, les élus,	an elect, the elect.		
Un entêté,	{ an obstinate per- -ée, } son.		

Un malheureux-euse,	a wretch.	Le sec,	the dry.
La mariée,	the bride.	L'humide,	the moist.
Un, une misérable,	a pitiful, good for nothing wretch.	Le froid,	the cold.
Un méchant,	a naughty person.	Le chaud,	the hot.
-ante,		Un suffisant,	a conceited coxcomb.
Un malotru,	a sad soul.	Le comique	{ the comical part of a thing or story.
Le merveilleux,	{ what is wonderful in any thing.	Le tragique,	the tragical part.
Le nécessaire,	{ necessities, a competency.	Le temporel,	{ a competency; the temporalities of the church.
Un obstiné,-ée,	{ an obstinate person.	Un rusé,-ée,	{ a cunning, sly man, or woman, a sharp blade.
Le possible,	what is possible.	Sanguin,-ine,	{ of a sanguine constitution.
Le principal,	the principal.	Un sensuel,	a voluptuous person.
Un préservatif,	a preservative.	Un sage,	a wise man.
Un purgatif,	a purgative.	Le sublime,	the lofty style.
Un orgueil-	a proud, haughty person.	Le solide,	what is solid.
leux, euse,		Un superstitieux, euse,	{ a superstitious man or woman.
L'impossible,	impossibilities.	Un extraor-	{ an extraordinary
Une prude,	a prude.	dinaire,	{ case.
Les prédestinés,	{ those that are predestinated.	L'extrême,	extreme.
Le réel,	the reality.	Un, une téméraire,	a rash person.
Un refait,	a draw game.	Le taillant,	{ the edge.
Un réfractaire,	{ a refractory person.	Le tranchant,	{
Un, une ridicule,	{ a ridiculous person.	Le vif,	the quick.
Le superflu,	{ that which is superfluous; superfluous.	Un vide,	an empty place.
		Le vrai,	what is true.

Besides adjectives of Nations, as *un Anglois, an English man, une Françoisse, a French woman, &c.*

#### Examples.

Le vrai ou le faux d'une chose ;	The truth or falsehood of something.
Tenter l'impossible ;	To attempt impossibilities.
Joindre l'agréable à l'utile ;	To join profit to pleasure.
C'est une orgueilleuse ;	She is a proud creature, &c.

Moreover

Moreover, some words are both adnouns and nouns together, such as *adultère*, *chagrin*, *colère*, *sacrilège*, *politique*: as *Commettre un adultère*, to commit an adultery; *une femme adultère*, an adulteress; *le chagrin*, grief; *un homme chagrin*, a morose, peevish man; *un homme colère*, a passionate man; *la colère de Dieu*, the wrath of God.

§ XV. A List of nouns masculine ending in e not sounded.

Abordage,	{ the boarding of a Ship.	Ancrage,	Anchorage.
Abyme,	an Abyss.	Ange,	an Angel.
Accessoire,	Accessory.	Archange,	an Archangel.
Acrostiche,	an Acrostick.	Angle,	an Angle.
Acte,	Deed, an Act.	Anniversaire,	Anniversary.
Adminicule,	an Aid.	Anonyme,	Anonymous.
Adverbe,	an Adverb.	Antropophage,	a Man eater.
Adultère,	Adultery.	Antidote,	an Antidote.
Afforage,	{ the Assize, or Price of a commodity, set by a magistrate.	Antimoine,	Antimony.
Âge,	Age.	Antipodes,	Antipodes.
Agapes,	Love feasts.	Antre,	a Den, a Cave.
Aggrave, a threatening Monitory.		Aoriste,	an Aoriste.
Agiotage,	Stock-jobbing.	Aphte,	an Aphthæ.
Aigle,	an Eagle.	Appanage,	Appendage.
Albâtre,	Alabaster.	Apogée,	Apogæon.
Alliage,	Mixture.	Apologue,	Apologue.
Alvéole,	{ a Hole in the honey-comb.	Apophthegme,	Apophthegm.
Amble,	Amble, or Pace.	Aposème,	an Apozem.
Ambre,	Amber.	Apostème,	an Imposthume.
Amphithéâtre,	{ an Amphitheatre.	Apôtre,	an Apostle.
Anglicisme,	an Anglicism.	Apothicaire,	an Apothecary.
Anachronisme,	Anachronism.	Arbitrage,	an Arbitration.
Anathème,	Anathema.	Arbitre,	Umpire, or Will.
Ancêtres,	Fore-fathers.	Arbre,	a Tree.
		Arbuste,	a Shrub.
		Archétype,	Archetype.
		Argue,	{ a Machine to wire-draw gold.
		Aromate,	sweet-smelling Herb.

Arpentage,	<i>the Survey of lands.</i>	Beurre,	<i>Butter.</i>
Arrérages,	<i>Arroars.</i>	Blâme,	<i>a Blame.</i>
Article,	<i>an Article.</i>	Blasphème,	<i>a Blasphemy.</i>
Artifice,	<i>Artifice, Trick.</i>	Bièvre,	<i>a Beaver.</i>
Arrhes,	<i>Earnest-penny.</i>	Billonage,	<i>the debasing the Coin.</i>
Âne,	<i>an Ass.</i>	Bitume,	<i>Bitumen.</i>
Astérisme,	<i>an Asterism.</i>	Blocage,	<i>Rubbish.</i>
Astérisque,	<i>an Asterisk.</i>	Bocage,	<i>a Grove.</i>
Asthme,	<i>an Asthma.</i>	Bordage,	<i>the Side-planks of a Ship.</i>
Astragale,	<i>Astragal.</i>	Bouge,	<i>a Closet, a little Room.</i>
Astre,	<i>a Star.</i>	Bouillage,	<i>Mud-walling.</i>
Astrolabe,	<i>an Astrolabe.</i>	Branchage,	<i>Branches.</i>
Afile,	<i>Afylum, a Sanctuary.</i>	Brûle,	<i>Motion, or Dance.</i>
Attelage,	<i>a Set of Coach Horses.</i>	Brassage,	<i>the coining of Money.</i>
Atterage,	<i>Landing.</i>	Bréviaire,	<i>a Breviary.</i>
Âtre,	<i>the Hearth in a Chimney.</i>	Breuvage,	<i>a Potion, a Draught.</i>
Avage,	<i>a duty which the hang- man has in some places every market day.</i>	Bronze,	<i>cast Copper.</i>
Avantage,	<i>an Advantage.</i>	Buffle,	<i>a wild Ox.</i>
Auditoire,	<i>a Congregation, Audience.</i>	Busque,	<i>a Busk.</i>
Augure,	<i>an Augury, Omen.</i>	Buste,	<i>a Bust.</i>
Aune,	<i>an Elder-Tree.</i>	Câble,	<i>a Cable.</i>
Aunage,	<i>measuring by Ells.</i>	Cadâvre,	<i>a Corpse.</i>
Auspice,	<i>Auspice.</i>	Câdre,	<i>a Frame.</i>
Automate,	<i>on Automaton.</i>	Caducée,	<i>Caduceum, Mercur- ry's Wand.</i>
Axe,	<i>an Axis, Axle-tree.</i>	Caïque,	<i>Galley-boat.</i>
Axiome,	<i>an Axiom.</i>	Calibre,	<i>Kind, Size.</i>
Azymes,	<i>Azymes.</i>	Calice,	<i>Chalice.</i>
Badinage,	<i>Wantonness.</i>	Calme,	<i>Calm.</i>
Baggage,	<i>Baggage, Goods.</i>	Calvaire,	<i>a Hill's name.</i>
Balustre,	<i>Balluster, Rails.</i>	Camphre,	<i>Camphire.</i>
Bandage,	<i>a Truss, Ligature.</i>	Cancré,	<i>a Crab-fish.</i>
Barbouillage,	<i>dawbing.</i>	Cantique,	<i>a spiritual Song.</i>
Barrage,	<i>a Duty for passage-toll.</i>	Capitole,	<i>the Capitol.</i>
Baptême,	<i>a Christening.</i>	Caprice,	<i>a Caprice, Whim.</i>
Baptistère,	<i>a Certificate out of a Church-book.</i>	Capricorne,	<i>the Capricorn.</i>
Baume,	<i>Balsam.</i>	Capuce,	<i>a Cowl.</i>
Bénéfice,	<i>a Living, Benefit.</i>	Caractère,	<i>a Character.</i>
		Carême,	<i>Lent.</i>
		Carénage,	<i>a Careening-place.</i>
		Carnage,	<i>Slaughter.</i>

Carrelage,

Carrelage, <i>the paving of a Room.</i>	Chrême,	Chrism.
Carrosse, <i>a Coach.</i>	Chyle,	Chyle.
Cartilage, <i>a Cartilage.</i>	Chômage,	Rest.
Cartouche, { <i>a Charge for a</i>	Ciboire, <i>a Box, a Cup.</i>	
		<i>small Gun.</i>
Capitulaire, { <i>a Register Book</i>	Cidre,	Cyder.
		<i>a Wax-taper.</i>
		<i>of a Monastery.</i>
Casque, <i>a Helmet.</i>	Cierge,	a Swan.
Catafalque, { <i>a Catafalk (used</i>	Cygne,	
		<i>Hair-cloth.</i>
		<i>in obsequies).</i>
Catalogue, <i>a Catalogue, List.</i>	Cilice,	a Cylinder.
Cataplasme, <i>a Cataplasm.</i>	Cylindre,	
Catarre, <i>a Catarrh.</i>	Cimeterre,	a Cimeter.
Catéchisme, <i>a Catechism.</i>	Cimetière,	a Church-yard.
Cautère, <i>a Caustery.</i>	Cinabre,	Cinabar.
Cèdre, <i>a Cedar-tree.</i>	Cinnamome, { <i>a sort of Cinna-</i>	
Centre, <i>the Center.</i>		<i>mon tree.</i>
Cénacle, <i>the Cenacle.</i>	Cintre,	an Arch.
Cénotaphe, <i>a Cenotaph.</i>	Cippe, <i>(a Term of Architecture.)</i>	
Centaure, <i>a Centaur.</i>	Cirage, <i>the waxing of a thing.</i>	
Centuple, <i>a Hundred fold.</i>	Ciroène,	a Sear-cloth.
Cercle, <i>a Circle.</i>	Circonflexe,	Circumflex.
Cerne, { <i>a circle black and blue</i>	Cirque,	Circus.
		<i>under the eye.</i>
Ceste, <i>Cestus.</i>	Cistre,	a Sistrum.
Chambranle, { <i>the Mantle-piece</i>	Clystère,	a Clyster.
		<i>of a chimney.</i>
Chancre, <i>a Shanker.</i>	Cloaque,	a Common-sewer.
Change, <i>Exchange.</i>	Cloître,	a Cloister.
Chanvre, <i>Hemp.</i>	Cloporte,	a Wood-louse.
Chapitre, <i>a Chapter.</i>	Coche,	a Caravan.
Chariage, <i>the Carriage.</i>	Code,	the Code.
Charme, { <i>Charm, also a</i>	Codicile,	a Codicil.
		<i>Hornbeam.</i>
Charnage, <i>Flesh time.</i>	Coffre,	a Trunk.
Chauffage, <i>Fuel.</i>	Collyre,	a Collyrium.
Chaume, <i>Stubble.</i>	Collège,	a College.
Chêne, <i>an Oak.</i>	Collègue, <i>Copartnér in an office.</i>	
Chèvre-seuille, <i>Honey suckle.</i>	Colloque,	a Conference.
Chef-d'œuvre, <i>a Master-piece.</i>	Comble, <i>the Top of a thing.</i>	
Chiffre, <i>a Cypher.</i>	Colosse,	a Colossus.
	Colure,	Colure.
	Commerce, <i>Commerce, Trade.</i>	
	Conclave, <i>the Conclave.</i>	
	Concile,	a Council.
	Conciliabule, <i>a Conventicle.</i>	
	Concombre, <i>a Cucumber.</i>	

Concubinage,	Concubinage.	Denticule,	Dentelli.
Cône,	a Cone.	Dentifrice,	Dentifrice.
Congre,	a Conger.	Dépilatoire,	Depilatory.
Compte, <i>an</i> Account, <i>Reckoning</i> .		Derrière,	the Back-side.
Conte,	a Story, <i>Fable</i> .	Désastre,	a Disaster.
Contraire,	contrary.	Désavantage,	a Disadvantage.
Contraste,	Contrast, <i>opposite</i> .	Désordre,	a Disorder.
Contre-ordre,	Counter order.	Diâble,	Devil.
Contrôle, <i>a</i> Register-book, <i>a</i> Roll.		Diadème,	a Diadem.
Conventicule,	Conventicle.	Diagnostique,	Diagnostick.
Corpuscule,	a Corpuscle.	Dialecte,	Dialect.
Cortège, <i>a</i> Train, or <i>Retinue</i> .		Dialogue,	a Dialogue.
Coryphée, <i>Coripheus</i> , the Chief.		Diamètre,	the Diameter.
Corollaire,	a Corollary.	Diaphragme,	the Diaphragm.
Cothurne,	a Buskin.	Dictame,	Garden-ginger.
Courage,	Courage.	Dièse,	a Sharp, <i>Diesis</i> .
Coude,	the Elbow.	Digeste,	Digest.
Couvercle,	a Lid.	Diocèse,	a Diocese.
Crépuscule,	the Twilight.	Disque,	Disk, <i>Quoit</i> .
Crible,	a Sieve.	Distique,	a Distich.
Cube,	a Cube.	Dictionnaire,	a Dictionary.
Cuivre,	Copper.	Dimanche,	Sunday.
Culte,	Worship.	Dilemme,	a Dilemma.
Coutre,	a Coulter.	Dimissoire,	a Dimissory.
Crâne,	a Skull.	Dire, <i>and</i> oui-dire,	a Hear-say.
Crêpe,	a Crape.	Dividende,	a Dividend.
Crime,	a Crime.	Divorce,	Divorce.
Crocodile,	a Crocodile.	Dogme,	a Dogma.
Cycle,	Cycle.	Dogue,	a Mastiff dog.
Dactyle,	a Dactyl.	Domaine,	Domain.
Déboire, <i>Grief</i> , <i>a</i> Choak-pear.		Domicile, <i>Abode</i> , <i>Dwelling-place</i> .	
Décalogue,	the Decalogue.	Dommage,	a Damage.
Décagone,	a Decagon.	Douaire,	a Dowry.
Dédale,	a Maze.	Double,	the Double.
Décombres,	Rubbish.	Doute,	a Doubt.
Décompte,	discounting.	Dromadaire,	a Dromedary.
Définitoire,	{ a Chapter in a congregation.	Echange,	Exchange.
Décuple,		Ecoufle,	a Puttock.
Délire,	Tenfold.	Edifice,	an Edifice.
Délivre,	Delirium.	Elleboire,	Hellebore.
Déluge,	the Secundine.	Eloge,	Eulogy, <i>Encomium</i> .
Démérite,	a Flood.	Emétique,	Emetick.
	Demerit.	Empire,	an Empire.
			Empyrée,

Empyrée,	<i>the highest Heaven.</i>	Fauchage,	<i>Mowing.</i>
Entrecolonne,	<i>Intercolumniation.</i>	Fenêtrage,	<i>the Windows.</i>
Enthousiasme,	<i>Enthusiasm.</i>	Fermage,	<i>Farm rent.</i>
Entracte,	<i>an Interlude.</i>	Feurre,	<i>Straw.</i>
Epiderme,	<i>Epidermis.</i>	Feûtre,	<i>Felt, a scurvy Hat.</i>
Epididyme,	<i>Epididym's.</i>	Fiacre,	<i>a Hackney-coach.</i>
Epigastre,	<i>Epigastrium.</i>	Fifre,	<i>a Fife (or Flute.)</i>
Epiglote,	<i>Epiglottis.</i>	Filage,	<i>Spinning.</i>
Epilogue,	<i>an Epilogue.</i>	Filigiane,	<i>Filigrean.</i>
Episode,	<i>an Episode.</i>	Filigrame,	<i>Filigram.</i>
Epithalame,	<i>Epithalamium.</i>	Filtre,	<i>Charm, Love-potion.</i>
Epitôme,	<i>an Epitome.</i>	Finage,	<i>the Extent or Liberties of a jurisdiction.</i>
Epitoge,	<i>a Badge of dignity.</i>	Flegme,	<i>Phlegm.</i>
Equilibre,	<i>Equilibrium.</i>	Fleuve,	<i>a great River.</i>
Equipage,	<i>an Equipage.</i>	Foible,	<i>a weak Side.</i>
Equinoxe,	<i>Equinox.</i>	Foie,	<i>the Liver.</i>
Esclandre,	<i>a Buffle.</i>	Fossile,	<i>Fossil.</i>
Esclavage,	<i>Slavery.</i>	Follicole,	<i>Follicle.</i>
Escompte,	<i>Discount.</i>	Formulaire,	<i>a Form.</i>
Esophage,	<i>Oesophage.</i>	Fouage,	<i>Hearth-money.</i>
Espace,	<i>Space.</i>	Fourage,	<i>Fodder, Forage.</i>
Etage,	<i>a Story.</i>	Frêne,	<i>an Ash tree.</i>
Etallage,	<i>Stallage, Sample.</i>	Fromage,	<i>Cheese.</i>
Être,	<i>a Being.</i>	Frontispice,	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
Evangile,	<i>the Gospel.</i>	Gage,	<i>Pledge.</i>
Exemple,	<i>a Pattern.</i>	Gages, (only in pl.)	<i>Salary Wages.</i>
Exemplaire,	<i>a Copy.</i>	Gallicisme,	<i>a Gallicism.</i>
Exergue, the	<i>Exergue of a Medal.</i>	Genièvre,	<i>Juniper berry.</i>
Exercice,	<i>an Exercise.</i>	Génie,	<i>Genius.</i>
Exorde,	<i>an Exordium.</i>	Gente,	<i>Kind, Gender.</i>
Exode,	<i>Exodus.</i>	Germe,	<i>Sperm, Germ.</i>
Exorcisme,	<i>Exorcism.</i>	Geste,	<i>Gesture, Action.</i>
Extraordinaire,	<i>extraordinary Case.</i>	Gingembre,	<i>Ginger.</i>
Extrême,	<i>an Extreme.</i>	Girofle,	<i>Clives.</i>
Faîte, the	<i>Top, height of a thing.</i>	Gîte,	<i>a Dwelling-place.</i>
Fanage,	<i>Hay-making.</i>	Glaire,	<i>the white of an egg.</i>
Fantôme,	<i>a Phantom.</i>	Glaive,	<i>a Sword.</i>
Fare,	<i>Fare (a watch-tower).</i>	Globe,	<i>a Globe.</i>
Fascinage,	<i>Fascine-work.</i>	Globule,	<i>a Globule.</i>
Faste,	<i>Ostentation.</i>	Glossaire,	<i>a Glossary.</i>
Fastes,	<i>the Roman Calendar.</i>	Gîte,	<i>a Gulch.</i>
		Gouffre,	<i>Gouffre.</i>

Gouffre,	<i>Whirl-pool, Swallow.</i>	Interrègne,	<i>an Interreign.</i>
Grade,	<i>a Degree.</i>	Interstice,	<i>an Interval of time.</i>
Grêffe,	<i>the Rolls.</i>	Intervalle,	<i>an Interval.</i>
Grimoire,	<i>a conjuring-book.</i>	Inventaire,	<i>an Inventory.</i>
Groupe,	<i>a Group.</i>	Isthme,	<i>Isthmus.</i>
Hâle,	<i>Drying-weather.</i>	Itinéraire,	<i>an Itinerary.</i>
Haut-de-chauffe,	<i>Breeches.</i>	Jules, {	<i>a Julio (an Italian five pence).</i>
Hâvre,	<i>Haven.</i>	Laboratoire,	<i>a Laboratory.</i>
Héliotrope,	<i>a Turnsol.</i>	Labourage,	<i>Tillage.</i>
Hémisphère,	<i>an Hemisphere.</i>	Labyrinthe,	<i>a Labyrinth.</i>
Hémistichie,	<i>Hemistick.</i>	Langage,	<i>a Language.</i>
Hermitage,	<i>an Hermitage.</i>	Lange,	<i>Swaddling-cloaths.</i>
Hêtre,	<i>a Beech-tree.</i>	Lavage,	<i>a washing.</i>
Hiéroglyphe,	<i>Hieroglyphick.</i>	Légitime,	<i>a Civilian.</i>
Hippogriffe,	<i>Hippogriff.</i>	Légume,	<i>Pulse.</i>
Holocauste,	<i>a Burnt-offering.</i>	Leurre,	<i>a Lure for a Hawk.</i>
Hombre,	<i>Humber.</i>	Libelle,	<i>a Libel.</i>
Homicide,	<i>a Murder.</i>	Liège,	<i>Cork.</i>
Hommage,	<i>a Homage.</i>	Lierre,	<i>Ivy.</i>
Horoscope,	<i>a Horoscope.</i>	Lièvre,	<i>a Hare.</i>
Homme,	<i>a Man.</i>	Limbe,	<i>Limb, or Border.</i>
Hongre,	<i>a Gelding.</i>	Limbes,	<i>Limbs.</i>
Hospice,	<i>an Hospital.</i>	Linge,	<i>Linen.</i>
Hôte,	<i>a Landlord.</i>	Livre,	<i>a Book.</i>
Huitième,	<i>the eighth part.</i>	Lobe,	<i>a Lobe.</i>
Jade,	<i>a green sort of precious Stone.</i>	Louage,	<i>letting out, hiring.</i>
Jambe,	<i>an Iambick verse.</i>	Logarithme,	<i>Logarithm.</i>
Jambage,	<i>Jambs, Stroke.</i>	Logogriphe,	<i>Logogriph.</i>
Jaune,	<i>the Yolk of an egg.</i>	Lombes,	<i>the Loins.</i>
Jaspe,	<i>Jasper.</i>	Louvre,	<i>a Palace.</i>
Jeûne,	<i>a Fast.</i>	Lucre,	<i>Gain, Profit.</i>
Incendie,	<i>a Conflagration.</i>	Luminaire,	<i>the light of a place.</i>
Indice,	<i>a Sign.</i>	Lustre, {	<i>Lustre, brightness, also a branched candlestick.</i>
In-douze,	<i>in Twelve.</i>	Luxe,	<i>Luxury.</i>
In-seize,	<i>in Sixteen.</i>	Mâle,	<i>a Male.</i>
Inceste,	<i>an Incest.</i>	Maléfice,	<i>Witchcraft.</i>
Incube,	<i>an Incubus.</i>	Manche,	<i>a Handle.</i>
Insecte,	<i>an Insect.</i>		
Interlope,	<i>Interloper.</i>		
Intermède,	<i>an Interlude.</i>		

Manège,

Manége,	a riding School.	Monochorde,	a Monochord.
Mânes,	the Manes, or Ghost.	Monitoire,	a Monitory.
Manifeste,	a Manifesto.	Monogramme,	a Monogram.
Manipule,	Maniple.	Monologue,	a Monologue.
Manque,	Want, lack.	Monopole,	a Monopoly.
Marbre,	Marble.	Monosyllable,	a Monosyllable.
Mariage,	Marriage.	Monstre,	a Monster.
Martyre,	Martyrdom.	Moule,	a Mould.
Masque,	a Mask.	Muffle,	a Muzzle.
Massacre,	a Slaughter.	Murmure,	a Murmur.
Mausolée,	a Mausoleum.	Muscle,	a Muscle.
Mécompte,	{ a Mistake in reckoning.	Myrte,	the Myrtle-tree.
Médianoche,	a Mid-night meal.	Mystère,	a Mystery.
Membre,	a Member.	Narcisse,	a Daffodil.
Mélange,	a Mixture.	Naufrage,	a Ship-wreck.
Mémoire,	Bill, Memoirs.	Navire,	a Ship.
Ménage,	House-keeping.	Nécessaire,	the Necessaries.
Menfonge,	a Lie.	Négoce,	Trade.
Mercure,	Mercury.	Neuvième,	the ninth Part.
Mérite,	Merit, Desert.	Nitre,	Nitre.
Merle,	a Black-bird.	Nombre,	a Number.
Mésentère,	Mesentery.	Nuage,	a Cloud.
Mesurage,	Measuring.	Obélisque,	an Obelisk.
Météore,	a Meteor.	Observatoire,	an Observatory.
Meuble,	Furniture of the house.	Obstacle,	an Hindrance.
Meurtre,	a Murder.	Cétogone,	Octagon.
Microscope,	a Microscope.	Office,	a good Turn.
Mille,	a Mile.	Ogre,	an Ogre.
Millésime,	{ (the date of a Medal).	Olympe,	Olympus.
Millième,	{ the thousandth Part.	Ombrage,	Shade, Umbrage.
Ministère,	Ministry.	Oncle,	an Uncle.
Miracle,	a Miracle.	Ongle,	a Nail.
Mobile,	Motion.	Opprobre,	Reproach.
Modèle,	a Model, Sample.	Opuscule,	a little Book.
Module,	a Module.	Oracle,	an Oracle.
un Môle,	a Mole.	Orage,	a Storm.
Monarque,	a Monarch.	Oratoire,	an Oratory.
Monde,	the World.	Orbe,	an Orb.
Monastère,	a Monastery.	Ordinaire,	Ordinary, the Mail.
		Ordre,	an Order.
		Organe,	an Organ.
			Orgaline,

Orgasme, (medic. term)	Orgasm.	Pénates,	Penates.
Orge,	Barley.	Pentagone,	a Pentagon.
Orgue,	a pair of Organs.	Péricarde,	Pericardium.
Orifice,	Orifice, Opening.	Péricrâne,	Pericranium.
Orle (in heraldry),	an Orle.	Périoste,	Periosteum.
Orme,	an Elm-tree.	Périgée,	Perigee.
Otage,	an Hostage.	Péristyle,	a Peristyle.
Outrage,	Outrage, Affront.	Perpendicule,	a Plummet.
Ouvrage,	Work.	Péritoine,	Peritonæum.
Pacte,	a Pact.	Pétale,	Petal.
Paganisme,	Paganism.	Pétalisme,	Petalism.
Pagne,	Cotton-cloth.	Pétafe,	{ the winged hat of Mercury.
Pampre,	Vine-branch.	Peuple,	People.
Panache,	a Bunch of Feathers.	Phare,	a Light-house.
Panégyrique,	Panegyrick.	Phénomène,	Phenomenon.
Papisme,	Popery.	Philtre,	a Philter.
Paradoxe,	a Paradox.	Phosphore,	Phosphorus.
Paraphrase,	Paraphrast.	Piafre,	a piece of Eight.
Parage,	Latitude.	Piége,	a Snare, Trap.
Paragraphe,	a Paragraph.	Pilastré,	Pilastrer.
Parafe,	{ a Flourish added to one's name in signing.	Pillage,	Plunder.
Paranymphe,	{ a public Act in the University of Paris.	Pinde,	the Pindus.
Parnasse,	Parnassus.	Pivoine,	a Gnat-snapper.
Parricide,	a Parricide.	Plâne, Platane,	a Plane-tree.
Parterre,	a Flower-garden.	Planisphère,	a Planisphere.
Participe,	a Participle.	Plâtre,	Plaster, Parget.
Parjure,	a Perjury.	Pléonasme,	Pleonasm.
Passage,	a Passage.	Plumage,	the Feather of a bird.
Patrimoine,	Patrimony.	Poème,	a Poem.
Patronage,	Patronage, Adversary.	Poêle,	a Stove, a Pall.
Pentamètre,	a Pentameter.	Poivre,	Pepper.
Péage,	Toll, Custom.	Pôle,	the Pole.
Pécule,	Money got by saving.	Polygone,	a Polygon.
Pédicule,	Pedicle.	Polype,	a Polypus.
Pégase,	Pegasus.	Ponicle,	a great Lemon.
Permesse,	Parnassus.	Porche,	a Porch.
Peigne,	a Comb.	Pore,	a Pore.
Pélerinage,	a Pilgrimage.	Porphyre,	Porphyry.
Pène,	a Bolt.	Portage,	the Carriage.
		Porte-mouchettes,	{ a Sniffing pan.
			Portique,

Portique,	a Portico, Piazza.	Quatrième,	a fourth Part.
Possible,	Might, Possibility.	Quines,	two Cinks or Fives.
Potage,	Potage, Partridge.	Quinzième,	a Fifteenth.
Pouce,	a Thumb, an Inch.	Rable,	the back of a Hare.
Préambule,	a Preamble.	Raccommodage,	Mending.
Precepte,	a Precept.	Raffinage,	the refining of Sugar.
Prêche,	a religious Meeting.	Râle,	a rattling in the Throat.
Précipice,	a Precipice.	Ramage,	the chirping of Birds.
Préjudice,	Hurt, Detriment.	Rance,	Rusty.
Prélude,	the Prelude.	Rapiécetage,	patch'd Work.
Prépuce,	Foreskin.	Ravage,	Havock.
Présage,	Presage, Omen.	Réaggrave,	the last Communion.
Presbytère,	the Parsonage.	Réceptacle,	Receptacle, Nest.
Prestige,	a Prestige.	Réciproque,	Return, Like.
Prétexte,	a Pretence.	Rectangle,	a Rectangle.
Priapisme,	Priapism.	Réfectoire,	{ a Dining-room in a Monastery.
Principe,	a Principle.	Régime,	a Course of Diet.
Prisme,	a Prism.	Règne,	Reign.
Privilège,	a Privilege.	Relâche,	Respite.
Problème,	a Problem.	Reliquaire,	a Shrine.
Prodige,	a Prodigy.	Remède,	a Remedy.
Proches,	Kinsfolks, Relations.	Repaire,	the Haunt.
Programme,	a College-bill.	Répertoire,	a Repertory.
Prolégomène,	a Proem.	Reptile,	a creeping thing.
Prologue,	a Prologue.	Réquisitoire,	a Request.
Promontoire,	a Promontory.	Rosaire,	great Beads.
Prône,	a Morning-sermon.	Rouge-gorge,	a Robin-red-breast.
Prognostique,	a Prognostick.	Rouge-queue,	a Red-tail.
Protocole,	a Precedent-book.	Reproche,	a Reproach.
Prototype,	the first Pattern.	Reste,	Remainder, Rest.
Proverbe,	a Proverb.	Rêve,	a Dream.
Pseaume,	a Psalm.	Réverbère,	Reverberate fire.
Pucelage,	Maidenhead.	Rhume,	a Rheum.
Pupitre,	a Desk.	Risque,	a Risk.
Purgatoire,	the Purgatory.	Rivage,	a Bank, or Shore.
Quadernes,	Two fours.	Rôle,	a Roll, List, Part.
Quadrangle,	a Quadrangle.	Royaume,	a Kingdom.
Quâdre, Câdre,	a Frame.	Rhombe,	a Rhomb.
Quadruple,	Four-fold.	Rhomboïde,	a Rhomboid.
Quantième ?	{ What day of the month ?	Sâble,	Sand.
Quatorze,	a Quatorze at Piquet.	Sâbre,	a Broad-sword.
Quatre,	a Four.		Sacrifice,

Sacrifice,	a Sacrifice.	Sortilège,	Witch-craft.
Sacrilège,	a Sacrilege.	Souffle,	the Breath.
Sagittaire,	Sagittarius.	Soufre,	Sulphur.
Salaire,	Salary.	Spécifique,	a Specific.
Sacerdoce,	Priest-hood.	Spéctre,	a Ghost.
Sacre,	Coronation.	Sphéroïde,	a Spheroid.
Salpêtre,	Salt-petre.	Squelette,	a Skeleton.
Sanctuaire,	a Sanctuary.	Squirrel,	a Schirrus.
Sandaraque,	Sandarack.	Stade,	a Furlong.
Saule, a Sallow, or Willow tree.		Stalle, a Seat (in the Choir).	
Savonnage,	soaping the Linen.	Stigmates,	Prints, Marks.
Scandale,	Scandal.	Style,	a Style.
Scapulaire,	a Scapulary.	Stocfiche,	Stockfish.
Sceptre,	a Scepter.	Suaire, } a Cloth to wrap up the	
Schism,	a Schism.	face of dead people.	
Sciage,	Sawing.	Subside,	Subsidy.
Scribe,	a Scribe.	Subterfuge,	a Shift.
Scrupule,	a Scruple.	Sucre,	Sugar.
Seigle,	Rye.	Succube;	a Succubus.
Semestre,	{ the Space of six	Suffrage,	a Vote.
	Months.	Supplice,	a Torment.
Séminaire,	a Nursery.	Suspensoire,	a Trust.
Septième,	the seventh Part.	Sycamore,	the Sycamore-tree.
Sépulcre,	a Grave.	Syllogisme,	a Syllogism.
Séquestre,	Sequestration.	Symbole,	Symbol, Badge.
Service,	Service; good turn.	Symptôme,	a Symptom.
Sesterce,	Sesterce.	Synode,	a Synod.
Sexe,	a Sex.	Synonyme,	a Synonyma.
Siècle,	an Age, a Century.	Système,	a System.
Siège,	a Seat, See; Siege.	Store,	an Umbrella.
Signe,	a Sign, Token.	Tabernacle,	Tabernacle.
Silence,	a Silence.	Tarse,	Tarsis.
Simples,	the Simples.	Tartre,	Tartar.
Sinople,	Sinople.	Télescope,	a Telescope.
Sixième,	a sixth Part.	Témoignage,	a Testimony.
Soliloque,	a Soliloquy.	Temple,	a Temple.
Solécisme,	a Solécism.	Tendre,	Tenderness.
Solstice,	Solstice.	Terme,	a Term, Bound.
Sommaire,	a Summary.	Ternes,	Two trois, six.
Somme,	Sleep, Repose.	Territoire,	a Territory.
Songe,	a Dream.	Tertre,	Rising ground.
Sophisme,	a Sophism.	Testicule,	Testicle.
			Tête.

Tête-à-tête,	{ a private conversation.	Vase,	a Vase.
Texte,	a Text.	Vaudeville,	a Ballad.
Théâtre,	a Theatre, Stage.	Véhicule,	a Vehicle.
Thème,	a Theme.	Ventre,	the Belly.
Thermomètre,	a Weather-glass.	Ventricule,	the Ventricle.
Thyrse,	a Thyrses.	Verbe,	a Verb.
Tigre, a Tyger, and the Tigris.		Verbiage,	idle Words.
Timbre, Stamp, a Clock-bell.		Verre,	a Glass.
Tintamarre, a thundering Noise.		Vertige,	a Dizziness.
Titre,	a Title.	Vésicatoire,	a Blister.
Tôme,	a Volume.	Vestibule, an Entry to a House.	
Tonnerre,	the Thunder.	Vestige,	Footstep.
Topique,	a Topick.	Viatique,	Viaticum.
Tourne broche,	a Jack.	Vice,	Vice.
Trapèze,	a Trapezium.	Vidame,	a Vidame.
Treillage,	Arbour-work.	Vignoble,	a Vine-yard.
Trèfle,	Trefoil.	Vinaigre,	Vinegar.
Tremble,	an Aspen-tree.	Vingtième,	the twentieth part.
Triage,	Choice.	Visage,	the Face.
Triangle,	a Triangle.	Viscère,	a Bowel.
Tricotage,	Knitting.	Vitrage,	Glazing.
Triglyphe,	a Triglyph.	Vivres,	Food, Provisions.
Triomphe,	a Triumph.	Voile, a Veil; but not a Sail.	
Triple,	the Triple.	Voisinage,	the Neighbourhood.
Tripotage,	a Mish-mash.	Vocabulaire,	a Vocabulary.
Trochisques, s. pl.	a Trochisk.	Volume,	a Volume.
Troène,	a Privet.	Voyage,	a Journey.
Trône,	a Throne.	Usage,	Usage, Use, Custom.
Trophée,	a Trophy.	Ulcère,	an Ulcer.
Tropique,	a Tropick.	Ustensile,	an Utensil.
Trouble,	a Trouble.	Uretère,	Urinary.
Tube,	a Tube.	Vide,	an empty Place.
Tubercule,	a Tumour.	Vulgaire,	the Vulgar.
Tumulte,	a Tumult.	Vulnérable,	a Vulnerary.
Tuorbe,	a Theorbo.	Zèle,	a Zeal.
Type,	a Type, Figure.	Zéphire, (a God)	Zephyrus.
Vacarme,	an Uproar.	Zodiaque,	the Zodiack.
		Zoophyte,	Zoophytes.

I have made two more Lists: one of the English words that are derived from the French; or which, being derived from Latin, or Greek, are quite alike, or very near: the other of words the same or nearly alike in sound, but different in spelling and signification. But as this book is already too much swelled, I have placed them in my Elements.

**F I N.**

**PUBLISHED by LEWIS CHAMBAUD,**  
**and Printed for the Proprietors.**

**I. A DICTIONARY**, French and English, and English and French; containing the Signification of Words, with their different Uses; the Terms of Arts, Sciences, and Trades; the Constructions, Forms of Speech, Idioms, and Proverbs used in both Languages: The whole extracted from the best Writers. A New Edition, carefully corrected and enlarged, with a great Number of Words, Proverbs, Idioms, &c. containing many more Sheets than in any other French and English Dictionaries. 1 Vol. 4to. Price 1l. 10s.

**II. EXERCISES** to the Rules of Construction of French Speech. Consisting of Passages extracted out of the best French Authors, with a Reference to the Grammar Rules, to be turned back into French. A New Edition. Price 2s.

**III. THEMES** François & Anglois, or French and English Exercises for the Use of Masters. The Second Edition. Price 3s.

**IV. A TREATISE** of the French and English Languages. Containing, I. A Vocabulary French and English. II. Common Forms of Speech upon the most familiar and useful Subjects. III. A Collection of Proverbs, common Sayings, Maxims, &c. being equally necessary to the French, and other Foreigners understanding French, to learn English; and the best, if not the only Help extant for them to attain to the Knowledge of it. The Fourth Edition. Corrected and Enlarged. Price 2s. 6d.

**V. The RUDIMENTS** of the French Tongue; or, An easy and rational Introduction to French Grammar: Wherein the Principles of the Language are methodically digested. With useful Notes and Observations, explaining the Terms of Grammar, and further improving its Rules. The Second Edition. Price 1s. 6d.

# PUBLISHED BY LEWIS CHAMPAUD, and Printed for the Proprietors.

**I. A DICTIONARY, French and English, and English and French; containing the Signification of Words, with their different Uses; the Terms of Arts, Sciences, and Trades; the Constitutions, Forms of Speech, Idioms, and Proverbs used in both Languages: The whole extracted from the best Writers. A New Edition, carefully corrected and enlarged, with a great Number of Words, Proverbs, Idioms, &c. containing many more Sheets than in any other French and English Dictionary. 1 Vol. 8vo. Price 15s.**

**II. EXERCISES to the Rules of Conjugation of French Speech: Consisting of Passages extracted from the best French Authors, with a Reference to the Grammar, to be turned back into French. A New Edition. Price 1s.**

**III. THREE FRAGMENTS of a System, or Method, and English Exercises for the Use of Masters. The second Edition. Price 1s.**

**IV. A TREATISE of the French and English Languages. Containing, I. A Vocabulary French and English. II. Common Forms of Speech upon the most familiar and useful Subjects. III. A Collection of Proverbs common to both Languages. IV. A Collection of Proverbs peculiar to each Language. V. A Collection of Proverbs equally necessary to the French, and other foreigners understanding French, to learn English; and the best, if not the only Help, to be used to attain to the Knowledge of it. The French Edition, Corrected and Enlarged. Price 15s.**

**V. THE SUPPLEMENT to the French Language, as far as the and national Institutions, or French Customs: Wherein the Principles of the Language are methodically taught. With useful Notes and Observations, explaining the Terms of Grammar, and further improving its Rules. The second Edition. Price 15s.**